



10641 Highway 36
Covington, GA
30014

www.sunbeltbuilders.com

t 770.786.3031
f 770.786.3046

JACKSON COUNTY AIRPORT TERMINAL BUILDING

Mechanical Repair Services
P.O. Box 883
Watkinsville, GA 30677
ph: 706-546-5003
Brent Powell
bpowell@mrsheatingandcooling.com

23-0000 HVAC O&M

**27SCA5
Single-Stage Heat Pumps
with Puron Advance™ Refrigerant
1-1/2 To 5 Nominal Tons**



Installation Instructions

NOTE: For use with R-454B indoor units only. Read the entire instruction manual before starting the installation.

SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS	1
GENERAL	1
INSTALLATION	2
Check Equipment and Job Site	2
Install on a Solid, Level Mounting Pad	2
Clearance Requirements	2
Operating Ambient	3
Check Defrost Thermostat	3
Elevate Unit	3
Make Piping Connections	4
Mandatory Requirements	6
Make Electrical Connections	6
Compressor Crankcase Heater	7
Install Electrical Accessories	7
Start-Up	8
Check Charge	9
Final Checks	10
Repairing Refrigerant Circuit	10
Care and Maintenance	10


SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

IMPORTANT: This appliance shall only be installed by EPA qualified personnel having appropriate certification. This appliance is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they have been given supervision or instruction concerning use of the appliance by a person responsible for their safety


Improper installation, adjustment, alteration, service, maintenance, or use can cause explosion, fire, electrical shock, or other conditions which may cause death, personal injury, or property damage. Consult a qualified installer, service agency, or your distributor or branch for information or assistance. The qualified installer or agency must use factory-authorized kits or accessories when modifying this product. Refer to the individual instructions packaged with the kits or accessories when installing.

Follow all safety codes. Wear safety glasses, protective clothing, and work gloves. Use quenching cloth for brazing operations. Have a dry powder or CO2 fire extinguisher available. Read these instructions thoroughly and follow all warnings or cautions included in literature and attached to the unit. Consult local building codes and current editions of the National Electrical Code (NEC) NFPA 70. In Canada, refer to current editions of the Canadian electrical code CSA 22.1.

Proper tools should be used that are designed for the refrigerant of the unit being installed. For A2L refrigerants, non-sparking tools are required. A refrigerant detector should be used prior to and during the installation process to check for leaks. Open flames or other ignition sources should not be present except during brazing. Brazing should only take place on refrigerant tubes that are open to the atmosphere or have been properly evacuated


Recognize safety information. This is the safety-alert symbol . When you see this symbol on the unit and in instructions or manuals, be alert to the potential for personal injury.


Understand these signal words; DANGER, WARNING, and CAUTION. These words are used with the safety-alert symbol. DANGER identifies the most serious hazards which will result in severe personal injury or death. WARNING signifies hazards which could result in personal injury or death. CAUTION is used to identify unsafe practices which may result in minor personal injury or product and property damage. NOTE is used to highlight suggestions which will result in enhanced installation, reliability, or operation.

 **WARNING**

ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death. Before installing, modifying, or servicing system, main electrical disconnect switch must be in the OFF position. There may be more than one disconnect switch. Lock out and tag switch with a suitable warning label.

 **WARNING**



EXPLOSION HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in death, serious personal injury, and/or property damage.

Never use air or any gas containing oxygen for leak testing or operating refrigerant compressors. Never allow compressor suction pressure to operate in a vacuum with service valves closed. See service manual for pump-down instructions.

GENERAL

NOTE: In some cases noise in the living area has been traced to gas pulsations from improper installation of equipment.

1. Maximum allowed elevation is 10,000 feet (3000 meters) above sea level.
2. Locate unit away from windows, patios, decks, etc. where unit operation sound may disturb customer.
3. Ensure that vapor and liquid tube diameters are appropriate for unit capacity.
4. Run refrigerant tubes with no bends with centerline bend radius less than 2.5 times the external pipe diameter.
5. Leave some slack between structure and unit to absorb vibration.
6. When passing refrigerant tubes through the wall, seal opening with RTV or other pliable silicon-based caulk (see Fig. 1).
7. Avoid direct tubing contact with water pipes, duct work, floor joists, wall studs, floors, and walls.

8. Do not suspend refrigerant tubing from joists and studs with a rigid wire or strap which comes in direct contact with tubing (see Fig. 1).
9. Ensure that tubing insulation is pliable and completely surrounds vapor tube.
10. When necessary, use hanger straps which are 1 in. (25 mm) wide and conform to shape of tubing insulation (see Fig. 1).
11. Isolate hanger straps from insulation by using metal sleeves bent to conform to shape of insulation.
12. Provision shall be made for expansion and contraction of long runs of piping.
13. Piping and fittings shall be protected as far as possible against adverse environmental effects. For example, the accumulation of dirt and debris.
14. Piping should be installed to reduce the likelihood of hydraulic shock damaging the system.
15. Certified piping and components must be used in order to protect against corrosion.
16. Flexible pipe elements shall be protected against mechanical damage, excessive stress by torsion, or other forces. They should be checked for mechanical damage annually.
17. Piping material, routing, and installation shall include protection from physical damage in operation and service, and be in compliance with the national and local codes and standards of the installation site.
18. When setting up refrigerant piping, precautions shall be taken to avoid excessive vibration or pulsation.

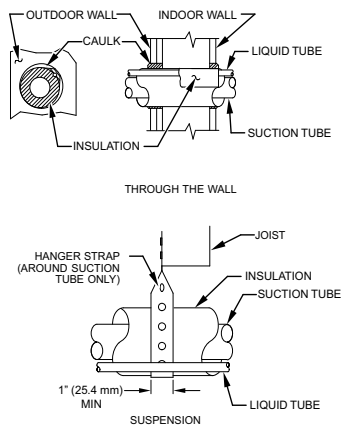


Fig. 1 – Connecting Tubing Installation

A07588

Refrigerant Tubing Connection Outdoor

IMPORTANT: Maximum liquid-line size is 3/8-in. OD for all residential applications including long line. Refer to Residential Piping and Long Line Guideline for further information

IMPORTANT: Always install the factory-supplied liquid-line filter drier.

If replacing the filter drier, refer to Product Replacement Parts List for appropriate part number. Obtain replacement filter driers from your distributor or branch.

INSTALLATION

IMPORTANT: Effective January 1, 2023, all split system and packaged heat pumps must be installed pursuant to applicable regional efficiency standards issued by the Department of Energy.

CAUTION

CUT HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in personal injury.

Sheet metal parts may have sharp edges or burrs. Use care and wear appropriate protective clothing and gloves when handling parts.

Check Equipment and Job Site

Unpack Unit

Move to final location. Remove carton taking care not to damage unit.

Inspect Equipment

File claim with shipping company prior to installation if shipment is damaged or incomplete. Locate unit rating plate on unit corner panel. It contains information needed to properly install unit. Check rating plate to be sure unit matches job specifications.

Install on a Solid, Level Mounting Pad

If conditions or local codes require the unit be attached to pad, tie down bolts should be used and fastened through knockouts provided in unit base pan. Refer to unit mounting pattern in Fig. 2 to determine base pan size and knockout hole location.

For hurricane tie downs, contact distributor for details and PE Certification (Professional Engineer), if required.

On rooftop applications, mount on level platform or frame. Place unit above a load-bearing wall and isolate unit and tubing set from structure. Arrange supporting members to adequately support unit and minimize transmission of vibration to building. Consult local codes governing rooftop applications.

Roof mounted units exposed to winds above 5 mph may require wind baffles. Consult the Application Guideline and Service Manual – Residential Split System Air Conditioners and Heat Pumps for wind baffle construction.

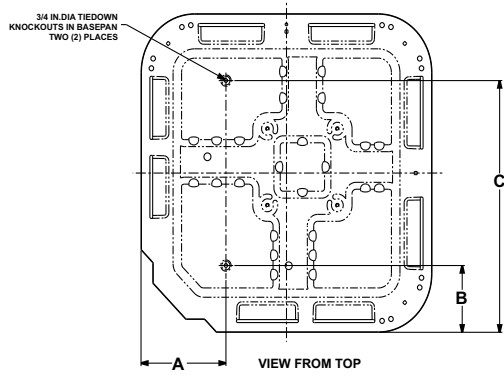
Unit must be level to within $\pm 2^\circ$ ($\pm 3/8$ in./ft., ± 9.5 mm/m) per compressor manufacturer specifications.

Clearance Requirements

When installing, allow sufficient space for airflow clearance, wiring, refrigerant piping, and service. Allow 24 in. (610 mm) clearance to service end of unit and 48 in. (1219 mm) above unit. For proper airflow, a 6-in. (152 mm) clearance on 1 side of unit and 12-in. (305 mm) on all remaining sides must be maintained. Maintain a distance of 24 in. (610 mm) between units or 18 in. (457 mm) if no overhang within 12 ft. (4 m). Position so water, snow, or ice from roof or eaves cannot fall directly on unit.

NOTE: 18" (457 mm) clearance option described above is approved for outdoor units with wire grille coil guard only. Units with louver panels require 24" (610 mm) between units.

On rooftop applications, locate unit at least 6 in. (152 mm) above roof surface.



A05177

UNIT BASE PAN Dimension in. (mm)	TIEDOWN KNOCKOUT LOCATIONS in. (mm)		
	A	B	C
31-1/2 X 31-1/2 (800 X 800)	9-1/8 (231.8)	6-9/16 (166.7)	24-11/16 (627.1)
35 X 35 (889 X 889)	9-1/8 (231.8)	6-9/16 (166.7)	28-7/16 (722.3)

Fig. 2 – Tiedown Knockout Locations

Operating Ambient

The minimum outdoor operating ambient in cooling mode without accessory is 55°F (13°C).

Check Defrost Thermostat



PERSONAL INJURY AND ENVIRONMENTAL HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death. Do not use means to accelerate the defrosting process or to clean, other than those recommended by the manufacturer. The appliance shall be stored in a room without continuously operating ignition sources (for example: open flames, an operating gas appliance or an operating electric heater. Do not pierce or burn. Be aware that refrigerants do not contain an odor.

Check defrost thermostat to ensure it is properly located and securely attached. There is a liquid header with a distributor and feeder tube going into outdoor coil. At the end of the one of the feeder tubes, there is a 3/8 in. O.D. stub tube approximately 2 in. (50.8 mm) long (see Fig. 3). The defrost thermostat should be located on stub tube. Note that there is only one stub tube used with liquid header, and on most units it is the bottom circuit.

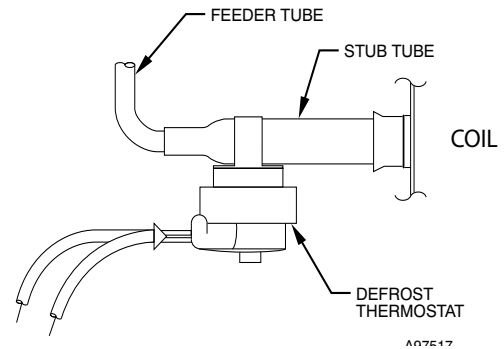


Fig. 3 – Defrost Thermostat Location

A97517

Elevate Unit



UNIT OPERATION HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in equipment damage or improper operation. Do not allow water and/or ice to build up in base pan.

Elevate unit per local climate and code requirements to provide clearance above estimated snowfall level and ensure adequate drainage of unit.

Table 1 – Accessory Usage

Accessory	REQUIRED FOR LOW-AMBIENT COOLING APPLICATIONS (Below 55°F / 12.8°C)	REQUIRED FOR LONG LINE APPLICATIONS*	REQUIRED FOR SEA COAST APPLICATIONS (Within 2 miles / 3.22 km)
Accumulator	Standard	Standard	Standard
Ball Bearing Fan Motor	Yes†	No	No
Compressor Start Assist Capacitor and Relay	Yes	Yes	No
Crankcase Heater	Yes	Yes	No
Evaporator Freeze Thermostat	Yes	No	No
Hard Shutoff TXV	Yes	Yes	No
Isolation Relay	Yes	No	No
Liquid Line Solenoid Valve	No	See Long-Line Application Guideline	No
Motor Master® Control or Low Ambient Switch	Yes‡	No	No
Support Feet	Recommended	No	Recommended

*. For tubing line sets between 80 and 200 ft. (24.38 and 60.96 m) and/or 20 ft. (6.09 m) vertical differential, refer to Residential Piping and Long Line Guideline.

†. Additional requirement for Low-Ambient Controller (full modulation feature) MotorMaster® Control.

‡. In units equipped with ECM OD motor, motor needs to be replaced per unit accessory guide to work properly. This motor kit comes with a new defrost board that also needs to be installed. Unit will not meet AHRI rated efficiency once motor and control board are replaced to use this accessory.

Make Piping Connections

WARNING

PERSONAL INJURY AND ENVIRONMENTAL HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death. Relieve pressure and recover all refrigerant before system repair or final unit disposal. Use all service ports and open all flow-control devices, including solenoid valves. Federal regulations require that refrigerant is not vented into the atmosphere. Recover during system repair or final unit disposal.

CAUTION

UNIT DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in equipment damage or improper operation. If ANY refrigerant tubing is buried, provide a 6-in (152 mm) vertical rise at service valve. Refrigerant tubing lengths up to 36-in (914 mm). may be buried without further special consideration. Do not bury lines longer than 36 in (914 mm).

Outdoor units may be connected to indoor section using accessory tubing package or field-supplied refrigerant grade tubing of correct size and condition.

Rated tubing diameters shown in Table 2 are recommended up to 80 ft. (24 m). See Product Data for acceptable alternate vapor diameters and associated capacity losses.

For tubing requirements beyond 80 ft, substantial capacity and performance losses can occur. Following the recommendations in the Residential Piping and Long Line Guideline will reduce these losses. Refer to Table 1 for accessory requirements.

There are no buried-line applications greater than 36 in. (914 mm)

If refrigerant tubes or indoor coil are exposed to atmosphere, they must be evacuated to 500 microns to eliminate contamination and moisture in the system.

Refrigerant pipe should be installed with the minimum length possible and practical for the application. Piping should be protected from physical damage in operation and in service and be in compliance with national and local codes such as ASRHAE 15, ASHRAE 15.2, IAPMO

Uniform Mechanical Code, ICC International Mechanical Code, or CSA B52. When piping is installed through studs in a wall, steel plates should be used for protection with a minimum thickness of 16 gage.

All field joints shall be accessible for inspection prior to being covered or enclosed.

Outdoor Unit Connected To Factory Approved R-454B Indoor Unit

When outdoor unit is connected to factory-approved R-454B indoor unit, outdoor unit contains approximate system refrigerant charge for operation with AHRI rated indoor unit when connected by 15 ft. (5 m) of field-supplied or factory accessory tubing and factory supplied filter drier. For all sizes, adjust charge by adding or removing 0.6 oz/ft of 3/8 liquid line above or below 15 ft. (5 m) respectively..

Some indoor units require additional subcooling to achieve optimal heating performance.

Connect vapor and liquid tubes to fittings on vapor and liquid service valves (see Table 2). Use refrigerant grade tubing.

Table 2 – Refrigerant Connections and Recommended Liquid and Vapor Tube Diameters (In.)

UNIT SIZE	LIQUID		RATED VAPOR*	
	Connection Diameter	Tube Diameter	Connection Diameter	Tube Diameter
18, 24	3/8	3/8	5/8	5/8
30, 36	3/8	3/8	3/4	3/4
42, 48	3/8	3/8	7/8	7/8
60	3/8	3/8	7/8	1-1/8

*. Units are rated with 25 ft. (7.6 m) of lineset. See Product Data sheet for performance data when using different size and length linesets.

Notes:

- Do not apply capillary tube indoor coils to these units.
- For Tubing Set lengths between 80 and 200 ft. (24.38 and 60.96 m) horizontal or 20 ft. (6.09 m) vertical differential 250 ft. (76.2 m) Total Equivalent Length, refer to the Residential Piping and Long Line Guideline – Air Conditioners and Heat Pumps using Puron Advance refrigerant.
- For alternate liquid line options, see Product Data or Residential Piping and Long Line Application Guideline

Service Valves

Service valves are closed and plugged from the factory. Outdoor units are shipped with a refrigerant charge sealed in the unit. Leave the service valves closed until all other refrigerant system work is complete or the charge will be lost. Leave the plugs in place until line set tubing is ready to be inserted.

Heat pumps require a piston metering device in the liquid service valve for proper heating operation. Piston is shipped in the piston body of the liquid service valve, temporarily held in place with a plastic cap. Do not remove the plastic cap until line set tubing is ready to be installed.

Refer to Fig. 4 and follow these steps for piston installation:

1. Remove plastic cap holding piston in piston body of liquid service valve.
2. Check that piston size (stamped on side of piston) matches with number listed on unit rating plate. Return piston to piston body of liquid service valve (either direction).
3. Find plastic bag taped to unit containing copper adapter tube, brass nut, and plastic washer.
4. Install plastic washer in the seat inside piston body.
5. Fit brass nut onto adapter tube and install tube onto liquid service valve. Tighten nut finger tight, then wrench additional ½ turn only [15-ft lbs (20.3 N-m)]. Over tightening may damage the plastic washer and service valve's piston body.

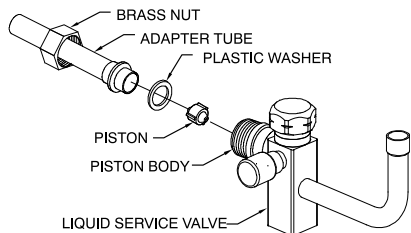


Fig. 4 – Liquid Service Valve with Heating Piston and Adapter Tube
Brazing Connections

A14235

! CAUTION

BURN HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in personal injury. Components will be HOT after brazing. Wear appropriate personal protective equipment and allow to cool before handling parts and equipment.

If using brazing connections, use a properly sized swedge tool to create a swedge (bell) on one of the two copper tubes being connected. Alternatively, a copper coupling can be used which will require two braze joints instead of one.

Clean line set tube ends with emery cloth or steel brush. Remove any grit or debris.

Connect vapor tube to fitting on outdoor unit vapor service valves (see Table 2). Connect liquid tubing to adapter tube on liquid service valve. Use refrigerant grade tubing.

! CAUTION

UNIT DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in equipment damage or improper operation. Service valves must be wrapped in a heat-sinking material such as a wet cloth while brazing.

Apply heat absorbing paste or heat sink product between service valve and joint. Wrap service valves with a heat sinking material such as a wet cloth.

After wrapping service valve with a wet cloth, tubing set can be brazed to service valve using either silver bearing or non-silver bearing brazing material. Do not use soft solder (materials which melt below 800°F/427°C). Braze joints using a Sil-Fos or Phos-copper alloy. Consult local code requirements.

Some outdoor units contain a mechanical fitting at the liquid distributor. This connection is not field serviceable and should not be disturbed. For Liquid Service Valve - Braze lineset to adapter tube BEFORE bolting adapter to valve. This helps prevent overheating and damage to plastic washer or o-ring.

For Vapor Service Valve - remove valve core from schrader port on Service Valve BEFORE brazing. This helps prevent overheating and damage to valve seals (refer to Fig. 5). Replace valve core when brazing is completed.

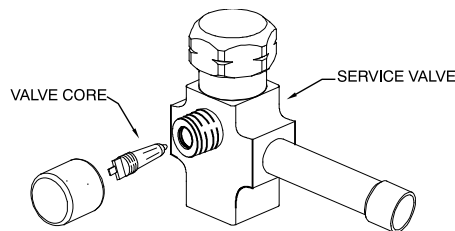


Fig. 5 – Vapor Service Valve

A14236

! WARNING

FIRE HAZARD

Failure to following this warning could result in personal injury, death and/or property damage. Refrigerant and oil mixture could ignite and burn as it escapes and contacts brazing torch. Make sure the refrigerant charge is properly removed from both the high and low sides of the system before brazing any component or lines.

Mechanical Line Set Connections

If using mechanical or crimp-type line set connections, follow crimp tool manufacturer's instructions.

NOTE: Should the use of mechanical fittings cause failure of the fittings or failure of the equipment, such would not be covered under the equipment limited warranty.

Install Liquid Line Filter Drier Indoor

! CAUTION

UNIT DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in equipment damage or improper operation. Installation of filter drier in liquid line is required. Filter drier must be wrapped in a heat-sinking material such as a wet cloth while brazing

Refer to Fig. 6 and install filter drier as follows:

1. Braze 5 in. (127 mm) liquid tube to the indoor coil.
2. Wrap filter drier with damp cloth.
3. Braze filter drier to 5 in. (127 mm) long liquid tube from step 1.
4. Connect and braze liquid refrigerant tube to the filter drier.

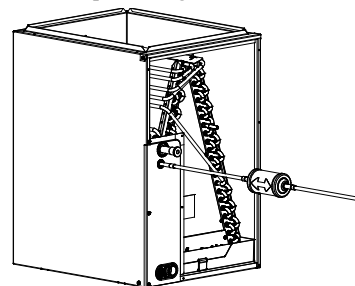


Fig. 6 – Liquid Line Filter Drier

A05227

Mandatory Requirements

Pressure Proof Check

Refrigerant tubes and indoor coil should be pressure tested with an inert gas such as nitrogen. Pressurize the system with the inert gas to the Low Side Test Pressure listed on the outdoor unit rating plate

1. Perform a pressure check of the unit with a nitrogen charge of about 200psi.
2. The nitrogen holding charge must NOT decrease in pressure for 1 hour, as indicated by the test gauge. The measuring test gauge resolution not exceeding 5% of the holding charge.

Final Tubing Check

IMPORTANT: Check to be certain factory tubing on both indoor and outdoor unit has not shifted during shipment. Ensure tubes are not rubbing against each other or any sheet metal. Pay close attention to feeder tubes, making sure wire ties on feeder tubes are secure and tight.

Pressure Test Tubing and Indoor Coil

Refrigerant tubes and indoor coil should be pressure tested with an inert gas such as nitrogen. Pressurize the system with the inert gas to the Low Side Test Pressure listed on the outdoor unit rating plate

! **WARNING**

EXPLOSION HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in death, serious personal injury, and/or property damage.

Never exceed the test pressures listed on the rating plate when pressure testing an outdoor unit.

Leak Check

The deep vacuum method requires a vacuum pump capable of pulling a vacuum of 500 microns and a vacuum gage capable of accurately measuring this vacuum depth. The deep vacuum method is the most positive way of assuring a system is free of air and liquid water. A tight dry system will hold a vacuum of 1000 microns after approximately 7 minutes. (See Fig. 7.)

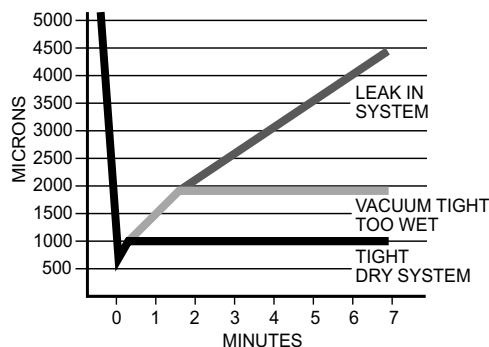


Fig. 7 – Deep Vacuum Graph

A95424

! **WARNING**

FIRE HAZARD

Failure to following this warning could result in personal injury, death and/or property damage.

DO NOT USE FLAMES OR IGNITION SOURCES TO LEAK CHECK.

Vacuum unit to 500 microns. When isolating the unit from the pump, the pressure shall not rise above 1500 microns in 10 minutes.

Evacuate Refrigerant Tubing and Indoor Coil

! **CAUTION**

UNIT DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in equipment damage or improper operation.

Never use the system compressor as a vacuum pump.

Refrigerant tubes and indoor coil should be evacuated using the recommended deep vacuum method of 500 microns. The alternate triple evacuation method may be used (see triple evacuation procedure in service manual). Always break a vacuum with dry nitrogen.

Make Electrical Connections

! **WARNING**

ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death.

Do not supply power to unit with compressor terminal box cover removed.

Be sure field wiring complies with local and national fire, safety, and electrical codes, and voltage to system is within limits shown on unit rating plate. Contact local power company for correction of improper voltage. See unit rating plate for recommended circuit protection device.

NOTE: Operation of unit on improper line voltage constitutes abuse and could affect unit reliability. See unit rating plate. Do not install unit in system where voltage may fluctuate above or below permissible limits.

NOTE: Use copper wire only between disconnect switch and unit.

NOTE: Install branch circuit disconnect of adequate size per NEC to handle unit starting current. Locate disconnect within sight from and readily accessible from unit, per Section 440-14 of NEC. Refer to Product Data for breaker sizing.

Route Ground and Power Wires

Remove access panel to gain access to unit wiring. Extend wires from disconnect through power wiring hole provided and into unit control box.

Connect Ground and Power Wires

! **WARNING**

ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death.

The unit cabinet must have an uninterrupted or unbroken ground to minimize personal injury if an electrical fault should occur. The ground may consist of electrical wire or metal conduit when installed in accordance with national and local electrical codes.

This appliance incorporates an earth connection for safety purposes only. Connect ground wire to ground connection in control box for safety. Connect power wiring to contactor as shown in Fig. 8.

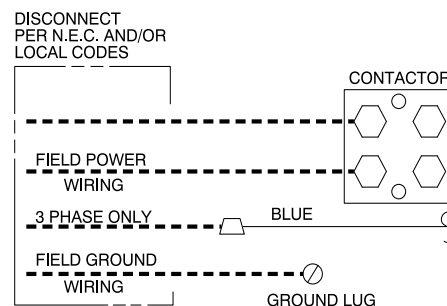


Fig. 8 – Line Connections

A94025

In 3-phase units, a small circuit board is factory installed to monitor line voltage (see Fig. 9). A small LED will flash if a phase problem exists. See code descriptions on monitor.

If LED is flashing, disconnect power to unit and interchange 2 field-wiring leads on unit contactor.

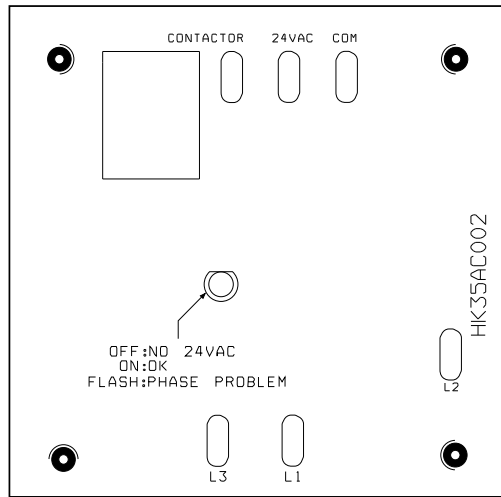


Fig. 9 – 3-Phase Monitor Control
(Applies to 3-Phase Units Only)

A00010

Table 3 – 3-Phase Monitor LED Indicators

LED	STATUS
OFF	No call for compressor operation
FLASHING	Reversed phase
ON	Normal

! CAUTION

UNIT DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in equipment damage or improper operation.

Ensure compressor rotation is correct.

- 3-phase scroll compressors are rotation sensitive.
- A flash LED on phase monitor indicates reverse rotation. (See Table 3). This will not allow contractor to be energized.
- Disconnect power to unit and interchange 2 field-wiring leads on unit contactor

Connect Control Wiring

Route 24v control wires through control wiring grommet and connect leads to control wiring. See Thermostat Installation Instructions for wiring specific unit combinations. (See Fig. 10.)

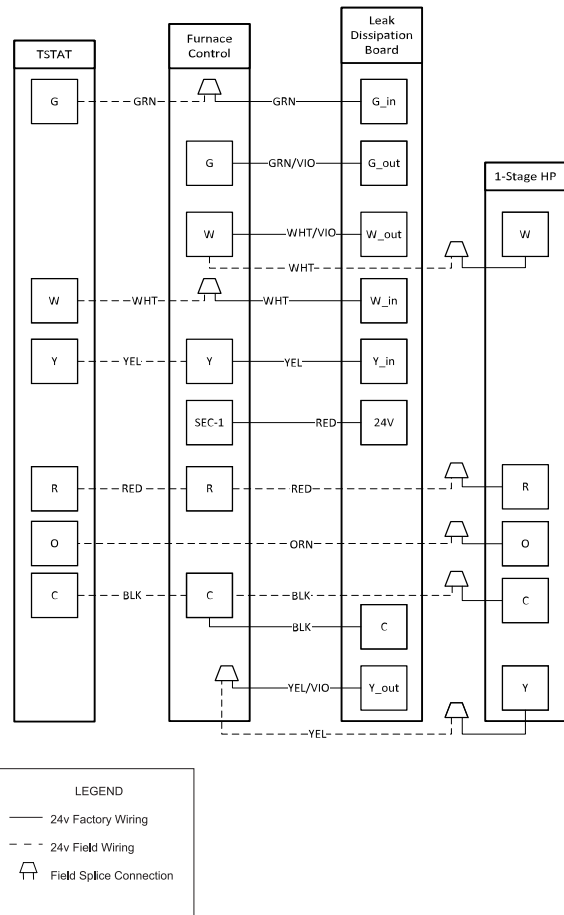
Use No. 18 AWG color-coded, insulated (35°C minimum) wire. If thermostat is located more than 100 ft (31 m) from unit, as measured along the control voltage wires, use No. 16 AWG color-coded wire to avoid excessive voltage drop.

All wiring must be NEC Class 2 and must be separated from incoming power leads.

Use furnace transformer, fan coil transformer, or accessory transformer for control power, 24v/40va minimum.

NOTE: Use of available 24v accessories may exceed the minimum 40va power requirement. Determine total transformer loading and increase the transformer capacity or split the load with an accessory transformer as required.

NOTE: Factory Authorized Dissipation System must be installed with the indoor unit.



LEGEND

— 24v Factory Wiring

- - - 24v Field Wiring

⏏ Field Splice Connection

A09306 / A230566

Fig. 10 – Generic Wiring Diagram
(See tstat Installation Instructions for specific unit combinations)

Final Wiring Check

IMPORTANT: Check factory wiring and field wire connections to ensure terminations are secured properly. Check wire routing to ensure wires are not in contact with tubing, sheet metal, etc.

Compressor Crankcase Heater

When equipped with a crankcase heater, furnish power to heater a minimum of 24 hr before starting unit. To furnish power to heater only, set thermostat to OFF and close electrical disconnect to outdoor unit.

A crankcase heater is required if refrigerant tubing is longer than 80 ft (24 m), or when outdoor unit is 20 ft (6 m) below indoor unit. Refer to the Residential Piping and Long Line Guideline and Service Manual.

Install Electrical Accessories

Refer to the individual instructions packaged with kits or accessories when installing.

! WARNING

PERSONAL INJURY AND/OR PROPERTY DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury and/or property damage.

For continued performance, reliability, and safety, the only approved accessories and replacement parts are those specified by the equipment manufacturer. The use of non-manufacturer approved parts and accessories could invalidate the equipment limited warranty and result in fire risk, equipment malfunction, and failure.

Please review the manufacturer's literature and replacement parts catalogs available from your equipment supplier.

Start-Up**! CAUTION****PERSONAL INJURY HAZARD**

Failure to follow this caution may result in personal injury.

Wear safety glasses, protective clothing, and gloves when handling refrigerant and observe the following:

- Front seating service valves are equipped with Schrader valves.

! CAUTION**ENVIRONMENTAL HAZARD**

Failure to follow this caution may result in environmental damage.

Federal regulations require that you do not vent refrigerant to the atmosphere. Recover during system repair or final unit disposal.

! CAUTION**UNIT OPERATION AND SAFETY HAZARD**

Failure to follow this caution may result in personal injury, equipment damage or improper operation.

- Do not overcharge system with refrigerant.
- Do not operate unit in a vacuum or at negative pressure.
- Do not disable low pressure switch in scroll compressor applications.
- Compressor dome temperatures may be hot.

Follow these steps to properly start up system:**! WARNING****PERSONAL INJURY HAZARD**

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death.

Do not use power tools to open and close service valves.

Power tools can cause valve stem to suddenly be ejected from the valve body followed by a high pressure refrigerant leak.

1. After system is evacuated, fully open liquid and vapor service valves.
2. Unit is shipped with valve stem(s) front seated (closed) and caps installed. Replace stem caps after system is opened to refrigerant flow (back seated). Replace caps finger-tight and tighten with wrench an additional 1/12 turn.
3. Close electrical disconnects to energize system.
4. Set room thermostat at desired temperature. Be sure set point is below indoor ambient temperature for cooling mode operation.
5. Set room thermostat to HEAT or COOL and fan control to ON or AUTO mode, as desired. Operate unit for 15 minutes. Check system refrigerant charge.

Sequence of Operation

Turn on power to indoor and outdoor units. Transformer is energized.

Cooling

On a call for cooling, thermostat makes circuits R-O and R-Y, and R-G. Circuit R-O energizes reversing valve, switching it to cooling position. Circuit R-Y energizes contactor, starting outdoor fan motor and compressor circuit. R-G energizes indoor unit blower relay, starting indoor blower motor on high speed.

When thermostat is satisfied, its contacts open, de-energizing contactor and blower relay. Compressor and motors should stop.

If indoor unit is equipped with a time-delay relay circuit, the indoor blower will run an additional 90 seconds to increase system efficiency.

Heating

On a call for heating, thermostat makes circuits R-Y and R-G. Circuit R-Y energizes contactor, starting outdoor fan motor and compressor. Circuit R-G energizes indoor blower relay, starting blower motor on high speed.

Should temperature continue to fall, R-W2 is made through second-stage room thermostat. Circuit R-W2 energizes a relay, bringing on first bank of supplemental electric heat and providing electrical potential to second heater relay (if used). If outdoor temperature falls below setting of outdoor thermostat (field installed option), contacts close to complete circuit and bring on second bank of supplemental electric heat.

When thermostat is satisfied, its contacts open, de-energizing contactor and relay. All heaters and motors should stop.

Quiet Shift-2

Quiet Shift-2 is a field selectable defrost mode (factory set to OFF), which will reduce the occasional noise that could be heard at the start of defrost cycle and restarting of heating cycle. It is selected by placing DIP switch 3 on defrost board in the ON position.

When Quiet Shift-2 switch is placed in ON position, and defrost is initiated, the following sequence of operation will occur:

- The compressor will be de-energized for approximately 1 minute, then the reversing valve will be energized. A few seconds later, the compressor will be re-energized and the normal defrost cycle starts.

Once defrost termination conditions have been met, the following sequence will occur:

- The compressor will be de-energized for approximately 1 minute, then the reversing valve will be de-energized. A few seconds later, the compressor will be re-energized and the normal heating cycle starts.

Defrost

The defrost control is a time/temperature control which includes a field selectable time period between defrost cycles (30, 60, 90, or 120). The time period is selected using DIP switches located on the board. The setting is initial period only then varies with defrost length.

The defrost thermostat senses coil temperature throughout the heating cycle. When the coil temperature reaches the defrost thermostat setting of approximately 32°F (0°C), it will close, which energizes the DFT terminal and begins the defrost timing sequence. The timer runs only when the defrost thermostat is closed and the contactor is energized.

Defrost mode is identical to cooling mode except that outdoor fan motor stops and second-stage heat is turned on to continue warming conditioned spaces.

Defrost Speedup

Quiet Shift-2 Models

To initiate a forced defrost, speedup pins (J1) must be shorted with a flat head screwdriver for 5 seconds and **RELEASED**. If the defrost thermostat is open, a short defrost cycle will be observed (actual length depends on Quiet Shift-2 switch position). When Quiet Shift-2 is off, only a short 30 second defrost cycle is observed. With Quiet Shift-2 ON, the speedup sequence is approximately 3 minutes; 1 minute compressor off period followed by 30 seconds of defrost with compressor operation. When returning to heating mode, the compressor will turn off for an additional minute.

If the defrost thermostat is closed, a complete defrost cycle is initiated. If the Quiet Shift-2 switch is turned on, the compressor will be turned off for two 1-minute intervals as explained previously.

If Quiet Shift 2 is enabled, the variable defrost intervals will be disabled to provide options where using a specific setting is desired. In this case the 30, 60, 90, or 120 setting will not change unless the dipswitch is changed, and power is cycled.

NOTE: Forcing a defrost will reset the defrost interval to the DIP switch setting before resuming variable length intervals based on defrost cycle lengths.

Check Charge

Factory charge amount and desired subcooling are shown on unit rating plate. Additional subcooling may be required to achieve optimal heating performance based on the installed indoor unit.

Care should be taken to ensure proper refrigerant is used for charging. Refer to outdoor unit rating plate to determine proper refrigerant. Refrigerant cylinders used for charging should be kept in an appropriate position and grounded to earth before charging. Hose length should be kept to a minimum. Care should be taken to not overcharge the system.

Charging method is shown on information plate inside unit. For TXV, use subcooling method. For piston, use superheat method. To properly check or adjust charge, conditions must be favorable for subcooling or superheat charging. Favorable conditions exist when the outdoor temperature is between 70°F and 100°F (21.1°C and 37.8°C), and the indoor temperature is between 70°F and 80°F (21.1°C and 26.7°C). Follow the procedure below:

Unit is factory charged for 15ft (5 m) of lineset. Adjust charge by adding or removing 0.6 oz/ft (.018 kg/m) of 3/8 liquid line above or below 15ft (5 m) respectively.

For standard refrigerant line lengths (80 ft/24 m or less), allow system to operate in cooling mode at least 15 minutes. If conditions are favorable, check system charge by super heat method for fixed metering device and subcooling method for TXV. If any adjustment is necessary, adjust charge slowly and allow system to operate for 15 minutes to stabilize before declaring a properly charged system.

If the indoor temperature is above 80°F (26.7°C), and the outdoor temperature is in the favorable range, adjust system charge by weight based on line length and allow the indoor temperature to drop to 80°F (26.7°C) before attempting to check system charge by subcooling method as described above.

If the indoor temperature is below 70°F (21.1°C), or the outdoor temperature is not in the favorable range, adjust charge for line set length above or below 15ft (5 m) only. Charge level should then be appropriate for the system to achieve rated capacity. The charge level could then be checked at another time when the both indoor and outdoor temperatures are in a more favorable range.

NOTE: If line length is beyond 80 ft (24 m) or greater than 20 ft (6 m) vertical separation, See Residential Piping and Long Line Guideline for special charging requirements.

Final charge should be recorded on the outdoor unit charging label with permanent and legible writing. Total refrigerant charge is factory charge plus any added charge. Verify that the indoor space served by the indoor unit, including spaces connected by ductwork, exceed the minimum room size as listed on the outdoor unit charging label. Refer to [Table 4](#).

Table 4 – Minimum Room Area Charging Table

Total System Charge (lbs.)	Minimum Floor Area (sq. ft.)
4	61
5	76
6	91
7	106
8	122
9	137
10	152
11	167
12	182
13	198
14	213
15	228
16	243
17	258
18	274
19	289
20	304
21	319
22	335
23	350
24	365
25	380

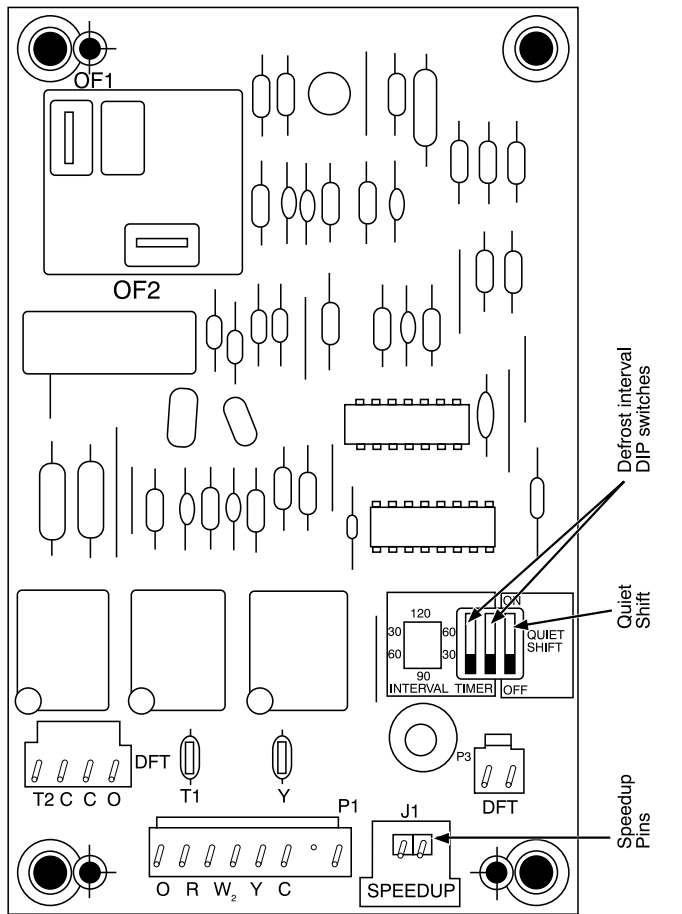


Fig. 11 – Quiet Shift-2 Control Board

A05378

Units with Cooling Mode TXV

Units installed with cooling mode TXV require charging by the subcooling method.

1. Operate unit a minimum of 15 minutes before checking charge.
2. Measure liquid service valve pressure by attaching an accurate gage to service port.
3. Measure liquid line temperature by attaching an accurate thermistor type or electronic thermometer to liquid line near outdoor coil.
4. Refer to unit rating plate for required subcooling temperature.
5. Refer to **Table 5**. Find the point where required subcooling temperature intersects measured liquid service valve pressure.
6. To obtain required subcooling temperature at a specific liquid line pressure, add refrigerant if liquid line temperature is higher than indicated or reclaim refrigerant if temperature is lower. Allow a tolerance of $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{F}$ ($\pm 1.7^{\circ}\text{C}$).

Heating Check Chart Procedure

To check system operation during heating cycle, refer to the Heating Check Chart on outdoor unit. This chart indicates whether a correct relationship exists between system operating pressure and air temperature entering indoor and outdoor units. If pressure and temperature do not match on chart, system refrigerant charge may not be correct. Do not use chart to adjust refrigerant charge.

Table 5 – Required Liquid Line Temperature

Liquid (PSIG) Pressure at Service Valve	Required Subcooling Temperature °F					
	6	8	10	12	14	16
238	78	76	74	72	70	68
245	80	78	76	74	72	70
252	82	80	78	76	74	72
260	84	82	80	78	76	74
268	86	84	82	80	78	76
276	88	86	84	82	80	78
284	90	88	86	84	82	80
292	92	90	88	86	84	82
301	94	92	90	88	86	84
309	96	94	92	90	88	86
318	98	96	94	92	90	88
327	100	98	96	94	92	90
336	102	100	98	96	94	92
346	104	102	100	98	96	94
355	106	104	102	100	98	96
365	108	106	104	102	100	98
375	110	108	106	104	102	100
385	112	110	108	106	104	102
396	114	112	110	108	106	104
406	116	114	112	110	108	106
417	118	116	114	112	110	108
428	120	118	116	114	112	110
439	122	120	118	116	114	112
450	124	122	120	118	116	114

Final Checks

IMPORTANT: Before leaving job, be sure to do the following:

1. Ensure that all wiring is routed away from tubing and sheet metal edges to prevent rub-through or wire pinching.
2. Ensure that all wiring and tubing is secure in unit before adding panels and covers. Securely fasten all panels and covers.
3. Tighten service valve stem caps to 1/12–turn past finger tight.
4. Leave Owner’s Manual with owner. Explain system operation and periodic maintenance requirements outlined in manual.
5. Fill out Dealer Installation Checklist and place in customer file.

Repairing Refrigerant Circuit

When breaking into the refrigerant circuit to make repairs, or for any other purpose, the following procedures shall be used.

1. Safely remove the refrigerant using a recovery pump certified for flammable refrigerants.
2. Purge the refrigerant circuit with nitrogen gas.
3. Evacuate the refrigerant circuit to 1500 microns.
4. Break vacuum with a nitrogen purge of the refrigerant circuit ensuring that the outlet of the vacuum pump is not near a potential ignition source.
5. Open the circuit by cutting or brazing.

Care and Maintenance

For continuing high performance and to minimize possible equipment failure, periodic maintenance must be performed on this equipment.

Frequency of maintenance may vary depending upon geographic areas, such as coastal applications. See Users Manual for information.



Training

My Learning Center is your central location for professional residential HVAC training resources that help strengthen careers and businesses. We believe in providing high quality learning experiences both online and in the classroom.

Access My Learning Center with your HVACpartners credentials at www.mlctraining.com. Please contact us a mylearning@carrier.com with questions.

37MARA Outdoor Unit Single Zone Ductless System Sizes 9K to 36K

SERVICE MANUAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS	1
INTRODUCTION	1
MODEL NUMBER NOMENCLATURE	2
WIRING	3
CONNECTION DIAGRAMS	3
WIRING DIAGRAMS	4
REFRIGERANT CYCLE DIAGRAM	9
REFRIGERANT LINES	12
SYSTEM EVACUATION AND CHARGING	13
ELECTRONIC FUNCTIONS	14
INQUIRY MODE	18
GENERAL TROUBLESHOOTING	22
ERROR CODES	24
TROUBLESHOOTING BY ERROR CODE	26
CHECK PROCEDURES	61
DISASSEMBLY INSTRUCTIONS	65
APPENDIX	90


SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Installing, starting up, and servicing air-conditioning equipment can be hazardous due to system pressures, electrical components, and equipment location (roofs, elevated structures, etc.). Only trained, qualified installers and service mechanics should install, start-up, and service this equipment.

Untrained personnel can perform basic maintenance functions such as coil cleaning. All other operations should be performed by trained service personnel.

When working on the equipment, observe precautions in the product literature and on tags, stickers, and labels attached to the equipment.

Follow all safety codes. Wear safety glasses and work gloves. Keep a quenching cloth and fire extinguisher nearby when brazing. Use care in handling, rigging, and setting bulky equipment.

Read this manual thoroughly and follow all warnings or cautions included in the literature and attached to the unit. Consult local building codes and National Electrical Code (NEC) for special requirements. Recognize safety information. This is the safety-alert symbol . When you see this symbol on the unit and in instructions or manuals, be alert to the potential for personal injury.

Understand these signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, and **CAUTION**. These words are used with the safety-alert symbol. **DANGER** identifies the most serious hazards which **will** result in severe personal injury or death. **WARNING** signifies hazards which **could** result in personal injury or death. **CAUTION** is used to identify unsafe practices which **may** result in minor personal injury or product and property damage. **NOTE** is used to highlight suggestions which **will** result in enhanced installation, reliability, or operation.



WARNING

ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death.

Before installing, modifying, or servicing system, main electrical disconnect switch must be in the **OFF** position. There may be more than 1 disconnect switch. Lock out and tag switch with a suitable warning label.



WARNING

EXPLOSION HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in death, serious personal injury, and/or property damage. Never use air or gases containing oxygen for leak testing or operating refrigerant compressors.

Pressurized mixtures of air or gases containing oxygen can lead to an explosion.



CAUTION

EQUIPMENT DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in equipment damage or improper operation. Do not bury more than 36 in. (914 mm) of refrigerant pipe in the ground. If any section of pipe is buried, there must be a 6 in. (152 mm) vertical rise to the valve connections on the outdoor units.

If more than the recommended length is buried, refrigerant may migrate to the cooler buried section during extended periods of system shutdown. This causes refrigerant slugging and could possibly damage the compressor at start-up.

INTRODUCTION

This service manual provides the necessary information to service, repair, and maintain the 37MARA family of heat pumps. This manual has an "APPENDIX" on page 90 with data required to perform troubleshooting. Use the "TABLE OF CONTENTS" on page 1 to locate a desired topic.

MODEL NUMBER NOMENCLATURE

SYSTEM TONS	BTUH	VOLTAGE	MODEL
1	12,000	115-1	37MARAQ12AA1
0.75	9,000	208/230-1	37MARAQ09AA3
1	12,000	208/230-1	37MARAQ12AA3
1.5	18,000	208/230-1	37MARAQ18AA3
2	24,000	208/230-1	37MARAQ24AA3
2.75	30,000	208/230-1	37MARAQ30AA3
3	36,000	208/230-1	37MARAQ36AA3

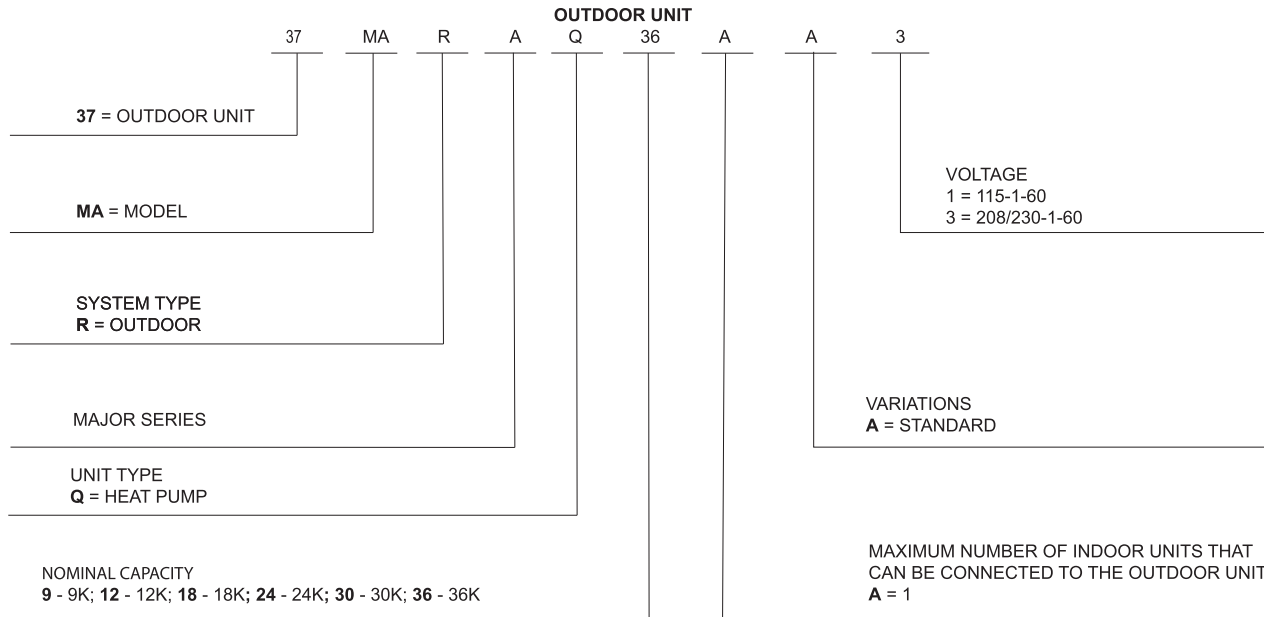


Fig. 1 —Nomenclature

For the Carrier/Bryant brands, the coded by a two digit week, a two followed with a 5 digit sequential number. The sequential number for MIDEA is between 10001 and 15000.

b. The SERIAL NUMBER will be as follows: SERIAL NUMBER will be date digit year followed by "V" digit year followed by "V"

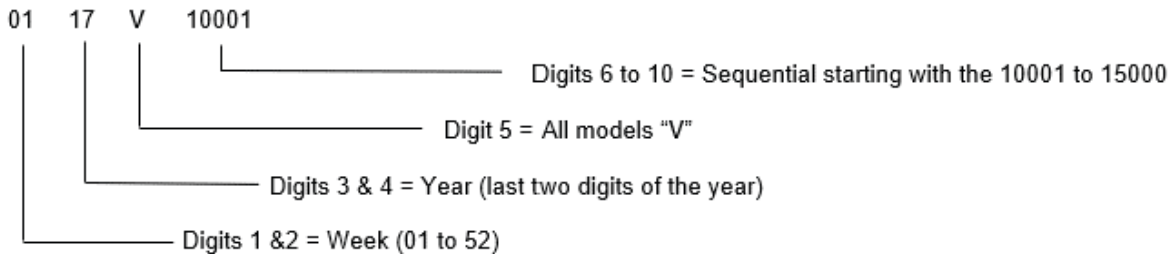


Fig. 2 —Serial Number Nomenclature



Use of the AHRI Certified TM Mark indicates a manufacturer's participation in the program. For verification of certification for individual products, go to www.ahridirectory.org.

WIRING

ELECTRICAL WIRING INSTALLATION

Wiring for the outdoor unit must conform to NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) and local codes. Use Electrical Data table MCA (minimum circuit amps) and MOCP (maximum over current protection) to correctly size the wires and the disconnect fuse or breakers respectively.

All field wiring construction should be finished by a qualified electrician.

Air conditioning equipment must be grounded according to the local electrical codes.

Provide electrical disconnect per local codes.

NOTE: DO NOT connect the power wire to the terminal of the signal wire. Connection of power to any other terminal other than L1 or L2 will cause damage to the control board.

Any control signal cable should be run separately from the power wiring.

Use of metallic conduit or shielded cable is recommended. Maintain a distance of 12 inches(300mm) from the power wiring.

NOTE: DO NOT run the power wiring and control wiring in the same conduit.

Size the wiring in accordance to the NEC / CEC. Select different colors for different wire according to relevant regulations.

Ensure that the wire color of the outdoor and the terminal number are the same as those of the indoor unit.

! CAUTION

EQUIPMENT DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in equipment damage or improper operation.

Be sure to comply with local codes while running wire from the indoor unit to the outdoor unit.

Wires should be sized based on NEC and local codes.

Every wire must be connected firmly. Loose wiring may cause the terminal to overheat or result in unit malfunction. A fire hazard may also exist. Ensure all wiring is tightly connected.

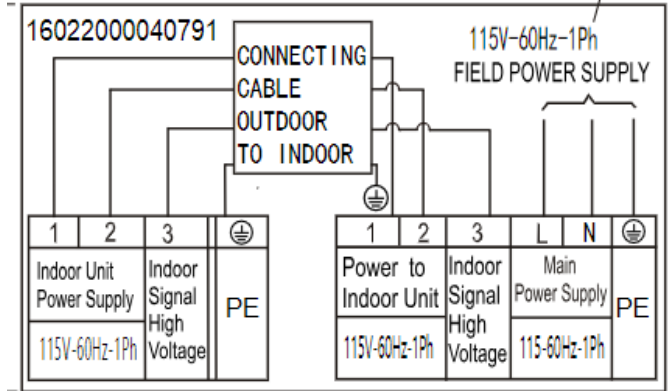
No wire should touch the refrigerant tubing, compressor or any moving parts.

Disconnecting means must be provided and shall be located within sight and readily accessible from the air conditioner.

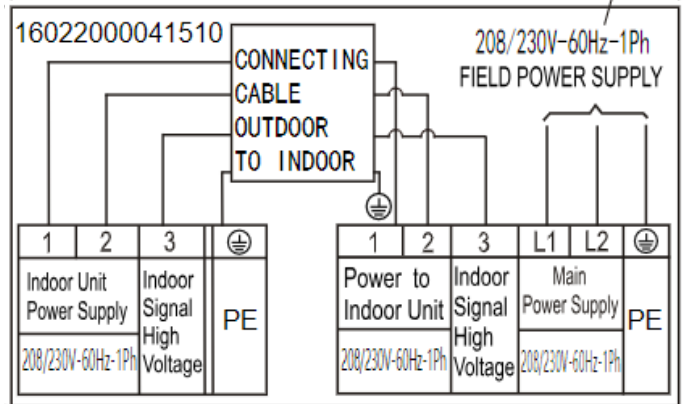
NOTE: Matches with multi-family and residential fan coils require separate power for the indoor and outdoor unit. A 24V interface kit is required for compatibility. Refer to the 24V Interface Kit installation manual.

CONNECTION DIAGRAMS

Connection Diagram (12K 115V)



Connection Diagram (9K/12K/18K/24K/30K/36K)



WIRING DIAGRAMS

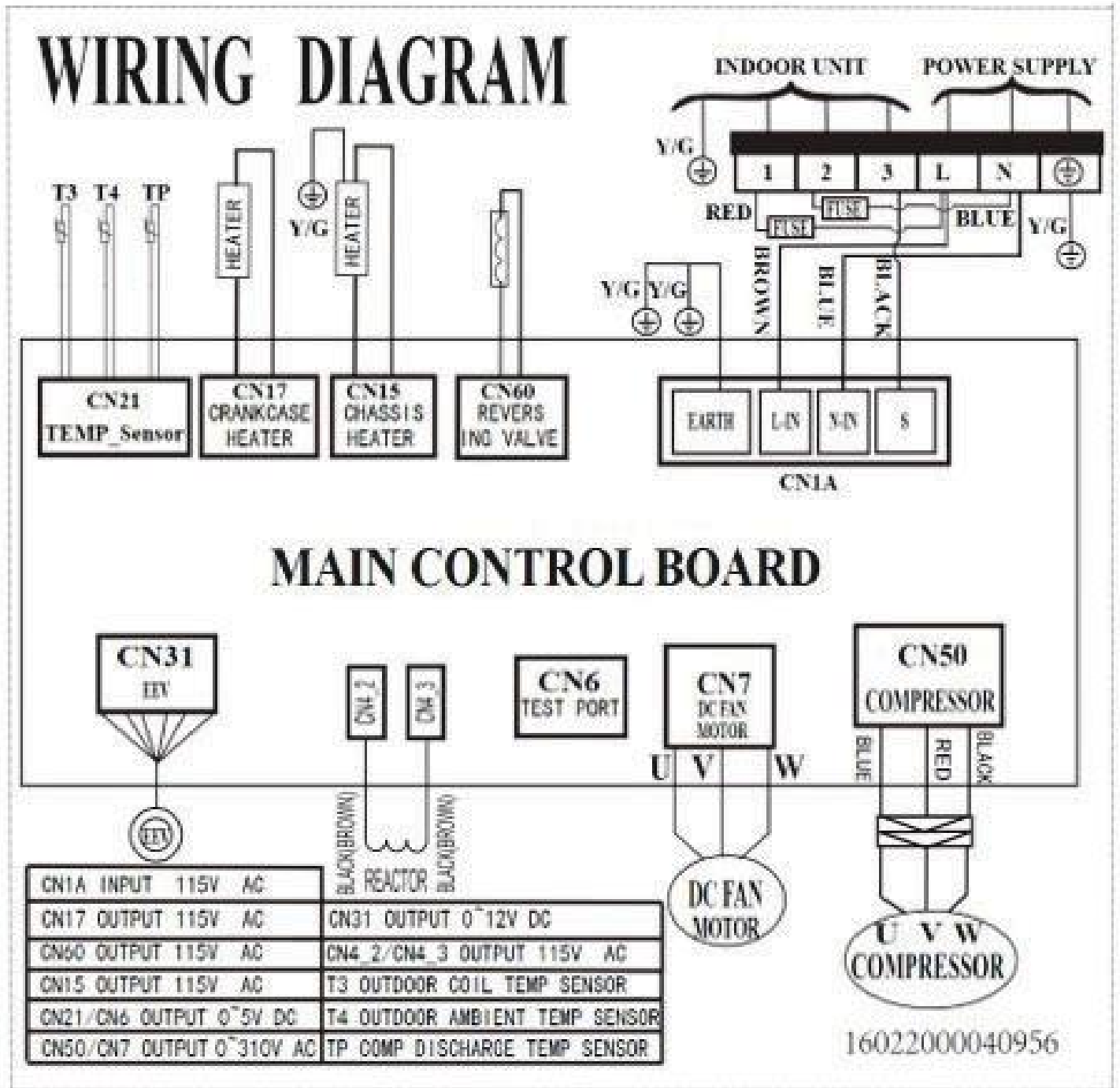


Fig. 3 —12K – 115V Wiring Diagram

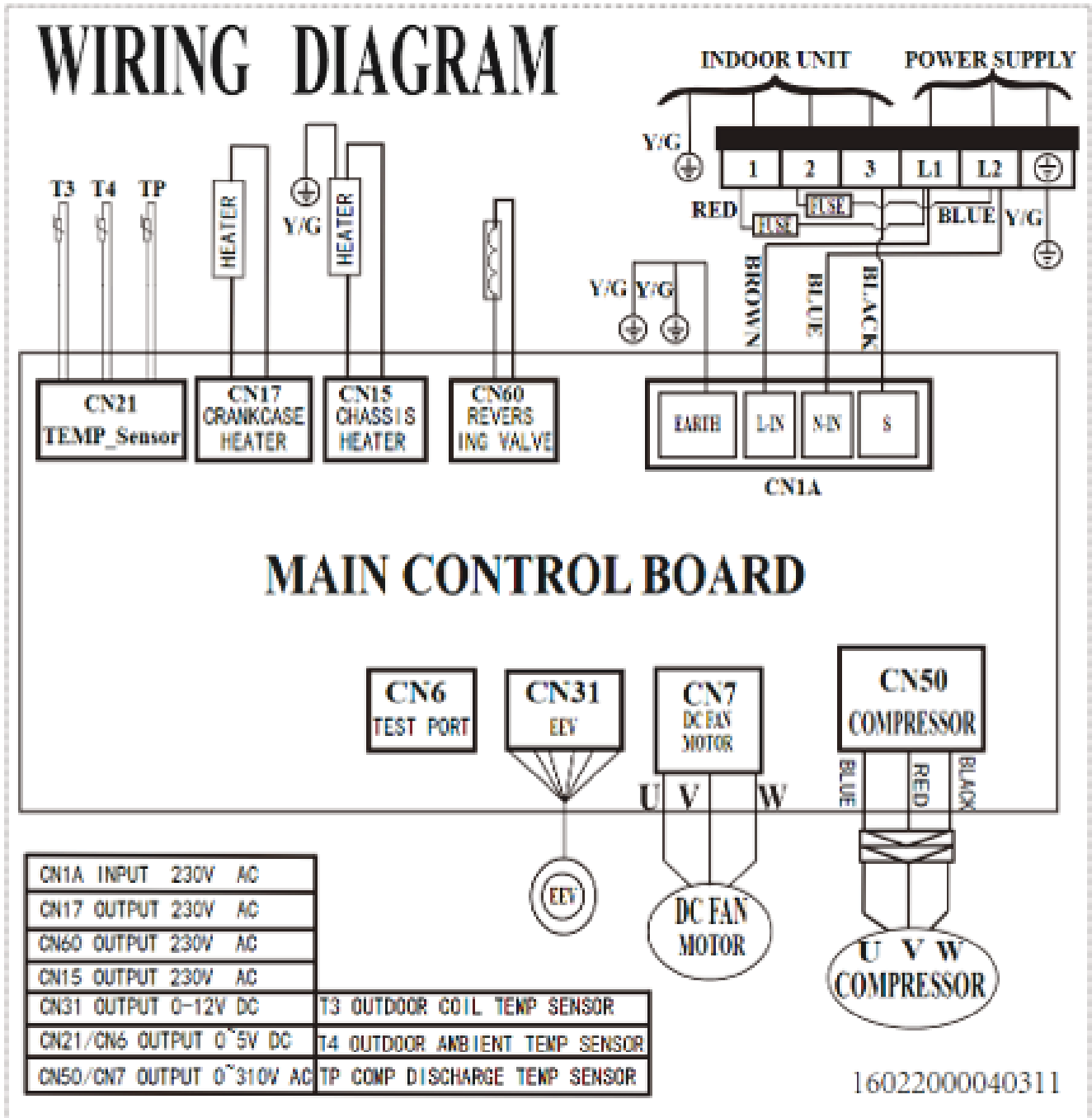


Fig. 4 —9K/12K – 208/230V Wiring Diagram

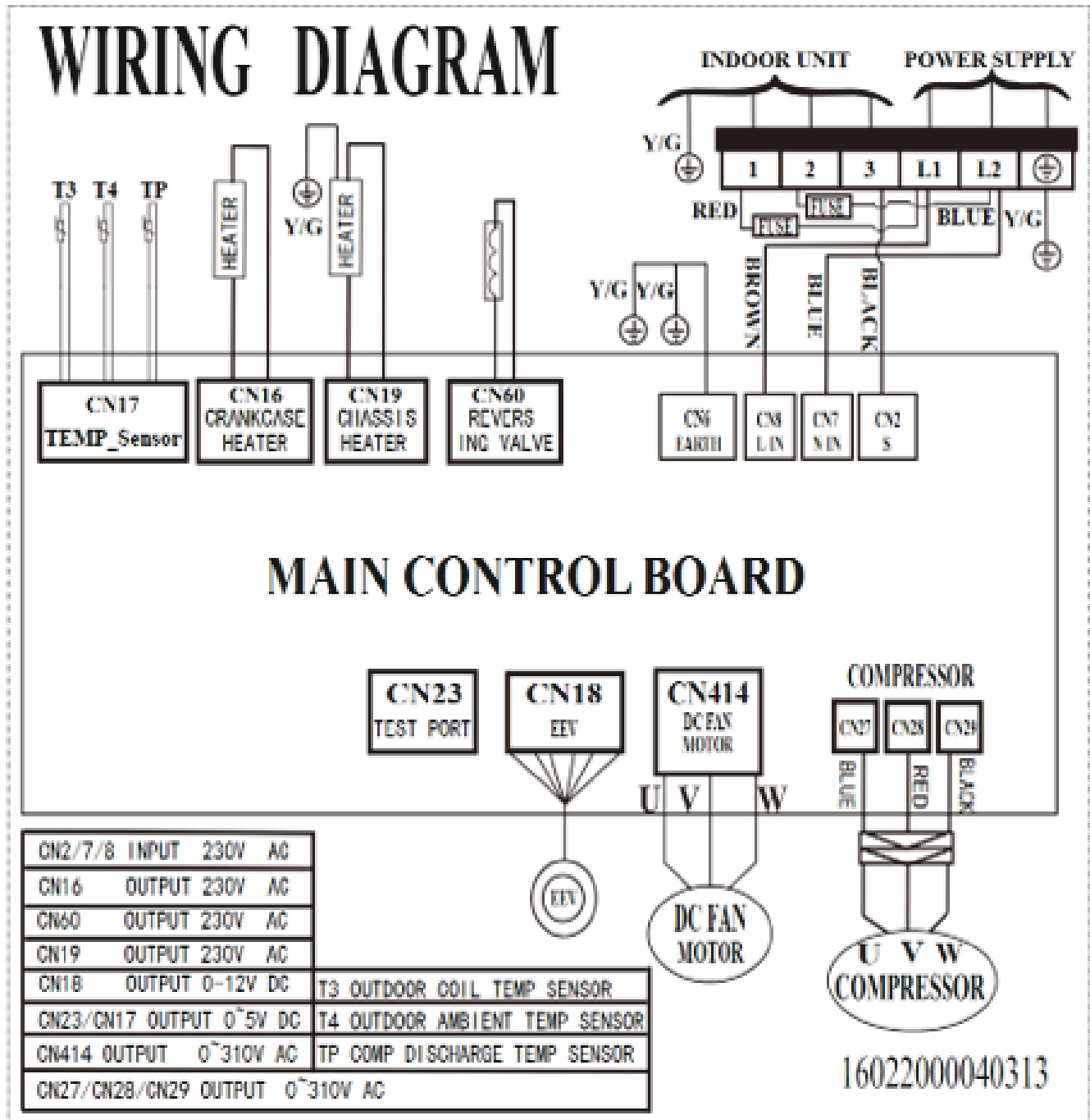


Fig. 5 —18K/24K – 208/230V Wiring Diagram

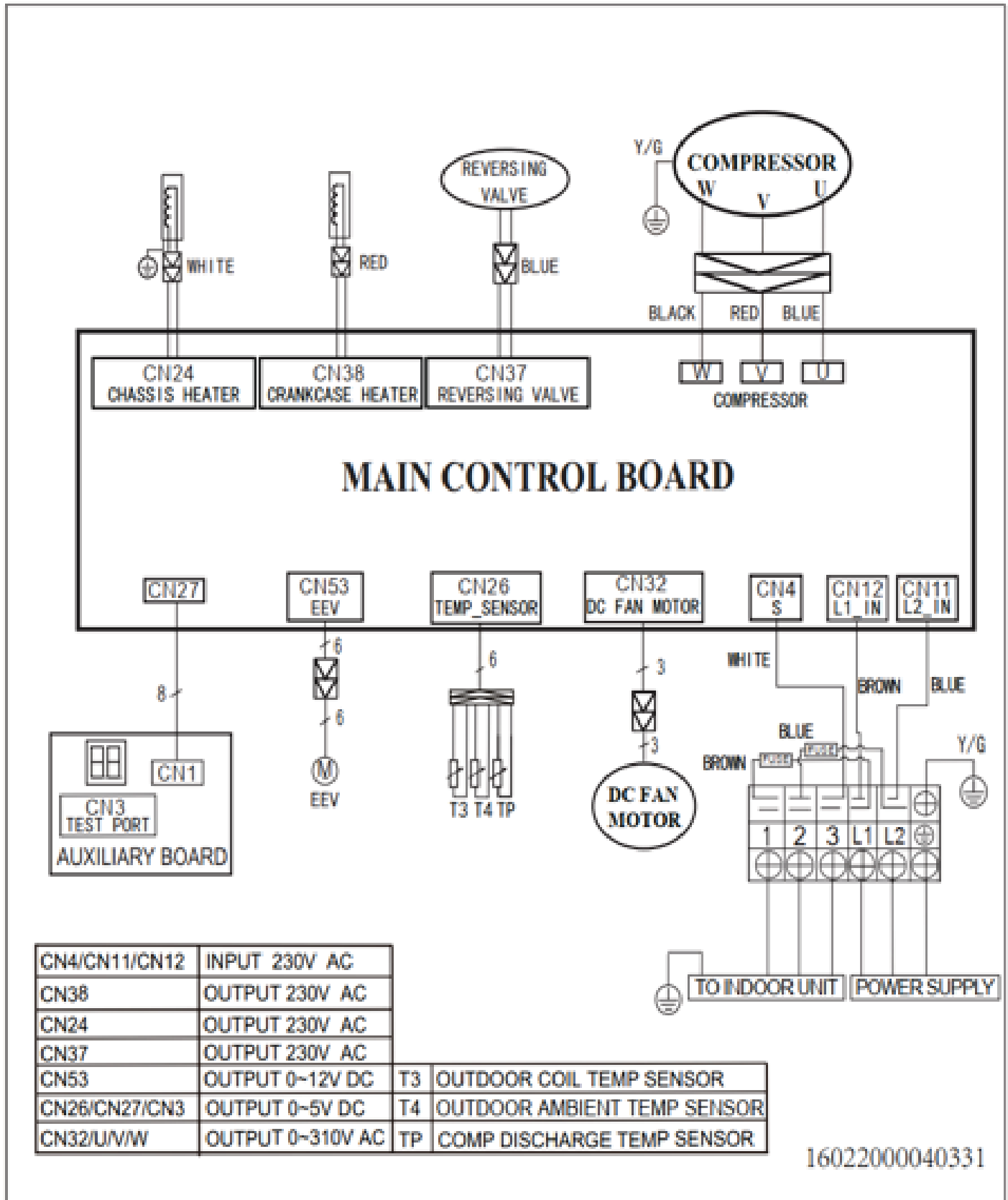


Fig. 6 —30K – 208/230V Wiring Diagram

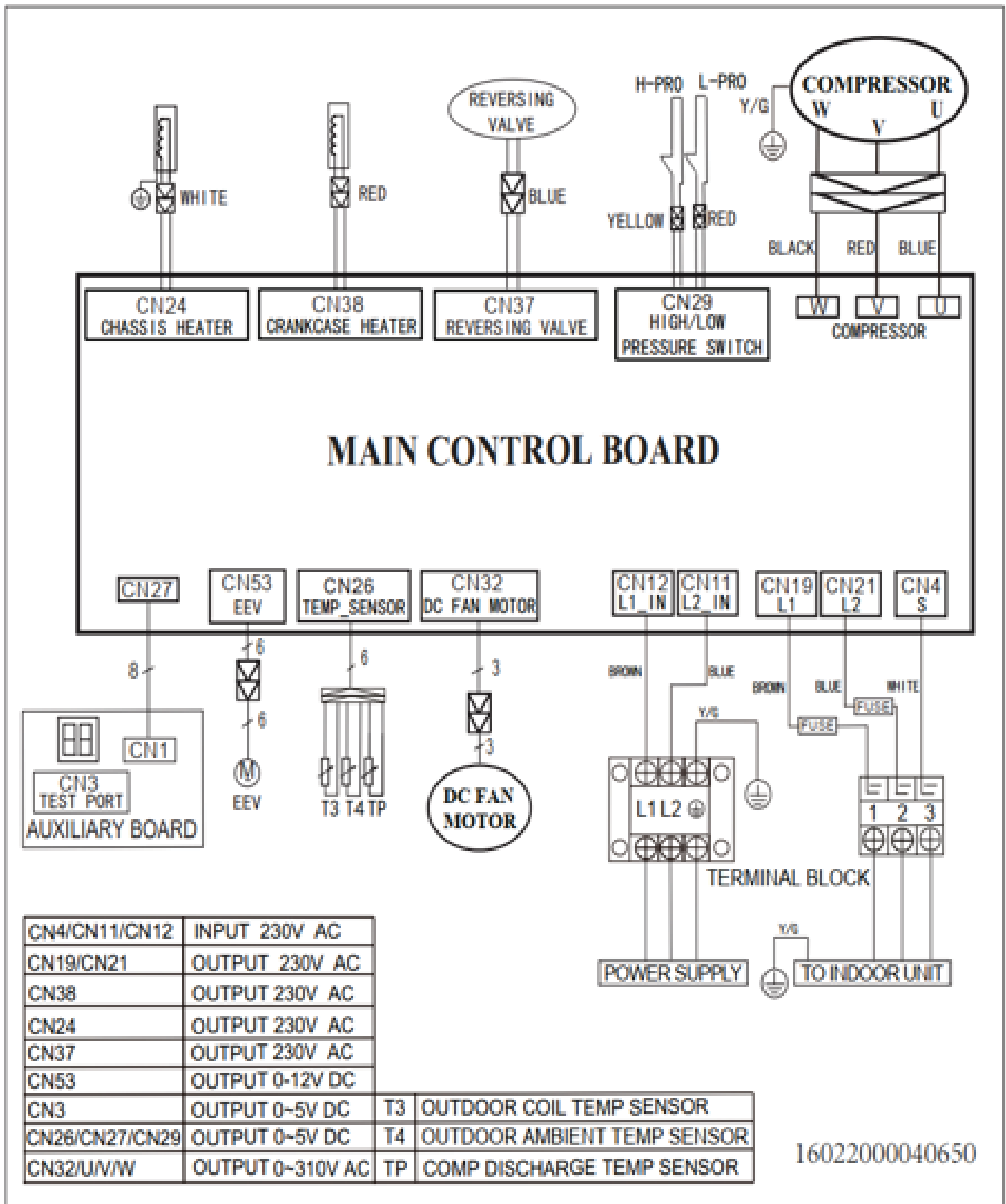


Fig. 7 —36K – 208/230V Wiring Diagram

REFRIGERANT CYCLE DIAGRAM

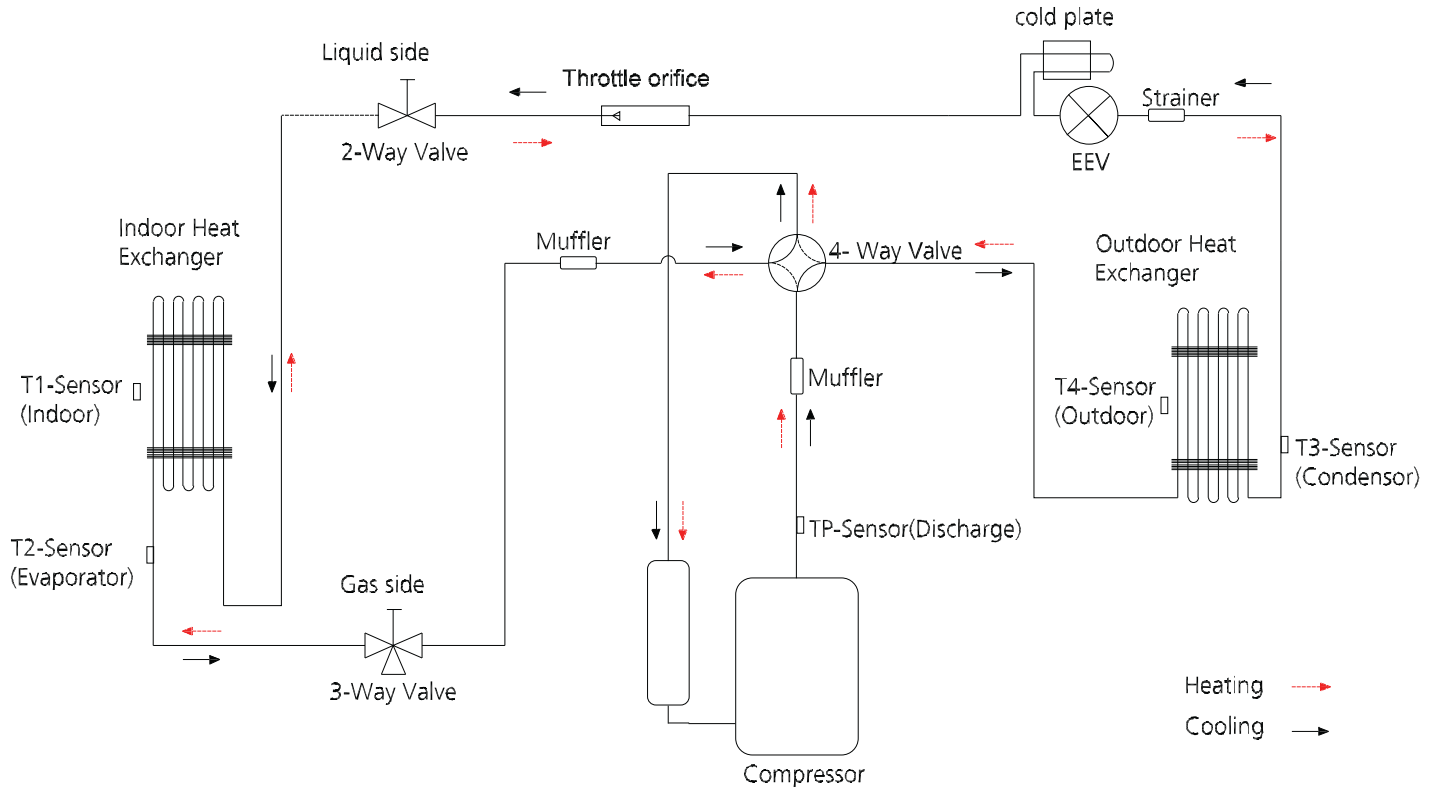


Fig. 8 —Refrigerant Cycle Diagram - Size 12K (115V)

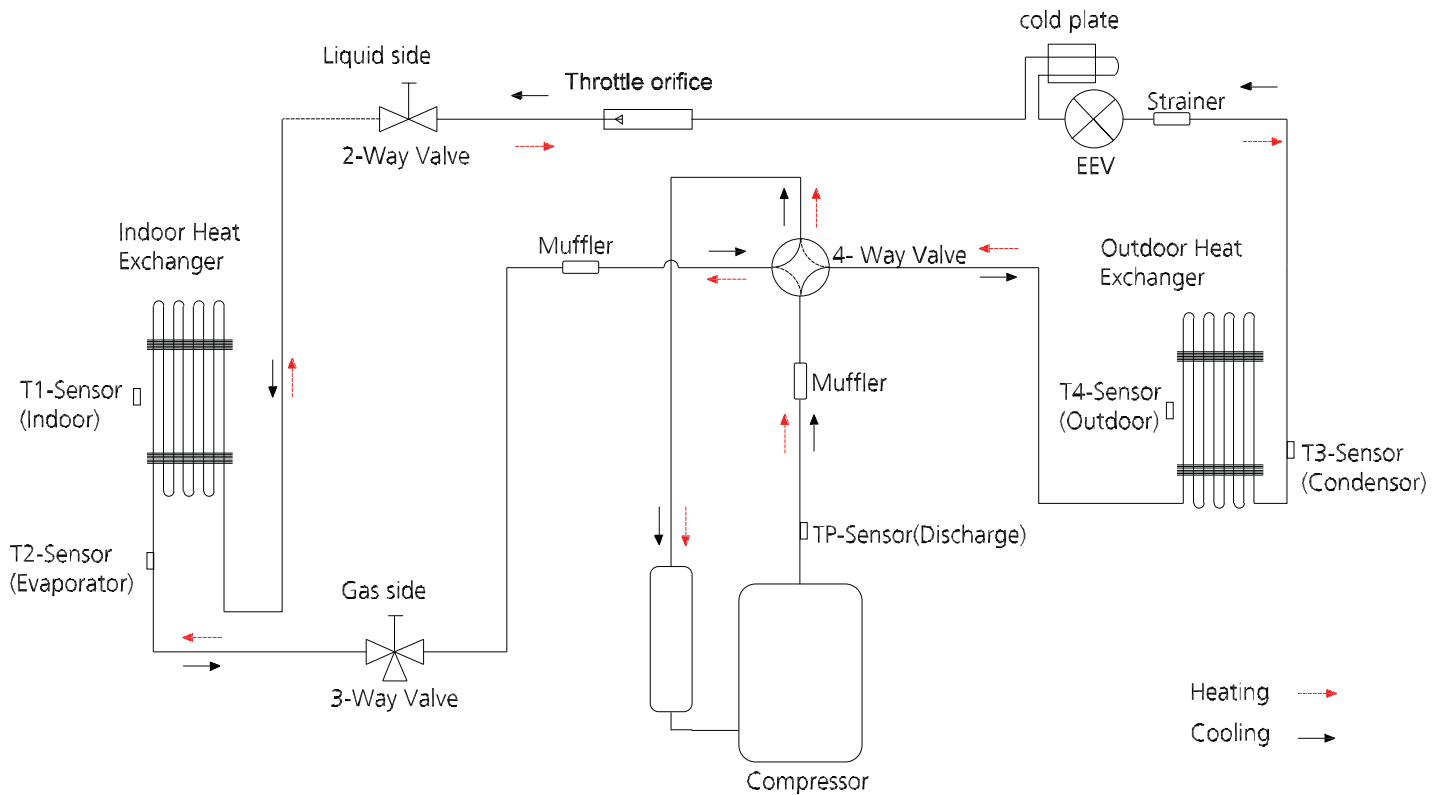


Fig. 9 —Refrigerant Cycle Diagram - Size 9K, 12K 208V/230V)

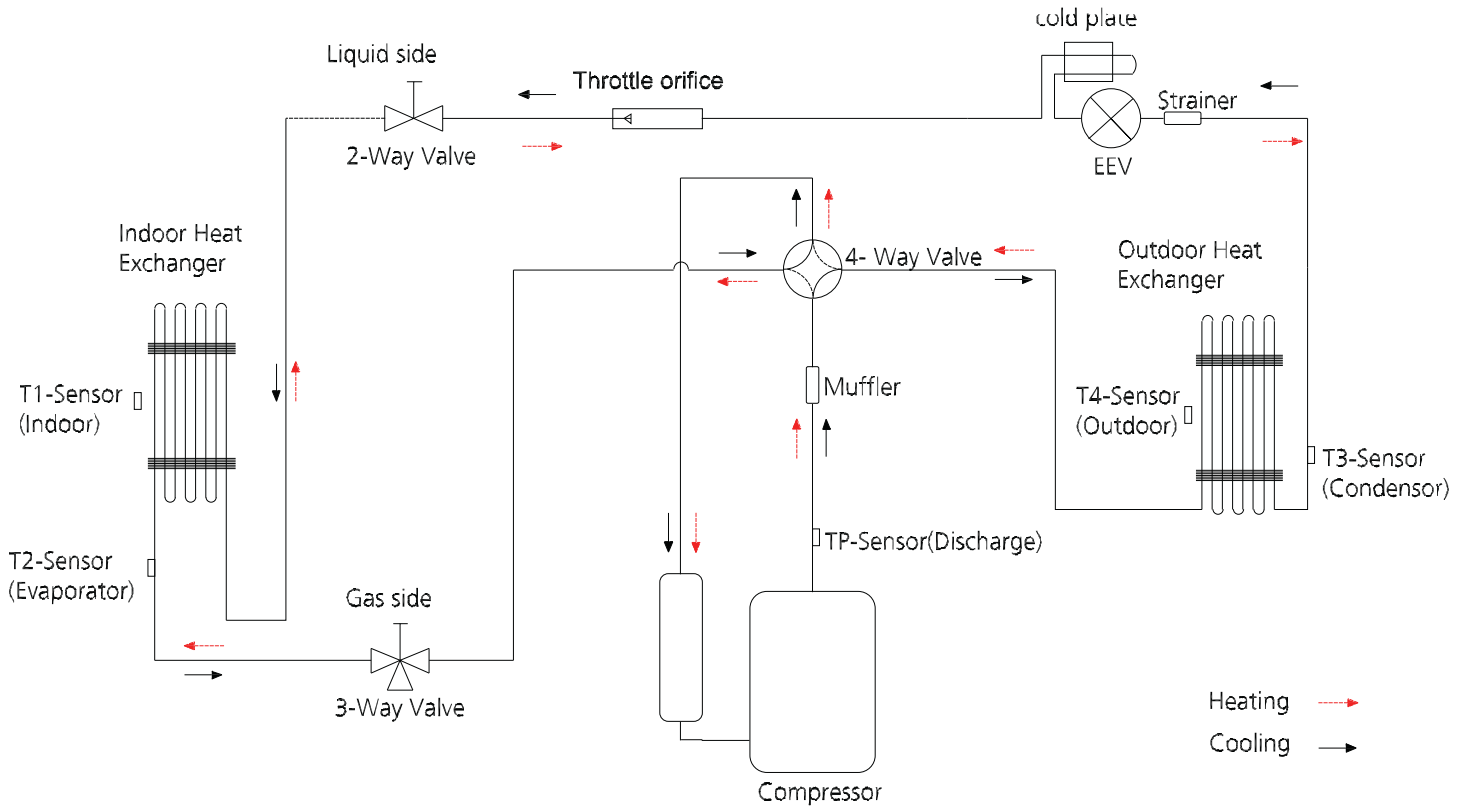


Fig. 10 —Refrigerant Cycle Diagram - Size 24K 208V/230V

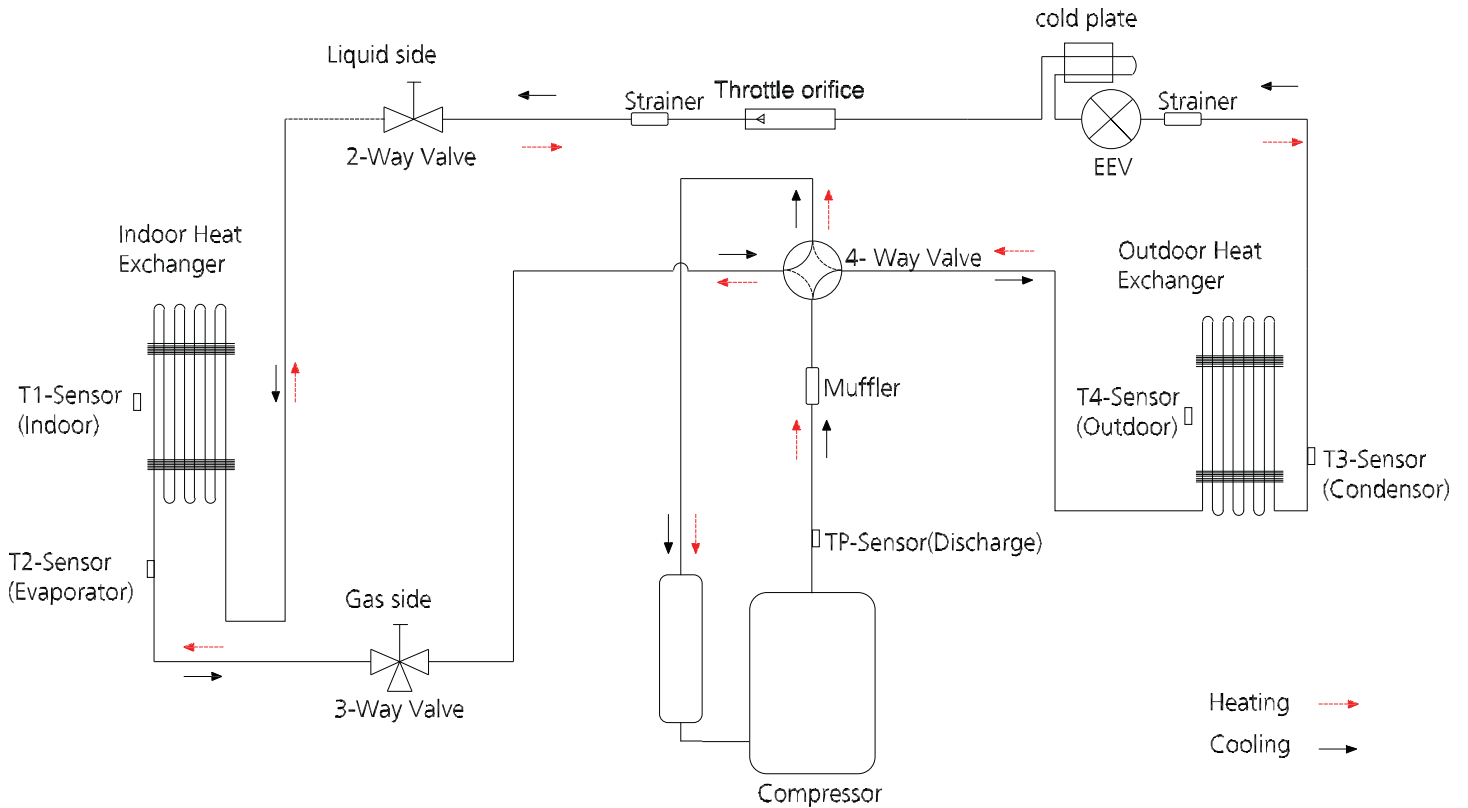


Fig. 11 —Refrigerant Cycle Diagram - Size 30K 208V/230V

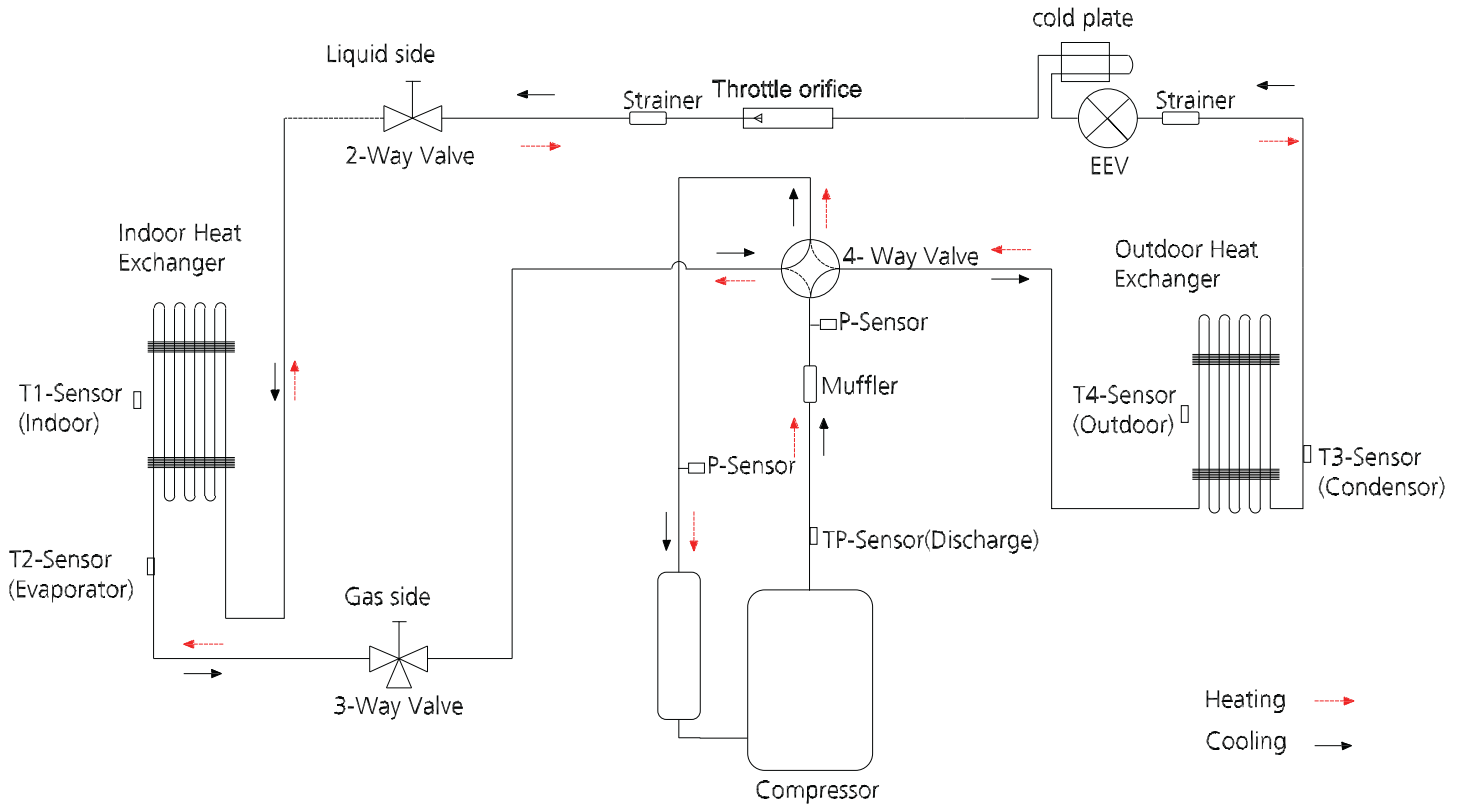


Fig. 12 —Refrigerant Cycle Diagram - Size 36K 208V/230V)

REFRIGERANT LINES

General Refrigerant Line Sizing

1. The outdoor units are shipped with a full charge of R-454B refrigerant. All charges, line sizing, and capacities are based on runs of 25ft. (7.6 m). For runs over 25 ft. (7.6 m), consult [Table NOTE:](#), below, for the proper charge adjustments.
2. The minimum refrigerant line length between the indoor and outdoor units is 10 ft. (3 m).
3. Refrigerant lines should not be buried in the ground. If it is necessary to bury the lines, not more than 36 in (914 mm) should be buried. Provide a minimum 6in (152 mm) vertical rise to the service valves to prevent refrigerant migration.
4. Suction line must be insulated. Use a minimum of 1/2in. (12.7 mm) thick insulation. Closed-cell insulation is recommended in all long-line applications.
5. Special consideration should be given to isolating interconnecting tubing from the building structure. Isolate the tubing so vibration or noise is not transmitted into the structure.

NOTE: [Table NOTE:](#) displays the following maximum lengths allowed.

Table 1 – Max Length and Drop Height Based on Model

OUTDOOR MODEL		37MARAQ12AA1	37MARAQ09AA3	37MARAQ12AA3	37MARAQ18AA3	37MARAQ24AA3	37MARAQ30AA3	37MARAQ36AA3
POWER SUPPLY	V;Ph;Hz	115V;1Ph;60HZ	208/230V;1Ph;60 HZ	208/230V;1Ph;60 HZ	208/230V;1Ph;60 HZ	208/230V;1Ph;60 HZ	208/230V;1Ph;60 HZ	208/230V;1Ph;60 HZ
PIPING AND REFRIGERANT INFORMATION								
Refrigerant Type	Type	R454B	R454B	R454B	R454B	R454B	R454B	R454B
Charge Amount	lb. (kg)	2.09(0.95)	2.03(0.92)	2.03(0.92)	3(1.36)	4.41(2.0)	5.29(2.4)	7.05(3.2)
Additional refrigerant charge	Oz/ft (g/m)	0.16(15)	0.16(15)	0.16(15)	0.16(15)	0.32(30)	0.32(30)	0.32(30)
Liquid Pipe (size - connection type)	In (mm)	6.35mm(1/4in)	6.35mm(1/4in)	6.35mm(1/4in)	6.35mm(1/4in)	9.52mm(3/8in)	9.52mm(3/8in)	9.52mm(3/8in)
Suction Pipe (size - connection type)	In (mm)	9.52mm(3/8in)	9.52mm(3/8in)	9.52mm(3/8in)	12.7mm(1/2in)	15.9mm(5/8in)	15.9mm(5/8in)	15.9mm(5/8in)
Min. Piping Length	ft. (m)	9.8 (3)	9.8 (3)	9.8 (3)	9.8 (3)	9.8 (3)	9.8 (3)	9.8 (3)
Standard Piping Length	ft. (m)	24.6 (7.5)	24.6 (7.5)	24.6 (7.5)	24.6 (7.5)	24.6 (7.5)	24.6 (7.5)	24.6 (7.5)
Max. Piping Length with no additional refrigerant charge per System	ft. (m)	24.6 (7.5)	24.6 (7.5)	24.6 (7.5)	24.6 (7.5)	24.6 (7.5)	24.6 (7.5)	24.6 (7.5)
Total Maximum Piping Length per system	ft. (m)	82.02(25)	82.02(25)	82.02(25)	98.42(30)	164.04(50)	164.04(50)	213.25(65)
Max. outdoor-indoor height difference (OU higher than IU)	ft. (m)	49.21(15)	49.21(15)	49.21(15)	65.62(20)	82.02(25)	82.02(25)	98.43(30)
Max. outdoor-indoor height difference (IU higher than OU)	ft. (m)	49.21(15)	49.21(15)	49.21(15)	65.62(20)	82.02(25)	82.02(25)	98.43(30)

1. The charge amount listed in [Table NOTE:](#) is for piping runs up to 25 ft. (7.6 m).

2. For piping runs longer than 25 ft. (7.6 m), add the refrigerant up to the allowable length as specified in [Table NOTE:](#).

Table 2 – Additional Charge

UNIT SIZE	TOTAL LINE LENGTH FT (M)		ADDITIONAL CHARGE, OZ/FT FT (M)			
	MIN	MAX	10-25 (3-8)	>25-82 (8-25)	>82-98 (25-30)	>98-213 (30-65)
9	10 (3)	82 (25)	None	0.16		
12						
18		98 (30)		0.16		
24		164 (50)		0.32		
30				0.32		
36		213 (65)		0.32		

SYSTEM EVACUATION AND CHARGING

! CAUTION

UNIT DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in equipment damage or improper operation.
 Never use the system compressor as a vacuum pump.

Refrigerant tubes and the indoor coil should be evacuated using the recommended 500 micron deep vacuum method. The alternate triple evacuation method may be used if the procedure outlined below is followed.

NOTE: Always break a vacuum with dry nitrogen.

USING VACUUM PUMP

1. Completely tighten flare nuts A, B, C, D. Connect the manifold gage charge hose to a charge port of the low side service valve (see Fig. 24).
2. Connect the charge hose to vacuum pump.
3. Fully open the low side of manifold gage (see Fig. 13).
4. Start the vacuum pump.
5. Evacuate using either the deep vacuum or triple evacuation method.
6. After evacuation is complete, fully close the low side of manifold gage and stop the vacuum pump operation.
7. The factory charge contained in the outdoor unit is good for up to 25 ft. (8 m) of line length. For refrigerant lines longer than 25 ft. (8 m), add refrigerant, up to the allowable length.
8. Disconnect the charge hose from the charge connection of the low side service valve.
9. Fully open service valves B and A.
10. Securely tighten the service valve caps.

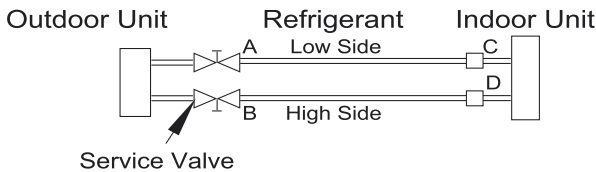


Fig. 13 —Service Valve

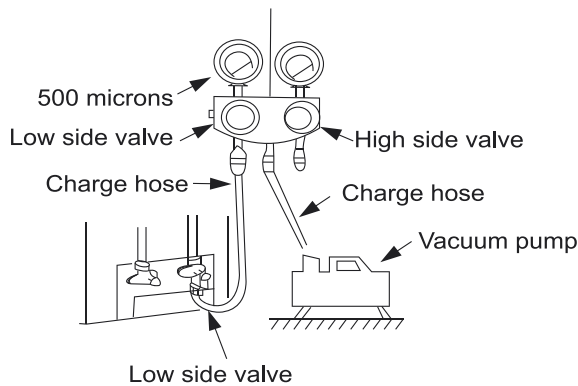


Fig. 14 —Manifold

EVACUATION

Evacuation of the system will remove air or nitrogen (non-condensables) as well as moisture. A proper vacuum will assure a tight, dry system before charging with refrigerant. The two methods used to evacuate a system are the deep vacuum method and the triple vacuum method.

DEEP VACUUM METHOD

The deep vacuum method requires a vacuum pump capable of pulling a vacuum of 500 micron and a vacuum gauge capable of accurately measuring this vacuum depth. This method is the most positive way of assuring a system is free of air and moisture (see Figure 15).

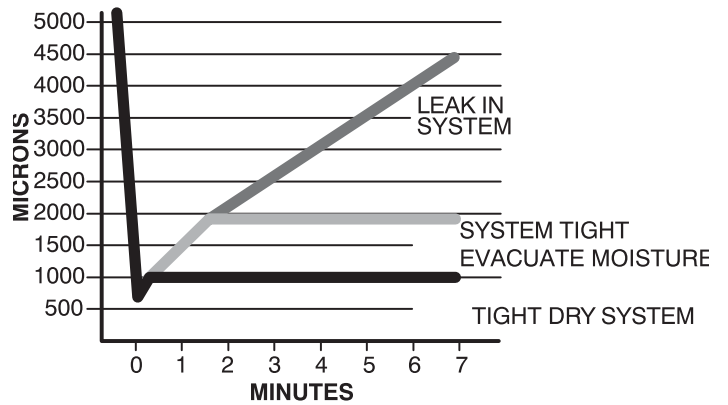


Fig. 15 —Deep Vacuum Graph

TRIPLE EVACUATION METHOD

The triple evacuation method should be used when vacuum pump is not capable of pumping down to 500 microns and system does not contain any liquid water. Refer to Fig. 16 and proceed as follows:

1. Attach refrigeration gauges and evacuate system down to 28 inches of mercury and allow pump to continue operating for an additional 15 minutes.
2. Close service valves and shut off vacuum pump.
3. Connect a nitrogen cylinder and regulator to system and flow nitrogen until system pressure is 2 psig.
4. Close service valve and allow system to stand for 1 hour. During this time, dry nitrogen will be able to diffuse throughout the system absorbing moisture.
5. Repeat this procedure as indicated in Fig. 16. System is now free of any contaminants and water vapor.

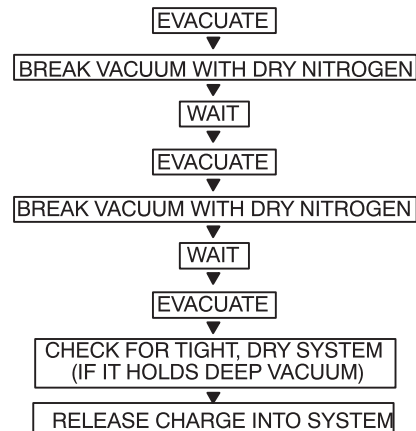


Fig. 16 —Triple Evacuation Method

FINAL TUBING CHECK

Check to be certain factory tubing on both the indoor and outdoor unit has not shifted during shipment. Ensure tubes are not rubbing against each other or any sheet metal. Pay close attention to the feeder tubes, making sure wire ties on feeder tubes are secure and tight.

ELECTRONIC FUNCTIONS

Abbreviation:

Table 3 – Unit element abbreviations

Abbreviation	Element
T1	Indoor room temperature
T2	Coil temperature of evaporator
T3	Coil temperature of condenser
T4	Outdoor ambient temperature
TP	Compressor discharge temperature
Tsc	Adjusted setting temperature
CDIFTEMP	Cooling shutdown temperature
HDIFTEMP2	Heating shutdown temperature
TCDE1	Exit defrost temperature1
TCDE2	Exit defrost temperature2 (maintain for a period of time)
TIMING_DEFROST_ TIME_ADD	Enter defrost time
EE_TIME_DEFROST7_ST RONG	Enter enhanced defrost time
TCDE1_ADD_STRONG	Exit enhanced defrost temperature1
TCDE2_ADD_STRONG	Exit enhanced defrost temperature2 (maintain for a period of time)

NOTE: In this manual, terms such as CDIFTEMP, HDIFTEMP2, TCDE1, TCDE2, TIMING_DEFROST_TIME_ADD...etc., are EEPROM parameter settings.

FAN Mode

When fan mode is activated:

- Outdoor fan and compressor are stopped

COOLING Mode

Compressor Control

Reach the configured temperature:

When the compressor runs continuously for less than 120 minutes.

- If the following conditions are satisfied, the compressor ceases operation.
- Calculated frequency (fb) is less than minimum limit frequency (FminC).
- Compressor runs at FminC more than ten minutes.
- Indoor room temperature(T1) is lower than or equal to (Tsc-CDIFTEMP 0.9°F/-0.5°C)

When the compressor runs continuously for more than 120 minutes.

If the following conditions are satisfied, the compressor ceases operation.

- Calculated frequency (fb) is less than minimum limit frequency (FminC).
- Compressor runs at FminC more than 10 minutes.
- When indoor room temperature (T1) is lower than or equal to (Tsc-CDIFTEMP).

NOTE: CDIFTEMP is EEPROM setting parameter. It is 4°F (2°C) usually.

If one of the following conditions is satisfied, not judge protective time.

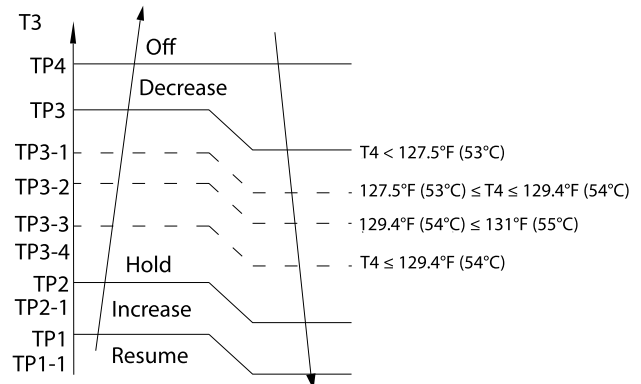
- Compressor running frequency is more than test frequency.

- When compressor running frequency is equal to test frequency, outdoor ambient temperature (T4) is more than 59°F (15°C) or outdoor ambient sensor (T4) fault.
- Change setting temperature.
- Turning on/off turbo or sleep function
- Various frequency limit shutdown occurs.

Outdoor Fan Control

- The outdoor unit will be run at different fan speed according to outdoor ambient temperature(T4) and compressor frequency.
- For different outdoor units, the fan speeds are different.

Condenser Temperature Protection



When the condenser temperature exceeds a configured value, the compressor ceases operation.

Heating Mode (Heat Pump Modes)

Compressor Control

Reach the configured temperature

- If the following conditions are satisfied, the compressor ceases operation.
- Calculated frequency (fb) is less than minimum limit frequency (FminH).
- Compressor runs at FminH more than 10 minutes.
- T1 is higher than or equal to Tsc+ HDIFTEMP2.

NOTE: HDIFTEMP2 is the EEPROM parameter setting. It is normally 4°F (2°C).

- If one of the following conditions is satisfied, not judge protective time.
- Compressor running frequency is more than test frequency.
- Compressor running frequency is equal to test frequency, outdoor ambient temperature (T4) is more than 59°F (15°C) or Outdoor ambient sensor (T4) fault.
- Change setting temperature.
- Turning on/off turbo or sleep function

When the current is higher than the predefined safe value, surge protection is activated, causing the compressor to cease operations.

Outdoor Fan Control

- The outdoor unit will be run at different fan speed according to outdoor ambient temperature (T4) and compressor frequency.
- For different outdoor units, the fan speeds are different.

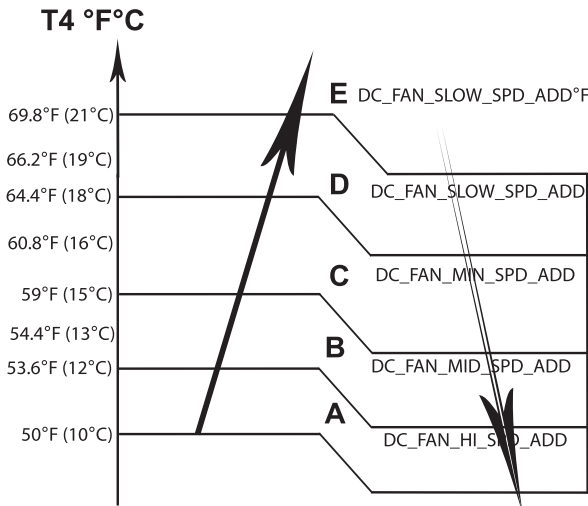


Fig. 17 —Outdoor Fan Running Rules

Indoor Fan Running Rules:

- In the COOLING mode, the indoor fan runs continuously and the user can select any of the following speeds: HIGH, MEDIUM, LOW and AUTO.
- When the setting temperature is reached, if the compressor stops operating, the indoor fan motor runs in the minimum or setting speed (see Fig. 18).

Setting Fan Speed	T1-Td °F (°C)	Actual Fan Speed
H	8.1°F (4.5°C) — A	H + (H+=H+G)
	5.4°F (3.0°C) — B	H (=H)
	2.7°F (1.5°C) — C	H - (H- =H-G)
M	8.1°F (4.5°C) — D	M + (M+=M+Z)
	5.4°F (3.0°C) — E	M (M=M)
	2.7°F (1.5°C) — F	M - (M- =M-Z)
L	8.1°F (4.5°C) — G	L + (L+=L+D)
	5.4°F (3.0°C) — H	L (L=L)
	2.7°F (1.5°C) — I	L - (L- =L-D)

Fig. 18 —Indoor Fan Running Rules

The AUTO fan adheres to the following rules (see Fig. 19:)

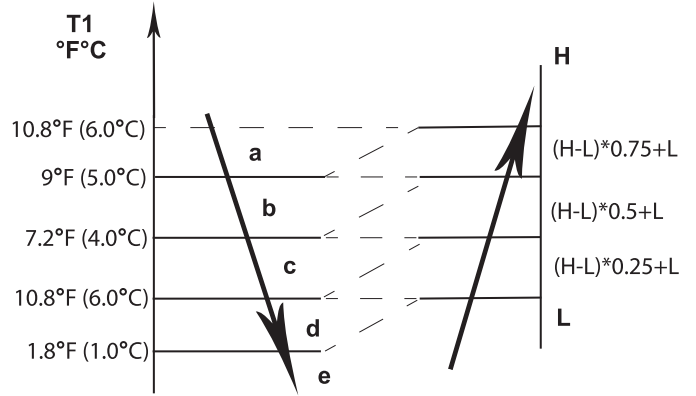


Fig. 19 —AUTO FAN Running Rules

Compressor Temperature Protection

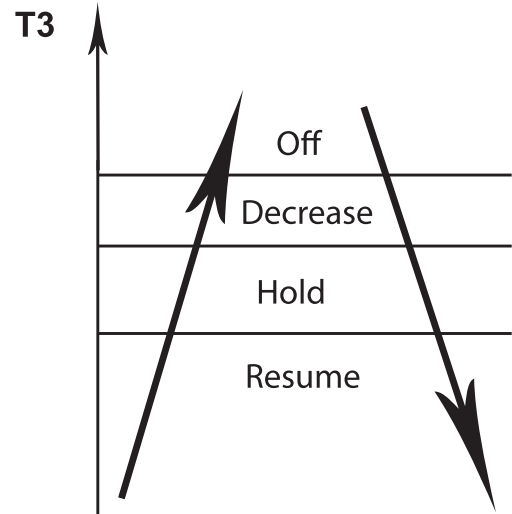


Fig. 20 —Compressor Temperature Protection

- Off: Compressor stops
- Decrease: Decrease the running frequency to the lower level
- Hold: Keep the current frequency
- Resume: No limitation for frequency

When the condenser temperature is higher than the setting value, the compressor stops.

Evaporator Temperature Protection

When the evaporator temperature is lower than the setting value the compressor stops.

HEATING Mode

Compressor Running Rules:

- When $T1-Ts > f'T$, the compressor stops.
- When $T1-Ts < f'T-1.5$, the compressor is on. $f'T$ is the programmed parameter for temperature compensation.
- When the AC runs in the MUTE mode, the compressor runs with a low frequency.
- When the current is more than the setting value, the current protection function activates and the compressor stops.

Outdoor Fan Running Rules:

The outdoor unit runs at a different fan speed according to T4. For different outdoor units, the fan speeds differ.

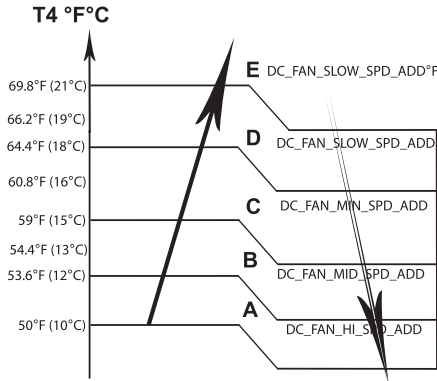


Fig. 21 —Outdoor Fan Running Rules

Defrosting mode

The unit enters defrosting mode according to the temperature value of condenser temperature (T3) and outdoor ambient temperature (T4) as well as the compressor running time.

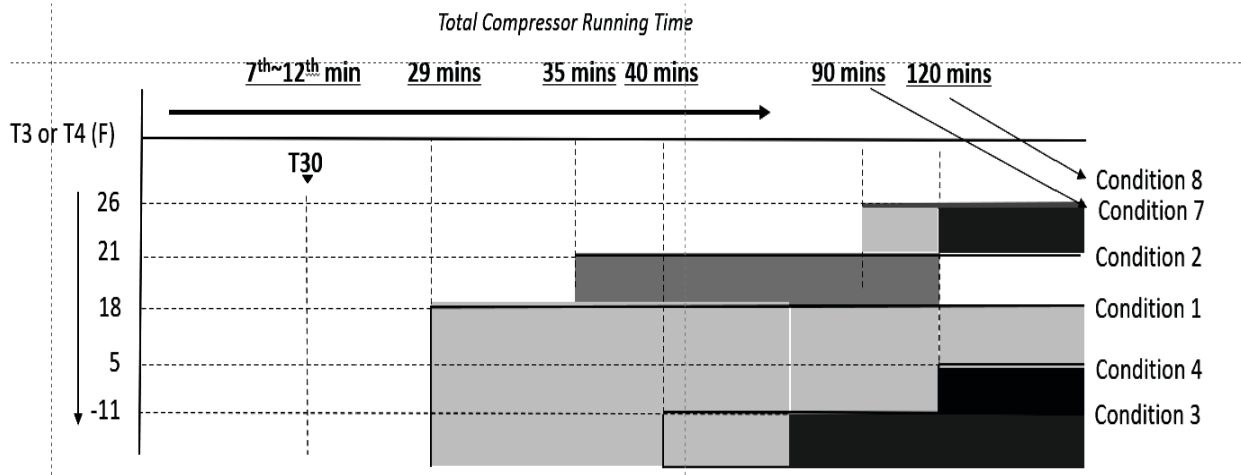
- In defrosting mode, the compressor continues to run, the indoor and outdoor motor will cease operation, the defrost light of the indoor unit will turn on, and the “df” symbol is displayed.
- If any one of the following conditions is satisfied, defrosting ends and the machine switches to normal heating mode:
- Condenser temperature (T3) rises above TCDE1.
- Condenser temperature (T3) maintained above TCDE2 for 80 seconds.
- Unit runs for 15 minutes consecutively in defrosting mode.
- If Outdoor ambient temperature (T4) is lower than or equal to -7.6°F (-22°C) and compressor running time is more than

TIMING_DEFROST_TIME, if any one of the following conditions is satisfied, defrosting ends and the machine switches to normal heating mode:

- Unit runs for 10 minutes consecutively in defrosting mode.
- Condenser temperature (T3) rises above 50°F/ 10°C.
- If any one of the following conditions is satisfied, the unit enters defrosting mode
- If condenser temperature (T3) or outdoor ambient temperature (T4) is lower than -3°C for 30 seconds, Ts-T1 is lower than 5°C and compressor running time is more than EE_TIME_DEFROST7_ADD.
- If condenser temperature (T3) or outdoor ambient temperature(T4) is lower than -3°C for 30 seconds and compressor running time is more than EE_TIME_DEFROST7_ADD+30 minutes.
- If any one of the following conditions is satisfied, defrosting ends and the machine switches to normal heating mode:
 - Condenser temperature(T3) rises above TCDE1 7.2°F/+4°C.
 - Condenser temperature(T3) maintained above TCDE2 7.2°F/+4°C for 80 seconds.
 - Unit runs for 15 minutes consecutively in defrosting mode.

Enhanced Defrost

Enhanced Defrost is a feature that is enabled by turning on dipswitch SW4 on the 24 volt ODU board. This feature is designed to be used for problem areas of defrosting (near water sources and areas of high humidity during cold outdoor conditions). When enabled, the total heating cumulative run time will be reduced to 40 minutes, allowing for defrosting to occur at the 40th minute providing the T3 or T4 temperature is 26F or cooler at that time. The defrost termination temperature at T3 will also increase to 77F to ensure better completion of defrost prior to terminating defrost.



Condition 1	Total compressor running time is 29 mins	T3 ≤ 18F, and T3 is less than/equal to T30 - 4.5F (2.5C), and T4 > -8F
Condition 2	Total compressor running time is 35 mins	T3 ≤ 21F, and T3 less than/equal to T30 - 5.4F (3C), and T4 > -8F
Condition 3	Total compressor running time is 29 mins	T3 ≤ -11F and last for 3 mins, and T4 > -8F
Condition 4	Total compressor running time is 120 mins	T3 ≤ 5F and T4 > -8F
Condition 5	Cumulative running 30 mins	T4-T3 > (0.5T4 + 5F) and T3 ≤ 10F, T4 > -8F
Condition 6	Cumulative running 8 hours	T4 ≤ -8F, with T4 operating without malfunction
Condition 7	Cumulative running time 90 mins and diff. of Ts-T1 ≤ 9F Cumulative running time 120 minutes (if Ts-T1 diff. above not applicable)	T3 or T4 ≤ 26F last for 30 seconds
*Condition 8	If enhanced defrost is ON, cumulative running time is 40 minutes (T30 does not apply) *Only applies to Crossover ODU's. Enable enhanced defrost by turning on dipswitch 4 in the ODU.	T3 or T4 ≤ 26F last for 30 seconds

Evaporator Coil Temperature Protection

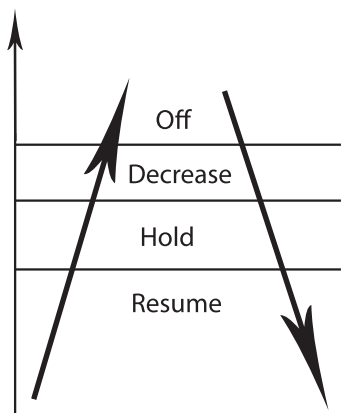


Fig. 22 —Evaporator Coil Temperature Protection

When the evaporator temperature is higher than the setting protection value, the compressor stops.

AUTO Mode

AUTO mode can be selected with the remote controller and the setting temperature can be changed between 60.0°F~86°F (16°C~30°C).

In the AUTO mode, the unit chooses either the COOLING, HEATING or the FAN-ONLY mode accT2, T4 and relative humidity.

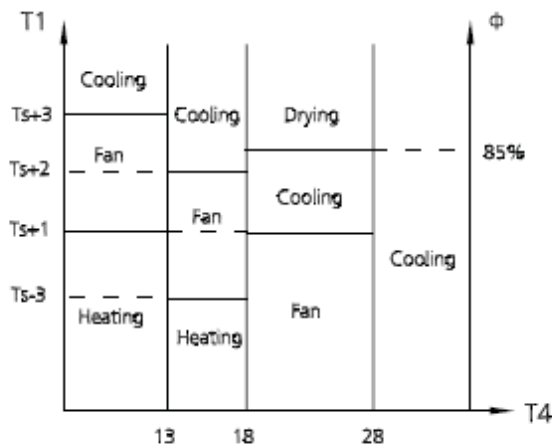


Fig. 23 —AUTO Mode

Heating*: COOLING ONLY models run at fan speed. The indoor fan runs in the AUTO fan speed for the relevant mode. The louver operates the same as in the relevant mode.

If the unit switches mode between HEATING and COOLING, the compressor repeatedly stops for a certain time and then chooses the mode according to T1-Ts. If the setting temperature is modified, the unit selects a running function again.

DRYING mode

The indoor fan speed is fixed at BREEZE and can not be changed. The louver angle is the same as in the COOLING mode.

Low Indoor Room Temperature Protection In the DRYING mode, if the room temperature is lower than 50°F(10°C),

the compressor stops and does not resume until the room temperature exceeds 53.6°F (12°C).

Evaporator anti-freezing protection, condenser high temperature protection and outdoor unit frequency limit are active and are the same as that in the COOLING mode. The outdoor fan operates the same as in COOLING mode.

FORCED OPERATION Function

Enter FORCED OPERATION function:

When the machine is off, press the auto function button at the indoor unit to engage the Forced Auto Mode. Press TOUCH again, within 5 seconds, to engage the FORCED COOLING mode. In FORCED AUTO, FORCED COOLING or any other operation mode, press TOUCH to turn off the unit.

In the FORCED OPERATION mode, all general protections and the remote controller are available.

Operation Rules:

FORCED COOLING mode:

The compressor runs at the F2 frequency and the indoor fan runs as a breeze. After running for 30 minutes, the unit enters the AUTO mode at a 75.2°F (24°C) setting temperature.

FORCED AUTO mode:

The FORCED AUTO mode is the same as the normal AUTO mode with a 75.2°F (24°C) setting temperature.

AUTO-RESTART function

The indoor unit is equipped with an AUTO-RESTART function, which is carried out through an auto-restart module. In case of a sudden power failure, the module memorizes the setting conditions before the power failure. The unit resumes the previous operation setting (not including the swing function) automatically 3 minutes after the power returns.

If the memorization condition is the FORCED COOLING mode, the unit runs in the COOLING mode for 30 minutes and enters the AUTO mode as 75.2°F (24°C) setting temp.

If the air conditioner turns off before the unit powers off and the air conditioner is required to restart immediately, the compressor delays for 1 minute when the power is on. Under other conditions, the compressor has a 3 minute delay when it restarts.

Refrigerant Leakage Detection

With this new technology, the display area displays EL0C when the outdoor

unit detects a refrigerant leak.

46°F (8°C) Heating

When the compressor is running, the indoor fan motor runs without the anti-cold air function. When the compressor is off, the indoor fan motor is off.

INQUIRY MODE





Accessing the INQUIRY Mode

CAUTION

Read and understand the function changes you wish to make in advance. Neither the indoor unit nor the remote control displays the new level of any of the changes made while in the INQUIRY mode. Be sure to document the changes you've made to the system's programming using the INQUIRY mode. Once you complete the changes and exit the INQUIRY mode, if additional changes are made to the programming, the system will not show the new previously set level(s).

For example, when you first access CODE 22, Heating Temperature Compensation, the remote control display defaults to 0. If you change it to -2, then save and exit out of the INQUIRY mode, the next time someone goes back in and accesses CODE 22, the remote's display will not display -2.

Instead it will show 0 because that's the default. If you are unsure of the previous changes, due to a lack of documentation, you could press the DOWN symbol to the maximum change range of -6, then press the UP symbol until you are back to 0, and make the new adjustments accordingly. Be sure to document the changes when you are done.

1. Simultaneously press ON/OFF   and FAN SPEED  for 8 seconds.
 - a. The remote is now in the INQUIRY mode.
 - b. The remote control remains in the INQUIRY mode for 1 minute if no other button is pressed.
 - c. While in the INQUIRY Mode, the remote display cancels all icons except AUTO, COOL, DRY, HEAT and Battery Strength.
 - d. The remote control digital display defaults to 0 upon entering the INQUIRY mode.
 - e. In the INQUIRY mode, each digital code (from 0 to 30) is accessed by pressing the UP or DOWN arrows .
 - f. The INQUIRY information appears on the high wall indoor unit display in approximately 1 second after accessing the digital code. Press OK to send as well.
 - g. In the INQUIRY mode, all other buttons and operations are invalid except for UP, DOWN and OK or the operation to exit the INQUIRY mode.

Remote Controller Service Mode Functions

NOTE: While in the INQUIRY mode, refer to the following instructions to enter SERVICE mode for the applicable codes.

Below is a list of INQUIRY modes and serviceable functions.

- a. Before using the remote's service functions, turn OFF the indoor unit with the remote.
- b. Turn OFF the power to the outdoor unit for 2 minutes. Turn the power back ON.
- c. Remove the batteries from the remote and wait for the remote screen to clear. Within 30 seconds of replacing the batteries, use UP or DOWN to scroll through the INQUIRY modes.
- d. To enter the SERVICE mode for an applicable INQUIRY mode, press ON/OFF for 2 seconds.
- e. After SERVICE adjustments have been made, press ON/OFF for 2 seconds to exit the SERVICE mode and return to the INQUIRY mode.
- f. Once operations in the INQUIRY mode are complete, press ON/OFF and FAN SPEED for 2 seconds to exit. All buttons on the remote controller are disabled for 60 seconds
- g. To ensure changes are locked, power down the outdoor unit for three (3) minutes after all the service mode changes are made.



Service Inquiry Codes

CODE	INQUIRY	INQUIRY DESCRIPTION	SERVICE/ INQUIRY	FOR SERVICE, PRESS ON/OFF FOR 2 SECONDS TO:	SELECTION GUIDE/NOTES
0		Error Code Check	SERVICE AND INQUIRY	Review error memory function. Displays "Ch". Press OK to send the query error code memory.	
1	T1	Indoor Ambient Temperature	SERVICE AND INQUIRY	Change the power off memory selection. This feature determines whether the unit memorizes the set conditions prior to a power failure. Displays "Ch". Press OK to return the current setting. Press UP or DOWN to cycle through settings 1 and 0 .	Memory settings are off Memory settings are on
2	T2	Indoor Coil Temperature	SERVICE AND INQUIRY	Change the option to control the indoor fan operation after reaching the set temperature. Displays "Ch". Press OK to return the current setting. Press UP or DOWN to cycle through settings 1 through 11. Next, press OK to confirm the selection.	Stop the fan Minimum fan speed Set speed - intermittent fan-off 4 minutes/on 1 min Terminate after run time of 10 mins Terminate after run time of 15 mins Terminate after run time of 20 mins Terminate after run time of 30 mins Terminate after run time of 40 mins Terminate after run time of 50 mins Terminate after run time of 60 mins
3	T3	Outdoor Coil Temperature	SERVICE AND INQUIRY	Change the option to control the COOLING and HEATING modes available for use on the unit. Press UP or DOWN to cycle through the settings CH , HH , CC or nU . Press OK to confirm.	CH - COOLING and HEATING : AUTO , COOLING , DRY , HEATING and FAN modes available HH - HEATING Only: HEATING and FAN modes available CC - COOLING without AUTO : COOLING , DRY and FAN modes available nU - COOLING and HEATING without AUTO : COOLING , DRY , HEATING and FAN modes available
4	T4	Outdoor Ambient Temperature	SERVICE AND INQUIRY	Change the selection of the lowest set temperature. NOTE: Temperature range is 60°F ~ 75°F (16°C ~ 24°C). Press UP or DOWN to select temperature setting. Press OK to confirm.	
5	TP (T5)	Compressor Discharge Temperature	SERVICE AND INQUIRY	Change the selection of the highest set temperature. NOTE: Temperature range is 77°F ~ 86°F (25°C ~ 30°C). Press UP or DOWN to select the temperature setting. Press OK to confirm.	
6	FT	Compressor target frequency	INQUIRY ONLY		
7	Fr	Compressor run frequency	INQUIRY ONLY		
8	dL	Unit amperage	SERVICE AND INQUIRY	Change the static pressure selection. Displays "Ch". Press OK to return the current setting. Press UP or DOWN to cycle through settings 0 through 4 or AF (constant air volume test). Press OK to confirm.	Only available on ducted/AHU units. Refer to the ducted/AHU installation manuals for Fan performances at varying static pressures for airflow settings.
9	Uo	Unit voltage	INQUIRY ONLY		
10	Sn	Capacity test (special usage)	INQUIRY ONLY		
11	----	Not available	INQUIRY ONLY		
12	Pr	Indoor fan speed	SERVICE AND INQUIRY	Change the heating frequency lower limit selection. Displays "Ch". Press OK to return the current heating minimum frequency limit selection code. Press UP and DOWN to select the minimum heating frequency limit value. Press OK to confirm.	

CODE	INQUIRY	INQUIRY DESCRIPTION	SERVICE/ INQUIRY	FOR SERVICE, PRESS ON/OFF FOR 2 SECONDS TO:	SELECTION GUIDE/NOTES
13	Lr	Electronic Expansion Valve (EEV) opening	SERVICE AND INQUIRY	Change the maximum operating frequency of T4 Cooling Only intervals. Displays " Ch ". Press OK to return the current operating frequency code of the T4 Cooling Only intervals. Press UP or DOWN to select the limit value and then press OK .	
14	ir	Indoor fan speed	INQUIRY ONLY		Multiple the display number by 8 to calculate the actual RPM
15	HU	Relative Humidity	INQUIRY ONLY		Available in INQUIRY mode for the high tier/new mid tier units that have an RH sensor.
16	TT	Setpoint compensation temperature	INQUIRY ONLY		
17	dT	Dust concentration (not used)	INQUIRY ONLY		
18	WIFI	Wi-Fi signal strength	INQUIRY ONLY		The value is measured in dBm . The display values are 0, 1, 2, 3 and 4 (4 is the highest and 0 is the lowest)
19	----	Not available	SERVICE ONLY	Change the cooling frequency upper limit selection in Hz. Displays " Ch ". Press OK to return the current frequency limit. Press UP or DOWN to select the preferred frequency upper limit value (in Hz). Press OK to confirm.	For example, the unit may be factory set to fluctuate between 40 and 84 Hz. If set to 50, the unit will now be limited to operating between 40 and 50 Hz.
20	oT	Indoor fan target frequency	SERVICE AND INQUIRY	Change the heating frequency upper limit selection in Hz. Displays " Ch "; press OK to return the current frequency limit. Press UP or DOWN to select the preferred frequency upper limit value (in Hz). Press OK to confirm.	For example, the unit may be factory set to fluctuate between 40 and 84 Hz. If set to 50, the unit is limited to operating between 40 and 50 Hz.
21	----	Cooling Temperature Compensation	SERVICE ONLY	Change the cooling temperature compensation value. Displays " Ch ". Press OK to return the current temperature compensation value code. Press UP or DOWN to select the cooling temperature difference compensation value. Press OK to confirm.	This setting is used to adjust for temperature differences due to the height of the unit install. The offset value can be set at a range of -6° to +6°.
22	----	Heating Temperature Compensation	SERVICE ONLY	Change the heating temperature compensation value. Displays " Ch ". Press OK to return the current temperature compensation value code. Press UP or DOWN to select the heating temperature difference compensation value. Press OK to confirm.	This setting is used to adjust for temperature differences due to the height of unit installation. The offset value can be set at a range of -6° to +6°.
23	----	Maximum Cooling Fan Speed	SERVICE ONLY	Change the maximum cooling fan speed setting as it relates to RPM. Displays " Ch ". Press OK to return the current maximum cooling fan speed setting. Press UP or DOWN to select the maximum cooling fan speed. Press OK to confirm.	For example, the unit may be factory set to fluctuate between 300 and 1000 RPM. If set to 800, the unit is limited to operating between 300 and 800 RPM.
24	----	Minimum Cooling Fan Speed	SERVICE ONLY	Change the minimum cooling fan speed setting as it relates to RPM. NOTE: Changing this setting is not recommended as it may trigger unit protection protocols. Displays " Ch ". Press OK to return the current minimum cooling fan speed setting. Press UP or DOWN to select the minimum cooling fan speed. Press OK to confirm.	For example, the unit may be factory set to fluctuate between 300 and 1000 RPM. If set to 500, the unit is limited to operating between 500 and 1000 RPM.

CODE	INQUIRY	INQUIRY DESCRIPTION	SERVICE/ INQUIRY	FOR SERVICE, PRESS ON/OFF FOR 2 SECONDS TO:	SELECTION GUIDE/NOTES
25	----	Maximum Heating Fan Speed	SERVICE ONLY	Change the maximum heating fan speed setting as it relates to RPM. Displays "Ch". Press OK to return the current maximum heating fan speed setting. Press UP or DOWN to select the maximum heating fan speed. Press OK to confirm.	For example, the unit may be factory set to fluctuate between 300 and 1000 RPM. If set to 800, the unit will now be limited to operating between 300 and 800 RPM.
26	----	Minimum Heating Fan Speed	SERVICE ONLY	Change the minimum heating fan speed setting as it relates to RPM. Note: Changing this setting is not recommended as it may trigger unit protection protocols. Displays "Ch". Press OK to return the current minimum heating fan speed setting. Press UP or DOWN to select the minimum heating fan speed. Press OK to confirm.	For example, the unit may be factory set to fluctuate between 300 and 1000 RPM. If set to 500, the unit is limited to operating between 500 and 1000 RPM.
27	----	Not available			
28	----	Not available			
29	----	Not available			
30	----	Not available			

To exit the Inquiry Mode:

Press and hold together the On/Off and Fan buttons   for 2 seconds.

GENERAL TROUBLESHOOTING

SAFETY CAUTION

⚠ WARNING

Be sure to turn off all power supplies or disconnect all wires to avoid electric shock. While checking indoor/outdoor PCB, equip yourself with anti-static gloves or wrist strap to avoid damage to the board.

⚠ WARNING

Electricity remains in capacitors even when the power supply is off. Ensure the capacitors are fully discharged before troubleshooting.

NOTE: Remember to discharge the electrical power in capacitor.

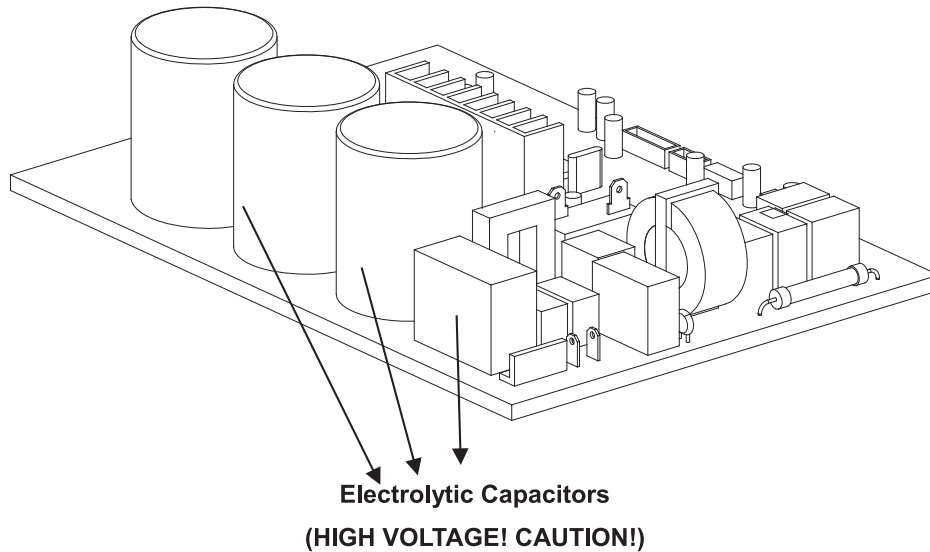


Fig. 24 —Electrolytic Capacitors

For other models, please connect discharge resistance (approximately 100fC 40W) or a soldering iron (plug) between the +, - terminals of the electrolytic capacitor on the contrary side of the outdoor PCB.

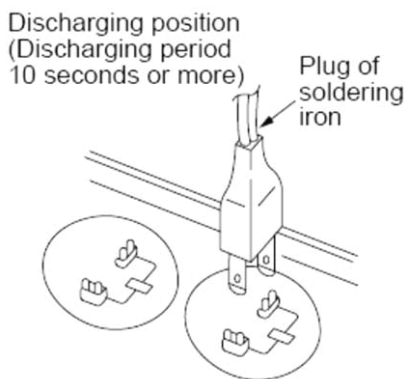


Fig. 25 —Discharge Position

NOTE: Figure is for reference only. The plug on your unit may differ.

NOTE: If using the inverter test tool for troubleshooting, shut off power, remove the electrical panel and locate the cable that is already connected to the test port on the outdoor unit. Connect the test tool to the cable with the connector provided with the test tool. After the maintenance is completed, insert the female end back into the port.

For the R454B single zone ODU with capacity less than 24K, there will be the test tool connector. For 24K HH and 30K-60K single zone ODU, there is a diagnosis/check board which has digital display on it, you can read the parameters from it directly.

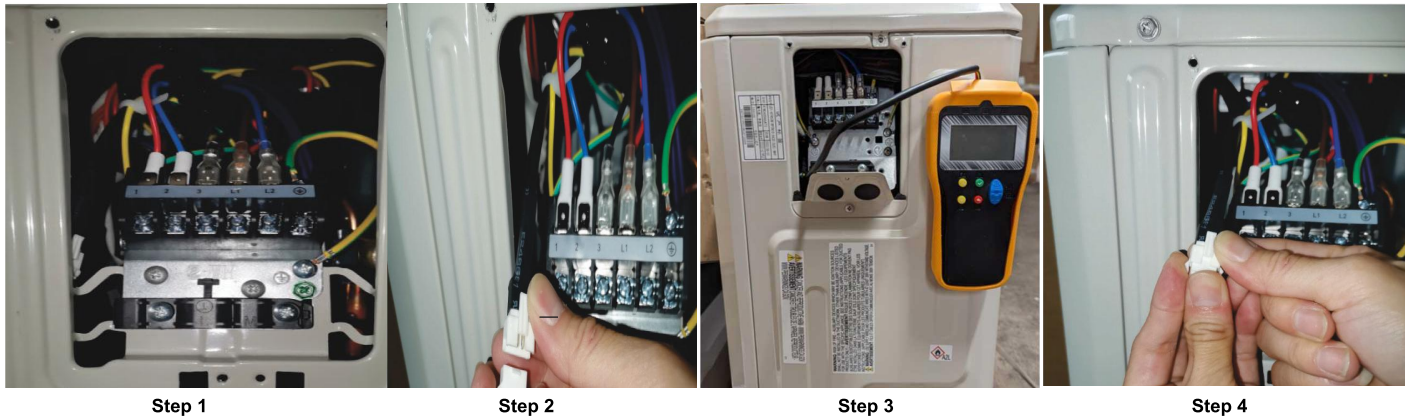


Fig. 26 —Inverter Test Tool Maintenance

Connect the Dr. SMART tool to the white terminal as shown in Step 3 above.



Fig. 27 —Dr. SMART Tool

NOTE: These pictures is for reference only. Actual appearance may vary.

ERROR CODES**Error Display**

Display	Indoor/Outdoor Code	Malfunction or Protection	Solution (Refer to Page)
d ^f	N/A	Defrosting	Normal Display, not error code
FC	N/A	Forced cooling	
FH CC	IDU	Refrigerant Sensor Error	page 55
EC 03 / EC 07 / EC 71	ODU	Fan speed out of control	page 30
EC 51	ODU	EEPROM parameter error	page 26
EC 52	ODU	Coil temp. sensor(T3) error	page 33
EC 53	ODU	Ambient temp. sensor(T4) error	page 33
EC 54	ODU	COMP. discharge temp. sensor (TP) error	page 33
EC 55	ODU	IPM module temperature sensor malfunction	page 35
EL 0C	IDU & ODU	System Lacks Refrigerant Diagnosis and Solution	page 36
EH 00 / EH0A	IDU & ODU	EEPROM Malfunction Error Diagnosis and Solution	page 26
EH02	IDU	Zero Crossing Detection Error	page 29
EH b3	IDU	Communication Malfunction Between Wire and Master Control	page 54
EH bA	IDU & ODU	Communication Malfunction Between Wire and Master Control	page 54
EH C1	IDU	Refrigerant Sensor Detects Leakage	page 56
EH C2	IDU	Refrigerant Sensor is Out of Range and Leakage is Detected	page 56
EH CC / FH CC	IDU	Refrigerant sensor error or Refrigerant sensor is out of range	page 55
EH 3b	IDU & ODU	External Fan DC Bus Voltage is Too High	page 54
EH 06	IDU	IDU Main Control Board and Display Board Communication Error Diagnosis and Solution	page 57
EH 0E	IDU	Water-Level Alarm Malfunction Diagnosis and Solution	page 37
EH 60 / EH 61	IDU & ODU	Open circuit or Short Circuit Of Temperature Sensor	page 33
EC 57	ODU	Refrigerant pipe temperature sensor error	page 33
EC 5C	ODU	Suction Transducer Failure	page 32
EL 01	IDU & ODU	Communication error	page 27
EL 16	ODU	Communication malfunction between adapter board and ODU main board	page 58
FL 09	IDU & ODU	Mismatch between the new and old platforms diagnosis and solution	page 58
PC 00	ODU	IPM module protection	page 38
PC 02	ODU	Compressor top (or IPM) temp. protection	page 40
PC 04	ODU	Inverter Compressor Drive Error Diagnosis and Solution	page 43
PC 06	ODU	Discharge temperature protection of compressor	page 40
PC 08	ODU	Outdoor overcurrent protection	page 49
PC 0A	ODU	High temperature protection of condenser	page 51
PC 0F	ODU	PFC module protection	page 52
PC 0L	ODU	Low Ambient Temperature Protection	page 54
PC 10	ODU	Low AC voltage protection	page 53
PC 11	ODU	Main control board DC bus high voltage protection	page 53
PC 12	ODU	Main control board DC bus high voltage protection /341 MCE error	page 53
PC 03	IDU	* Pressure Protection (low or high pressure)	page 41
PC 30	ODU	System high pressure protection	page 41
PC 31	ODU	Low Pressure Protection	page 41

Display	Indoor/Outdoor Code	Malfunction or Protection	Solution (Refer to Page)
PC 40	ODU	Communication error between ODU main chip and compressor driven chip	page 44
PC 41	ODU	Compressor current sampling failure	page 45
PC 42	ODU	Compressor start failure of outdoor unit	page 49
PC 43	ODU	Compressor lack phase protection	page 46
PC 44	ODU	Zero speed protection	page 49
PC 45	ODU	IR chip drive failure	page 47
PC 46	ODU	Compressor speed has been out of control	page 49
PC 49	ODU	Compressor overcurrent failure	page 49
LC 06	ODU	High temperature protection of Inverter module (IPM)	page 40
PH 90	IDU & ODU	High temperature protection of evaporator	page 59
PH 91	IDU & ODU	Low temperature protection of evaporator	page 60

NOTE: PC03 Low pressure protection switch is open. Check the switch and repair or leak check the unit and recharge.

TROUBLESHOOTING BY ERROR CODE

EH 00/ EH 0A / EC 51 (EEPROM Malfunction Error Diagnosis and Solution)

Description: Indoor or outdoor PCB main chip does not receive feedback from EEPROM chip.

Recommended parts to prepare: Indoor PCB, Outdoor PCB

Troubleshooting and repair:

Troubleshooting and repair:

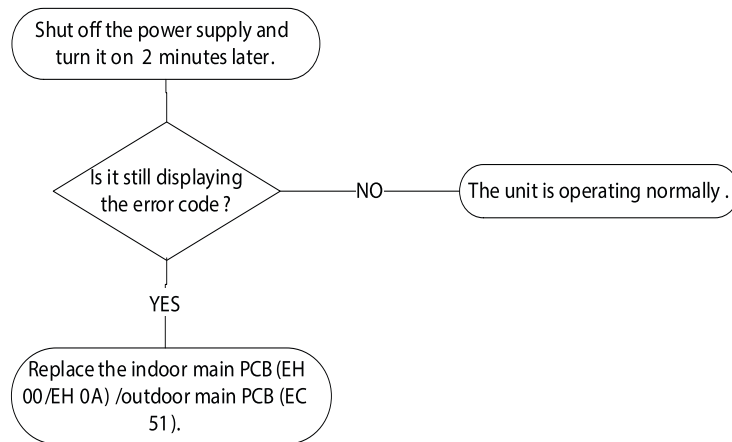


Fig. 28 —EC 51

Remarks:

EEPROM: A read-only memory whose contents can be erased and reprogrammed using a pulsed voltage.

The location of the EEPROM chip on the outdoor PCB is shown in the following image:

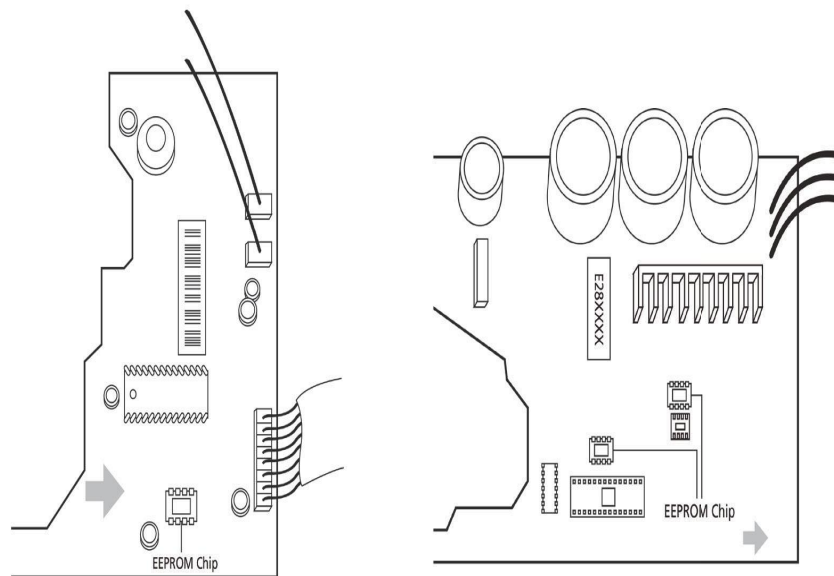


Fig. 29 —Location of EPROM Chip

NOTE: This picture is only for reference, actual appearance may vary.

IMPORTANT: Troubleshooting and repair of compressor driven chip EEPROM parameter error sand communication errors between outdoor main chip and compressor driven chip are same as EC 51.

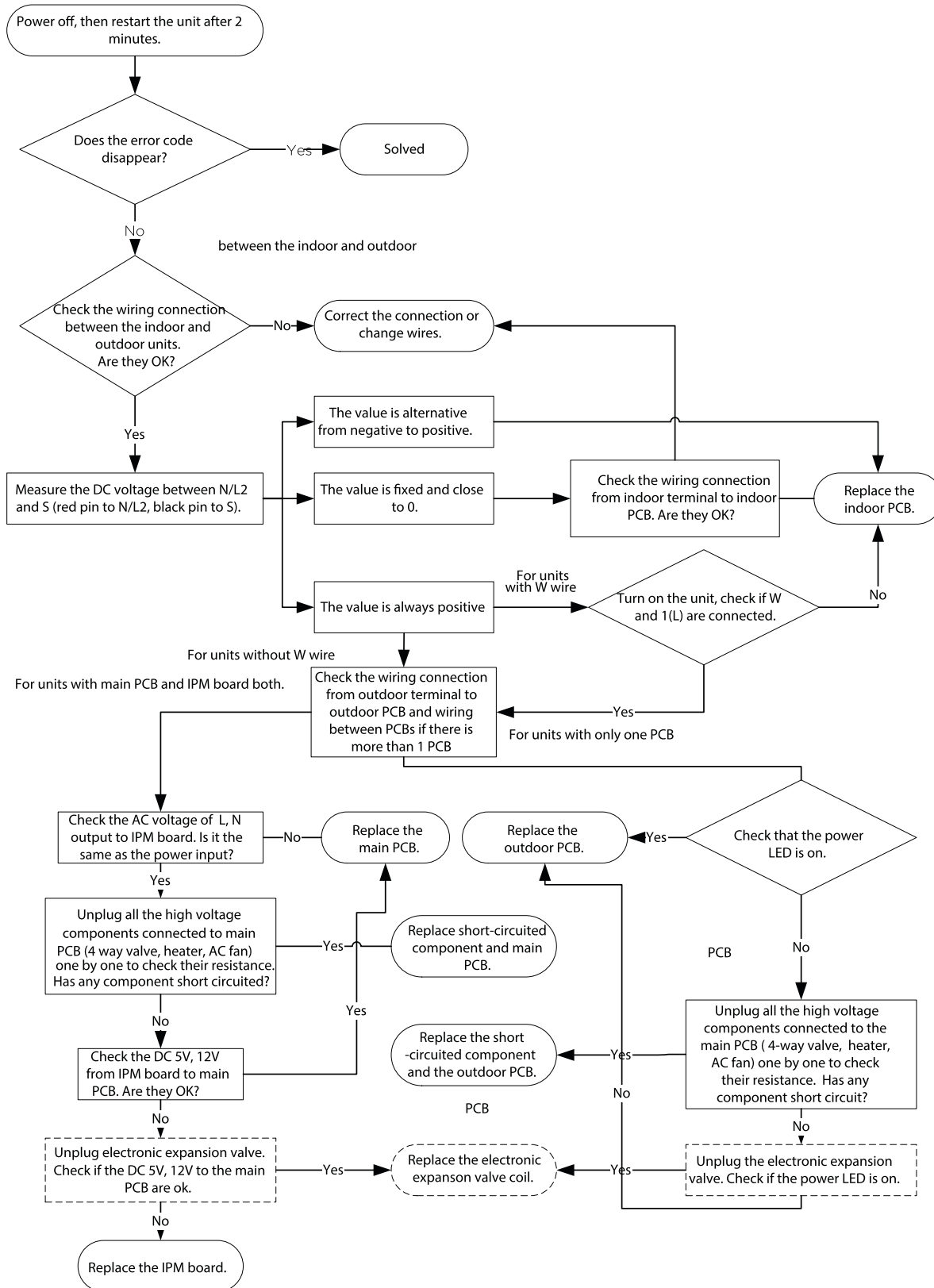
EL 01 (Indoor and Outdoor Unit Communication Error Diagnosis and Solution)

Description: Indoor unit can not communicate with outdoor unit.

Recommended parts to prepare: Indoor PCB, Outdoor PCB

Troubleshooting and repair:

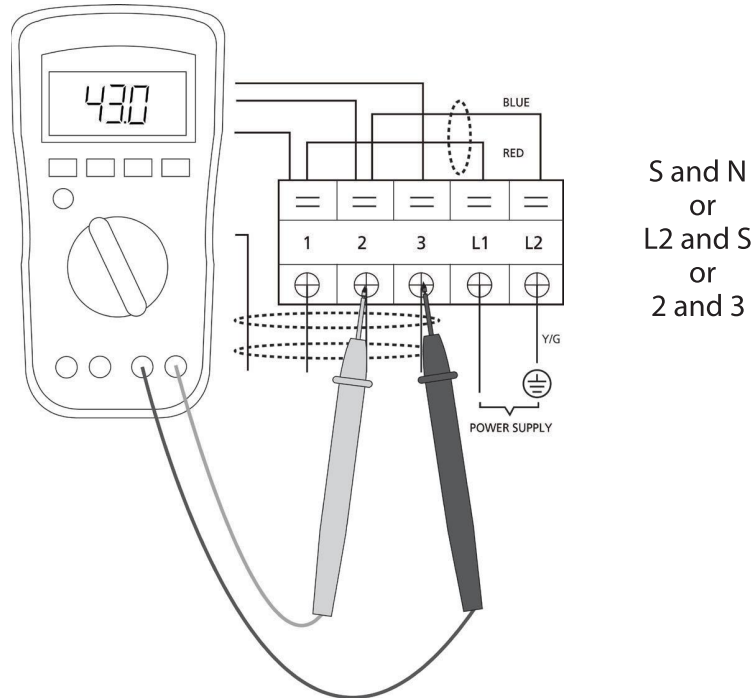
:



For certain models, outdoor PCB could not be removed separately. In this case, the outdoor electric control box should be replaced as a whole.

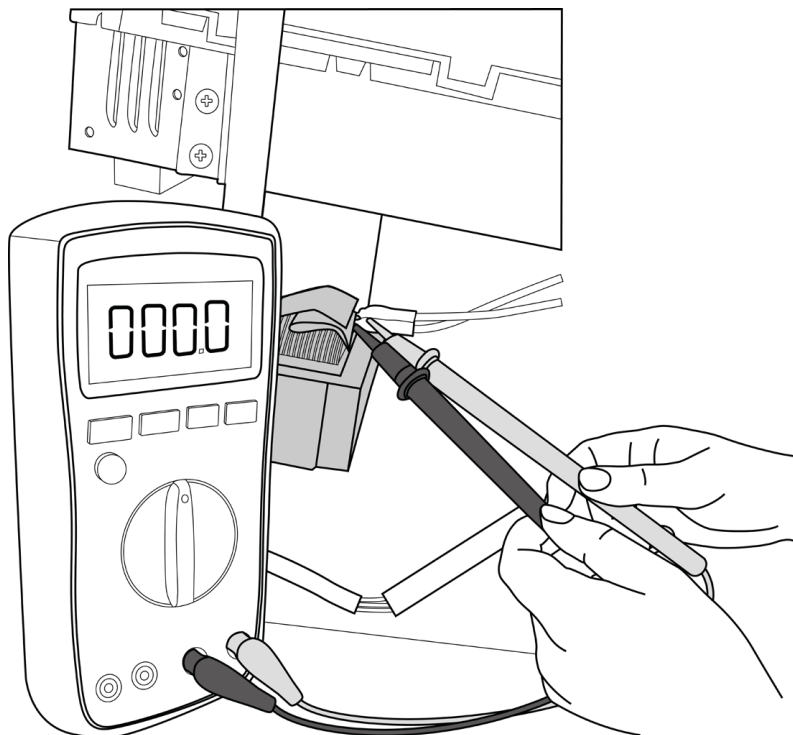
EL 01 (Continued)**Remarks:**

- Use a multimeter to test the DC voltage between the 2 port (or S or L2 port) and 3 port (or N or S port) of the outdoor unit.
- The multimeter's red pin connects with the 2 port (or S or L2 port) while the black pin is for the 3 port (or N or S port). If the unit is running normally, the voltage moves alternately as positive values and negative values.
- If the outdoor unit malfunctions, the voltage remains a narrow positive value.
- If the indoor unit malfunctions, the voltage value will be fixed.

**Fig. 30 —Measure Voltage Between Ports**

Use a multimeter to test the reactor's resistance which does not connect with the capacitor.

- The normal value should be around zero ohm. Otherwise, the reactor has malfunctioned. Check the reactor to ensure it is not shorted to ground.

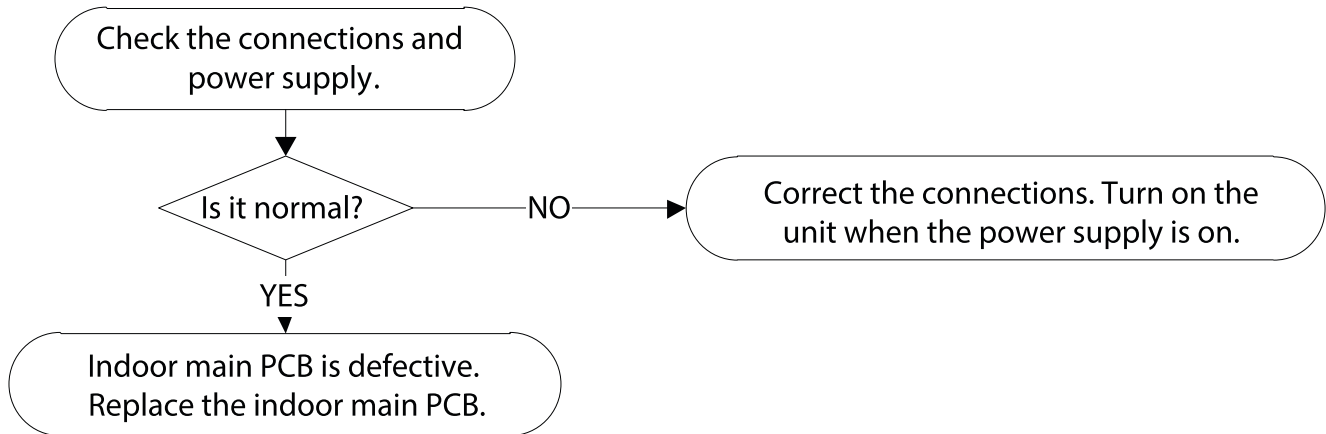
**Fig. 31 —Test Reactor Resistance**

EH 02 Zero Crossing Detection Error Diagnosis and Solution

Description: When the PCB does not receive a zero crossing signal feedback for 4 minutes or the zero crossing signal time interval is abnormal.

Recommended parts to repair: Connection wires, Indoor main PCB

Troubleshooting:



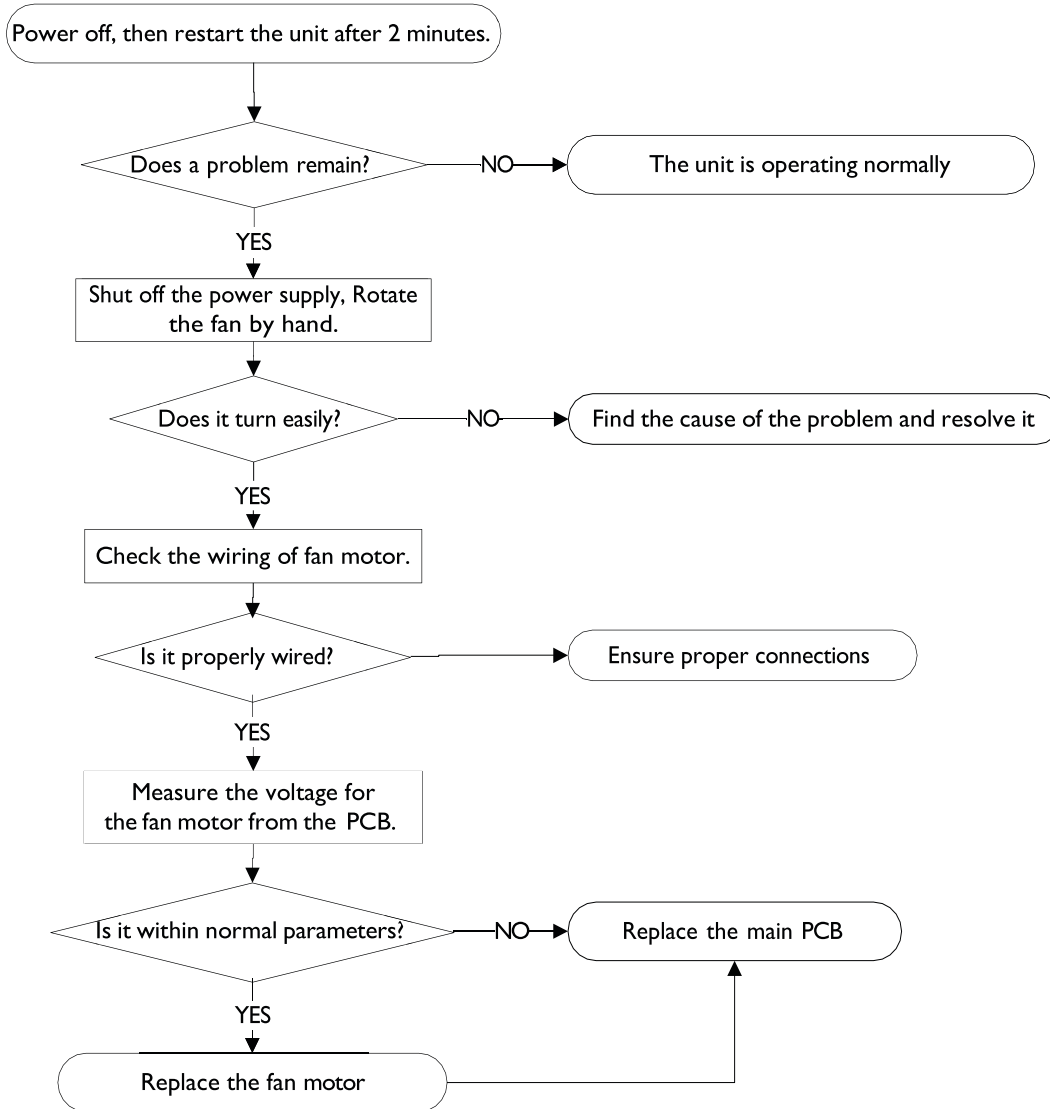
NOTE: A zero crossing detection error is only valid for a unit with an AC fan motor. For other models, this error does not apply.

EH03 / EC 07/ EC 71(Fan Speed Is Operating Outside of Normal Range Diagnosis and Solution)

Description: When indoor / outdoor fan speed keeps too low or too high for a certain time, the LED displays the failure code and the AC turns off.

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires, Fan assembly, Fan motor, PCB

Troubleshooting and repair:



Outdoor DC Fan Motor (DC motor that controls the chip on the PCB)

1. Release the UVW connector. Measure the resistance of U-V, U-W, V-W. If the resistance is not equal to each other, the fan motor is faulty and must be replaced. Otherwise, proceed to step 2.
2. Power on the unit and when the unit is in standby, measure the pin4-5 voltage in the feedback signal connector. If the value is not 5V, change the PCB. Otherwise, proceed to step 3.
3. Rotate the fan by hand, measure the pin1-5, pin 2-5 and pin 3-5 voltage levels in the feedback signal connector. If any voltage is not in the positive voltage fluctuation, the fan motor is faulty and must be replaced.

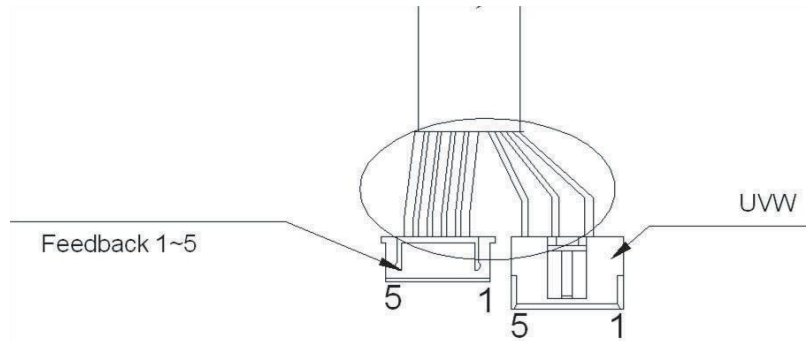


Fig. 32 —Outdoor DC Fan Motor (DC motor that controls the chip on the PCB)

NO.	1	2	3	4	5
COLOR	Orange	Grey	White	Pink	Black
SIGNAL	Hu	Hv	Hw	Vcc	GND

COLOR	Red	Blue	Yellow
SIGNAL	W	V	U

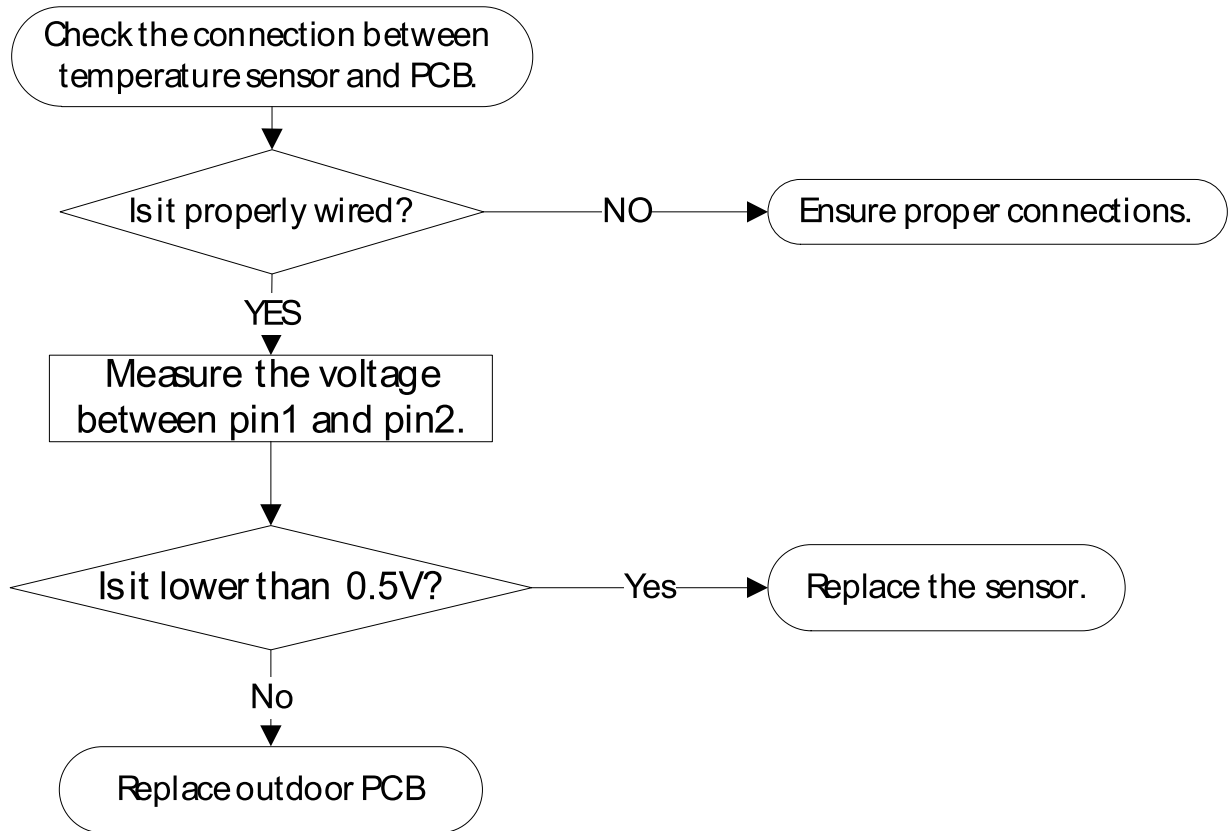
EC 5C (Suction Transducer is in open circuit or has short circuited) (For crossover units) diagnosis and solution

Description: If the sampling voltage is lower than 2V or higher than 254V, the LED displays the failure code.

Recommended parts to prepare:

- Connection wires
- Sensor
- Outdoor PCB

Troubleshooting and repair:



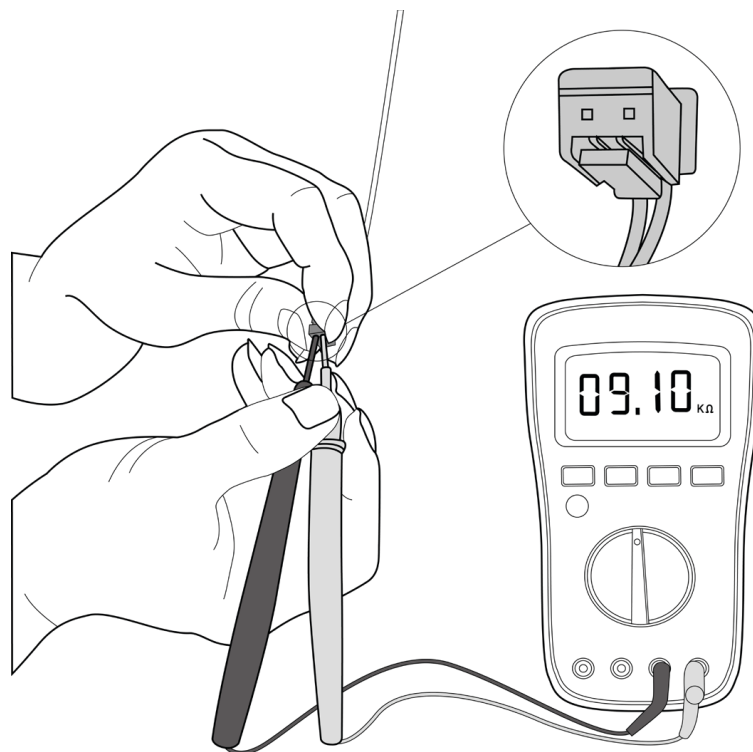
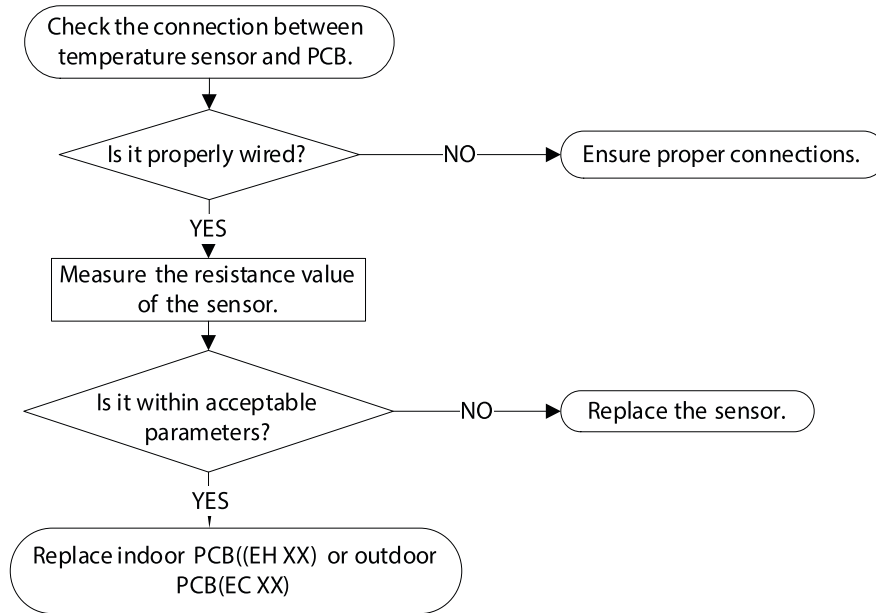
EC 53/ EC 52/ EC 54/ EC 56/ EC 57/ EC 50/ EH 60/ EH 61(Open Circuit or Short Circuit of Temperature Sensor Diagnosis and Solution)

Description: If the sampling voltage is lower than 0.06V or higher than 4.94V, the LED displays the failure.

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires, Sensors, PCB

Troubleshooting and repair:

Refer to Appendix, page 91.



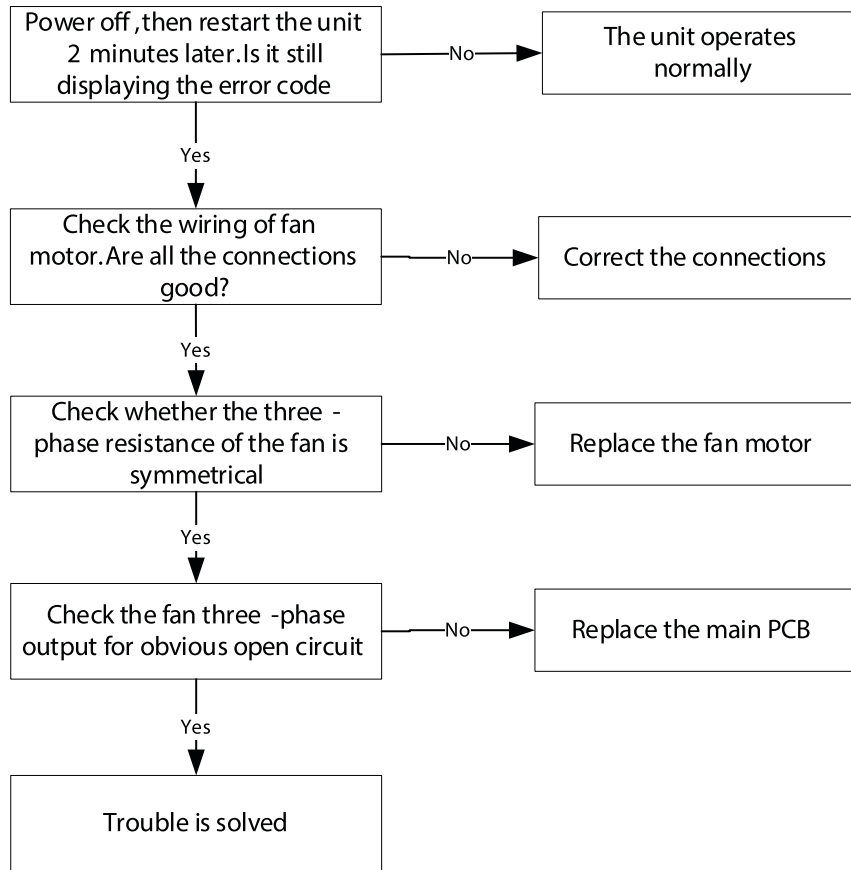
NOTE: This picture and the value are only for reference, actual appearance and value may vary.

EC 72 Lack phase failure of ODU DC fan motor diagnosis and solution

Description: When the three-phase sampling current of the DC motor is abnormal, especially when the current of one or more phases is always small and almost 0, the LED displays the failure code.

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wire, Fan motor, Outdoor PCB

Troubleshooting and repair:



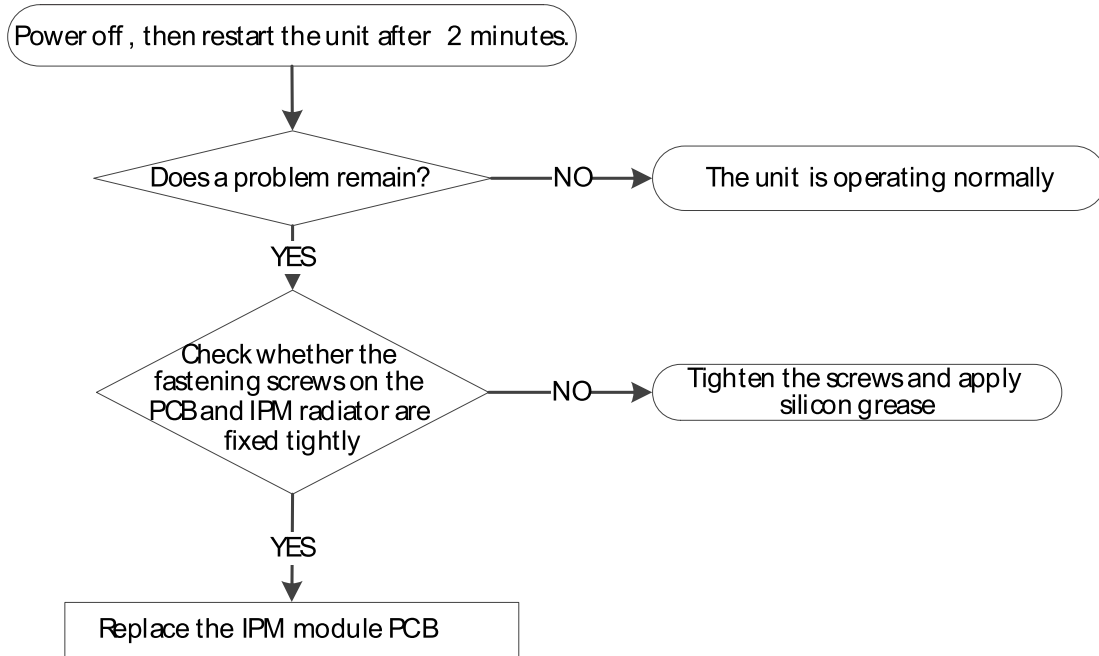
EC 55 (ODU IPM module temperature sensor malfunction diagnosis and solution)

Description: If the sampling voltage is 0V or 5V, the LED displays the failure code.

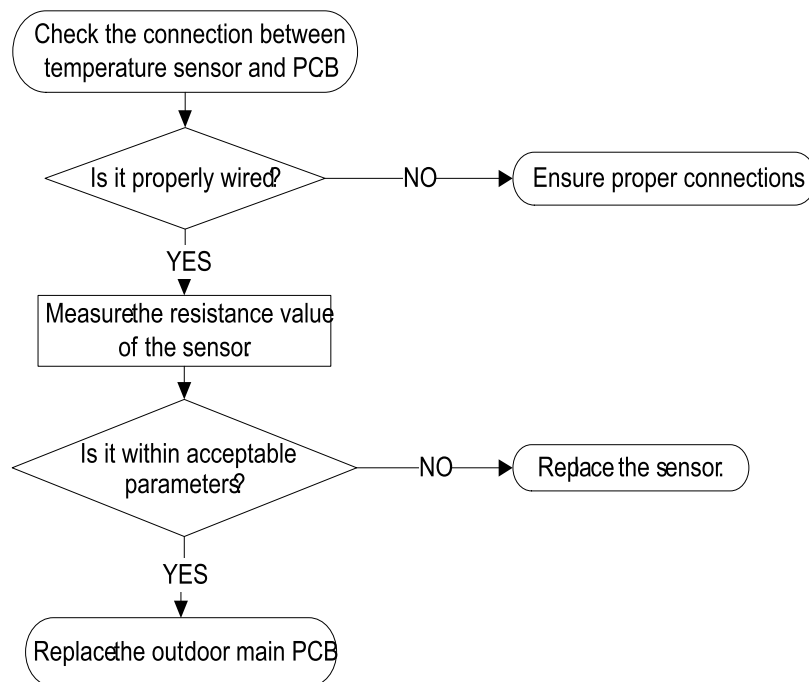
Recommended parts to prepare:

- IPM module PCB
- Connection wires
- Sensors
- Outdoor main PCB

Troubleshooting and repair: If the radiator has no sensor, follow the steps below to resolve:



If the radiator has a sensor(TH), follow the steps below:

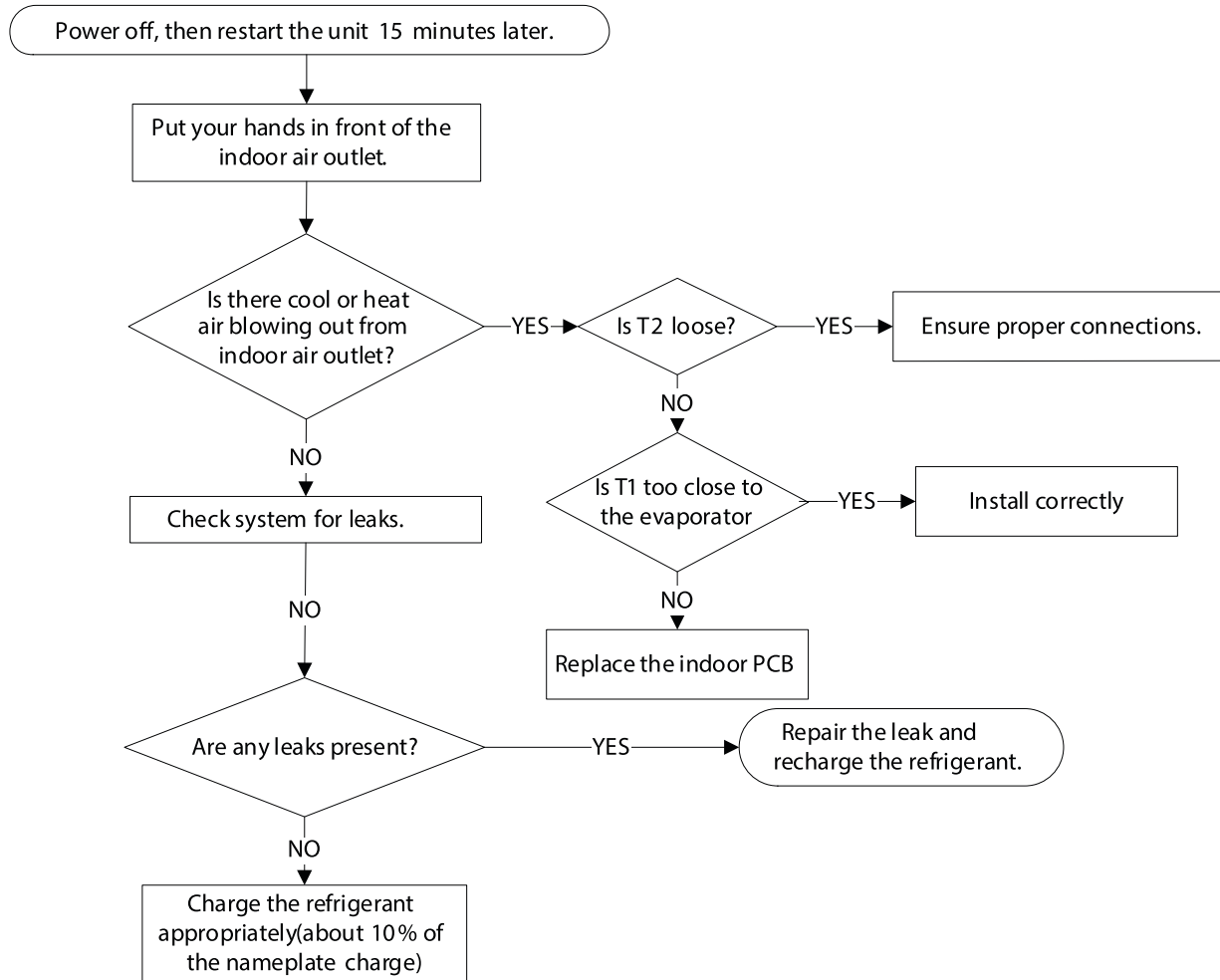


EL 0C (System Lacks Refrigerant Diagnosis and Solution)

Description: Judging the abnormality of the refrigeration system according to the number of compressor stops and the changes in operating parameters caused by excessive exhaust temperature.

Recommended parts to prepare: Indoor PCB, Additional refrigerant

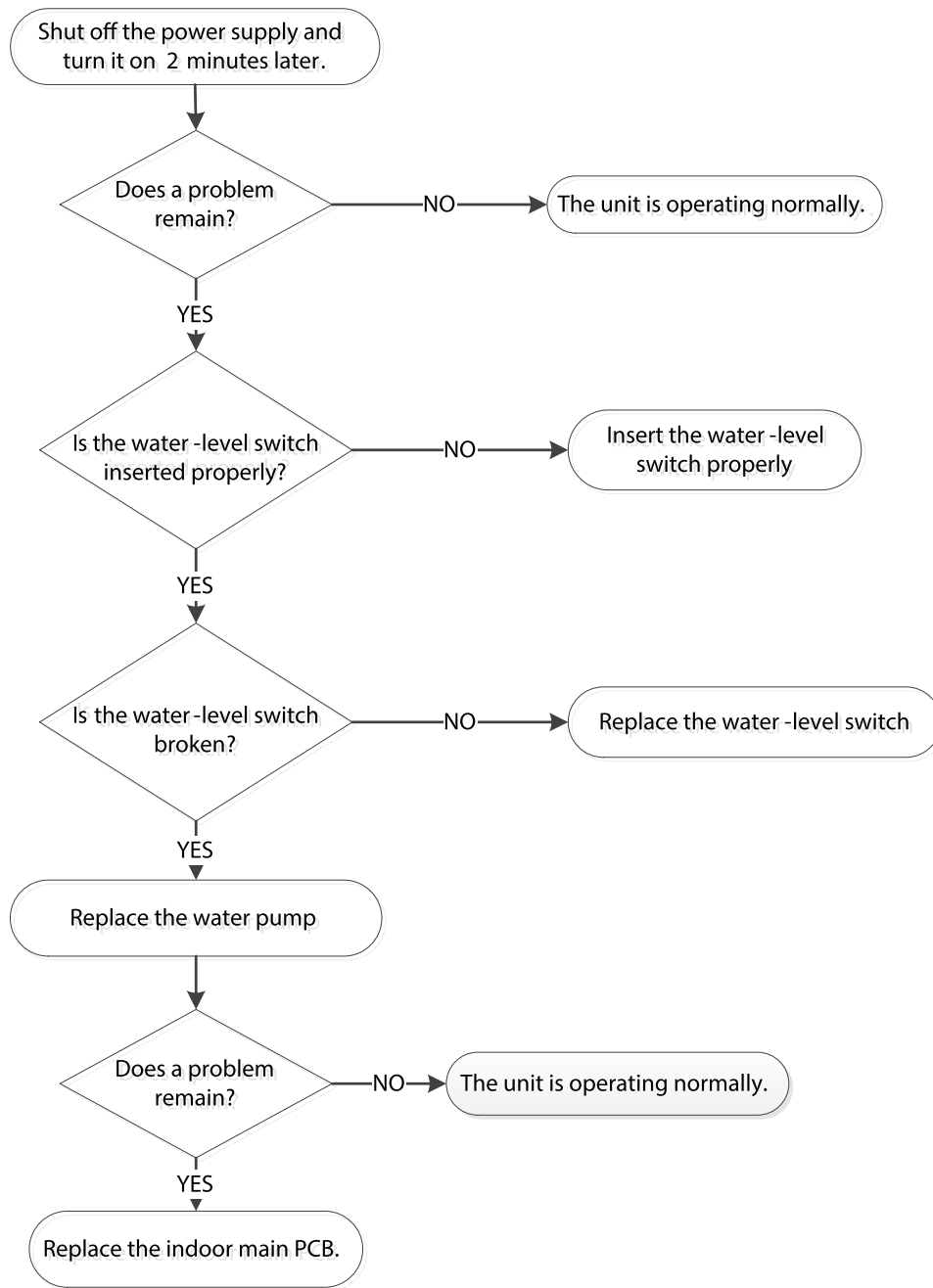
Troubleshooting and repair:



EH 0E (Water-Level Alarm Malfunction Diagnosis and Solution)

Description: If the sampling voltage is not 5V, the LED displays the failure code.

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires, Water-level switch, Water pump, Indoor PCB

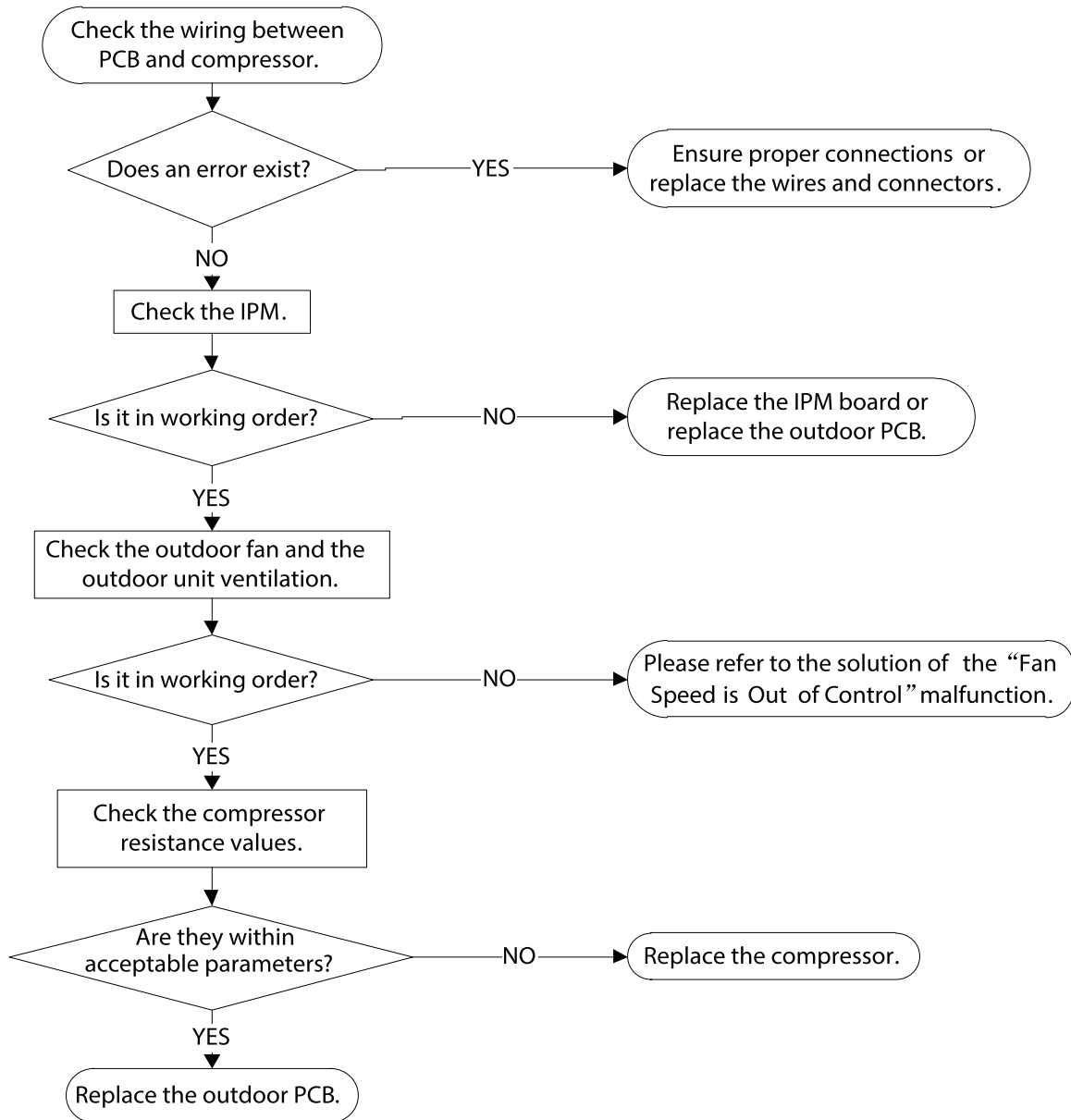


PC 00 (ODU IPM Module Protection Diagnosis and Solution)

Description: When the voltage signal the IPM sends to the compressor drive chip is abnormal, the display LED shows "PC 00" and the AC turn off.

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires, IPM module board, Outdoor fan assembly, Compressor, Outdoor PCB

Troubleshooting and repair:



NOTE: For certain models, the outdoor PCB can not be removed separately. In this case, the outdoor electric control box should be replaced as a whole.

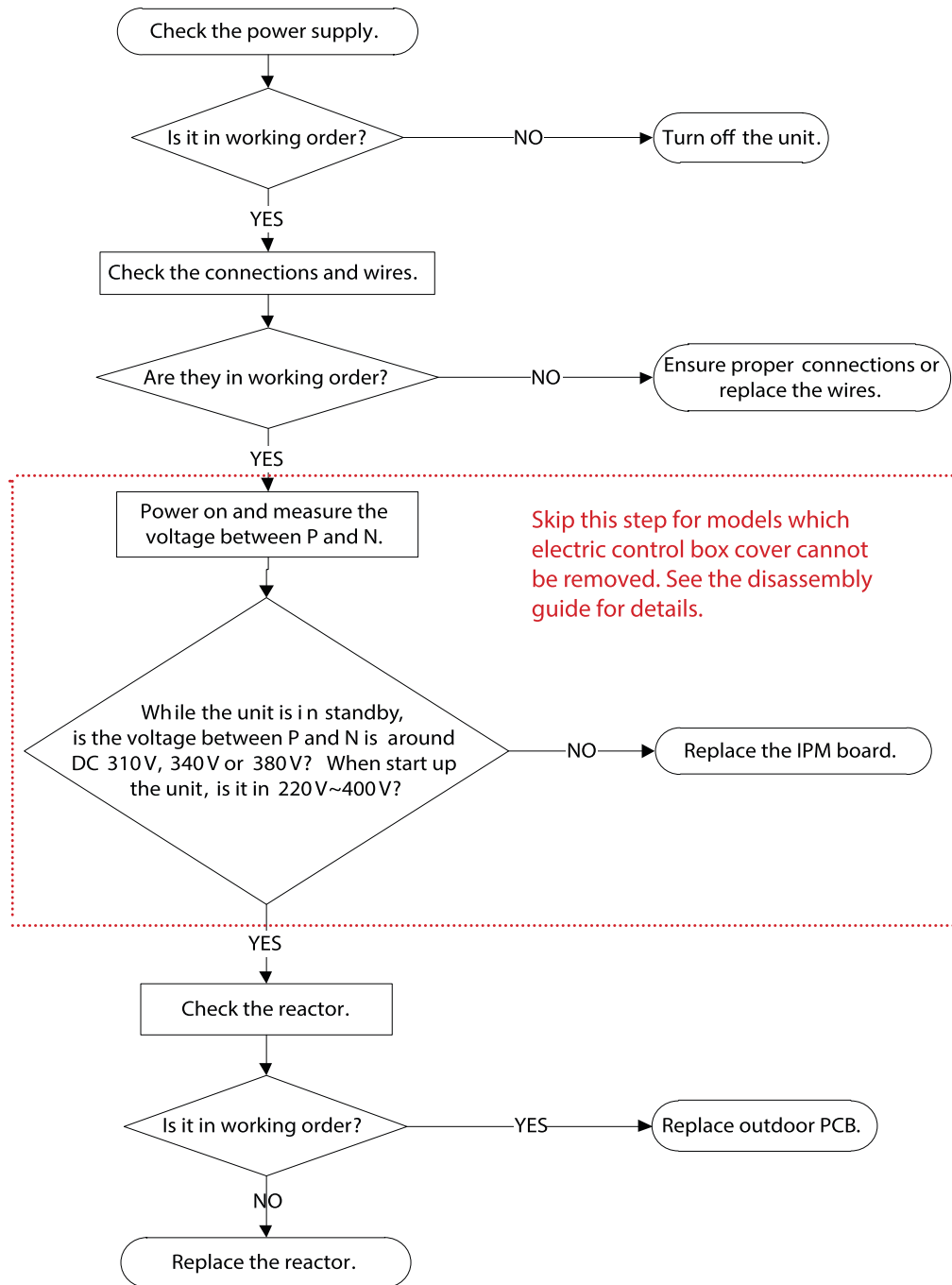
PC 10 / PC 11 / PC 12 (ODU Voltage Protection Diagnosis and Solution)

PC 10 (Outdoor unit low AC voltage protection) / PC 11 (Outdoor unit main control board DC bus high voltage protection) / PC 12 (Outdoor unit main control board DC bus high voltage protection/341 MCE error) Diagnosis and Solution

Description: Abnormal increases or decreases in voltage are detected by checking the specified voltage detection circuit.

Recommended parts to prepare: Power supply wires, IPM module board, PCB, Reactor

Troubleshooting and repair:



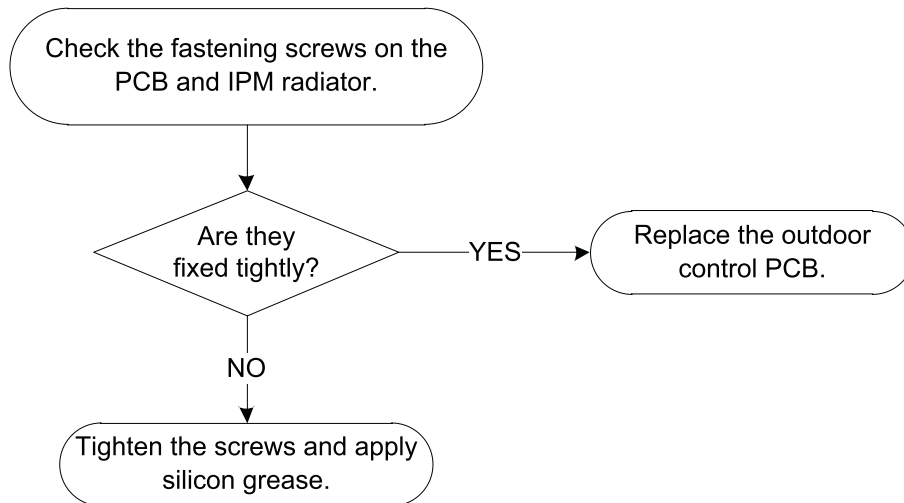
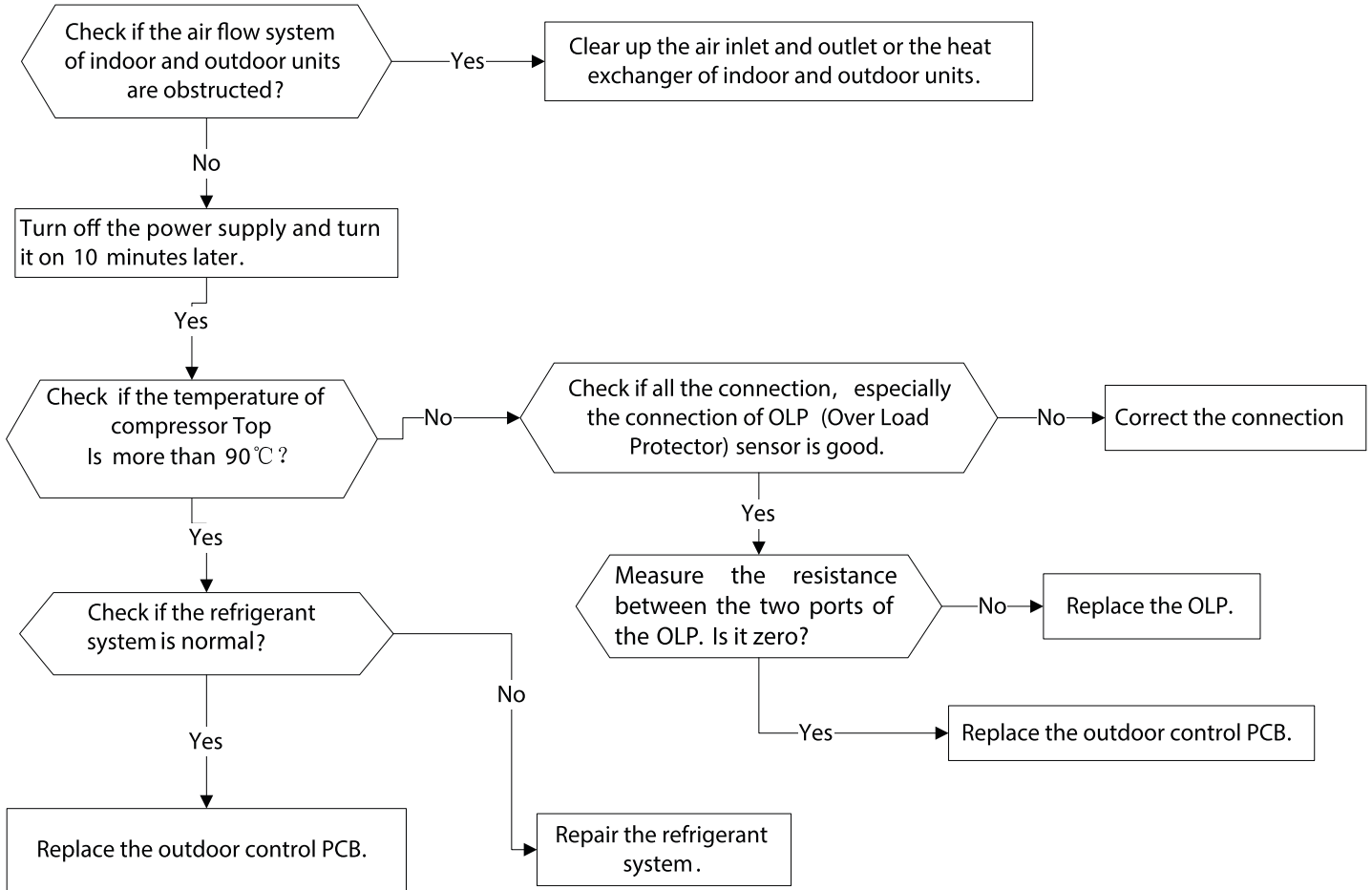
NOTE: For certain models, the outdoor PCB cannot be removed separately. In this case, the outdoor electric control box should be replaced as a whole.

PC 02 / LC 06 (Compressor Top (or IPM) Temp. Protection Diagnosis and Solution)

Description: For some models with overload protection, If the sampling voltage is not 5V, the LED will display the failure. If the temperature of IPM module is higher than a certain value, the LED displays the failure code.

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires, Outdoor PCB, IPM module board, High pressure protector, System blockages

Troubleshooting and repair:

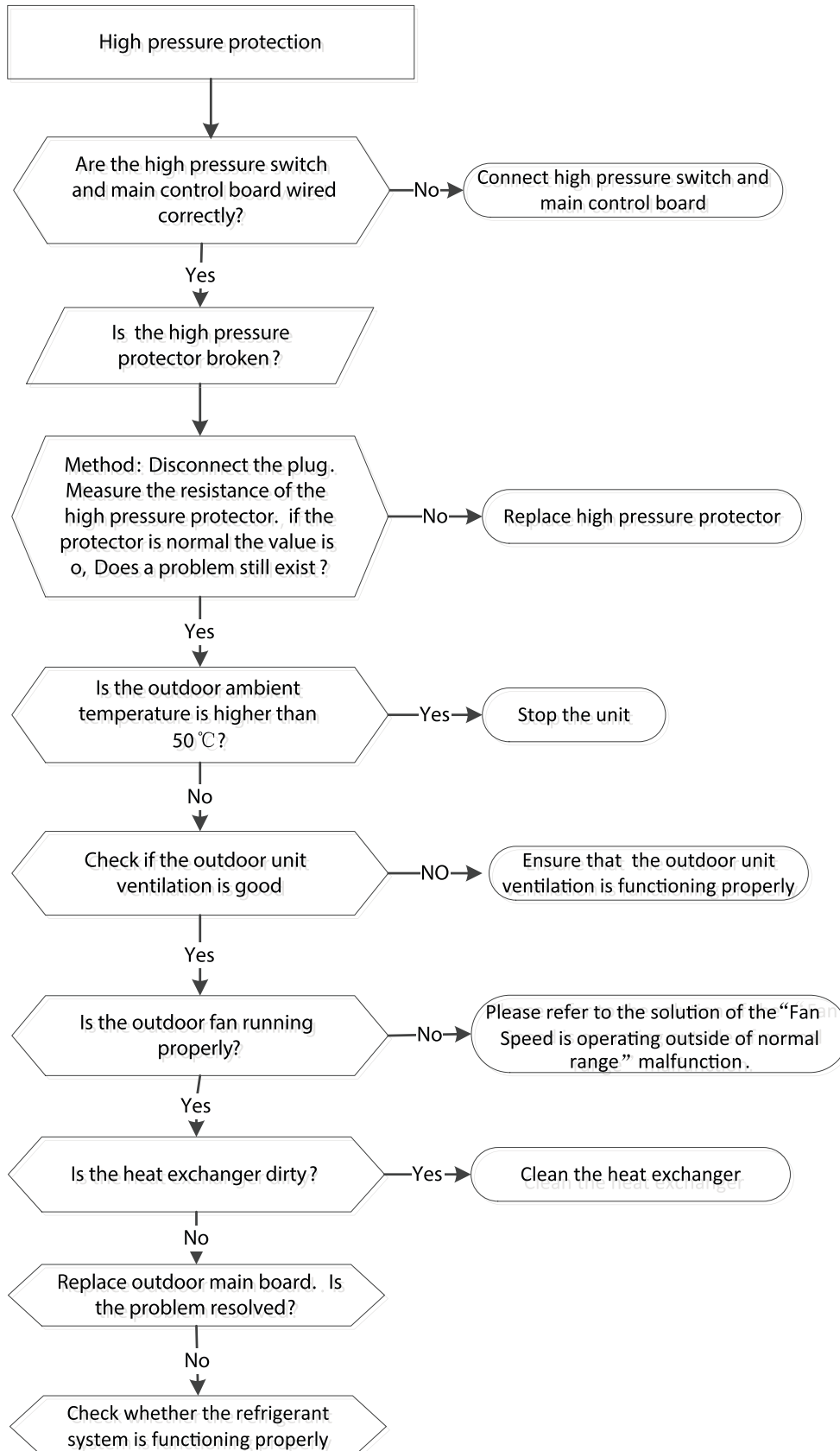


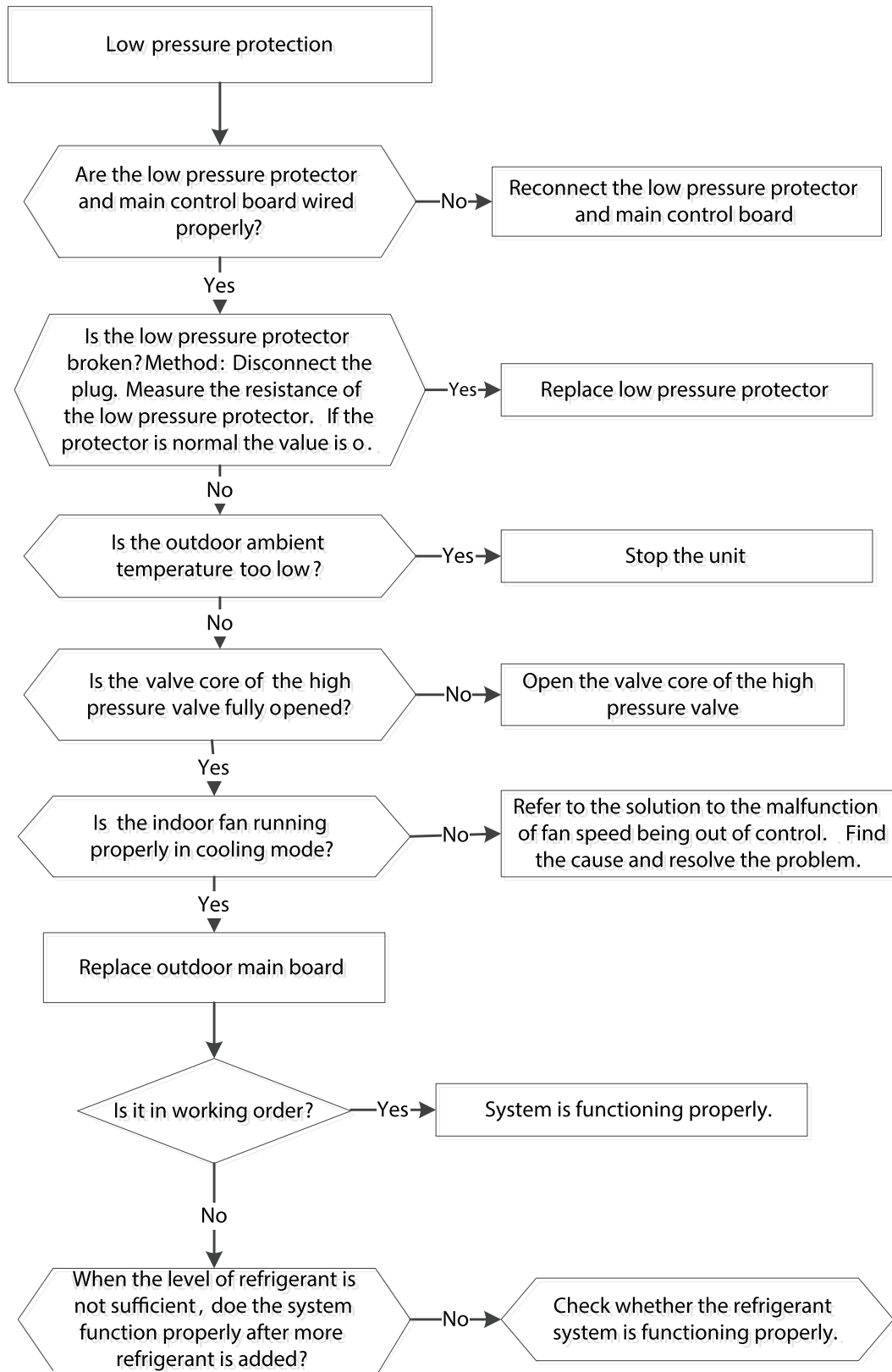
PC 03 Pressure Protection (low or high pressure), PC 30 High Pressure Protection, PC 31 Low Pressure Protection (Diagnosis and Solution)

Description: Outdoor pressure switch cut off the system because high pressure is higher than 4.4 MPa or outdoor pressure switch cut off the system because low pressure is lower than 0.13 MPa, the LED displays the failure code.

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires, Pressure switch, Outdoor fan, Outdoor main PCB, Refrigerant

Troubleshooting and repair:



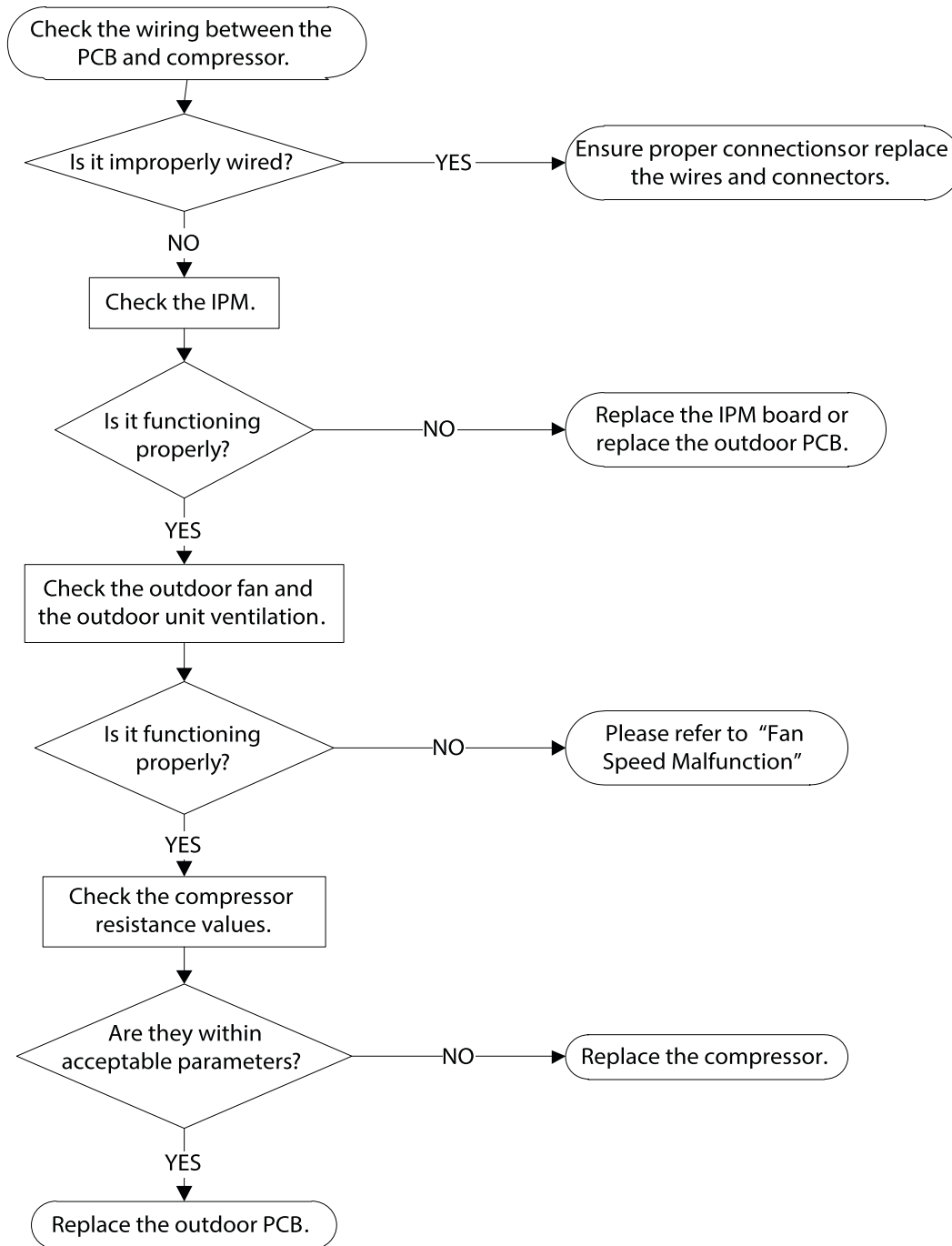


PC 04 (Inverter Compressor Drive Error Diagnosis and Solution)

Description: An abnormal inverter compressor drive is detected by a special detection circuit, including communication signal detection, voltage detection, compressor rotation speed signal detection and so on.

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires, IPM module board, Outdoor fan assembly, Compressor, Outdoor PCB

Troubleshooting and repair:

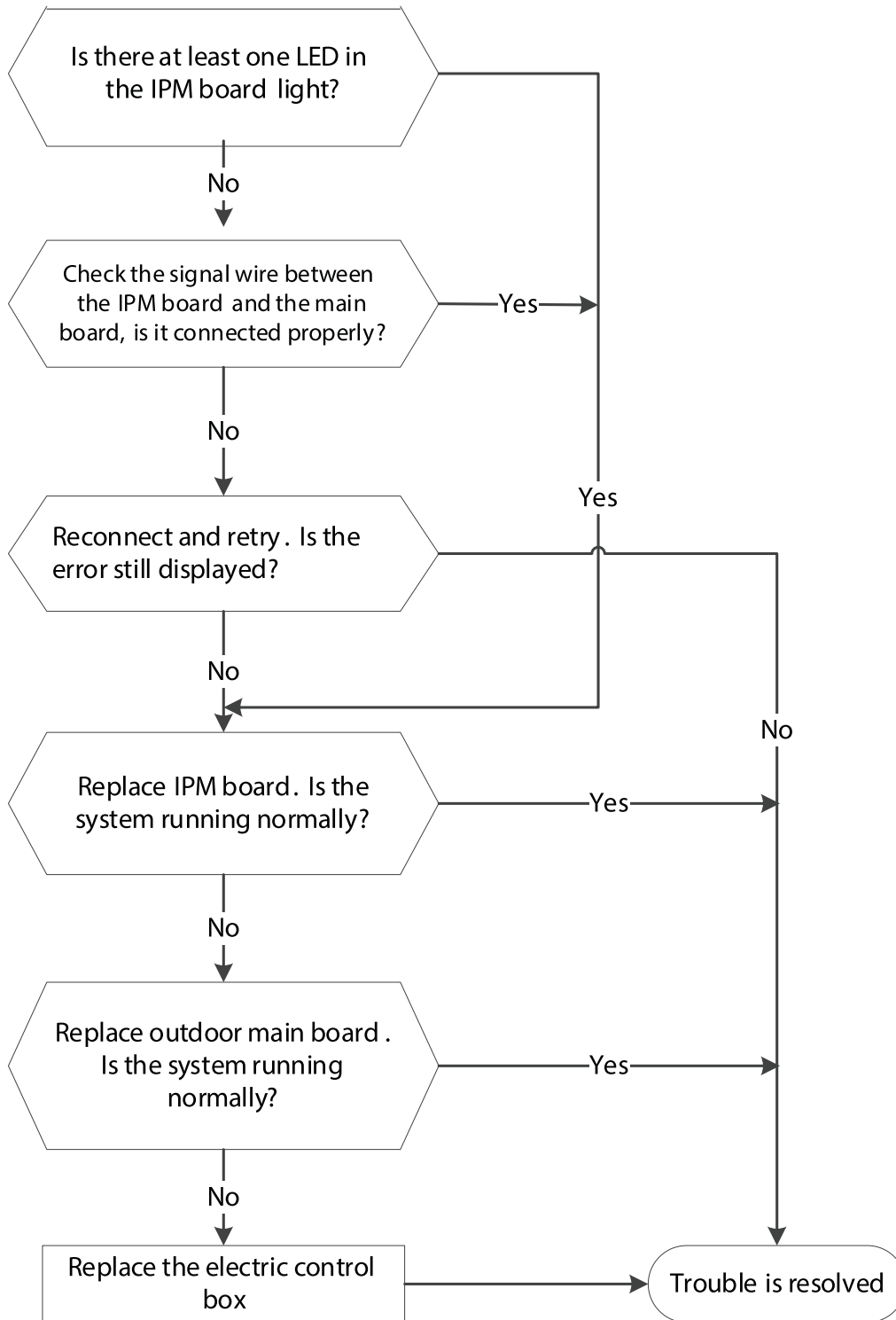


PC 40 (Communication error between ODU main chip and compressor driven chip diagnosis and solution)

Description: The main PCB cannot detect the IPM board.

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires, Outdoor PCB, IPM module board, Electric control box

Troubleshooting and repair:

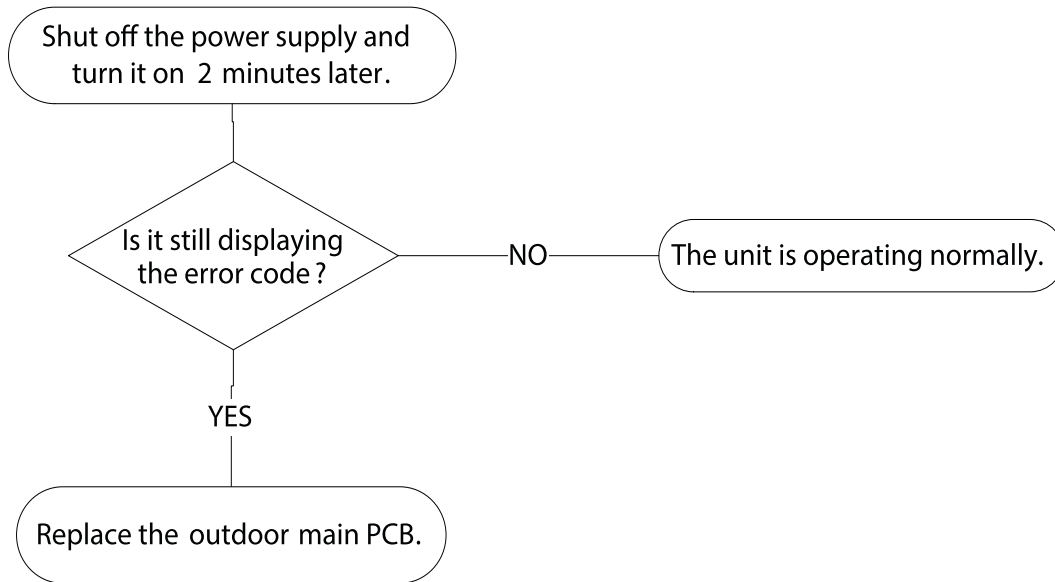


PC 41 (Outdoor compressor current sampling circuit failure diagnosis and solution)

Description: Three-phase sampling offset voltage error, the static bias voltage is normally 2.5V.

Recommended parts to prepare: Outdoor main PCB

Troubleshooting and repair:

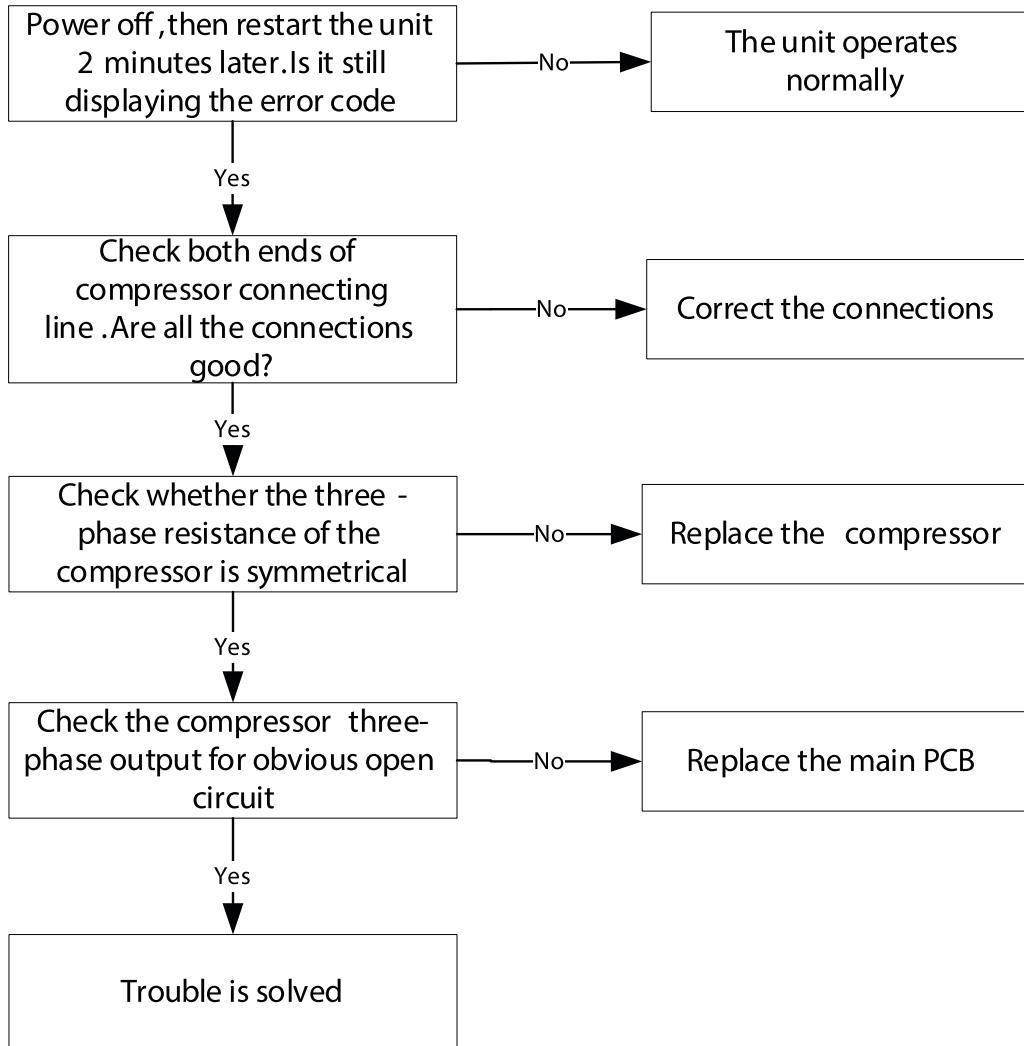


PC 43 (ODU compressor lack phase protection diagnosis and solution)

Description: When the three-phase sampling current of the compressor is abnormal, especially when the current of one or more phases is always small and almost 0, the LED displays the failure code.

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wire, Compressor, Outdoor PCB

Troubleshooting and repair:

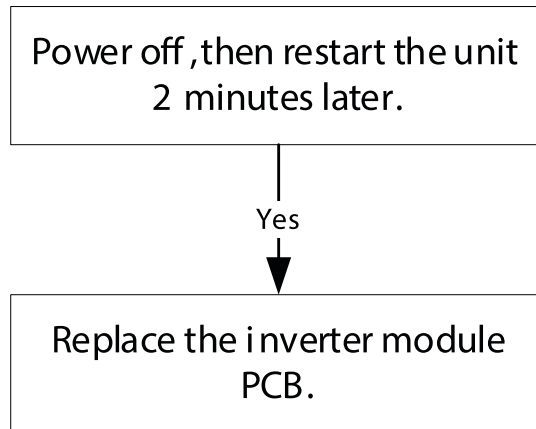


PC 45 (ODU IR chip drive failure diagnosis and solution)

Description: When the IR chip detects its own parameter error, the LED displays the failure code when power on.

Recommended parts to prepare: Inverter module PCB.

Troubleshooting and repair:

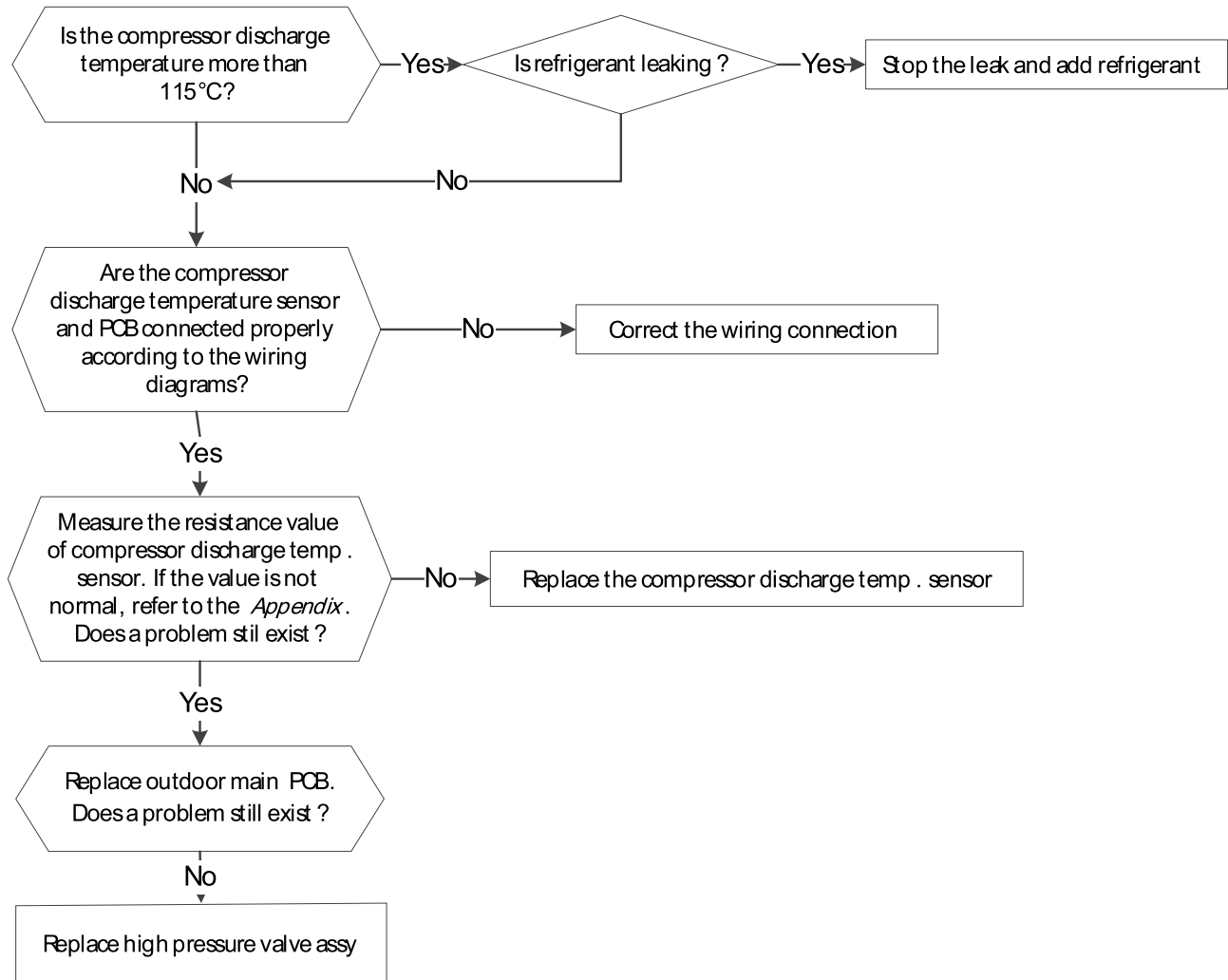


PC 06 (Discharge temperature protection of compressor diagnosis and solution)

Description: When the compressor discharge temperature (TP) is more than 115°C for 10 seconds, the compressor ceases operation and does not restart until TP is less than 90°C

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires, Outdoor PCB, Discharge temperature sensor, Refrigerant

Troubleshooting and repair:

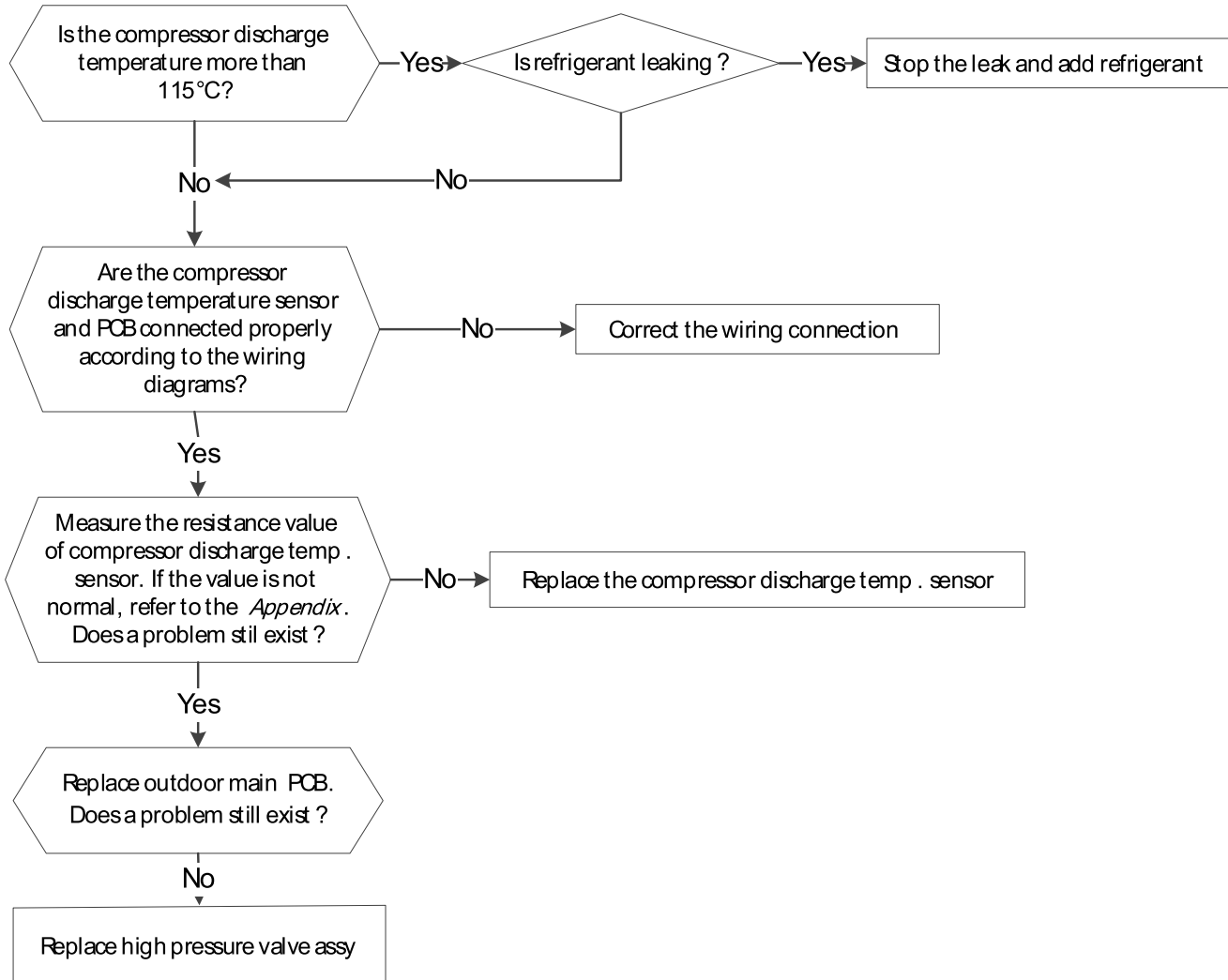


PC 08 (Current overload protection)/ PC 42 (Compressor start failure of outdoor unit)/ PC 44 (ODU zero speed protection) / PC 46 (Compressor speed has been out of control)/ PC 49 (Compressor overcurrent failure)

Description: An abnormal current rise is detected by checking the specified current detection circuit.

Recommended parts to prepare: Outdoor PCB, Connection wires, Bridge rectifier, PFC circuit or reactor, Refrigeration piping system, Pressure switch, Outdoor fan, PM module board

Troubleshooting and repair:

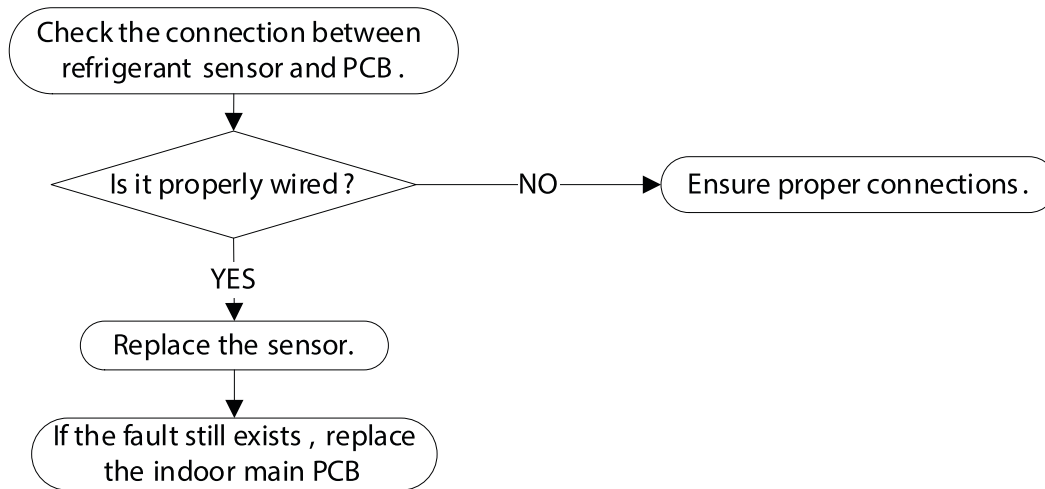


FH CC/ EH C3 Refrigerant sensor error or Refrigerant sensor is out of range diagnosis and solution

Description: Indoor unit receives fault signal for 10s or indoor unit does not receive feedback from refrigerant sensor for 150s.

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires, Sensors, Indoor main PCB

Troubleshooting and repair:

**EH C1/ EH C2/ EC C1 Refrigerant sensor detects leakage or Refrigerant sensor is out of range and leakage is detected diagnosis and solution**

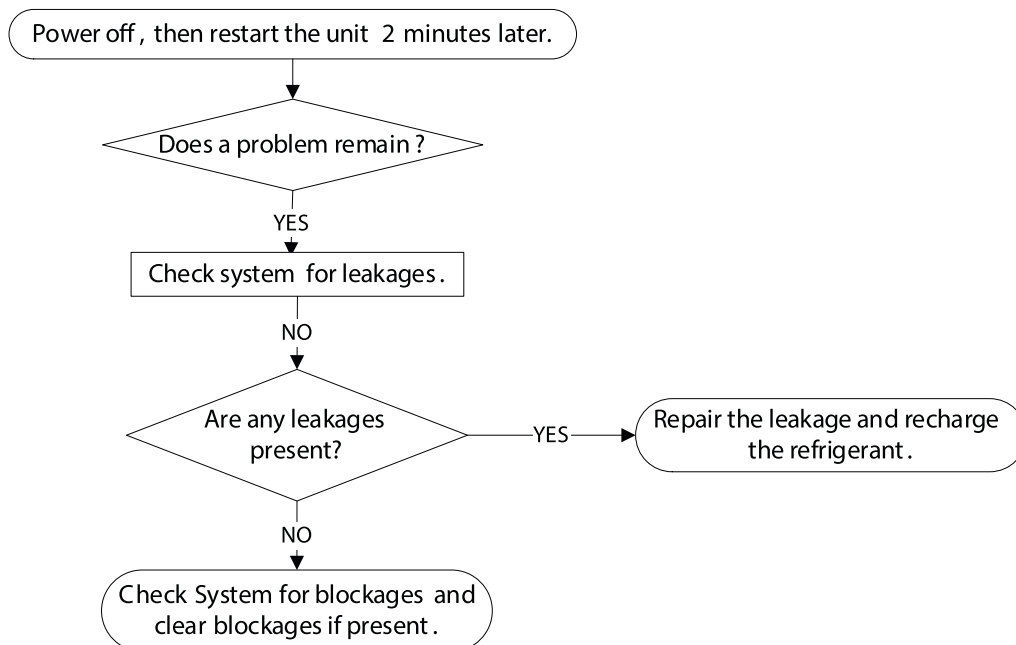
Description:

The refrigerant sensor detects a concentration higher than or equal to 10%*LFL for 10 seconds or the refrigerant sensor detects a concentration higher than or equal to 20%*LFL or the multi model receives the refrigerant leakage protection fault sent by the outdoor unit.

Multi-zone: Only the buzzer of the indoor unit that detects refrigerant leakage continues to sound the alarm, the shortest sound is 10 seconds, and the longest sound is 5 minutes (you can press any key such as remote control or wire control, APP and so on to eliminate the alarm), and the other non-refrigerant leakage fault indoor unit only displays ECC1, but the buzzer does not sound.

Recommended parts to prepare: Additional refrigerant

Troubleshooting and repair:

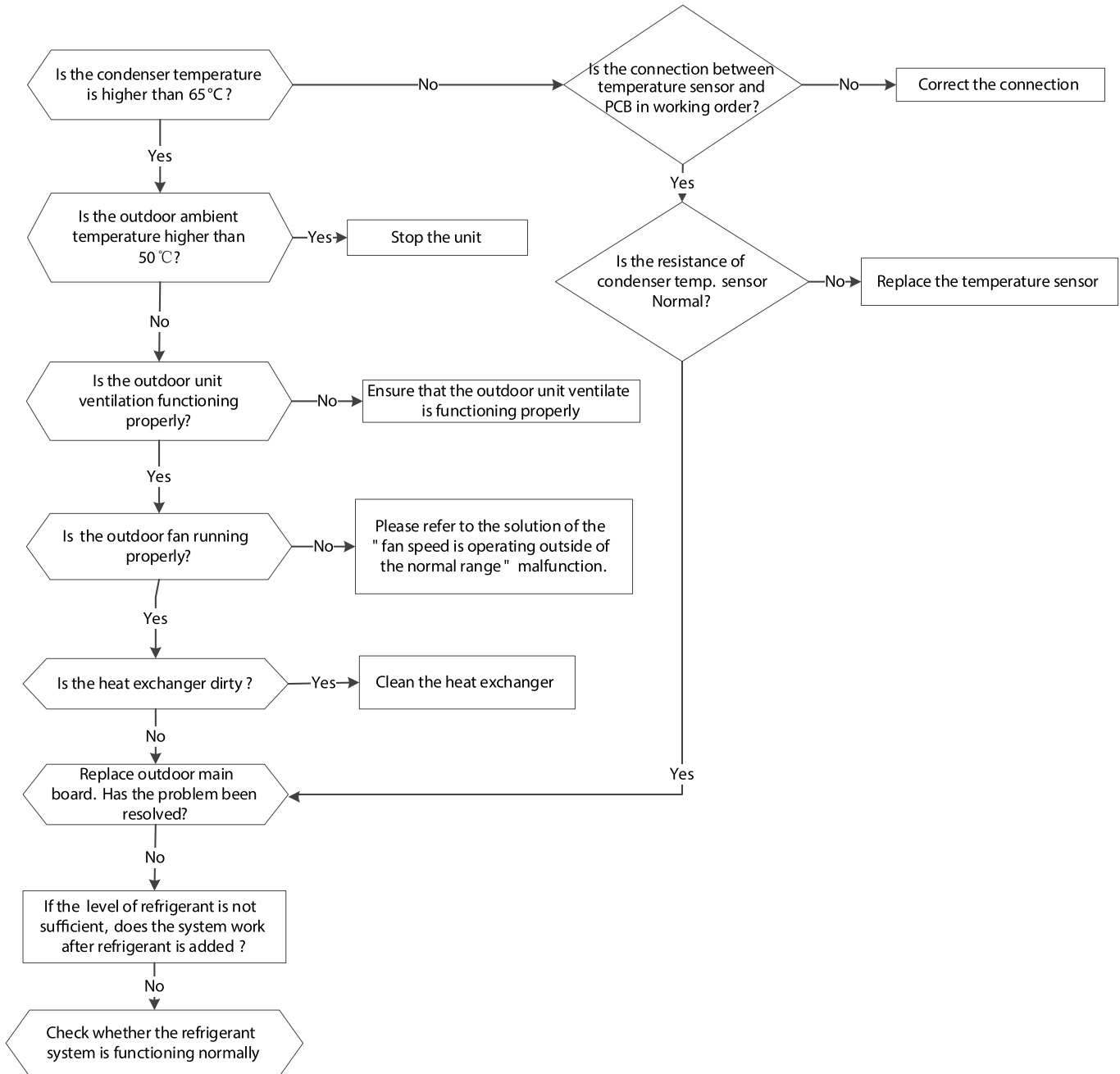


PC 0A (High temperature protection of condenser diagnosis and solution)

Description: The unit will stop when condenser temperature is higher than 65°C, and runs again when it is less than 52°C

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires, Condenser temperature sensor, Outdoor fan, Outdoor main PCB, Refrigerant

Troubleshooting and repair:

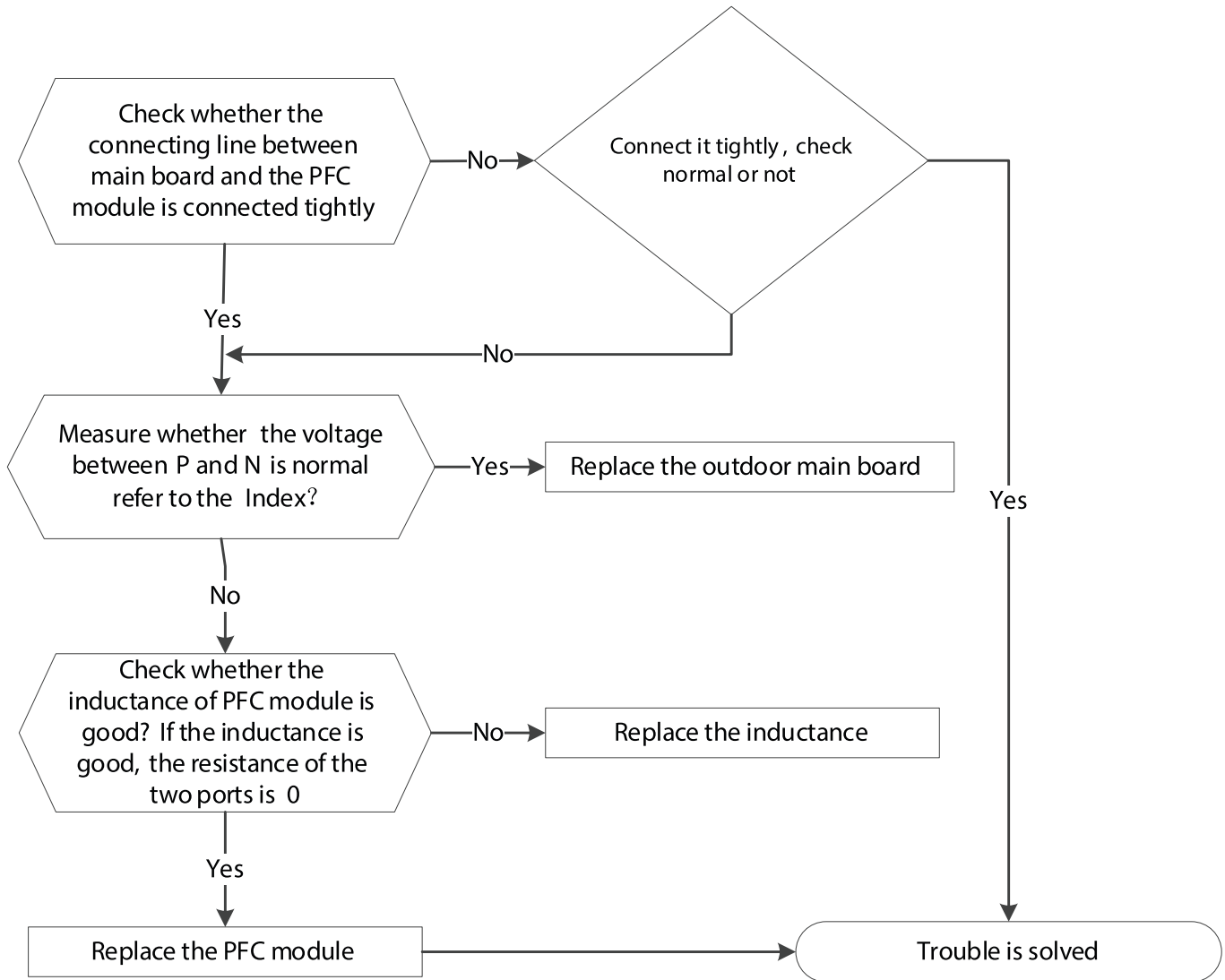


PC 0F (PFC module protection diagnosis and solution)

Description: Outdoor PCB detects PFC signal is low voltage or DC voltage is lower than 340V for 6s when quick check.

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires Outdoor PCB, Inductance, PFC circuit or IPM module board

Troubleshooting and repair:

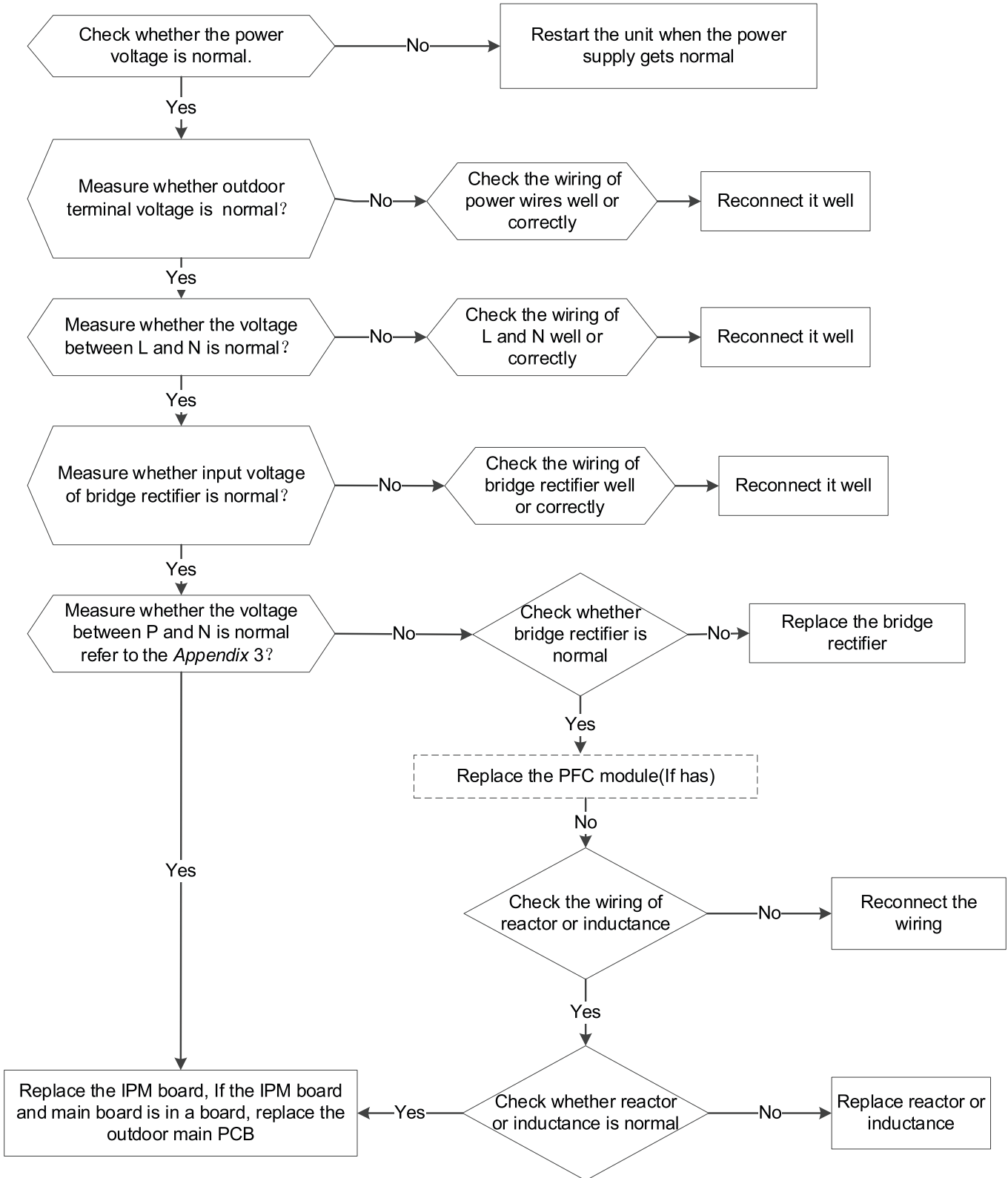


PC 10 (ODU low AC voltage protection)/ PC 11 (ODU main control board DC bus high voltage protection)/ PC 12 (ODU main control board DC bus high voltage protection /341 MCE error) Diagnosis and Solution

Description: Abnormal increases or decreases in voltage are detected by checking the specified voltage detection circuit.

Recommended parts to prepare: Power supply wires, IPM module board, Outdoor PCB, Bridge rectifier, PFC circuit or reactor

Troubleshooting and repair:



PC 0L (Low Ambient Temperature Protection)

Description: It is a protection function. When compressor is off, outdoor ambient temperature(T4) is lower than -35oC. for 10s, the AC will stop and display the failure code.

When compressor is on, outdoor ambient temperature(T4) is lower than -40oC.for 10s, the AC will stop and display the failure code.

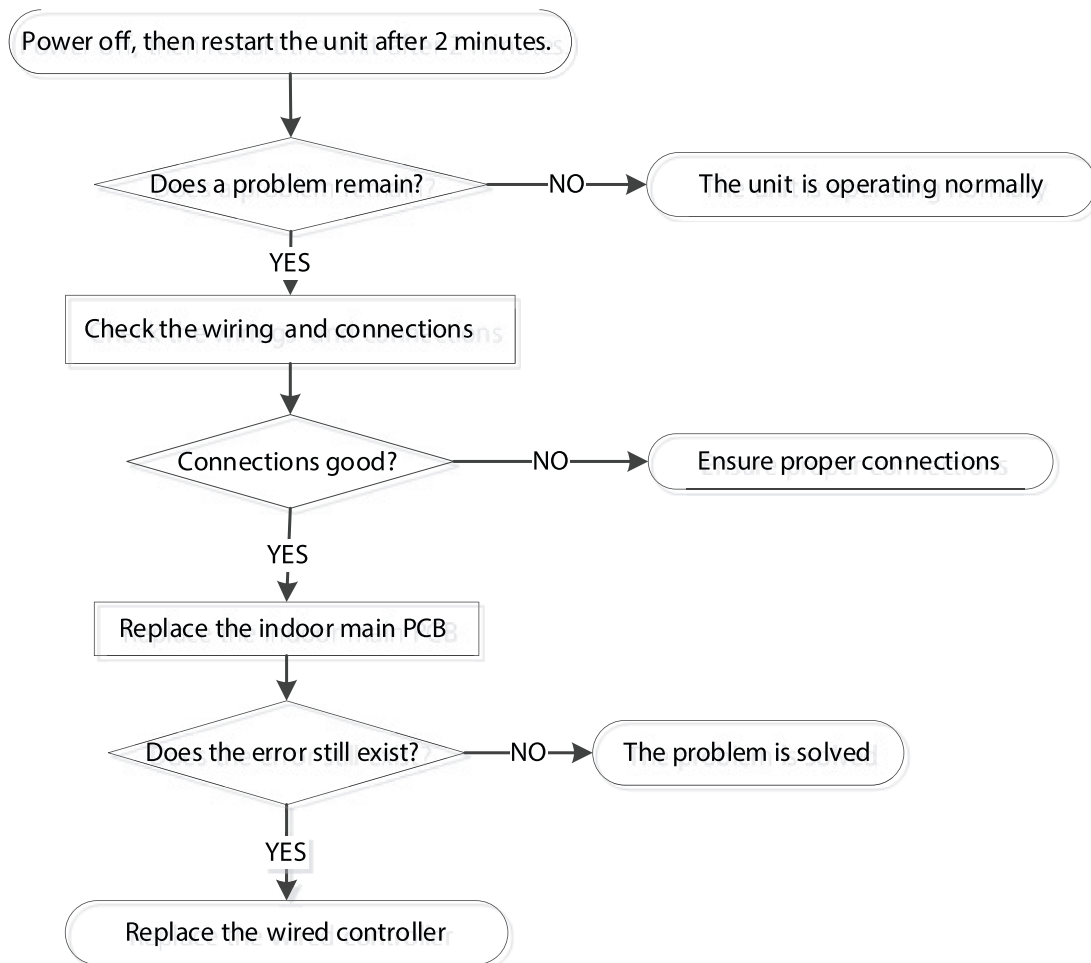
When outdoor ambient temperature(T4) is no lower than -32oC.for 10s, the unit will exit protection

EH b3 (Communication Malfunction Between Wire and Master Control) Diagnosis and Solution

Description: If Indoor PCB does not receive feedback from wired controller, the error displays on the wired controller

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires, Indoor PCB, Wired controller

Troubleshooting and repair:

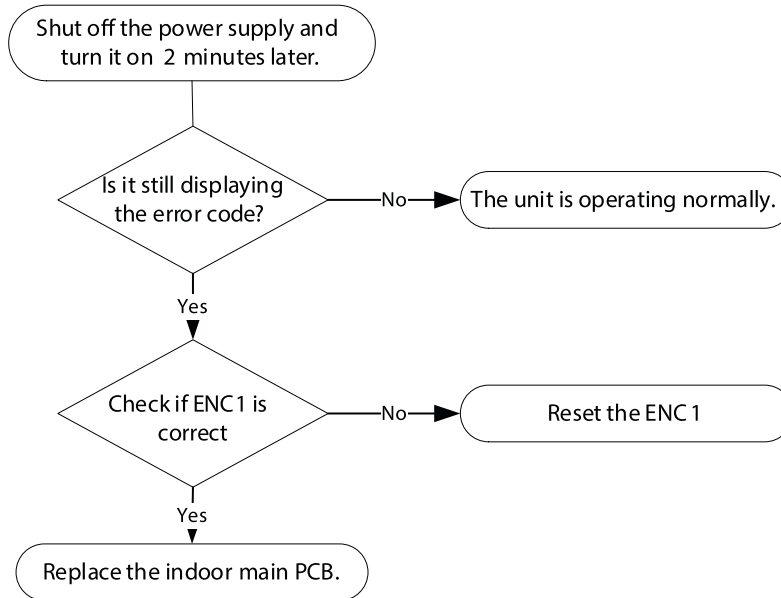


EH bA (Communication Malfunction Between Indoor Unit and External Fan Module)/ EH 3A(External Fan DC Bus Voltage Is Too Low Protection)/ EH 3b (External Fan DC Bus Voltage is Too High) Fault) Diagnosis and Solution

Description: Indoor unit does not receive the feedback from external fan module during 150 seconds. or Indoor unit receives abnormal increases or decreases in voltage from external fan module.

Recommended parts to prepare: Indoor main PCB

Troubleshooting and repair:

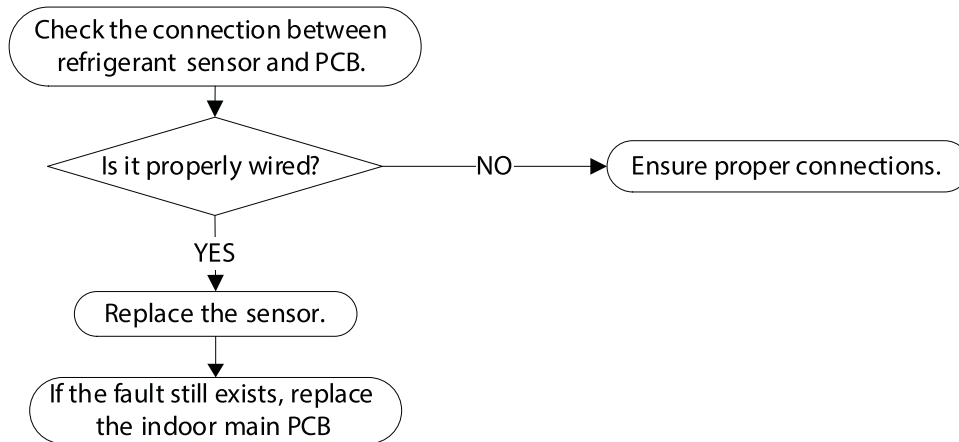


FH CC (Refrigerant Sensor Error) or EH C3(Refrigerant Sensor is Out of Range) Diagnosis and Solution

Description: Indoor unit receives fault signal for 10s or indoor unit does not receive feedback from refrigerant sensor for 150s.

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires, Sensors, Indoor main PCB

Troubleshooting and repair:



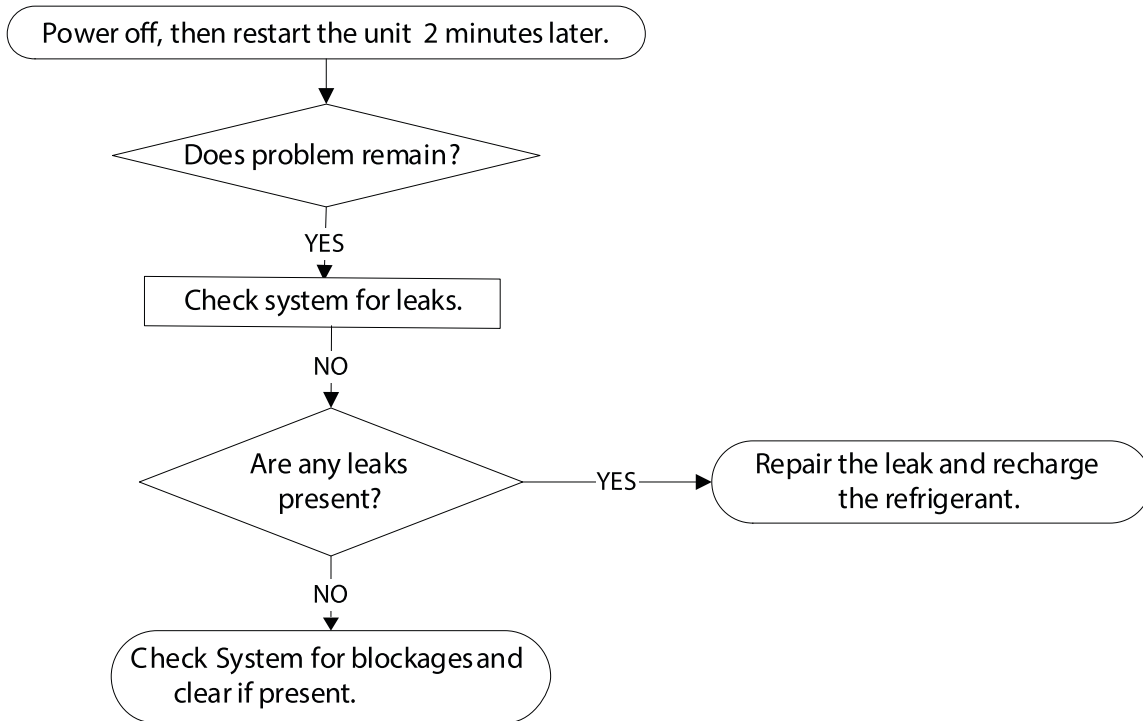
EH C1 (Refrigerant Sensor Detects Leakage) or EH C2 (Refrigerant Sensor is Out of Range and Leakage is Detected) Diagnosis and Solution

Description: The refrigerant sensor detects a concentration higher than or equal to 10%*LFL for 10 seconds or the refrigerant sensor detects a concentration higher than or equal to 20%*LFL or the multi model receives the refrigerant leakage protection fault sent by the outdoor unit.

Multi-zone: Only the buzzer of the indoor unit that detects refrigerant leakage continues to sound the alarm, the shortest sound is 10 seconds, and the longest sound is 5 minutes (you can press any key such as remote control or wire control, APP and so on to eliminate the alarm), and the other non-refrigerant leakage fault indoor unit only displays "ECC1", but the buzzer does not sound.

Recommended parts to prepare: Additional refrigerant

Troubleshooting and repair:

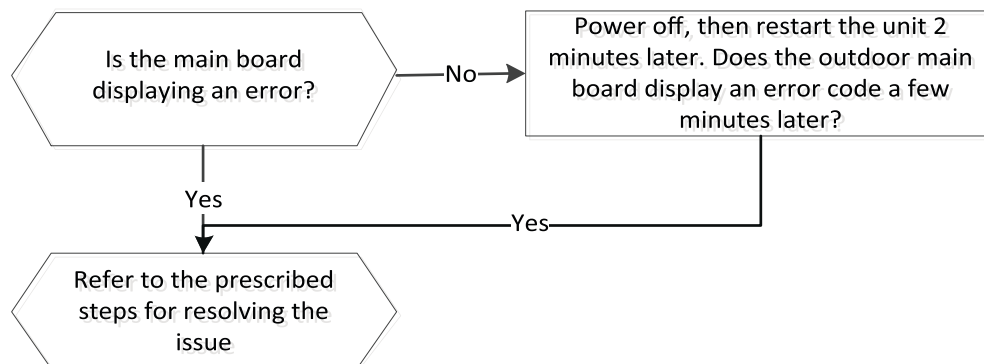


EC 0d (ODU Malfunction Diagnosis and Solution)

Description: The indoor unit detects the outdoor unit in error.

Recommended parts to prepare: Outdoor unit

Troubleshooting and repair:

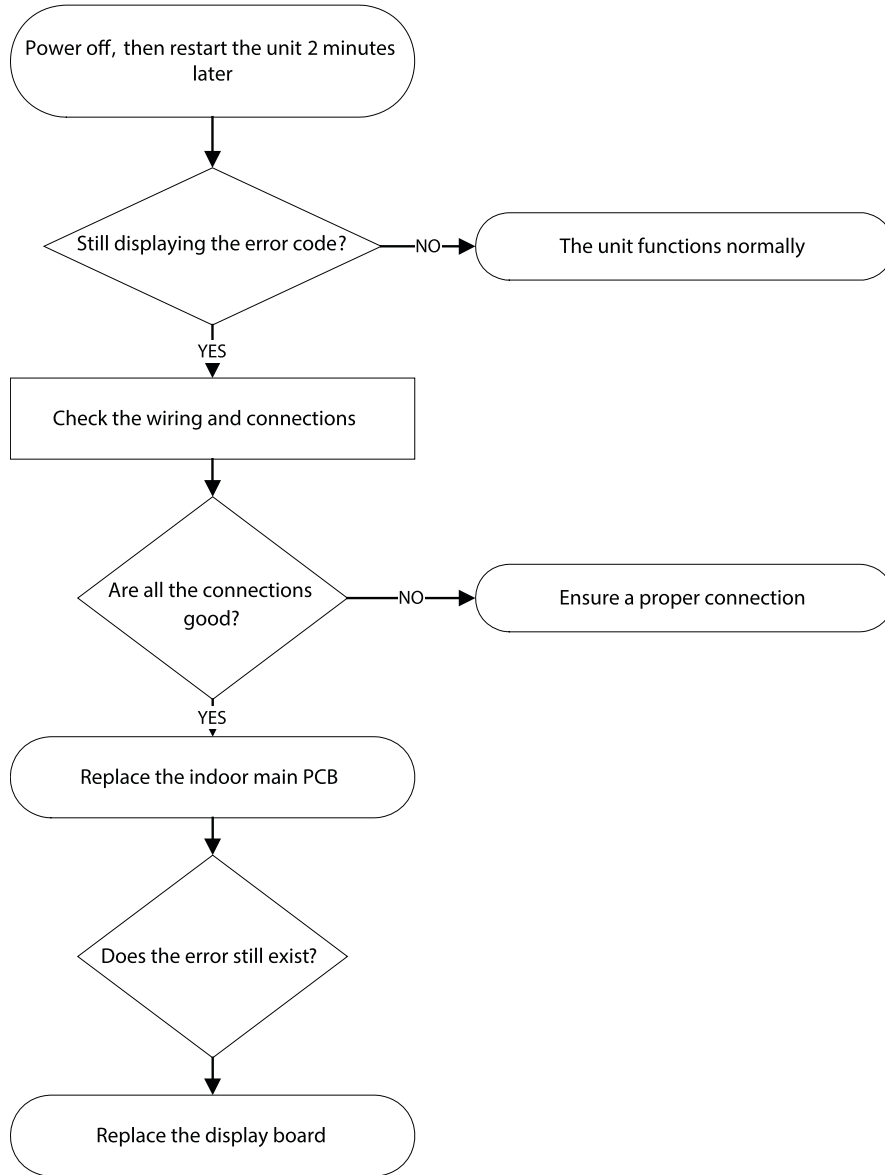


EH 06 (IDU Main Control Board and Display Board Communication Error Diagnosis and Solution)

Description: Indoor PCB does not receive feedback from the display board.

Recommended parts to prepare: Communication wire, Indoor PCB, Display board

Troubleshooting and repair:

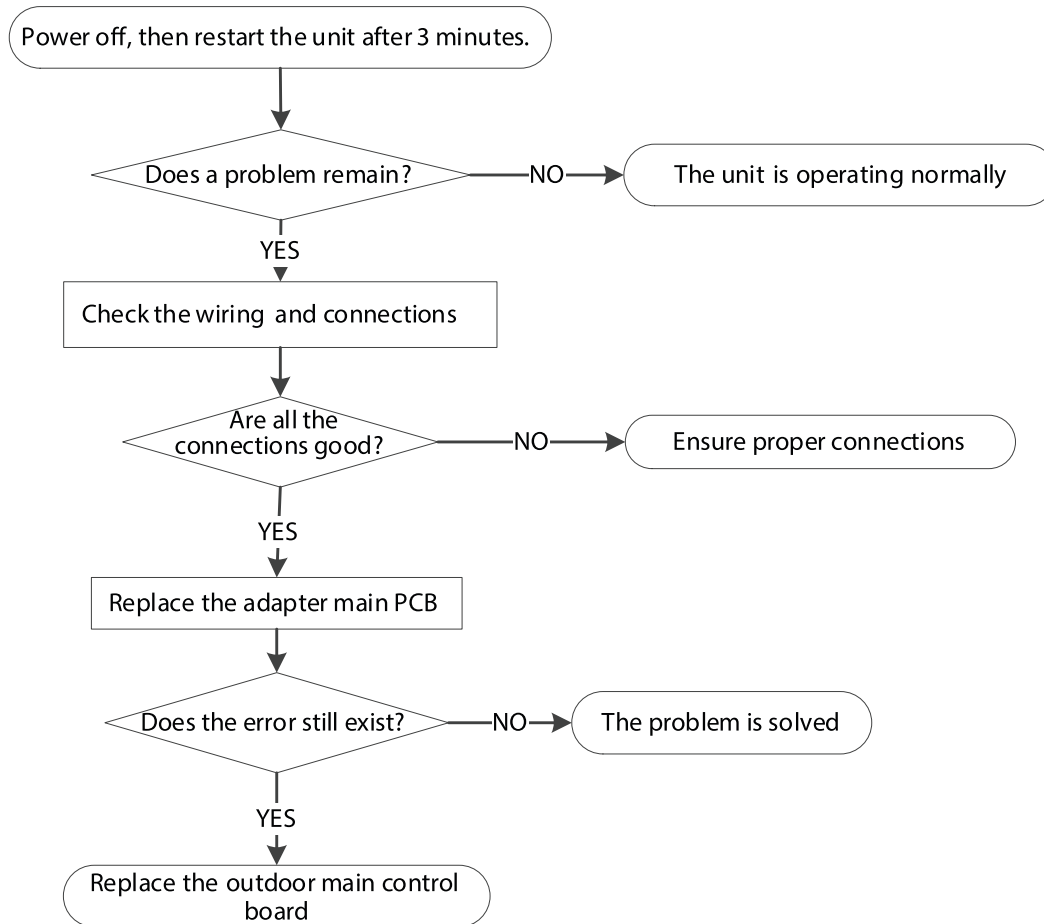


EL 16 (Communication Malfunction Between Adapter Board and Outdoor Main Board Diagnosis and Solution)

Description: The adapter PCB cannot detect the main control board.

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires, Adapter board, Outdoor main PCB

Troubleshooting and repair:



FL 09 (Mismatch between the new and old platforms diagnosis and solution)

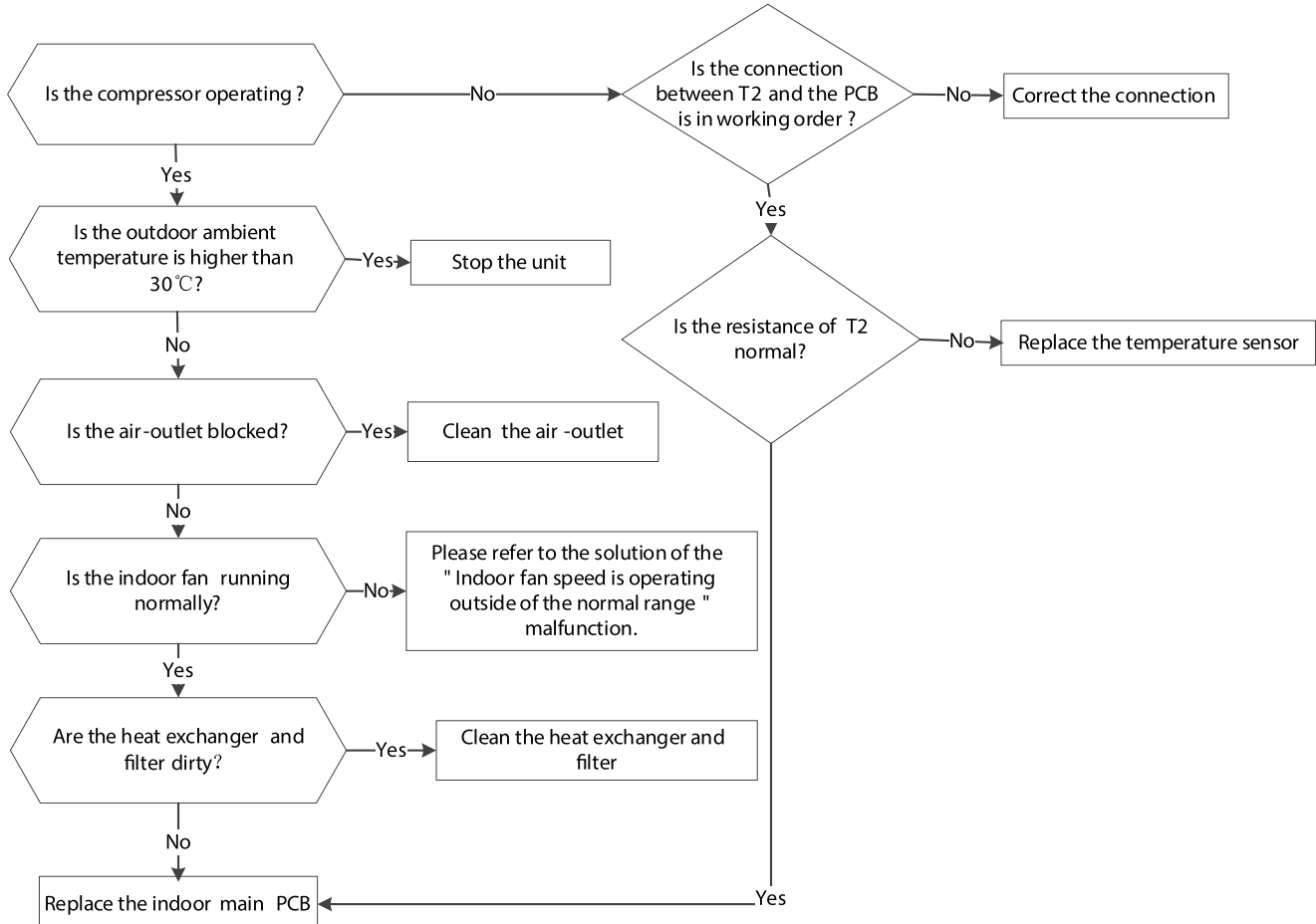
Description: Indoor and outdoor units are mismatched, the LED displays this code. Please replace the matching indoor or outdoor unit.

PH 90 (High temperature protection of evaporator diagnosis and solution)

Description: When evaporator coil temperature is more than 60°C in heating mode, the unit stops. It starts again only when the evaporator coil temperature is less than 52°C.

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires, Evaporator coil temperature sensor (T2), Indoor fan, Indoor main PCB

Troubleshooting and repair:

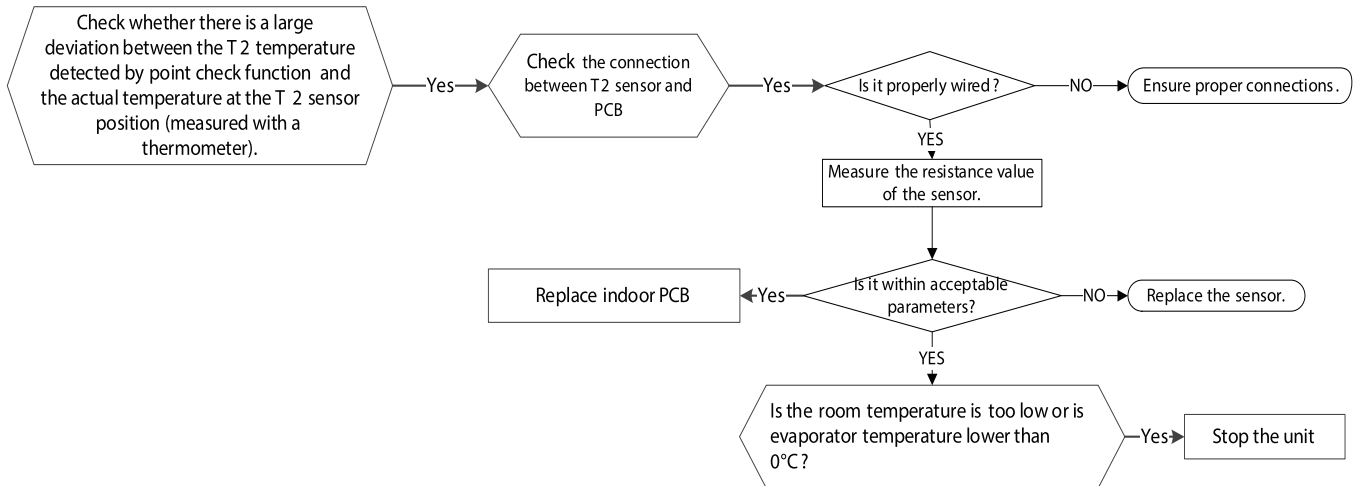


PH 91 (Low temperature protection of evaporator diagnosis and solution)

Description: When evaporator coil temperature is lower than 0°C in cooling mode or drying mode, the unit stops. It starts again only when the evaporator coil temperature is more than 5°C.

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires, Evaporator coil temperature sensor (T2), Indoor main PCB

Troubleshooting and repair:



CHECK PROCEDURES**Temperature Sensor Check****! WARNING****ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD**

Be sure to turn off all power supplies or disconnect all wires to avoid electric shock. Operate after compressor and coil have returned to normal temperature in case of injury.

1. Disconnect the temperature sensor from the PCB.
2. Measure the sensor's resistance value with a multi-meter.
3. Check the corresponding temperature sensor resistance value table (see "Temperature Sensor Resistance Value Table for TP (°C - K)" on page 90 and "Other Temperature Sensors Resistance Value Table (°C - K)" on page 91).

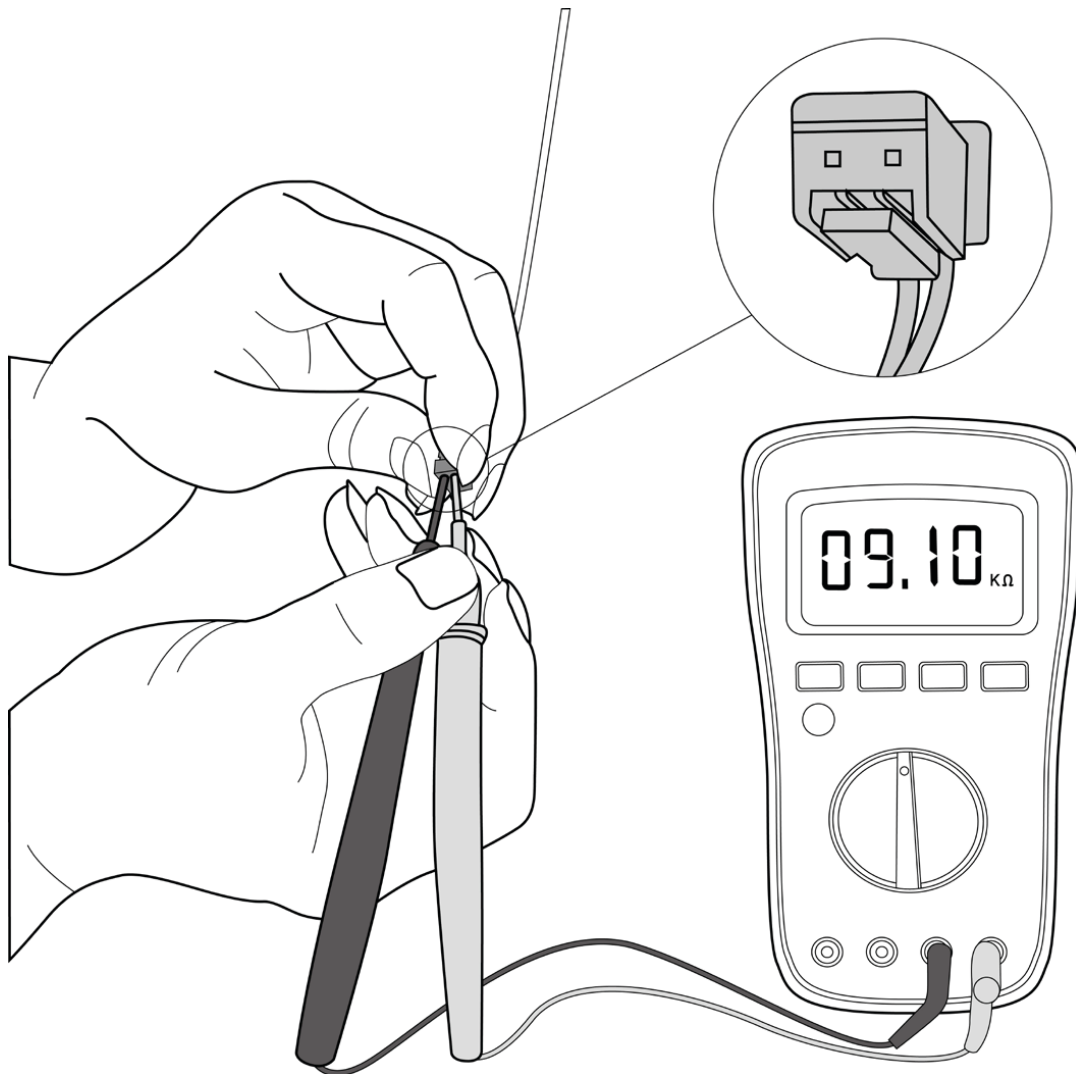


Fig. 33 —Measure the Sensor's Resistance Value

Compressor Check

1. Disconnect the compressor power cord from the outdoor PCB.
2. Measure the resistance value of each winding using a multi-meter.
3. Check the resistance value of each winding in tables 9 through 12:

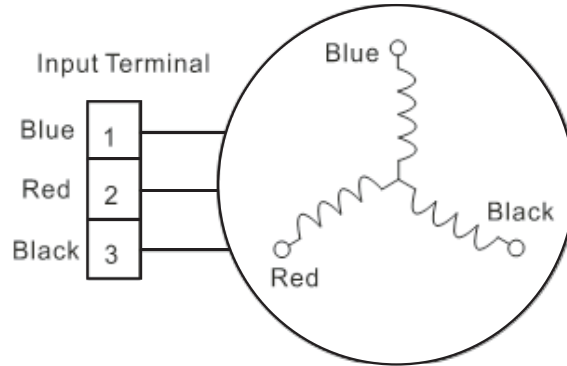


Fig. 34 —Compressor Check

Table 4 – Resistance Values

Resistance Value	KSN140D58UFZ	KTF250D22UMT	KTM240D46UKT2	KTF310D43UMT	MTH550UKPC8FU
Blue-Red	1.86Ω	0.75Ω	1.04Ω	0.65Ω	0.295Ω
Blue-Black					
Red-Black					

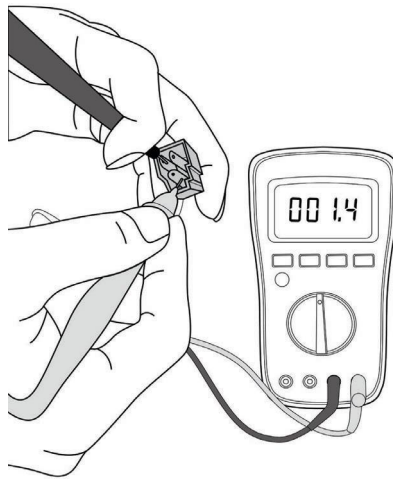


Fig. 35 —Resistance Check

NOTE: The picture and the value are only for reference, actual condition and specific value may vary.

IPM Continuity Check

! WARNING

ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD
 Electricity remains in capacitors even when the power supply is off.
 Ensure the capacitors are fully discharged before troubleshooting.

1. Turn off outdoor unit and disconnect power supply.
2. Discharge electrolytic capacitors and ensure all energy-storage unit has been discharged.
3. Disassemble outdoor PCB or disassemble IPM board.
4. Measure the resistance value between P and U(V, W, N); U(V, W) and N.

Table 5 – Resistance Value

Digital Tester		Resistance Value	Digital Tester		Resistance Value
(+) Red	(-) Black		(+) Red	(-) Black	
P	N	∞ (Several Mf Ω)	U	N	∞ (Several Mf Ω)
	U		V		
	V		W		
	W		-		

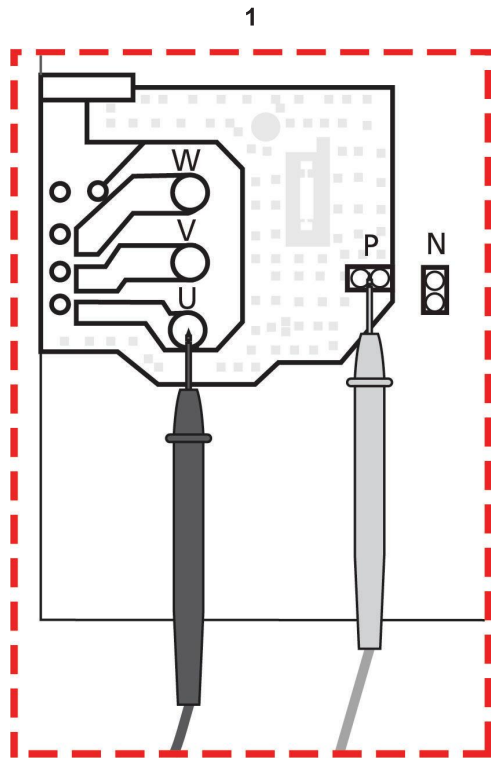


Fig. 36 —Resistance Value

Table 6 – Voltage Range

208-240V (1-phase)		
In Standby		
Around 310VDC		
In Operation		
With passive PFC module	With partial active PFC module	With fully active PFC module
>200VDC	>310VDC	>370VDC

4-Way Valve Check

1. Power on, use a digital tester to measure the voltage, when the unit operates in cooling, it is 0V. When the unit operates in heating, it is about equal to power supply voltage.
If the value of the voltage is not in the range, the PCB must have problems and need to be replaced.

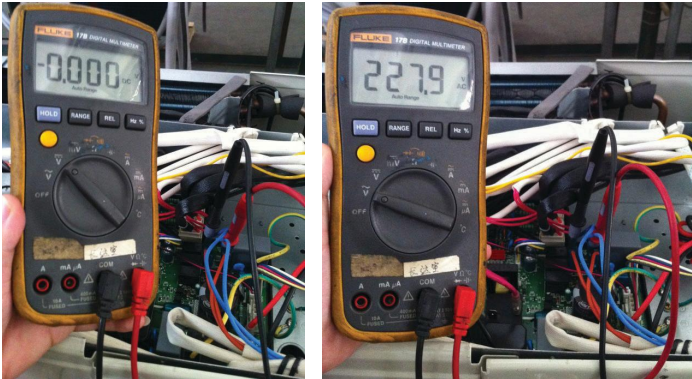


Fig. 37 —Measure the Voltage

2. Turn off the power, use a digital tester to measure the resistance. The value should be 1.8~2.5 KΩ.

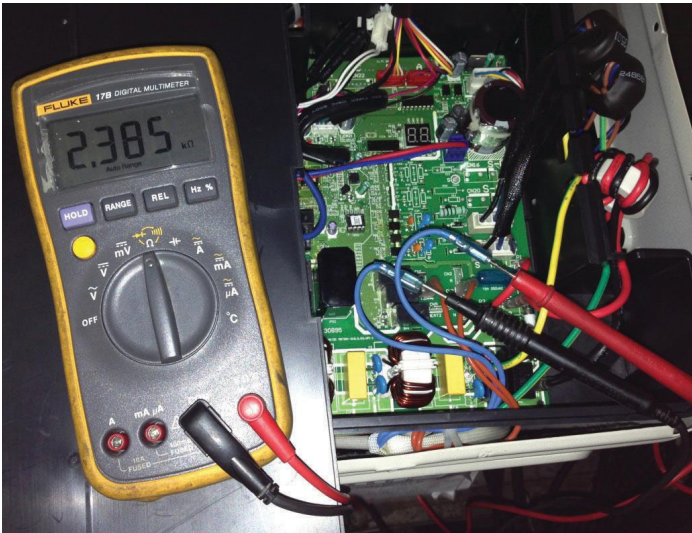


Fig. 38 —Use a Digital Tester to Measure Resistance

EXV Check

⚠ WARNING

ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD
Electricity remains in the capacitors even when the power is off.
Ensure the capacitors are fully discharged before troubleshooting.

1. Turn off outdoor unit and disconnect power supply.
2. Disconnect the connectors of EXV.
3. Measure the resistance value between Red and Blue (Yellow); Brown and Orange (White).

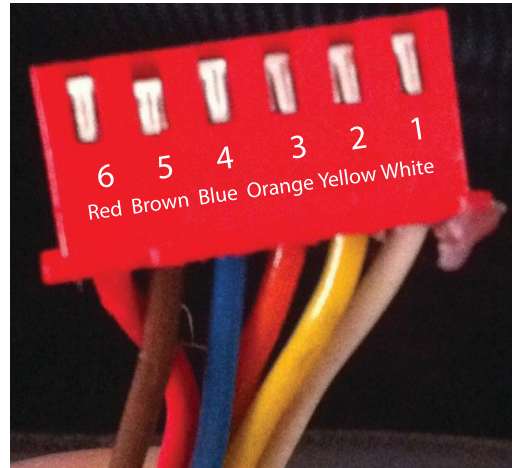


Fig. 39 —EXV Check

Resistance to EXV coil

Color of Lead Wire	Normal Value
Red-Blue	About 500 Ω
Red-Yellow	
Brown-Orange	
Brown-White	

Main Parts Check

1. Temperature sensor checking
Disconnect the temperature sensor from PCB, measure the resistance value with a tester.

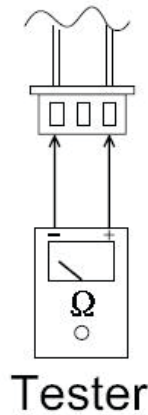
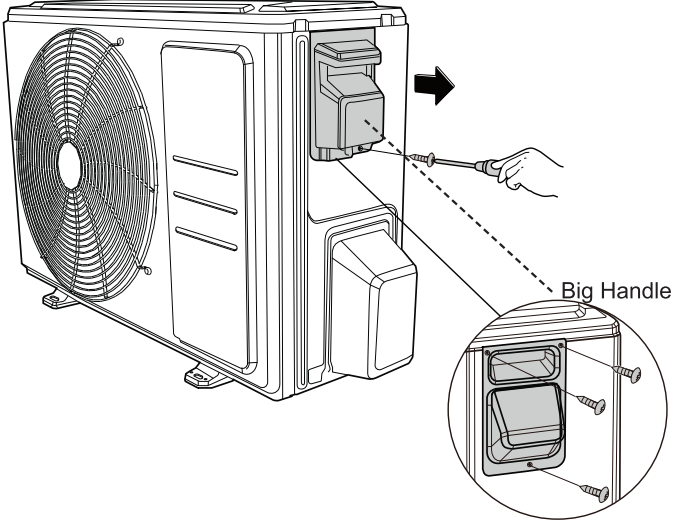
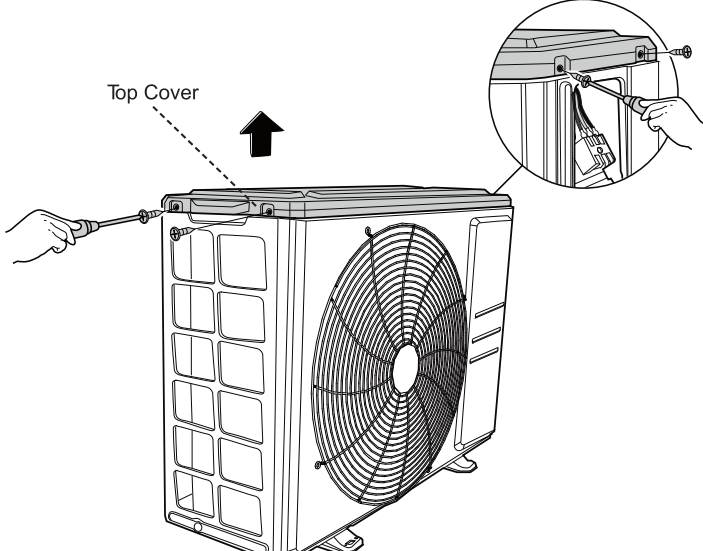


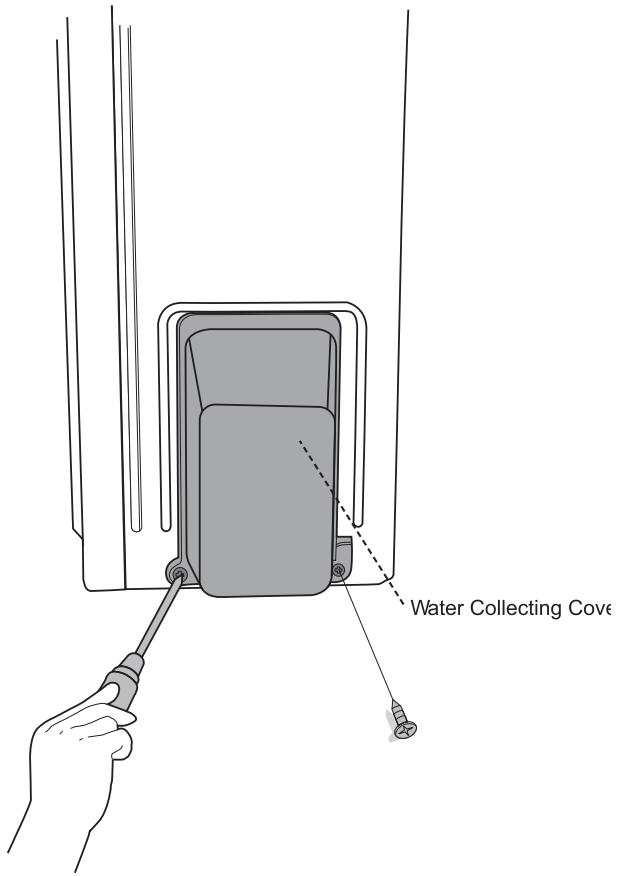
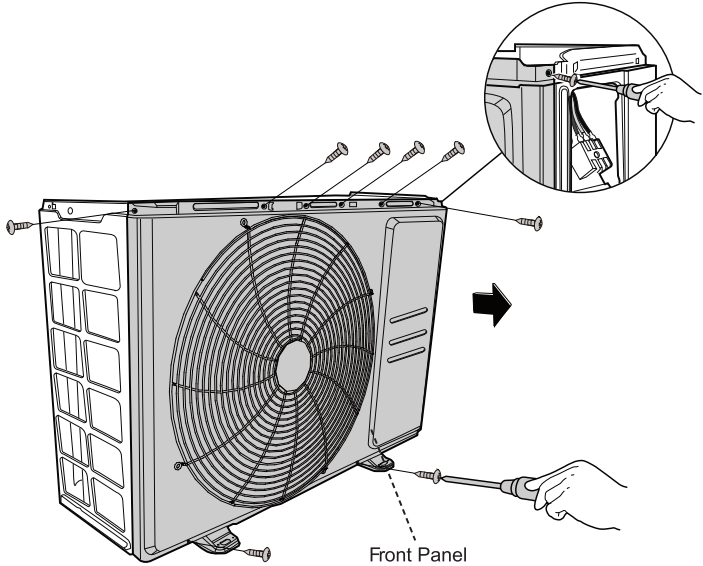
Fig. 40 —Sensor Test

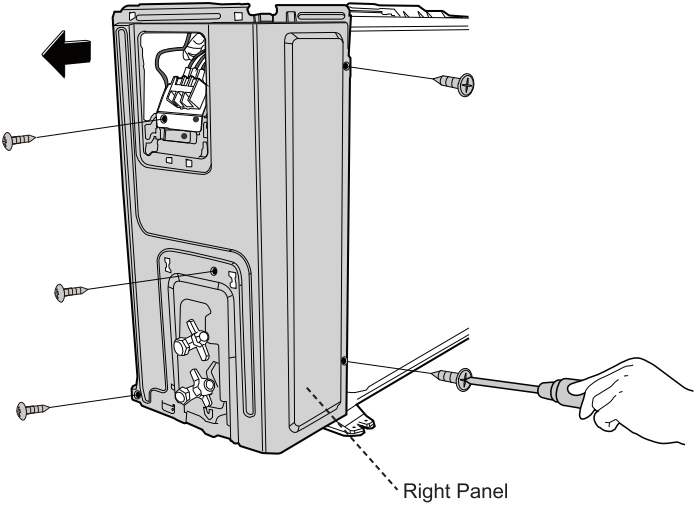
2. Temperature sensors
 - a. Room temp. (T1) sensor,
 - b. Indoor coil temp. (T2) sensor,
 - c. Outdoor coil temp. (T3) sensor,
 - d. Outdoor ambient temp. (T4) sensor,
 - e. Compressor discharge temp. (T5) sensor.
 - f. Measure the resistance value of each winding by using the multi-meter.

DISASSEMBLY INSTRUCTIONS

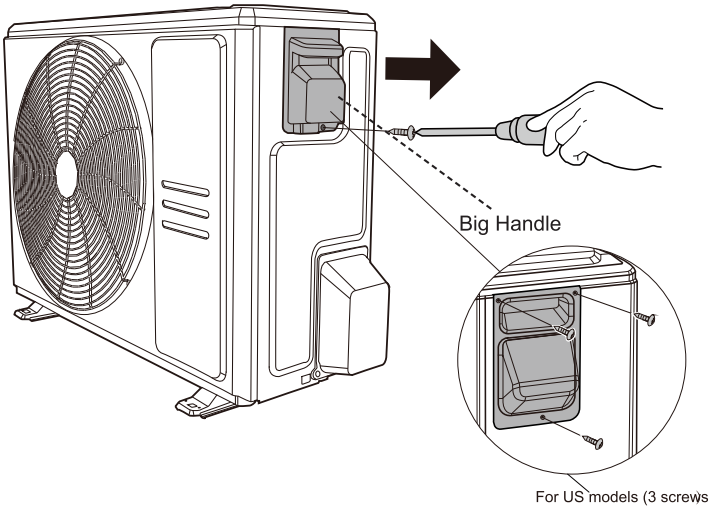
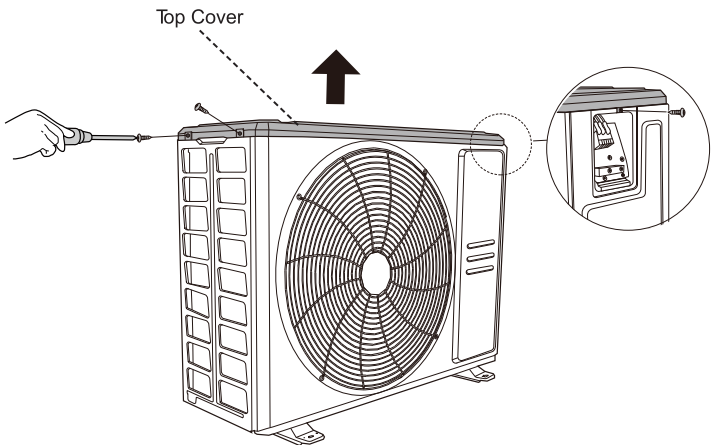
12K (115V) and 9-12K (208/230V) Unit Disassembly - Panel Plate

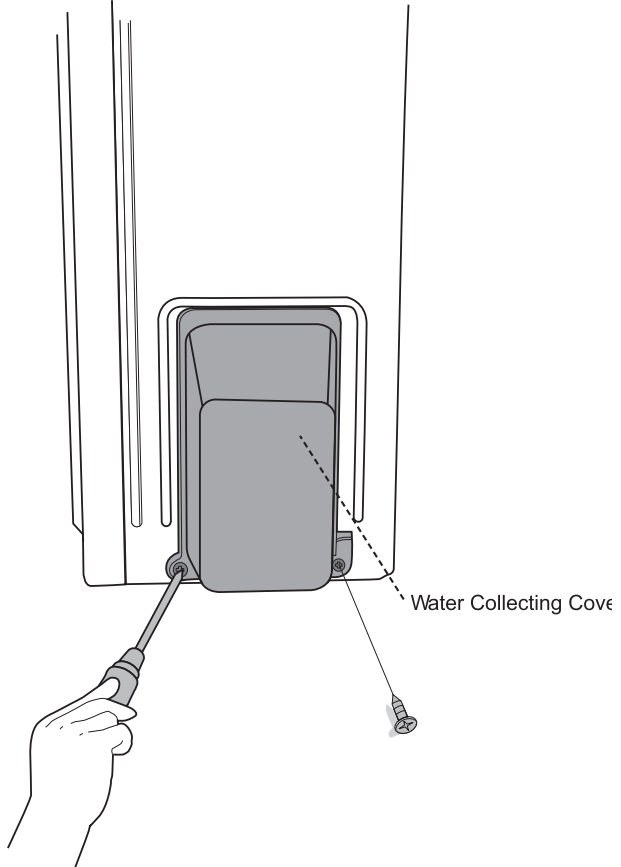
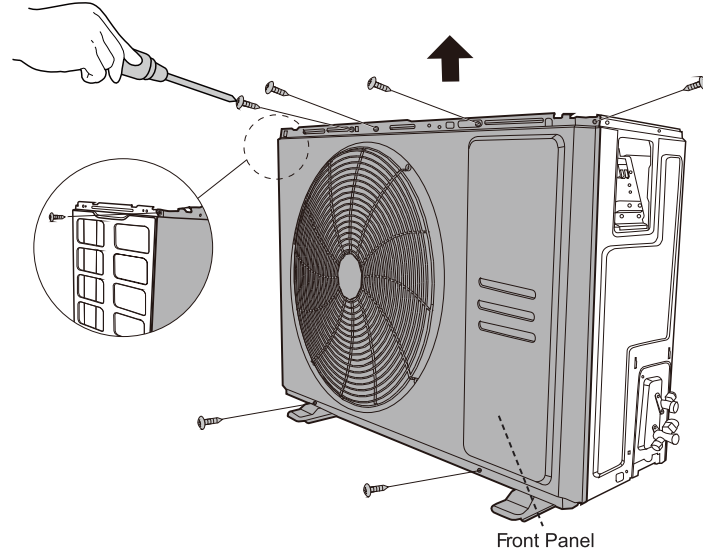
PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>1. Turn off the air conditioner and the power breaker</p> <p>2. Remove the screw of the big handle and then remove the big handle (3 screws) (see illustration)</p>	 <p>Big Handle</p> <p>For US models(3 screws)</p>
<p>3. Remove the screws of the top cover and then remove the top cover (4 screws). One of the screws is located underneath the big handle. (see illustration)</p>	 <p>Top Cover</p>

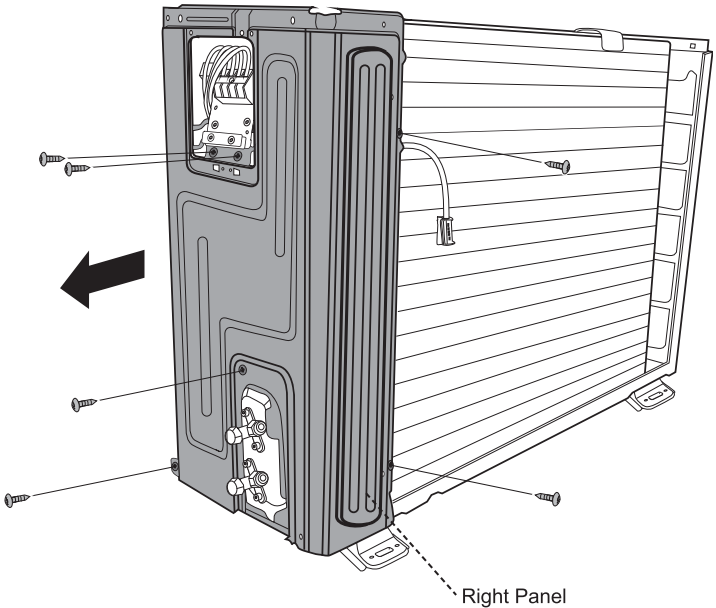
PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>4. Remove the screws of water collecting cover and then remove the water collecting cover (2 screws).(see illustration)</p>	 <p>The illustration shows a hand using a screwdriver to remove two screws from a rectangular water collecting cover mounted on the side of an outdoor unit. A dashed line points to the cover with the label "Water Collecting Cover".</p>
<p>5. Remove the screws of the front panel and then remove the front panel (7 screws (on/off models) or 9 screws. (inverter models). (see illustration)</p>	 <p>The illustration shows a hand using a screwdriver to remove screws from the front panel of an outdoor unit. A dashed line points to the front panel with the label "Front Panel". An inset circular diagram shows a close-up of a hand using a screwdriver to remove a screw from the top edge of the front panel. A black arrow points to the right, indicating the direction of removal.</p>

PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>6. Remove the screws of the right panel and then remove the right panel (5 screws) (see illustration)</p>	 <p>The illustration shows a vertical rectangular device with a right-side panel. Five screws are shown being removed from the panel. A hand is using a screwdriver to remove one of the screws. A dashed line points to the right side of the device, labeled 'Right Panel'. A large black arrow points to the left, indicating the direction of panel removal.</p>

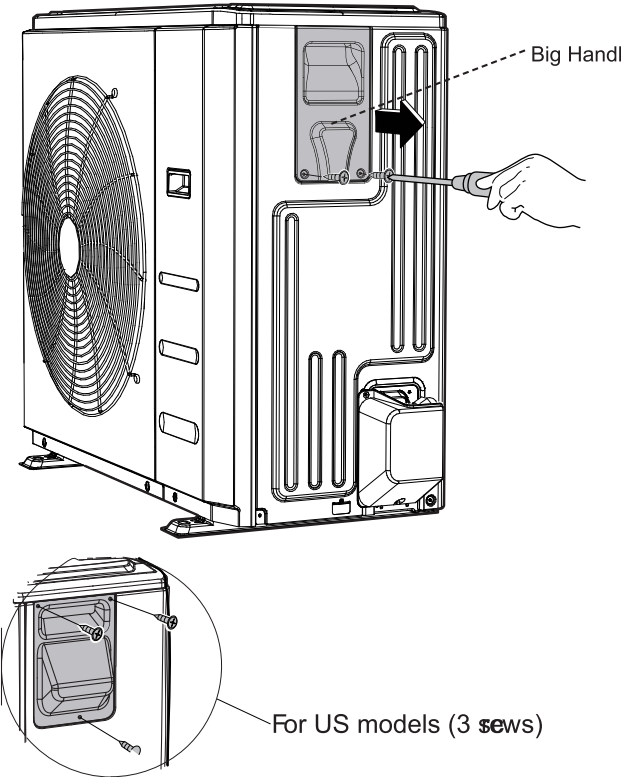
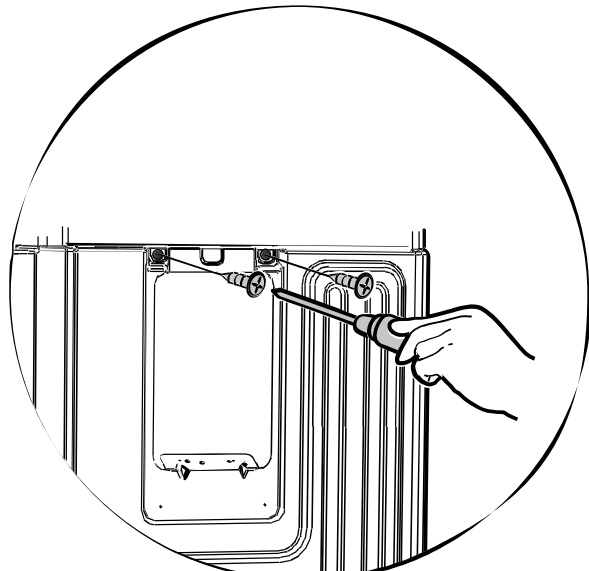
18K Unit Disassembly - Panel Plate

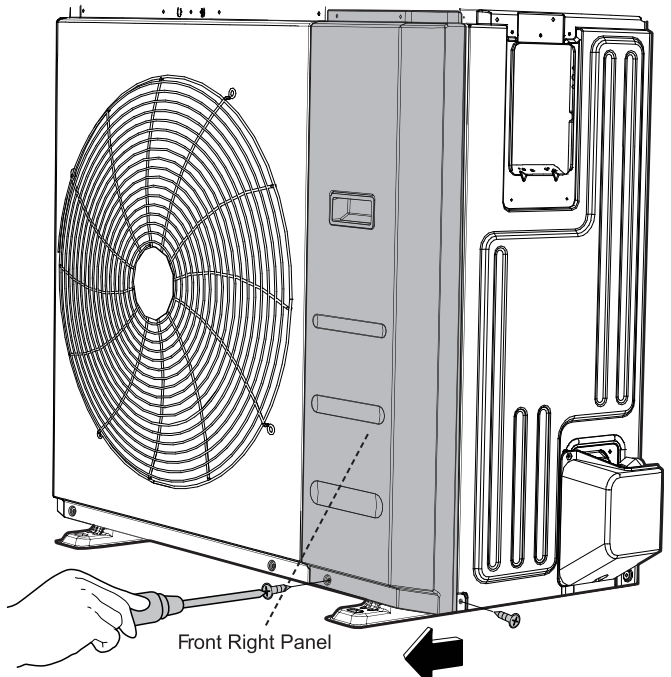
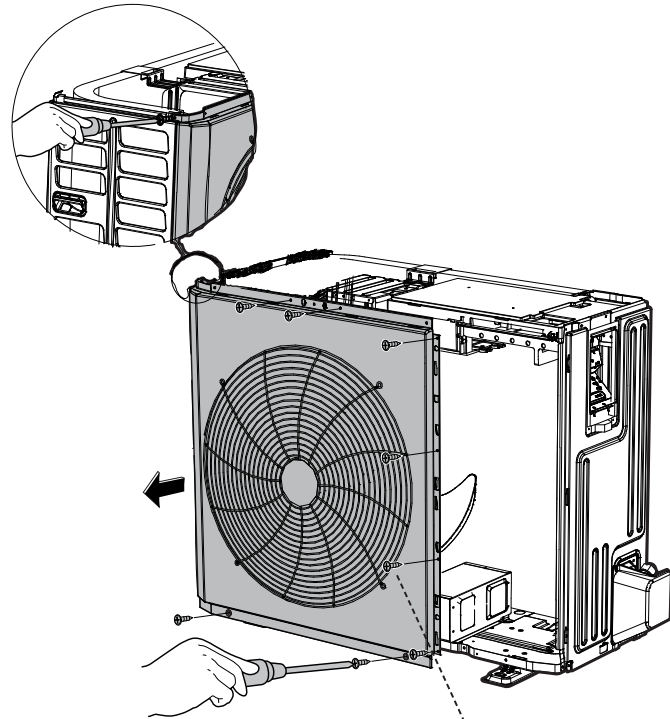
PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn off the air conditioner and the power breaker 2. Remove the screw of the big handle and then remove the big handle (3 screws) (see illustration) 	 <p>Big Handle</p> <p>For US models (3 screws)</p>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Remove the screws of the top cover and then remove the top cover (3 screws). One of the screws is located underneath the big handle. (see illustration) 	 <p>Top Cover</p>

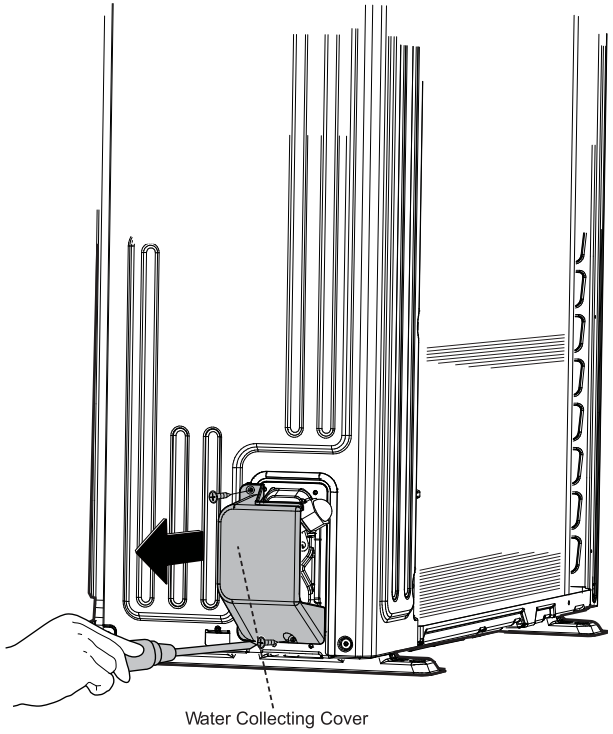
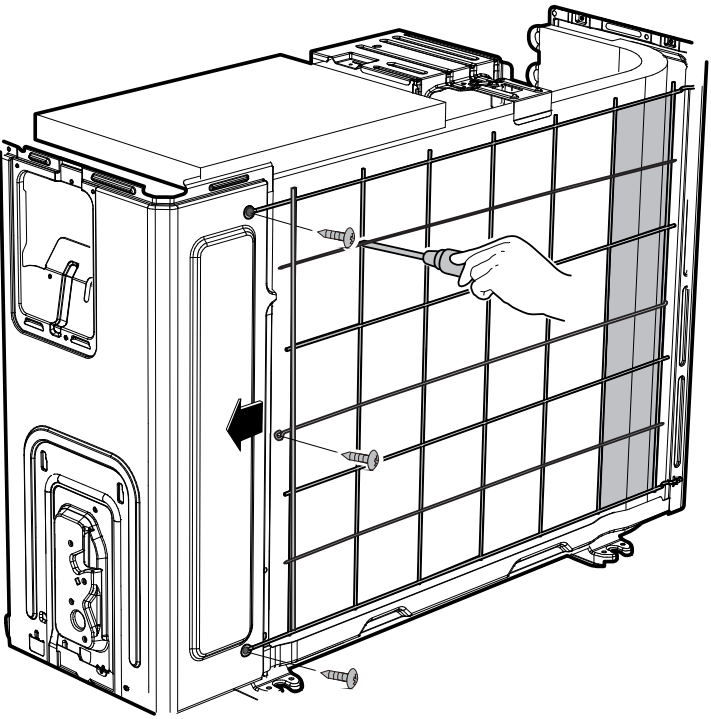
PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>4. Remove the screws of water collecting cover and then remove the water collecting cover (2 screws).(see illustration)</p>	 <p>The illustration shows a hand using a screwdriver to remove two screws from a rectangular water collecting cover mounted on the side of an outdoor unit. A dashed line points to the cover, which is labeled "Water Collecting Cove".</p>
<p>5. Remove the screws of the front panel and then remove the front panel (7 screws (on/off models) or 9 screws. (inverter models). (see illustration)</p>	 <p>The illustration shows a hand using a screwdriver to remove screws from the front panel of an outdoor unit. An upward-pointing arrow indicates the direction to lift the panel. A circular inset shows a close-up of the front panel with a grid of screws. The front panel is labeled "Front Panel".</p>

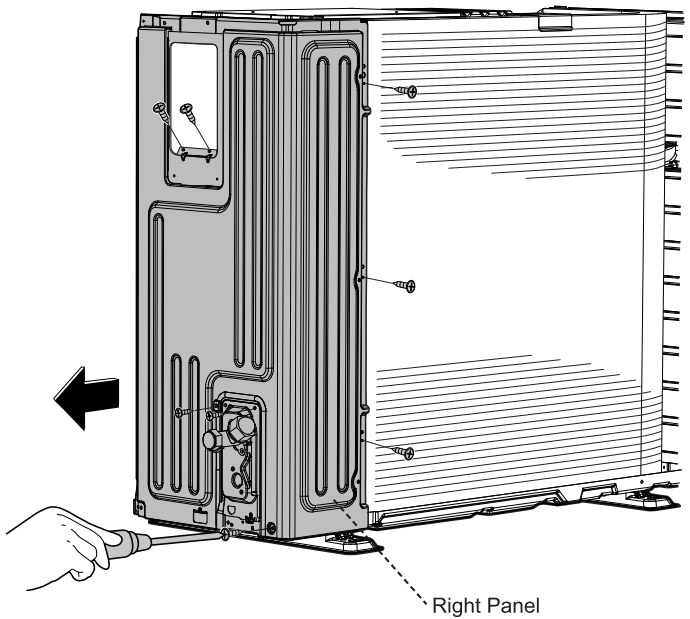
PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>6. Remove the screws of the right panel and then remove the right panel (5 screws) (see illustration)</p>	 <p>The illustration shows a side view of a rectangular device with a control panel on the left and a slatted right panel. Five screws are shown being removed from the right panel. A large black arrow points to the left, indicating the direction of removal. The right panel is shown being pulled away from the main unit. A label 'Right Panel' points to the panel being removed.</p>

24K - 36K Unit Disassembly - Panel Plate

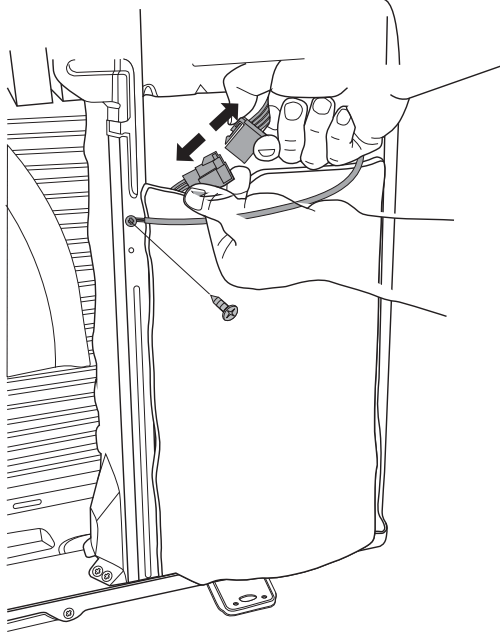
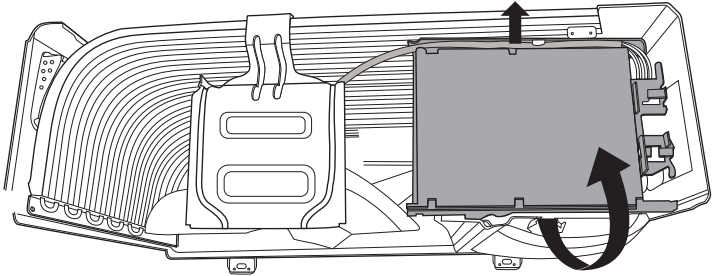
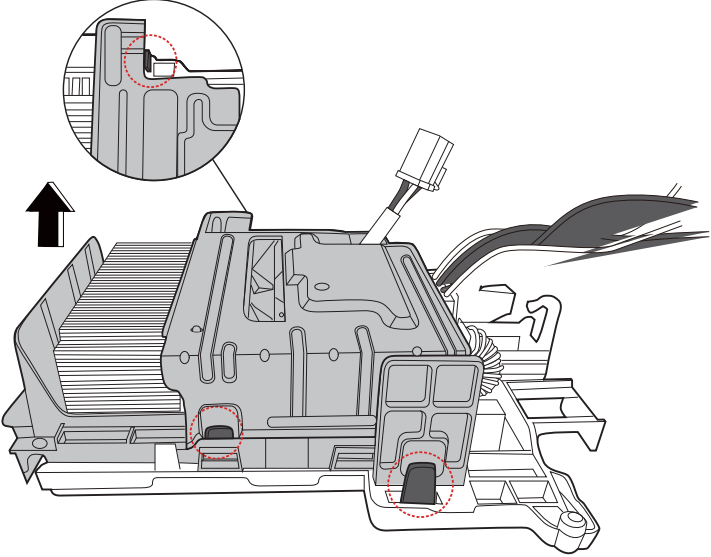
PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>1. Turn off the air conditioner and the power breaker</p> <p>2. Remove the screw of the big handle and then remove the big handle (2 screws) (see illustration)</p>	 <p>Big Handle</p> <p>For US models (3 screws)</p>
<p>3. Remove the screws of the top cover and then remove the top cover (4 screws). One of the screws is located underneath the big handle. (see illustration)</p>	

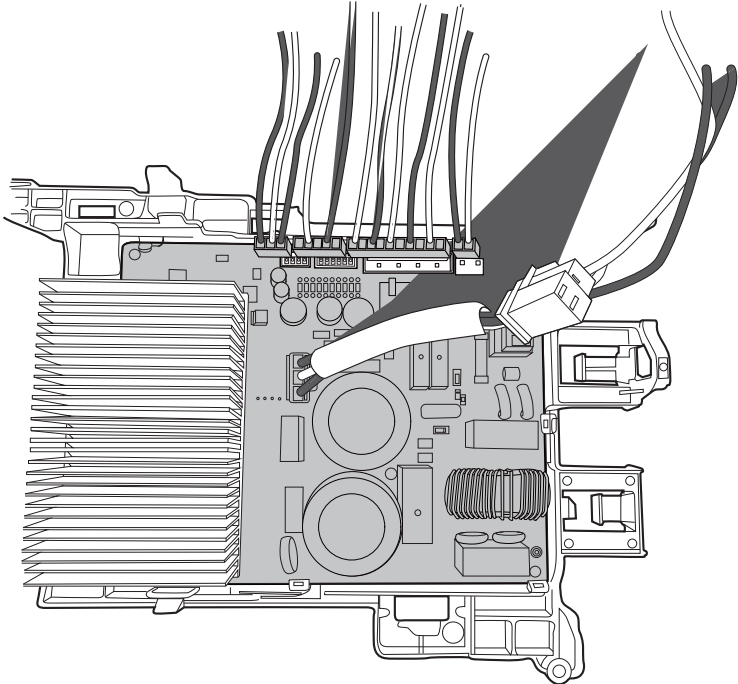
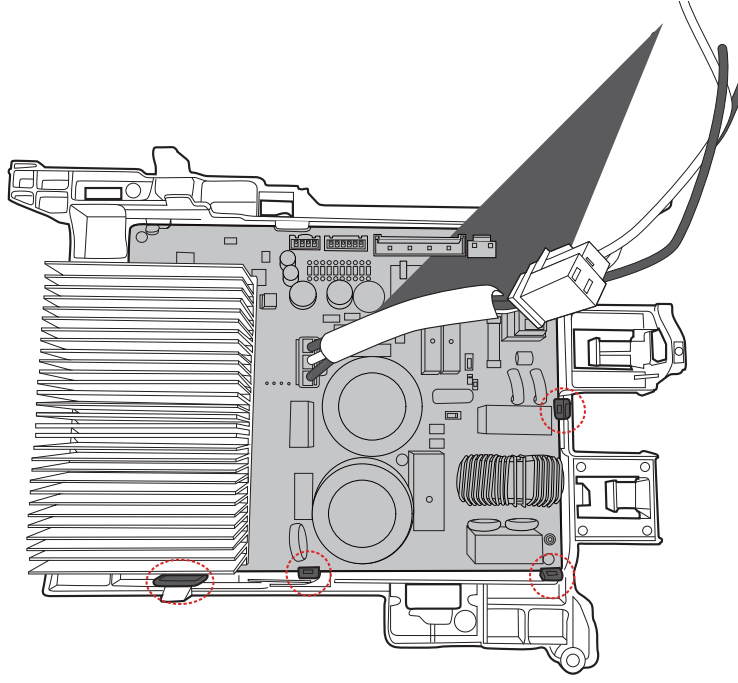
PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>4. Remove the screws of the front right panel and then remove the front right panel (2 screws).(see illustration)</p>	 <p>Front Right Panel</p>
<p>5. Remove the screws of the front panel and then remove the front panel (9 screws). (see illustration)</p>	 <p>Front Panel</p>

PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>6. Remove the screws of water collecting cover and then remove the water collecting cover (2 screws) (see illustration)</p>	 <p>The illustration shows a hand using a screwdriver to remove screws from a rectangular water collecting cover. The cover is located behind the evaporator coils. A dashed line points to the cover with the label "Water Collecting Cover". A large black arrow points to the left, indicating the direction of removal.</p>
<p>7. For some models, remove the screws of the rear net and then remove the rear net (3 screws) (see illustration)</p>	 <p>The illustration shows a hand using a screwdriver to remove screws from a rear net. The net is a grid-like structure on the back of the refrigerator. A large black arrow points to the left, indicating the direction of removal.</p>

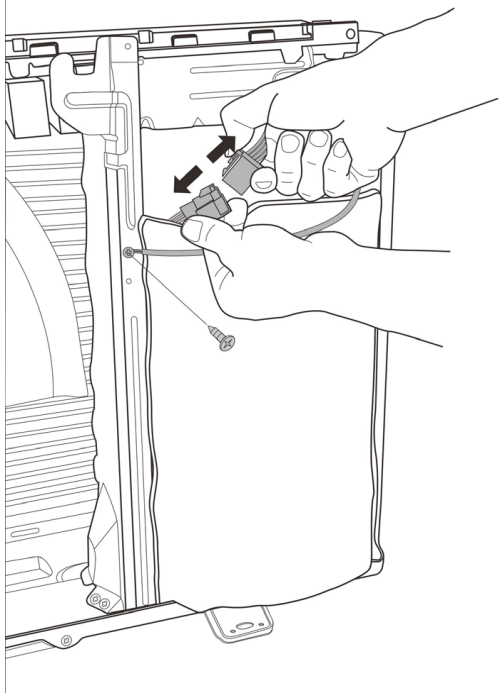
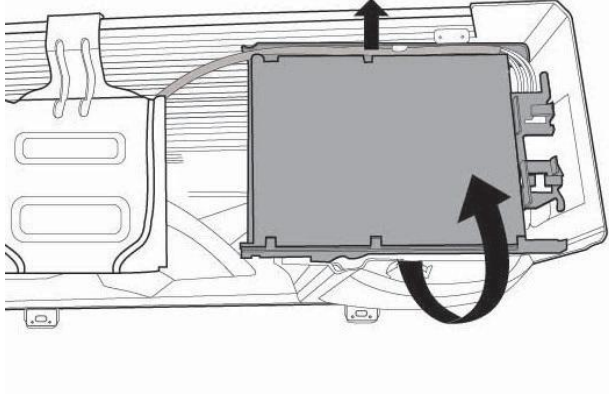
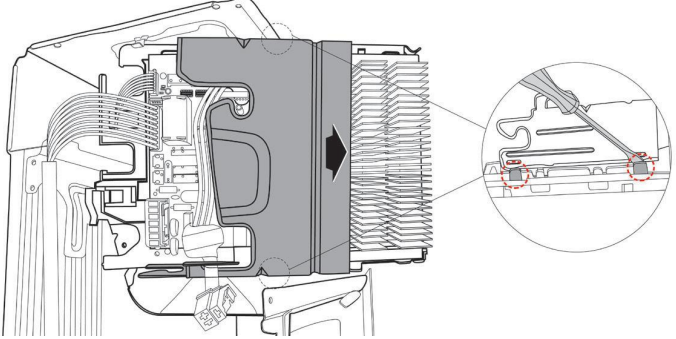
PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>8. Remove the screws of the right panel and then remove the right panel (8 screws)</p>	 <p>The illustration shows a hand using a screwdriver to remove screws from the right panel of a device. A dashed line points to the right panel, and a black arrow indicates the direction of removal.</p>

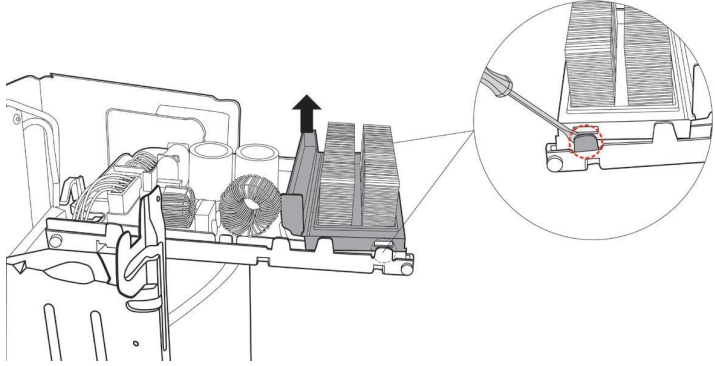
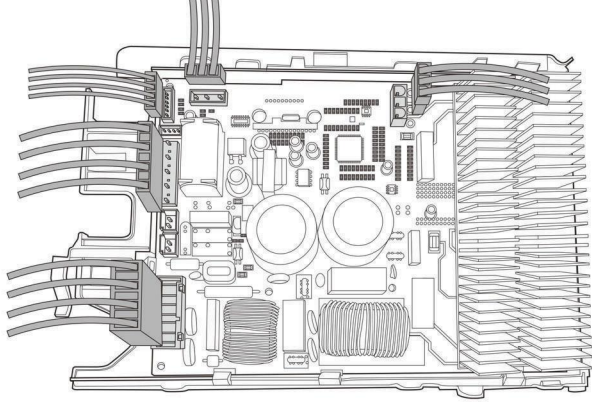
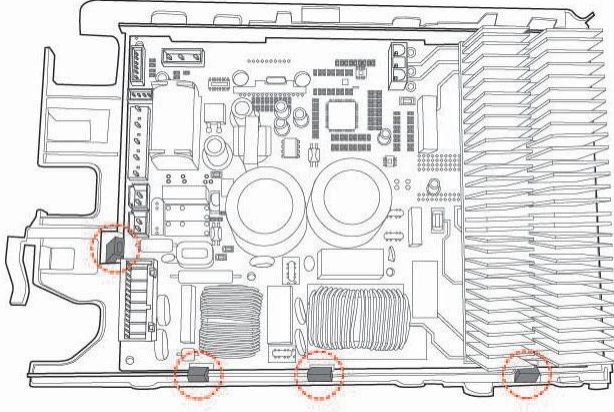
12K (115V) Disassembly - Electrical Parts

PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>1. Disconnect the connector for compressor and release the ground wire(1 screw).(see illustration)</p>	
<p>2. Pull out the wires from electrical supporting plate and turn over the electronic control assembly. (see illustration)</p> <p>NOTE: Electric control box cover cannot be removed, so the voltage between P and N cannot be measured.</p>	
<p>3. Remove the electronic installing box subassembly (3 hooks)</p>	

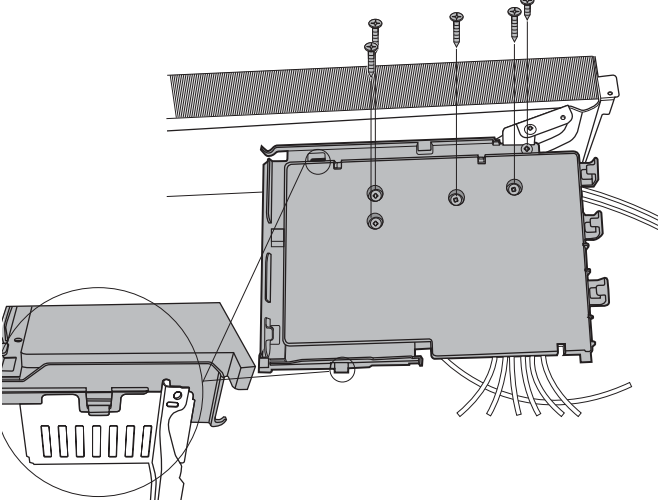
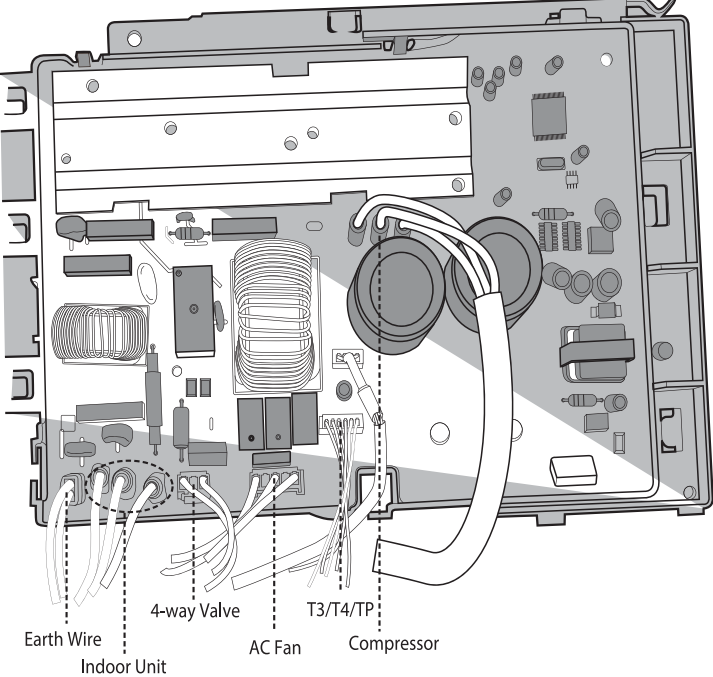
PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
4. Disconnect the connectors from the electronic control board	 A technical line drawing of the electronic control board. The board is rectangular with a large heat sink on the left side. At the top, there is a connector strip with several wires. A white cable with a connector is shown being disconnected from the board. The board contains various components like capacitors, resistors, and integrated circuits.
5. Then remove the electronic control board (4 hooks).	 A technical line drawing of the electronic control board, similar to the one above. In this illustration, four specific points on the board are highlighted with red dashed circles. These points represent the hooks used for removal: one on the bottom left edge, one on the bottom center edge, one on the bottom right edge, and one on the right side edge near the top.

9k - 12K (208V/230V) Disassembly - Electrical Parts

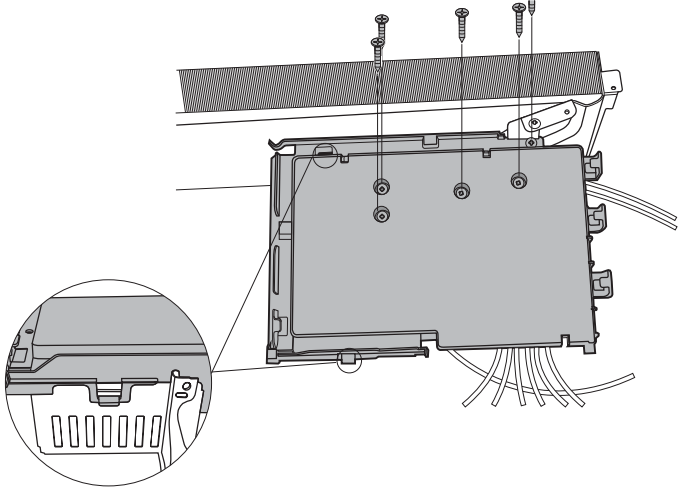
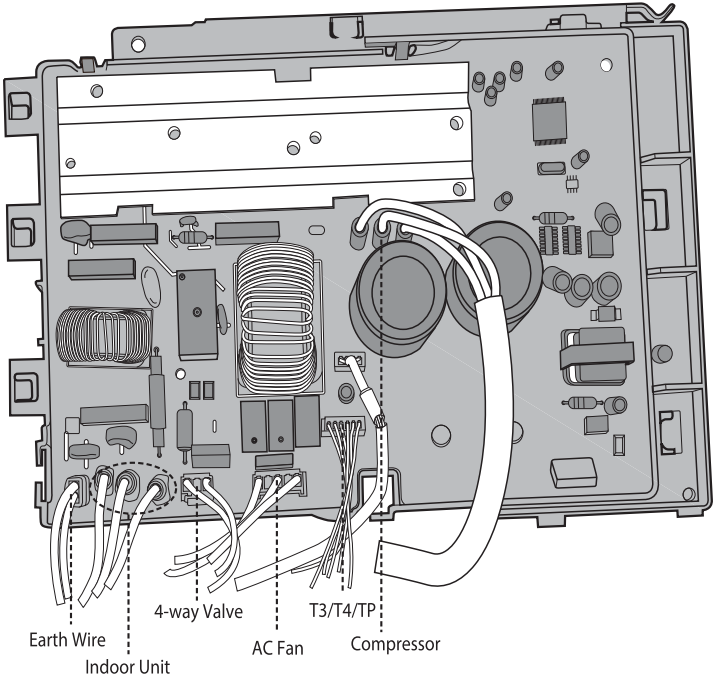
PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>1. Disconnect the compressor connector and release the ground wire (1 screw)..(see illustration)</p>	
<p>2. Pull out the wires from the electrical supporting plate and turn over the electronic control assembly. (see illustration)</p>	
<p>3. Remove the electronic installing box subassembly (4 hooks).</p>	

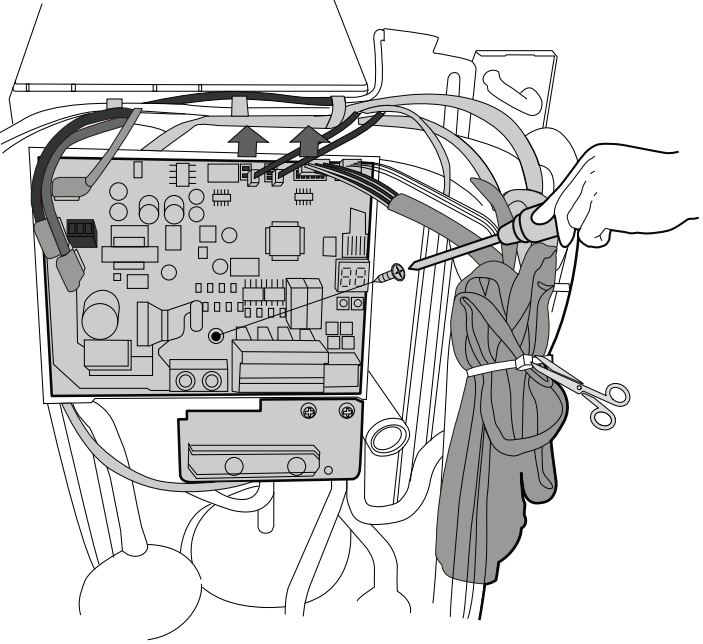
PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>4. Remove the board (2 hooks).</p>	
<p>5. Disconnect the connectors from the electronic control board.</p>	
<p>6. Remove the electronic control board (4 hooks).</p>	

18K Disassembly - Electrical Parts

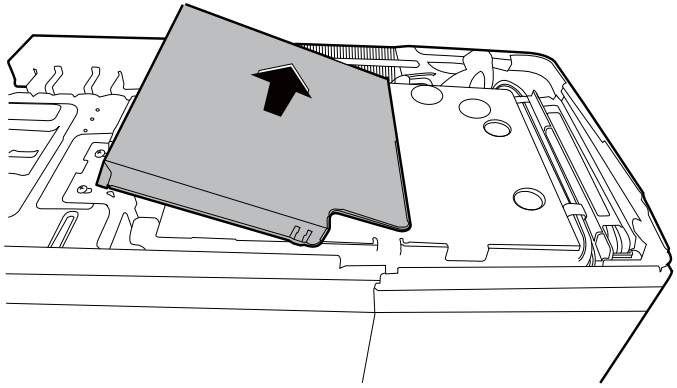
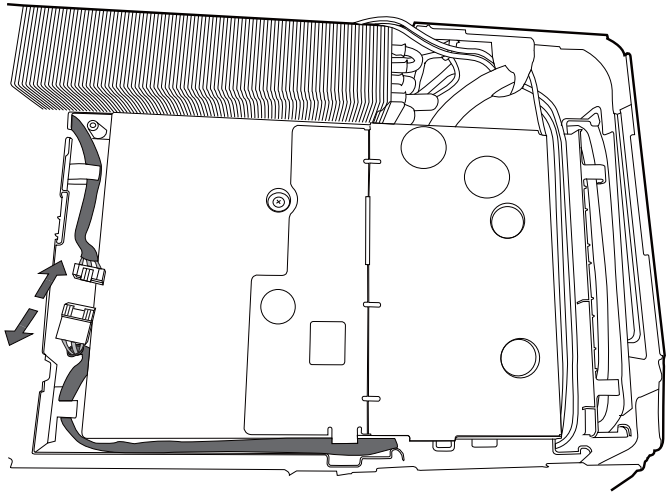
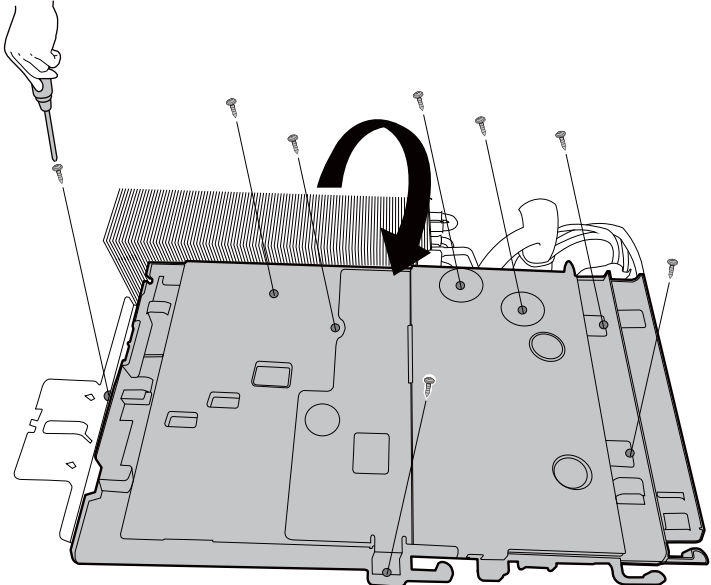
PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>1. Remove the 5 screws and unfix two hooks.(.(see illustration)</p> <p>NOTE: Electric control box cover cannot be removed, so the voltage between P and N cannot be measured.</p> <p>NOTE: For some models, there might be a wiring diagram covering the screw.</p>	
<p>2. Disconnect the connector for fan motor from the electronic control board (see illustration)</p> <p>3. Remove the connector for the compressor</p> <p>4. Pull out the two blue wires connected with the four way valve</p> <p>5. Pull out connectors of the condenser coil temp. sensor(T3),outdoor ambient temp. sensor(T4) and discharge temp. sensor (TP).</p> <p>6. Disconnect the electronic expansion valve wire.</p> <p>7. Remove the connector for the DR and reactor.</p> <p>8. Then remove the electronic control board.</p> <p>NOTE: When replacing the electronic control board with a new one, pay attention to applying thermal paste on the heat sink.</p>	

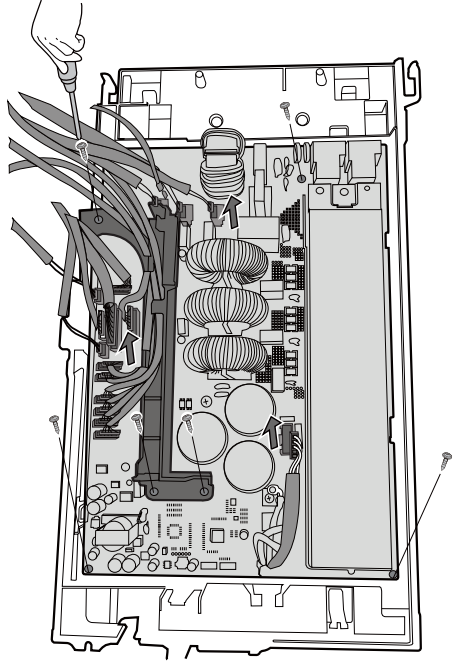
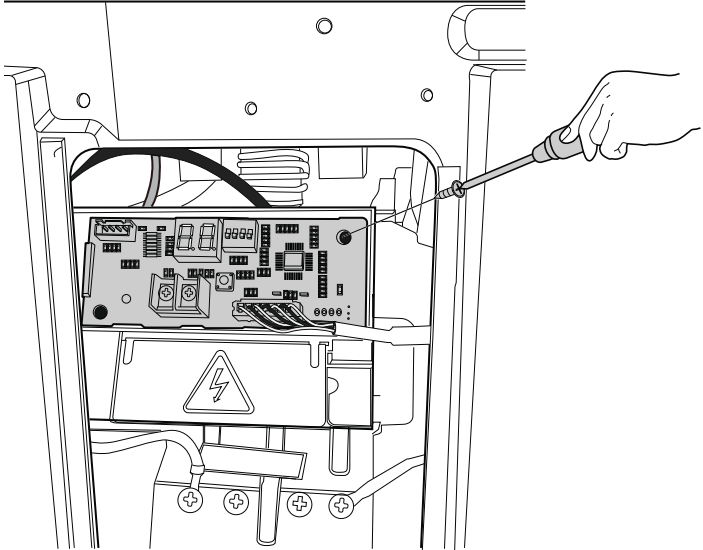
24K (208V/230V) Disassembly - Electrical Parts

PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>1. Remove the 5 screws and unfix two hooks.(see CJ_ODU_PCB_003-1).(see illustration)</p> <p>NOTE: Electric control box cover cannot be removed, so the voltage between P and N cannot be measured.</p> <p>For some models, there might be a wiring diagram covering the screw.</p>	
<p>2. Disconnect the connector for fan motor from the electronic control board (see. (see illustration)</p> <p>3. Remove the connector for the compressor</p> <p>4. Pull out the two blue wires connected with the four way valve</p> <p>5. Pull out connectors of the condenser coil temp. sensor(T3),outdoor ambient temp. sensor(T4) and discharge temp. sensor (TP)</p> <p>6. Disconnect the electronic expansion valve wire</p> <p>7. Remove the connector for the DR and reactor</p> <p>8. Then remove the electronic control board.</p> <p>NOTE: When replacing the electronic control board with a new one, pay attention to applying thermal paste on the heat sink.</p>	

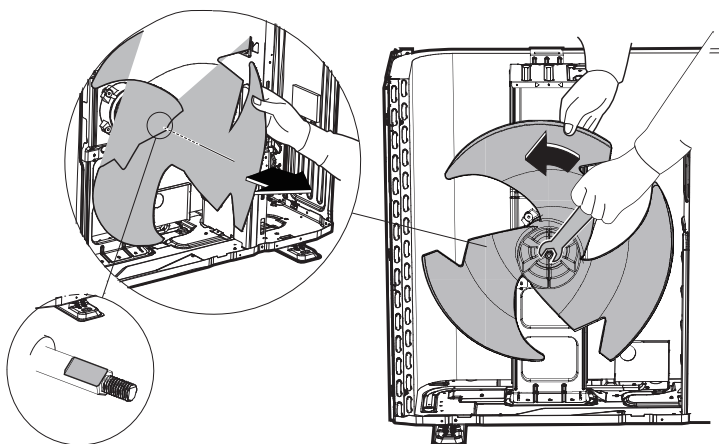
PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>9. Remove the 1 screw and disconnect the wires and then remove the 24V board.(</p>	 <p>The illustration shows a hand using a screwdriver to remove a screw from a 24V board. The board is mounted in a compartment, and several wires are connected to it. A bundle of wires is shown being cut with scissors. The board is labeled '24V' and has various components and connectors. Arrows point to the screw being removed and the wires being disconnected.</p>

30k - 36K (208V/230V) Disassembly - Electrical Parts

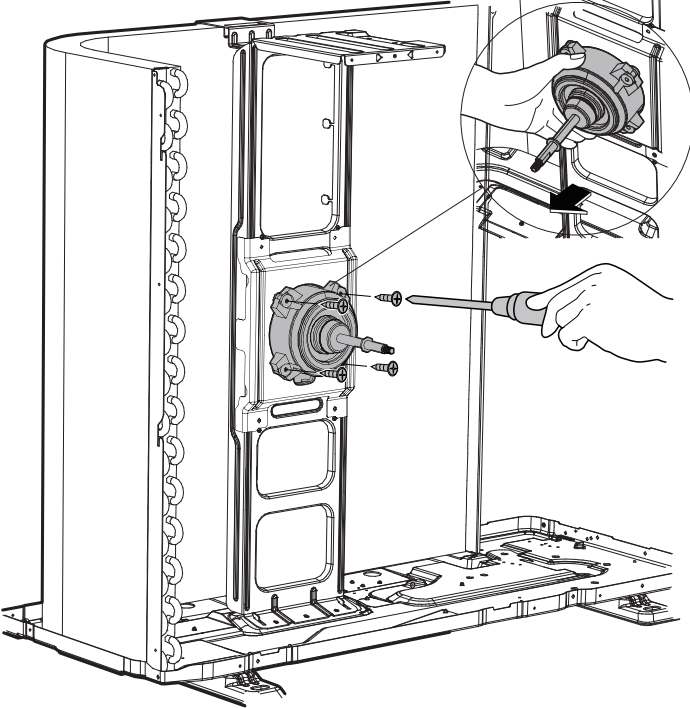
PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>1. Remove the cover of electrical control box..(see illustration).</p>	
<p>2. Disconnect the fan motor connector. (see. (see illustration)</p>	
<p>3. Remove eight fixing screws.</p> <p>4. Turn over the electronic control box subassembly.</p>	

PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>5. Remove 3 screws and then remove the bracket.</p> <p>6. Disconnect the connectors from the electronic control board.</p> <p>7. Remove 3 screws and then remove the electronic control board.</p>	 A detailed line drawing of the interior of an appliance chassis. The electronic control board is the central focus, with various components like capacitors and resistors visible. A hand is shown using a screwdriver to remove a screw from a bracket on the left side of the board. Several wires are connected to the board, and some are being held back by a hand.
<p>8. Pull out the connector, remove one screw and then remove the key board subassembly on terminal board.</p>	 A line drawing showing a close-up of the key board subassembly. A hand is using a screwdriver to remove a screw from the top edge of the board. The board is mounted on a terminal board, and a warning symbol (a lightning bolt inside a triangle) is visible on the front panel below it. The terminal board has several screws and electrical connections.

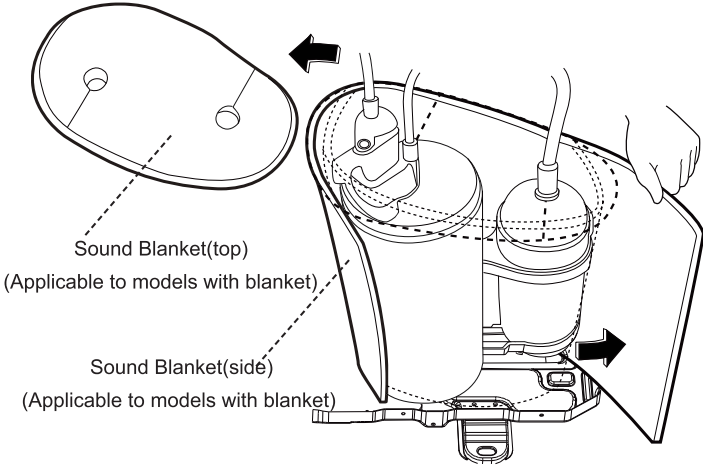
All Size Units, Disassembly - Fan Assembly

PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>1. Remove the nut securing the fan with a spanner. 2. Remove the fan. (see illustration)</p>	

All Size Units, Disassembly - Fan Motor

PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>1. Remove the fixing screws of the fan motor (4 screws) 2. Remove the fan motor. (see illustration)</p>	

All Size Units, Disassembly - Sound Blanket

PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>1. Remove the sound blanket (side and top)) (see illustration)</p>	 <p>Sound Blanket(top) (Applicable to models with blanket)</p> <p>Sound Blanket(side) (Applicable to models with blanket)</p>

All Size Units, Disassembly - Four-Way Valve (For Heat Pump Models)



WARNING


FIRE HAZARD

Evacuate the system and confirm that there is no refrigerant left in the system before removing the four-way valve and the compressor. (For R32 & R290, you should evacuate the system with the vacuum pump; flush the system with nitrogen; then repeat the two steps before heating up the brazed parts. The operations above should be implemented by professionals.)

NOTE: Remove the panel plate, connection of four-way valve on PCB (refer to “12K (115V) and 9-12K (208/230V) Unit Disassembly - Panel Plate” on page 65, “18K Unit Disassembly - Panel Plate” on page 68, “24K - 36K Unit Disassembly - Panel Plate” on page 71, or “24K - 36K Unit Disassembly - Panel Plate” on page 71 and “18K Disassembly - Electrical Parts” on page 79) before disassembling sound blanket.

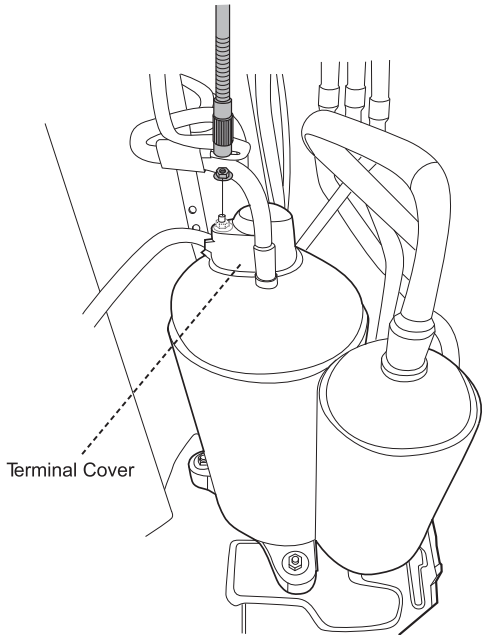
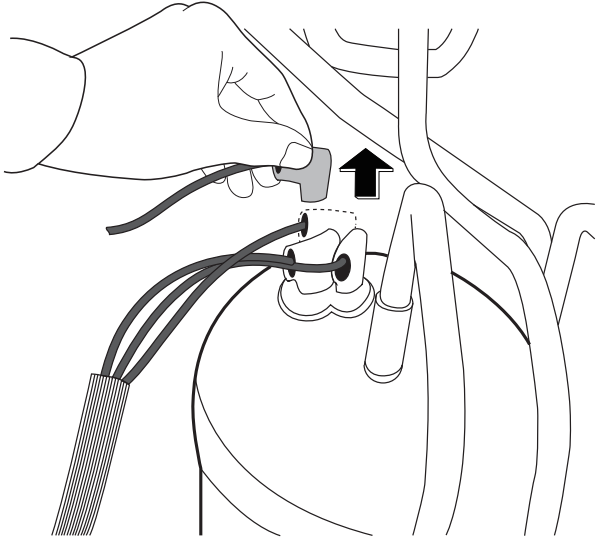
PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Heat up the brazed parts and then detach the the four-way valve and the piper. (see illustration) 2. Remove the four-way valve assembly with pliers. (see illustration) 	

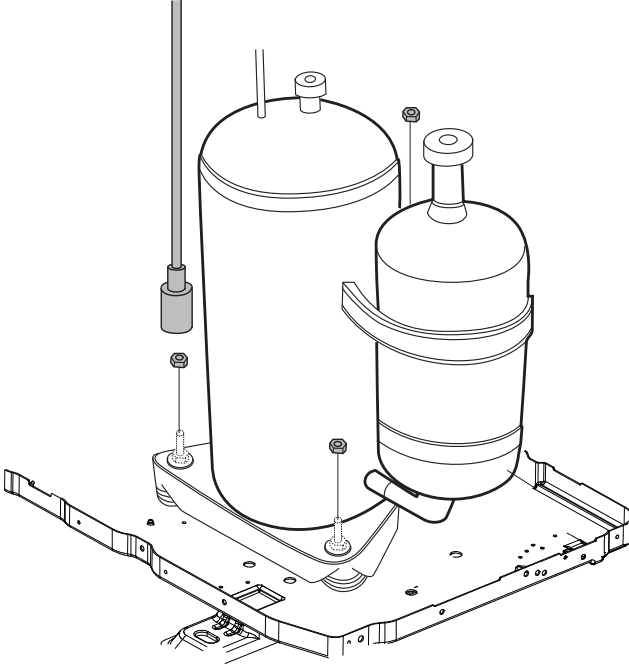
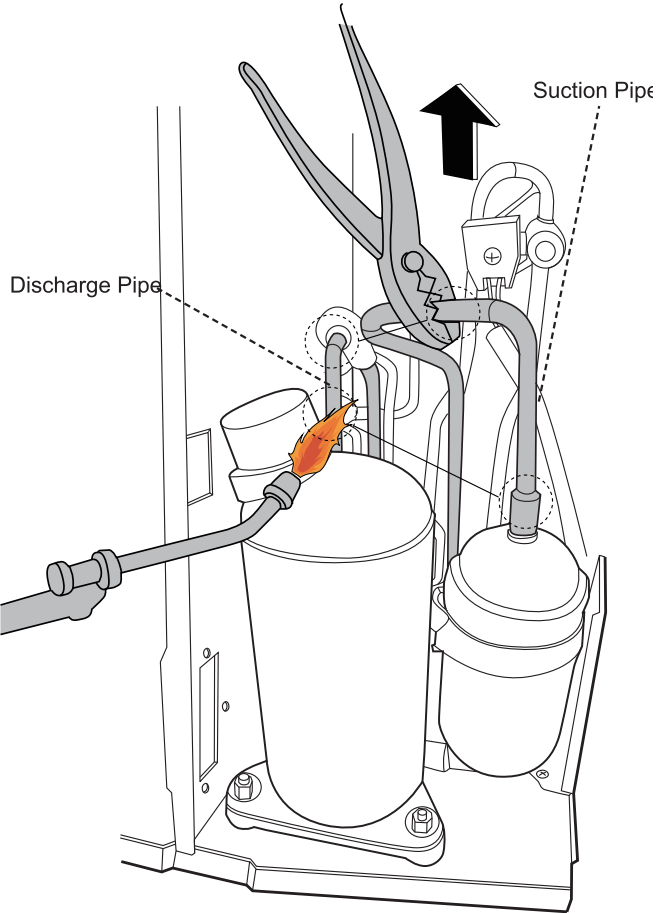
All Size Units, Disassembly - Compressor


WARNING

EXPLOSION RISK
 Evacuate the system and confirm that there is no refrigerant left in the system before removing the four-way valve and the compressor. (For R32 & R290, you should evacuate the system with the vacuum pump; flush the system with nitrogen; then repeat the two steps before heating up the brazed parts. The operations above should be implemented by professionals.)

NOTE: Remove the panel plate, connection of four-way valve on PCB (refer to “12K (115V) and 9-12K (208/230V) Unit Disassembly - Panel Plate” on page 65, “18K Unit Disassembly - Panel Plate” on page 68, “24K - 36K Unit Disassembly - Panel Plate” on page 71, or “24K - 36K Unit Disassembly - Panel Plate” on page 71 and “18K Disassembly - Electrical Parts” on page 79) before disassembling sound blanket.

PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>1. Remove the flange nut of terminal cover and remove the terminal cover (see illustration)</p>	
<p>2. Disconnect the connectors (see illustration)</p>	

PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>3. Remove the hex nuts and washers securing the compressor, located on the bottom plate. (see illustration)</p>	
<p>4. Heat up the brazed parts and then remove the discharge pipe and the suction pipe. (see illustration)</p> <p>5. Lift the compressor from the base pan assembly with pliers. (see illustration)</p>	

APPENDIX**Temperature Sensor Resistance Value Table for TP (°C - K)**

°C	°F	K Ohm	°C	°F	K Ohm	°C	°F	K Ohm	°C	°F	K Ohm
-20	-4	542.7	20	68	68.66	60	140	13.59	100	212	3.702
-19	-2	511.9	21	70	65.62	61	142	13.11	101	214	3.595
-18	0	483	22	72	62.73	62	144	12.65	102	216	3.492
-17	1	455.9	23	73	59.98	63	145	12.21	103	217	3.392
-16	3	430.5	24	75	57.37	64	147	11.79	104	219	3.296
-15	5	406.7	25	77	54.89	65	149	11.38	105	221	3.203
-14	7	384.3	26	79	52.53	66	151	10.99	106	223	3.113
-13	9	363.3	27	81	50.28	67	153	10.61	107	225	3.025
-12	10	343.6	28	82	48.14	68	154	10.25	108	226	2.941
-11	12	325.1	29	84	46.11	69	156	9.902	109	228	2.86
-10	14	307.7	30	86	44.17	70	158	9.569	110	230	2.781
-9	16	291.3	31	88	42.33	71	160	9.248	111	232	2.704
-8	18	275.9	32	90	40.57	72	162	8.94	112	234	2.63
-7	19	261.4	33	91	38.89	73	163	8.643	113	235	2.559
-6	21	247.8	34	93	37.3	74	165	8.358	114	237	2.489
-5	23	234.9	35	95	35.78	75	167	8.084	115	239	2.422
-4	25	222.8	36	97	34.32	76	169	7.82	116	241	2.357
-3	27	211.4	37	99	32.94	77	171	7.566	117	243	2.294
-2	28	200.7	38	100	31.62	78	172	7.321	118	244	2.233
-1	30	190.5	39	102	30.36	79	174	7.086	119	246	2.174
0	32	180.9	40	104	29.15	80	176	6.859	120	248	2.117
1	34	171.9	41	106	28	81	178	6.641	121	250	2.061
2	36	163.3	42	108	26.9	82	180	6.43	122	252	2.007
3	37	155.2	43	109	25.86	83	181	6.228	123	253	1.955
4	39	147.6	44	111	24.85	84	183	6.033	124	255	1.905
5	41	140.4	45	113	23.89	85	185	5.844	125	257	1.856
6	43	133.5	46	115	22.89	86	187	5.663	126	259	1.808
7	45	127.1	47	117	22.1	87	189	5.488	127	261	1.762
8	46	121	48	118	21.26	88	190	5.32	128	262	1.717
9	48	115.2	49	120	20.46	89	192	5.157	129	264	1.674
10	50	109.8	50	122	19.69	90	194	5	130	266	1.632
11	52	104.6	51	124	18.96	91	196	4.849	?	?	?
12	54	99.69	52	126	18.26	92	198	4.703	?	?	?
13	55	95.05	53	127	17.58	93	199	4.562	?	?	?
14	57	90.66	54	129	16.94	94	201	4.426	?	?	?
15	59	86.49	55	131	16.32	95	203	4.294	?	?	?
16	61	82.54	56	133	15.73	96	205	4.167	?	?	?
17	63	78.79	57	135	15.16	97	207	4.045	?	?	?
18	64	75.24	58	136	14.62	98	208	3.927	?	?	?
19	66	71.86	59	138	14.09	99	210	3.812	?	?	?

Other Temperature Sensors Resistance Value Table (°C - K)

°C	°F	K Ohm	°C	°F	K Ohm	°C	°F	K Ohm	°C	°F	K Ohm
-20	-4	115.266	20	68	12.6431	60	140	2.35774	100	212	0.62973
-19	-2	108.146	21	70	12.0561	61	142	2.27249	101	214	0.61148
-18	0	101.517	22	72	11.5	62	144	2.19073	102	216	0.59386
-17	1	96.3423	23	73	10.9731	63	145	2.11241	103	217	0.57683
-16	3	89.5865	24	75	10.4736	64	147	2.03732	104	219	0.56038
-15	5	84.219	25	77	10	65	149	1.96532	105	221	0.54448
-14	7	79.311	26	79	9.55074	66	151	1.89627	106	223	0.52912
-13	9	74.536	27	81	9.12445	67	153	1.83003	107	225	0.51426
-12	10	70.1698	28	82	8.71983	68	154	1.76647	108	226	0.49989
-11	12	66.0898	29	84	8.33566	69	156	1.70547	109	228	0.486
-10	14	62.2756	30	86	7.97078	70	158	1.64691	110	230	0.47256
-9	16	58.7079	31	88	7.62411	71	160	1.59068	111	232	0.45957
-8	18	56.3694	32	90	7.29464	72	162	1.53668	112	234	0.44699
-7	19	52.2438	33	91	6.98142	73	163	1.48481	113	235	0.43482
-6	21	49.3161	34	93	6.68355	74	165	1.43498	114	237	0.42304
-5	23	46.5725	35	95	6.40021	75	167	1.38703	115	239	0.41164
-4	25	44	36	97	6.13059	76	169	1.34105	116	241	0.4006
-3	27	41.5878	37	99	5.87359	77	171	1.29078	117	243	0.38991
-2	28	39.8239	38	100	5.62961	78	172	1.25423	118	244	0.37956
-1	30	37.1988	39	102	5.39689	79	174	1.2133	119	246	0.36954
0	32	35.2024	40	104	5.17519	80	176	1.17393	120	248	0.35982
1	34	33.3269	41	106	4.96392	81	178	1.13604	121	250	0.35042
2	36	31.5635	42	108	4.76253	82	180	1.09958	122	252	0.3413
3	37	29.9058	43	109	4.5705	83	181	1.06448	123	253	0.33246
4	39	28.3459	44	111	4.38736	84	183	1.03069	124	255	0.3239
5	41	26.8778	45	113	4.21263	85	185	0.99815	125	257	0.31559
6	43	25.4954	46	115	4.04589	86	187	0.96681	126	259	0.30754
7	45	24.1932	47	117	3.88673	87	189	0.93662	127	261	0.29974
8	46	22.5662	48	118	3.73476	88	190	0.90753	128	262	0.29216
9	48	21.8094	49	120	3.58962	89	192	0.8795	129	264	0.28482
10	50	20.7184	50	122	3.45097	90	194	0.85248	130	266	0.2777
11	52	19.6891	51	124	3.31847	91	196	0.82643	131	268	0.27078
12	54	18.7177	52	126	3.19183	92	198	0.80132	132	270	0.26408
13	55	17.8005	53	127	3.07075	93	199	0.77709	133	271	0.25757
14	57	16.9341	54	129	2.95896	94	201	0.75373	134	273	0.25125
15	59	16.1156	55	131	2.84421	95	203	0.73119	135	275	0.24512
16	61	15.3418	56	133	2.73823	96	205	0.70944	136	277	0.23916
17	63	14.6181	57	135	2.63682	97	207	0.68844	137	279	0.23338
18	64	13.918	58	136	2.53973	98	208	0.66818	138	280	0.22776
19	66	13.2631	59	138	2.44677	99	210	0.64862	139	282	0.22231

System Pressure Table-R454B

Pressure			Temperature		Pressure			Temperature	
Kpa	bar	PSI	°C	°F	Kpa	bar	PSI	°C	°F
58.196	0.58	8.44	-60	-76	935.23	9.35	135.64	8	46.4
61.517	0.62	8.92	-59	-74.2	963.75	9.64	139.78	9	48.2
64.988	0.65	9.43	-58	-72.4	992.93	9.93	144.01	10	50
68.615	0.69	9.95	-57	-70.6	1022.8	10.23	148.34	11	51.8
72.402	0.72	10.50	-56	-68.8	1053.3	10.53	152.76	12	53.6
76.354	0.76	11.07	-55	-67	1084.5	10.85	157.29	13	55.4
80.478	0.80	11.67	-54	-65.2	1116.4	11.16	161.91	14	57.2
84.776	0.85	12.30	-53	-63.4	1149	11.49	166.64	15	59
89.256	0.89	12.95	-52	-61.6	1182.3	11.82	171.47	16	60.8
93.923	0.94	13.62	-51	-59.8	1216.3	12.16	176.40	17	62.6
98.781	0.99	14.33	-50	-58	1251.1	12.51	181.45	18	64.4
103.84	1.04	15.06	-49	-56.2	1286.6	12.87	186.60	19	66.2
109.1	1.09	15.82	-48	-54.4	1322.8	13.23	191.85	20	68
114.56	1.15	16.61	-47	-52.6	1359.9	13.60	197.23	21	69.8
120.25	1.20	17.44	-46	-50.8	1397.7	13.98	202.71	22	71.6
126.15	1.26	18.30	-45	-49	1436.3	14.36	208.31	23	73.4
132.28	1.32	19.18	-44	-47.2	1475.7	14.76	214.02	24	75.2
138.64	1.39	20.11	-43	-45.4	1515.9	15.16	219.85	25	77
145.24	1.45	21.06	-42	-43.6	1557	15.57	225.82	26	78.8
152.09	1.52	22.06	-41	-41.8	1598.9	15.99	231.89	27	80.6
159.18	1.59	23.09	-40	-40	1641.6	16.42	238.09	28	82.4
166.54	1.67	24.15	-39	-38.2	1685.2	16.85	244.41	29	84.2
174.15	1.74	25.26	-38	-36.4	1729.7	17.30	250.86	30	86
182.04	1.82	26.40	-37	-34.6	1775	17.75	257.43	31	87.8
190.2	1.90	27.59	-36	-32.8	1821.3	18.21	264.15	32	89.6
198.65	1.99	28.81	-35	-31	1868.4	18.68	270.98	33	91.4
207.39	2.07	30.08	-34	-29.2	1916.5	19.17	277.95	34	93.2
216.42	2.16	31.39	-33	-27.4	1965.6	19.66	285.08	35	95
225.76	2.26	32.74	-32	-25.6	2015.5	20.16	292.31	36	96.8
235.41	2.35	34.14	-31	-23.8	2066.5	20.67	299.71	37	98.6
245.37	2.45	35.59	-30	-22	2118.4	21.18	307.24	38	100.4
255.67	2.56	37.08	-29	-20.2	2171.3	21.71	314.91	39	102.2
266.29	2.66	38.62	-28	-18.4	2225.2	22.25	322.73	40	104
277.25	2.77	40.21	-27	-16.6	2280.2	22.80	330.70	41	105.8
288.56	2.89	41.85	-26	-14.8	2336.1	23.36	338.81	42	107.6
300.22	3.00	43.54	-25	-13	2393.2	23.93	347.09	43	109.4
312.24	3.12	45.28	-24	-11.2	2451.3	24.51	355.52	44	111.2
324.63	3.25	47.08	-23	-9.4	2510.4	25.10	364.09	45	113
337.39	3.37	48.93	-22	-7.6	2570.7	25.71	372.84	46	114.8
350.54	3.51	50.84	-21	-5.8	2632.1	26.32	381.74	47	116.6
364.08	3.64	52.80	-20	-4	2694.7	26.95	390.82	48	118.4
378.02	3.78	54.83	-19	-2.2	2758.3	27.58	400.04	49	120.2
392.37	3.92	56.91	-18	-0.4	2823.2	28.23	409.46	50	122
407.13	4.07	59.05	-17	1.4	2889.3	28.89	419.04	51	123.8

System Pressure Table-R454B (Continued)

Pressure			Temperature		Pressure			Temperature	
Kpa	bar	PSI	°C	°F	Kpa	bar	PSI	°C	°F
422.31	4.22	61.25	-16	3.2	2956.5	29.57	428.79	52	125.6
437.92	4.38	63.51	-15	5	3025	30.25	438.72	53	127.4
453.98	4.54	65.84	-14	6.8	3094.7	30.95	448.83	54	129.2
470.47	4.70	68.23	-13	8.6	3165.7	31.66	459.13	55	131
487.43	4.87	70.69	-12	10.4	3238.1	32.38	469.63	56	132.8
504.84	5.05	73.22	-11	12.2	3311.7	33.12	480.30	57	134.6
522.73	5.23	75.81	-10	14	3386.7	33.87	491.18	58	136.4
541.1	5.41	78.48	-9	15.8	3463	34.63	502.25	59	138.2
559.95	5.60	81.21	-8	17.6	3540.7	35.41	513.52	60	140
579.31	5.79	84.02	-7	19.4	3619.9	36.20	525.00	61	141.8
599.16	5.99	86.90	-6	21.2	3700.5	37.01	536.69	62	143.6
619.54	6.20	89.85	-5	23	3782.7	37.83	548.61	63	145.4
640.43	6.40	92.88	-4	24.8	3866.3	38.66	560.74	64	147.2
661.86	6.62	95.99	-3	26.6	3951.5	39.52	573.10	65	149
683.82	6.84	99.18	-2	28.4	4038.3	40.38	585.69	66	150.8
706.34	7.06	102.44	-1	30.2	4126.8	41.27	598.52	67	152.6
729.41	7.29	105.79	0	32	4217	42.17	611.60	68	154.4
753.06	7.53	109.22	1	33.8	4309	43.09	624.95	69	156.2
777.28	7.77	112.73	2	35.6	4402.9	44.03	638.56	70	158
802.08	8.02	116.33	3	37.4	4498.7	44.99	652.46	71	159.8
827.48	8.27	120.01	4	39.2	4596.5	45.97	666.64	72	161.6
853.49	8.53	123.78	5	41	4696.5	46.97	681.15	73	163.4
880.11	8.80	127.64	6	42.8	4798.9	47.99	696.00	74	165.2
907.35	9.07	131.60	7	44.6	4904.1	49.04	711.25	75	167

45MAHA HIGH WALL DUCTLESS SYSTEM Sizes 06K to 36K

SERVICE MANUAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
SAFETY CONSIDERATION	1
INTRODUCTION	2
PRECAUTIONS	3
INFORMATION SERVICING (FLAMMABLE MATERIALS)	5
INDOOR UNIT SIZES	8
MODEL NUMBER NOMENCLATURE	8
WIRING	9
CONNECTION DIAGRAMS	10
WIRING DIAGRAMS	11
REFRIGERANT CYCLE DIAGRAM	12
REFRIGERANT LINES	12
SPECIFICATIONS	13
SYSTEM EVACUATION AND CHARGING	15
INQUIRY MODE	19
GENERAL TROUBLESHOOTING	23
INDOOR UNIT DIAGNOSTIC GUIDES	25
QUICK MAINTENANCE BY ERROR CODE	26
TROUBLESHOOTING BY ERROR CODE	28
DISASSEMBLY INSTRUCTIONS	52
APPENDIX	66

SAFETY CONSIDERATION


Installing, starting up, and servicing air-conditioning equipment can be hazardous due to system pressures, electrical components, and equipment location (roofs, elevated structures, etc.). Only trained, qualified installers and service mechanics should install, start-up, and service this equipment.

Untrained personnel can perform basic maintenance functions such as coil cleaning. All other operations should be performed by trained service personnel.


When working on the equipment, observe precautions in the product literature and on tags, stickers, and labels attached to the equipment.

Follow all safety codes. Wear safety glasses and work gloves. Keep a quenching cloth and fire extinguisher nearby when brazing. Use care in handling, rigging, and setting bulky equipment.

Read this manual thoroughly and follow all warnings or cautions included in the literature and attached to the unit. Consult local building codes and National Electrical Code (NEC) for special requirements.

Recognize safety information. This is the safety-alert symbol . When you see this symbol on the unit and in instructions or manuals, be alert to the potential for personal injury.


Understand these signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, and **CAUTION**. These words are used with the safety-alert symbol. **DANGER** identifies the most serious hazards which **will** result in severe personal injury or death. **WARNING** signifies hazards which **could** result in personal injury or death. **CAUTION** is used to identify unsafe practices which **may** result in minor personal injury or product and property damage. **NOTE** is used to highlight suggestions which **will** result in enhanced installation, reliability, or operation.


WARNING

ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD


Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death.


Before installing, modifying, or servicing system, main electrical disconnect switch must be in the **OFF** position. There may be more than 1 disconnect switch. Lock out and tag switch with a suitable warning label.


WARNING

EXPLOSION HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in death, serious personal injury, and/or property damage. Never use air or gases containing oxygen for leak testing or operating refrigerant compressors. Pressurized mixtures of air or gases containing oxygen can lead to an explosion.




CAUTION

EQUIPMENT DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in equipment damage or improper operation. Do not bury more than 36 in. (914 mm) of refrigerant pipe in the ground. If any section of pipe is buried, there must be a 6 in. (152 mm) vertical rise to the valve connections on the outdoor units.

If more than the recommended length is buried, refrigerant may migrate to the cooler buried section during extended periods of system shutdown. This causes refrigerant slugging and could possibly damage the compressor at start-up.

INTRODUCTION

This service manual provides the necessary information to service, repair, and maintain the 45MAHA family of heat pumps. This manual has an "APPENDIX" on page 66 with data required to perform troubleshooting. Use the "TABLE OF CONTENTS" on page 1 to locate a desired topic.



WARNING

This appliance is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities, or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they have been given supervision or instruction concerning use of the appliance by a person responsible for their safety. Children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the appliance.



WARNING

Only use the specified wire. If the wire is damaged, it must be replaced by the manufacturer, its service agent or similarly qualified persons in order to avoid a hazard. The product must be properly grounded at the time of installation, or electric shock may occur.

For all electrical work, follow all local and national wiring standards, regulations, and the Installation Manual. Connect the cables tightly, and clamp them securely to prevent external forces from damaging the terminal. Improper electrical connections can overheat and cause fire, and may also cause shock. All electrical connections must be made according to the Electrical Connection Diagram located on the panels of the indoor and outdoor units.

All wiring must be properly arranged to ensure that the control board cover can close properly. If the control board cover is not closed properly, it can lead to corrosion and cause the connection points on the terminal to heat up, catch fire, or cause electrical shock.

Disconnection must be incorporated in the fixed wiring in accordance with NEC, CSA, and Local Codes. Do not share the electrical outlet with other appliances. Improper or insufficient power supply can cause fire or electric shock.

If connecting power to fixed wiring, an all-pole disconnection device which has at least 3mm clearances in all poles, and have a leakage current that may exceed 10mA, the residual current device (RCD) having a rated residual operating current not exceeding 30mA, and disconnection must be incorporated in the fixed wiring in accordance with NEC, CSA, and Local Codes.



WARNING

Turn off the unit and disconnect the power before performing any installation or repairing. Failure to do so can cause electric shock.

Installation must be performed by an authorized dealer or specialist. Defective installation can cause water leakage, electrical shock, or fire. Installation must be performed according to the installation instructions.

Improper installation can cause water leakage, electrical shock, or fire. Contact an authorized service technician for repair or maintenance of this unit. This appliance shall be installed in accordance with national wiring regulations.

Only use the included accessories, parts, and specified parts for installation. Using non-standard parts can cause water leakage, electrical shock, fire, and can cause the unit to fail.

Install the unit in a firm location that can support the unit's weight. If the chosen location cannot support the unit's weight, or the installation is not done properly, the unit may drop and cause serious injury and damage. Install drainage piping according to the instructions in this manual. Improper drainage may cause water damage to your home and property.

For units that have an auxiliary electric heater, do not install the unit within 3 feet (1 meter) of any combustible materials.

If combustible gas accumulates around the unit, it may cause fire.

Do not turn on the power until all work has been completed.

When moving or relocating the unit, consult experienced service technicians for disconnection and re-installation of the unit.

How to install the appliance to its support, please read the information for details in "Indoor Unit Installation" and "Outdoor Unit Installation" sections.

NOTE: The air conditioner's circuit board (PCB) is designed with a fuse to provide overcurrent protection. The specifications of the fuse are printed on the circuit board, for example: T3.15AL/250VAC, T5AL/250VAC, T3.15A/250VAC, T5A/250VAC, T20A/250VAC, T30A/250VAC, etc.

NOTE: Only the blast-proof ceramic fuse can be used.

⚠ WARNING

FOR FLAMMABLE REFRIGERANTS

Do not use means to accelerate the defrosting process or to clean, other than those recommended by the manufacturer.

The appliance shall be stored in a room without continuously operating ignition sources (for example: open flames, an operating gas appliance or an operating electric heater).

Do not pierce or burn. Be aware that refrigerants may not contain an odor.

⚠ WARNING

PERSONAL INJURY AND PROPERTY DAMAGE HAZARD

For continued performance, reliability, and safety, the only approved accessories and replacement parts are those specified by the equipment manufacturer. The use of non-manufacturer approved parts and accessories could invalidate the equipment limited warranty and result in fire risk, equipment malfunction, and failure. Review the manufacturer’s instructions and replacement parts catalogs available from your equipment supplier.

WARNING - RISK OF FIRE DUE TO FLAMMABLE REFRIGERANT USED. FOLLOW HANDLING INSTRUCTIONS CAREFULLY IN COMPLIANCE WITH NATIONAL REGULATIONS.

R-454B  R-454B

Refrigerant Safety Group **A2L**

NOTE: Risk of Fire. Flammable refrigerant used. To be repaired only by trained service personnel. Do not puncture refrigerant tubing.

PRECAUTIONS

To prevent personal injury, or property or unit damage, adhere to all precautionary measures and instructions outlined in this manual. Before servicing a unit, refer to this service manual and its relevant sections.

Failure to adhere to all precautionary measures listed in this section may result in personal injury, damage to the unit or to property, or in extreme cases, death.

IN CASE OF ACCIDENT OR EMERGENCY

⚠ WARNING

- If a gas leak is suspected, immediately turn off the gas and ventilate the area if a gas leak is suspected before turning the unit on.
- If strange sounds or smoke is detected from the unit, turn the breaker off and disconnect the power supply cable.
- If the unit comes into contact with liquid, contact an authorized service center.
- If liquid from the batteries makes contact with skin or clothing, immediately rinse or wash the area well with clean water.
- Do not insert hands or other objects into the air inlet or outlet while the unit is plugged in.
- Do not operate the unit with wet hands.

⚠ CAUTION

- Clean and ventilate the unit at regular intervals when operating it near a stove or near similar devices.
- Do not use the unit during severe weather conditions. If possible, remove the product from the window before such occurrences.

PRE-INSTALLATION AND INSTALLATION

⚠ WARNING

- Use this unit only on a dedicated circuit.
- Damage to the installation area could cause the unit to fall, potentially resulting in personal injury, property damage, or product failure.
- Only qualified personnel should disassemble, install, remove, or repair the unit.
- Only a qualified electrician should perform electrical work. For more information, contact your dealer, seller, or an authorized service center.

⚠ CAUTION

While unpacking be careful of sharp edges around the unit as well as the edges of the fins on the con-denser and evaporator.

OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE**WARNING**

- Do not use defective or under-rated circuit breakers.
- Ensure the unit is properly grounded and that a dedicated circuit and breaker are installed.
- Do not modify or extend the power cable. Ensure the power cable is secure and not damaged during operation.
- Do not unplug the power supply plug during operation.
- Do not store or use flammable materials near the unit.
- Do not open the inlet grill of the unit during operation.
- Do not touch the electrostatic filter if the unit is equipped with one.
- Do not block the inlet or outlet of air flow to the unit.
- Do not use harsh detergents, solvents, or similar items to clean the unit. Use a soft cloth for cleaning.
- Do not touch the metal parts of the unit when removing the air filter as they are very sharp.
- Do not step on or place anything on the unit or outdoor units.
- Do not drink water drained from the unit
- Avoid direct skin contact with water drained from the unit.
- Use a firm stool or step ladder according to manufacturer procedures when cleaning or maintaining the unit.

**CAUTION**

- Do not install or operate the unit for an extended period of time in areas of high humidity or in an environment directly exposing it to sea wind or salt spray.
- Do not install the unit on a defective or damaged installation stand, or in an unsecure location.
- Ensure the unit is installed at a level position
- Do not install the unit where noise or air discharge created by the outdoor unit will negatively impact the environment or nearby residences.
- Do not expose skin directly to the air discharged by the unit for prolonged periods of time.
- Ensure the unit operates in areas water or other liquids.
- Ensure the drain hose is installed correctly to ensure proper water drainage.
- When lifting or transporting the unit, it is recommended that two or more people are used for this task.
- When the unit is not to be used for an extended time, disconnect the power supply or turn off the breaker.

WARNING FOR USING FLAMMABLE REFRIGERANT

1. Installation (Space)
 - That the installation of pipe-work shall be kept to a minimum.
 - That pipe-work shall be protected from physical damage.
 - Where refrigerant pipes shall be compliance with national gas regulations.
 - That mechanical connections shall be accessible for maintenance purposes.
 - In cases that require mechanical ventilation, ventilation openings shall be kept clear of obstruction.
 - When disposing of the product is used, be based on national regulations, properly processed.
2. Servicing

Any person who is involved with working on or breaking into a refrigerant circuit should hold a current valid certificate from an industry-accredited assessment authority, which authorizes their competence to handle refrigerants safely in accordance with an industry recognized assessment specification.
3. Maintenance and repair requiring the assistance of other skilled personnel shall be carried out under the supervision of the person competent in the use of flammable refrigerants.
4. Do not use means to accelerate the defrosting process or to clean, other than those recommended by the manufacturer.
5. The appliance shall be stored in a room without continuously operating ignition sources (for example: open flames, an operating gas appliance or an operating electric heater).
6. Be more careful that foreign matter (oil, water, etc.) does not enter the piping. Also, when storing the piping, securely seal the opening by pinching, taping, etc.
7. Do not pierce or burn.
8. Be aware that refrigerants may not contain an odor.
9. All working procedure that affects safety means shall only be carried by competent persons.
10. Appliance shall be stored in a well -ventilated area where the room size corresponds to the room area as specific for operation.
11. The appliance shall be stored so as to prevent mechanical damage from occurring.
12. Joints shall be tested with detection equipment with a capability of 5 g/year of refrigerant or better, with the equipment in standstill and under operation or under a pressure of at least these standstill or operation conditions after installation. Detachable joints shall NOT be used in the indoor side of the unit (brazed, welded joint could be used).
13. When a FLAMMABLE REFRIGERANT is used, the requirements for installation space of appliance and /or ventilation requirements are determined according to
 - the mass charge amount (M) used in the appliance,
 - the installation location,
 - the type of ventilation of the location or of the appliance.
 - piping material, pipe routing, and installation shall include protection from physical damage in operation and service, and be in compliance with national and local codes and standards, such as ASHRAE 15, IAPMO Uniform Mechanical Code, ICC International Mechanical Code, or CSA B52. All field joints shall be accessible for inspection prior to being covered or enclosed.
 - that protection devices, piping, and fittings shall be protected as far as possible against adverse environmental effects, for ex-ample, the danger of water collecting and freezing in relief pipes or the accumulation of dirt and debris;

- that piping in refrigeration systems shall be so designed and installed to minimize the likelihood of hydraulic shock damaging the system;
- that steel pipes and components shall be protected against corrosion with a rustproof coating before applying any insulation;
- that precautions shall be taken to avoid excessive vibration or pulsation;
- the minimum floor area of the room shall be mentioned in the form of a table or a single figure without reference to a formula;
- after completion of field piping for split systems, the field pipe-work shall be pressure tested with an inert gas and then vacuum tested prior to refrigerant charging, according to the following requirements:
 - The minimum test pressure for the low side of the system shall be the low side design pressure and the minimum test pressure for the high side of the system shall be the high side design pressure, unless the high side of the system, cannot be isolated from the low side of the system in which case the entire system shall be pressure tested to the low side design pressure.
 - The test pressure after removal of pressure source shall be maintained for at least 1h with no decrease of pressure indicated by the test gauge, with test gauge resolution not exceeding 5% of the test pressure.
 - During the evacuation test, after achieving a vacuum level specified in the manual or less, the refrigeration system shall be isolated from the vacuum pump and the pressure shall not rise above 1500 microns within 10 min. The vacuum pressure level shall be specified in the manual, and shall be the lessor of 500 microns or the value required for compliance with national and local codes and standards, which may vary between residential, commercial, and industrial buildings.
- field-made refrigerant joints indoors shall be tightness tested according to the following requirements: The test method shall have a sensitivity of 5 grams per year of refrigerant or better under a pressure of at least 0,25 times the maximum allowable pressure. No leak shall be detected.
- correct the minimum room area of the space Amin by multiplying by the altitude adjustment factor (AF) factor in the below table based on for building site ground level altitude (Halt) in meters.

Table 1 — Altitude Adjustment Factor

Halt	0	200	400	600	800	1000	1200	1400	1600
AF	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.02	1.05	1.07	1.10	1.12
Halt	1800	2000	2200	2400	2600	2800	3000	3200	
AF	1.15	1.18	1.21	1.25	1.28	1.32	1.36	1.40	

- Warning: keep any required ventilation openings clear of obstruction;
- Any servicing shall be performed only as recommended by the manufacturer

14. Qualification of workers

Any maintenance, service and repair operations must be required qualification of the working personnel. Every working procedure that affects safety means shall only be carried out by competent persons that joined the training and achieved competence should be documented by a certificate. The training of these procedures is carried out by national training organizations or manufacturers that are accredited to teach the relevant national competency standards that may be set in legislation. All training shall follow the ANNEX HH requirements of UL 60335-2-40 4rd Edition.

Examples for such working procedures are:

- breaking into the refrigerating circuit
- opening of sealed components
- opening of ventilated enclosures

INFORMATION SERVICING (FLAMMABLE MATERIALS)

CHECKS TO THE AREA

Prior to beginning work on systems containing flammable refrigerants, safety checks are necessary to ensure that the risk of ignition is minimized. For repair to the refrigerating system, the following precautions shall be complied with prior to conducting work on the system.

WORK PROCEDURE

Work shall be undertaken under a controlled procedure so as to minimize the risk of a flammable gas or vapor being present while the work is being performed.

GENERAL WORK AREA

All maintenance staff and others working in the local area shall be instructed on the nature of work being carried out. Work in confined spaces shall be avoided.

CHECKING FOR PRESENCE OF REFRIGERANT

- The area shall be checked with an appropriate refrigerant detector prior to and during work, to ensure the technician is aware of potentially flammable atmospheres.
- Ensure that the leak detection equipment being used is suitable for use with flammable refrigerants, i.e. no sparking, adequately sealed or intrinsically safe.

PRESENCE OF FIRE EXTINGUISHER

If any hot work is to be conducted on the refrigeration equipment or any associated parts, appropriate fire extinguishing equipment shall be available to hand. Have a dry powder or CO2 fire extinguisher adjacent to the charging area.

NO IGNITION SOURCE

- No person carrying out work in relation to a refrigeration system which involves exposing any pipe work that contains or has contained flammable refrigerant shall use any sources of ignition in such a manner that it may lead to the risk of fire or explosion.
- All possible ignition sources, including cigarette smoking, should be kept sufficiently far away from the site of installation, repairing, removing and disposal, during which flammable refrigerant can possibly be released to the surrounding space.
- Prior to work taking place, the area around the equipment is to be surveyed to make sure that there are no flammable hazards or ignition risks.
- NO SMOKING signs shall be displayed.

VENTILATED AREA

Ensure that the area is in the open or that it is adequately ventilated before breaking into the system or conducting any hot work. A degree of ventilation shall continue during the period that the work is carried out. The ventilation should safely disperse any released refrigerant and preferably expel it externally into the atmosphere.

CHECKS TO THE REFRIGERANT EQUIPMENT

Where electrical components are being changed, they shall be fit for the purpose and to the correct specification. At all times the manufacturer’s maintenance and service guidelines shall be followed. If in doubt consult the manufacturer’s technical department for assistance. The following checks shall be applied to installations using FLAMMABLE REFRIGERANTS:

- the actual refrigerant charge is in accordance with the room size within which the refrigerant containing parts are installed;
- the ventilation machinery and outlets are operating adequately and are not obstructed;
- if an indirect refrigerating circuit is being used, the secondary circuits shall be checked for the presence of refrigerant;

- marking to the equipment continues to be visible and legible, marking and signs that are illegible shall be corrected;
- refrigeration pipe or components are installed in a position where they are unlikely to be exposed to any substance which may corrode refrigerant containing components, unless the components are constructed of materials which are inherently resistant to being corroded or are suitably protected against being so corroded.

CHECK TO ELECTRICAL DEVICES

Repair and maintenance to electrical components shall include initial safety checks and component inspection procedures. If a fault exists that could compromise safety, then no electrical supply shall be connected to the circuit until it is satisfactorily dealt with. If the fault cannot be corrected immediately but it is necessary to continue operation, an adequate temporary solution shall be used. This shall be reported to the owner of the equipment so all parties are advised. Initial safety checks shall include:

- that capacitors are discharged: this shall be done in a safe manner to avoid possibility of sparking;
- that there no live electrical components and wiring are exposed while charging, recovering or purging the system;
- that there is continuity of earth bonding.

SEALED ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS SHALL BE REPLACED

- During repairs to sealed components, all electrical supplies shall be disconnected from the equipment being worked upon prior to any removal of sealed covers, etc.

If it is absolutely necessary to have an electrical supply to equipment during servicing, then a permanently operating form of leak detection shall be located at the most critical point to warn of a potentially hazardous situation.

- Particular attention shall be paid to the following to ensure that by working on electrical components, the casing is not altered in such a way that the level of protection is affected. This shall include damage to cables, excessive number of connections, terminals not made to original specification, damage to seals, incorrect fitting of glands, etc.
 - Ensure that apparatus is mounted securely.
 - Ensure that seals or sealing materials have not degraded such that they no longer serve the purpose of preventing the ingress of flammable atmospheres. Replacement parts shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.

INTRINSICALLY SAFE COMPONENTS MUST BE REPLACED

Do not apply any permanent inductive or capacitance loads to the circuit without ensuring that this will not exceed the permissible voltage and current permitted for the equipment in use. Intrinsically safe components are the only types that can be worked on while live in the presence of a flammable atmosphere. The test apparatus shall be at the correct rating. Replace components only with parts specified by the manufacturer. Other parts may result in the ignition of refrigerant in the atmosphere from a leak.

NOTE: The use of silicon sealant may inhibit the effectiveness of some types of leak detection equipment. Intrinsically safe components do not have to be isolated prior to working on them.

CABLING

Check that cabling will not be subject to wear, corrosion, excessive pressure, vibration, sharp edges or any other adverse environmental effects. The check shall also take into account the effects of aging or continual vibration from sources such as compressors or fans.

DETECTION OF FLAMMABLE REFRIGERANTS

- Under no circumstances shall potential sources of ignition be used in the searching for or detection of refrigerant leaks. A halide torch (or any other detector using a naked flame) shall not be used.
- The following leak detection methods are deemed acceptable for refrigerant systems. Electronic leak detectors may be used to detect refrigerant leaks but, in the case of FLAMMABLE REFRIGERANTS, the sensitivity may not be adequate, or may need re-calibration. (Detection equipment shall be calibrated in a refrigerant-free area.) Ensure that the detector is not a potential source of ignition and is suitable for the refrigerant used. Leak detection equipment shall be set at a percentage of the LFL of the refrigerant and shall be calibrated to the refrigerant employed, and the appropriate percentage of gas (25 % maximum) is confirmed. Leak detection fluids are also suitable for use with most refrigerants but the use of detergents containing chlorine shall be avoided as the chlorine may react with the refrigerant and corrode the copper pipe-work.

NOTE Examples of leak detection fluids are:

- **bubble method,**
- **fluorescent method agents.**
 - If a leak is suspected, all naked flames shall be removed/extinguished.
 - If a leakage of refrigerant is found which requires brazing, all of the refrigerant shall be recovered from the system, or isolated (by means of shut of valves) in a part of the system remote from the leak. See the following instructions of removal of refrigerant.

REMOVAL AND EVACUATION

- When breaking into the refrigerant circuit to make repairs or for any other purpose, conventional procedures shall be used. However, it is important that best practice is followed since flammability is a consideration.
- The following procedure shall be adhered to:
 - safely remove refrigerant following local and national regulations;
 - evacuate;
 - purge the circuit with inert gas (optional for A2L);
 - evacuate (optional for A2L);
 - continuously flush or purge with inert gas when using flame to open circuit; and open the circuit;
- The refrigerant charge shall be recovered into the correct recovery cylinders if venting is not allowed by local and national codes. For appliances containing flammable refrigerants, the system shall be purged with oxygen-free nitrogen to render the appliance safe for flammable refrigerants. This process might need to be repeated several times. Compressed air or oxygen shall not be used for purging refrigerant systems.
- For appliances containing flammable refrigerants, refrigerants purging shall be achieved by breaking the vacuum in the system with oxygen-free nitrogen and continuing to fill until the working pressure is achieved, then venting to atmosphere, and finally pulling down to a vacuum (optional for A2L). This process shall be repeated until no refrigerant is within the system (optional for A2L). When the final oxygen-free nitrogen charge is used, the system shall be vented down to atmospheric pressure to enable work to take place.
- The outlet for the vacuum pump shall not be close to any potential ignition sources, and ventilation shall be available.

CHARGING PROCEDURES

In addition to conventional charging procedures, the following requirements shall be followed:

- Works shall be undertaken with appropriate tools only (In case of uncertainty, please consult the manufacturer of the tools for use with flammable refrigerants)
- Ensure that contamination of different refrigerants does not occur when using charging equipment. Hoses or lines shall be as short as possible to minimize the amount of refrigerant contained in them.
- Cylinders shall be kept upright.
- Ensure that the refrigeration system is earthed prior to charging the system with refrigerant.
- Label the system when charging is complete (if not already). Extreme care shall be taken not to overfill the refrigeration system.
- Prior to recharging the system it shall be pressure tested with OFN. The system shall be leak tested on completion of charging but prior to commissioning. A follow up leak test shall be carried out prior to leaving the site.

DECOMMISSIONING

Before carrying out this procedure, it is essential that the technician is completely familiar with the equipment and all its detail. It is recommended good practice that all refrigerants are recovered safely. Prior to the task being carried out, an oil and refrigerant sample shall be taken in case analysis is required prior to re-use of recovered refrigerant. It is essential that electrical power is available before the task is commenced.

- Become familiar with the equipment and its operation.
- Isolate system electrically.
- Before attempting the procedure ensure that:
 - mechanical handling equipment is available, if required, for handling refrigerant cylinders;
 - all personal protective equipment is available and being used correctly;
 - the recovery process is supervised at all times by a competent person;
 - recovery equipment and cylinders conform to the appropriate standards.
- Pump down refrigerant system, if possible.
- If a vacuum is not possible, make a manifold so that refrigerant can be removed from various parts of the system.
- Make sure that cylinder is situated on the scales before recovery takes place.
- Start the recovery machine and operate in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- Do not overfill cylinders. (No more than 80% volume liquid charge).
- Do not exceed the maximum working pressure of the cylinder, even temporarily.
- When the cylinders have been filled correctly and the process completed, make sure that the cylinders and the equipment are removed from site promptly and all isolation valves on the equipment are closed off.
- Recovered refrigerant shall not be charged into another refrigeration system unless it has been cleaned and checked.

LABELING

Equipment shall be labeled stating that it has been de-commissioned and emptied of refrigerant. The label shall be dated and signed. For appliances containing FLAMMABLE REFRIGERANTS, ensure that there are labels on the equipment stating the equipment contains FLAMMABLE REFRIGERANT.

RECOVERY

- When removing refrigerant from a system, either for servicing or decommissioning,
- it is recommended good practice that all refrigerants are removed safely.
- When transferring refrigerant into cylinders, ensure that only appropriate refrigerant recovery cylinders are employed. Ensure that the correct number of cylinders for holding the total system charge is available. All cylinders to be used are designated for the recovered refrigerant and labeled for that refrigerant (i.e. special cylinders for the recovery of refrigerant). Cylinders shall be complete with pressure-relief valve and associated shut-of valves in good working order. Empty recovery cylinders are evacuated and, if possible, cooled before recovery occurs.
- The recovery equipment shall be in good working order with a set of instructions concerning the equipment that is at hand and shall be suitable for the recovery of the flammable refrigerant. If in doubt the manufacturer should be consulted. In addition, a set of calibrated weighing scales shall be available and in good working order. Hoses shall be complete with leak-free disconnect couplings and in good condition.
- The recovered refrigerant shall be processed according to local legislation in the correct recovery cylinder, and the relevant waste transfer note arranged. Do not mix refrigerants in recovery units and especially not in cylinders.
- If compressors or compressor oils are to be removed, ensure that they have been evacuated to an acceptable level to make certain that flammable refrigerant does not remain within the lubricant. The compressor body shall not be heated by an open flame or other ignition sources to accelerate this process. When oil is drained from a system, it shall be carried out safely.

TRANSPORTATION, MARKING AND STORAGE FOR UNITS

1. Transport of equipment containing flammable refrigerants
Compliance with the transport regulations
2. Marking of equipment using signs
Compliance with local regulations
3. Disposal of equipment using flammable refrigerants
Compliance with national regulations
4. Storage of equipment/appliances
The storage of equipment should be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
5. Storage of packed (unsold) equipment
Storage package protection should be constructed such that mechanical damage to the equipment inside the package will not cause a leak of the refrigerant charge. The maximum number of pieces of equipment permitted to be stored together will be determined by local regulations.

INDOOR UNIT SIZES

Capacity (Btu/h)	Voltage	Indoor units
12K	115V, 1 phase, 60Hz	45MAHAQ12XA1
6K	208/230V, 1 phase, 60Hz	45MAHAQ06XA3
9K		45MAHAQ09XA3
12K		45MAHAQ12XA3
18		45MAHAQ18XA3
24K		45MAHAQ24XA3
30K		45MAHAQ30XX3
33K		45MAHAQ33XX3
36K		45MAHAQ36XA3

MODEL NUMBER NOMENCLATURE

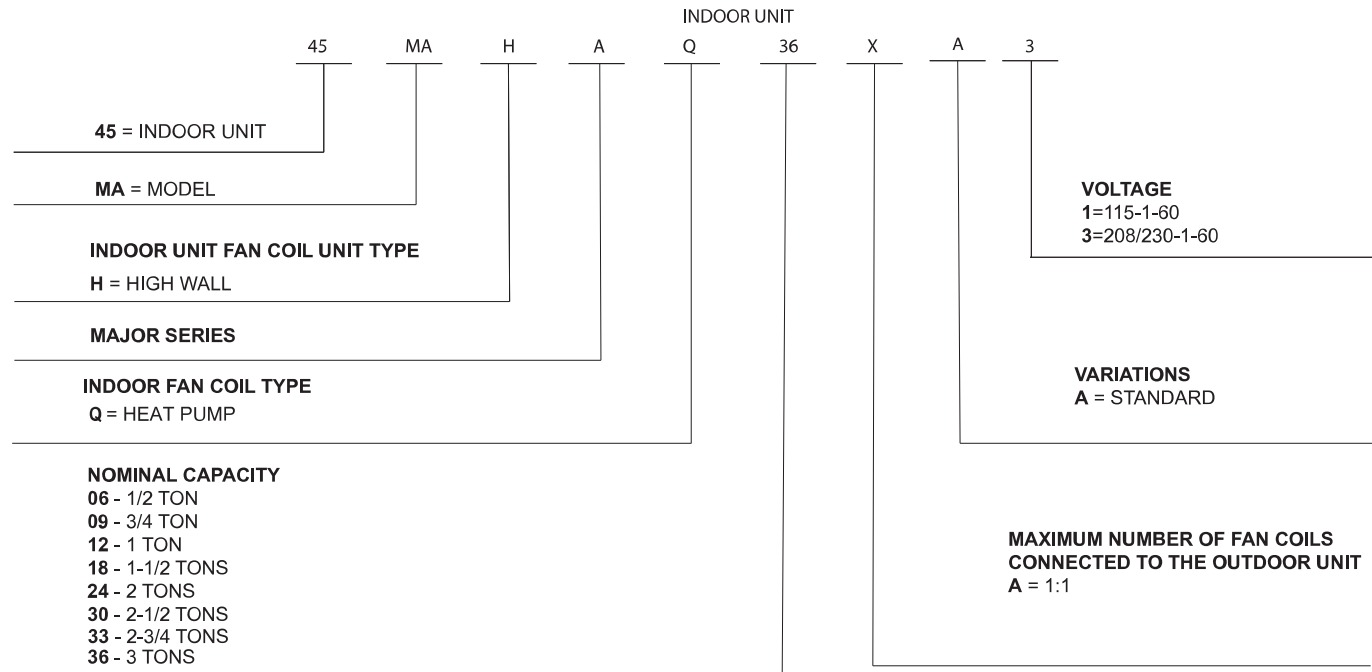


Fig. 1 —Model Number Nomenclature

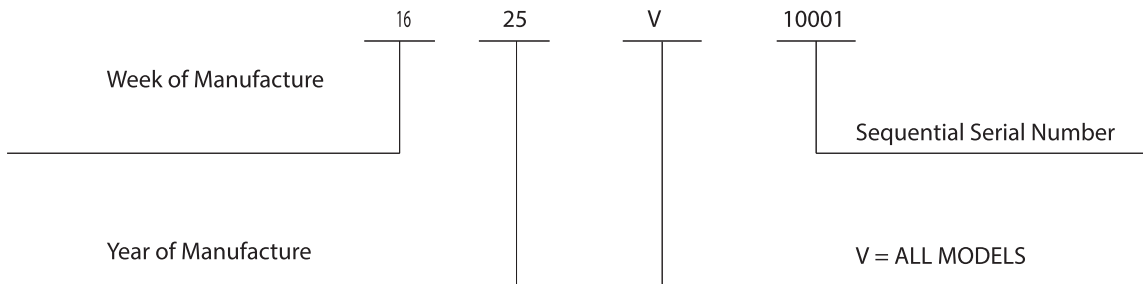


Fig. 2 —Serial Number Nomenclature



Use of the AHRI Certified TM Mark indicates a manufacturer's participation in the program. For verification of certification for individual products, go to www.ahridirectory.org.

WIRING

All wires must be sized per NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) and local codes. Use the Electrical Data table MCA (minimum circuit amps) and MOCP (maximum over current protection) to correctly size the wires and the disconnect fuse or breakers respectively.

Per the caution note, only stranded copper conductors with a 600 volt insulation rating wire must be used.

Recommended Connection Method for Power and Communication Wiring:

The main power is supplied to the outdoor unit. The field supplied 14/3 stranded wire with ground with a 600 volt insulation rating, power/communication wiring from the outdoor unit to the indoor unit consists of four (4) wires and provides the power for the indoor unit.

Two wires are line voltage AC power: connect L1 to terminal (1), N or L2 to (2), Communication wire to (3), green ground wire to ground terminal.

Refer to the "CONNECTION DIAGRAMS" on page 10 for 115 volt or 208/230 volt connection.

If installed in a high electromagnetic field area (EMF) and communication issues exist, a 14/2 stranded shielded wire can be used to replace (2) and (3) (polarity sensitive) between the outdoor unit and the indoor unit landing the shield onto the ground in the outdoor unit only.

CAUTION

EQUIPMENT DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in damage or improper operation.

Wires should be sized based on NEC and local codes.

CAUTION

EQUIPMENT DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in equipment damage or improper operation.

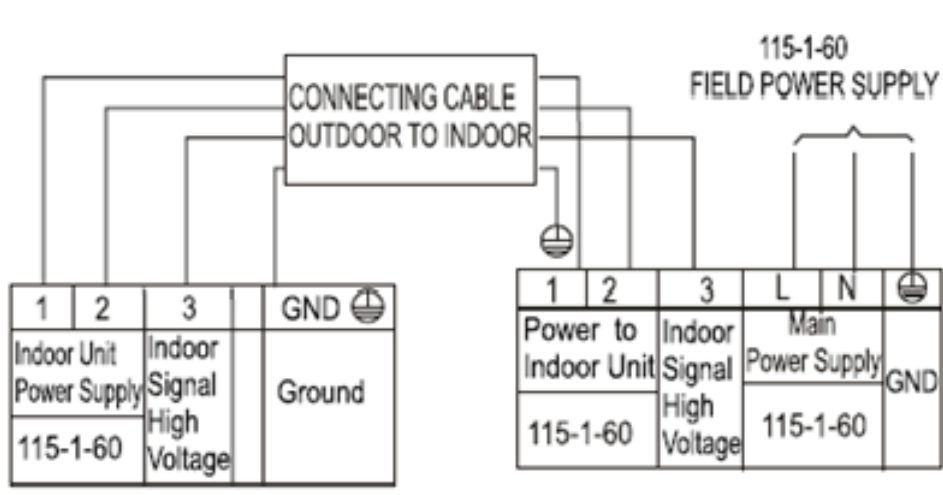
Be sure to comply with local codes while running wire from the indoor unit to the outdoor unit.

Every wire must be connected firmly. Loose wiring may cause the terminal to overheat or result in unit malfunction. A fire hazard may also exist. Ensure all wiring is tightly connected.

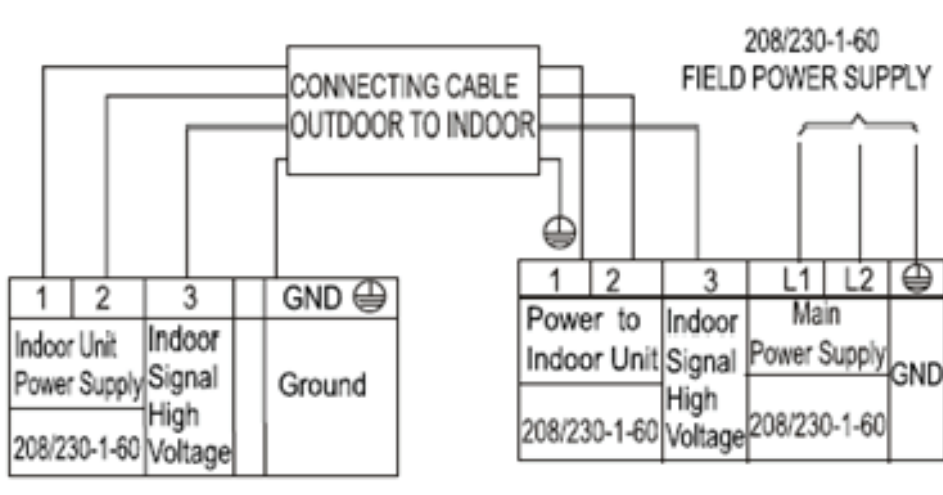
No wire should touch the refrigerant tubing, compressor or any moving parts.

Disconnecting means must be provided and shall be located within sight and readily accessible from the air conditioner. Connecting cable with conduit shall be routed through the hole in the conduit panel.

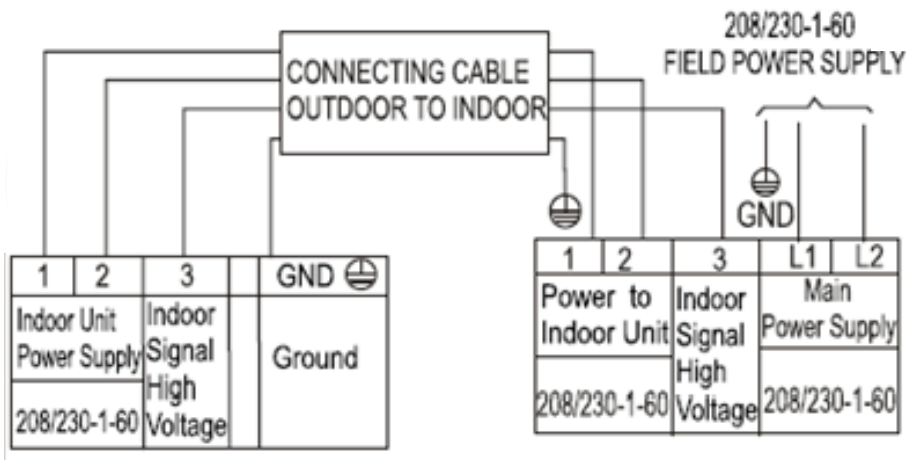
CONNECTION DIAGRAMS



Connection Diagram - 12K (115V)



Connection Diagram - 6K - 18K (208/230-1-60)



Connection Diagram - 24K - 36K (208/230-1-60)

Fig. 3 —Connection Diagrams

WIRING DIAGRAMS

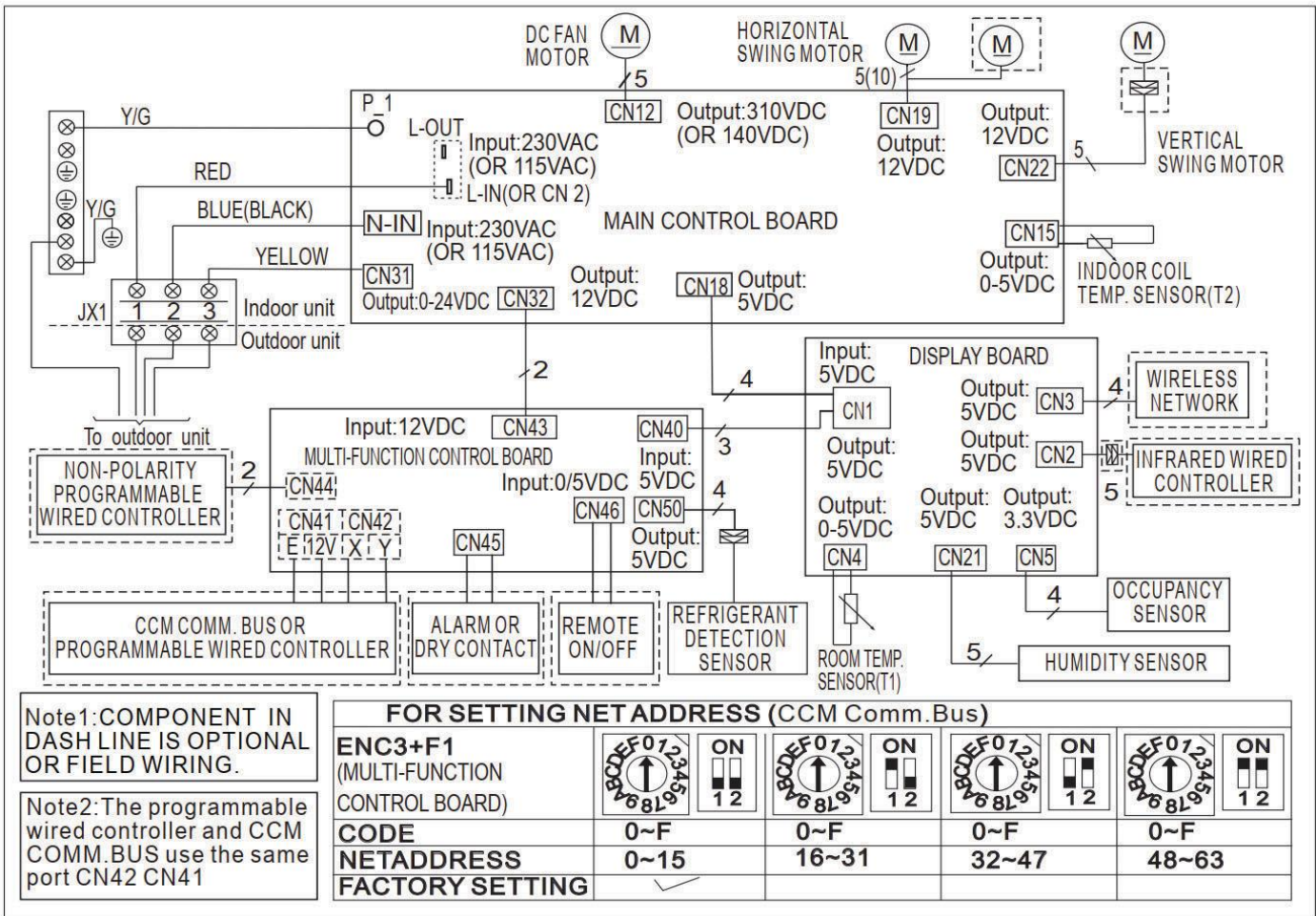
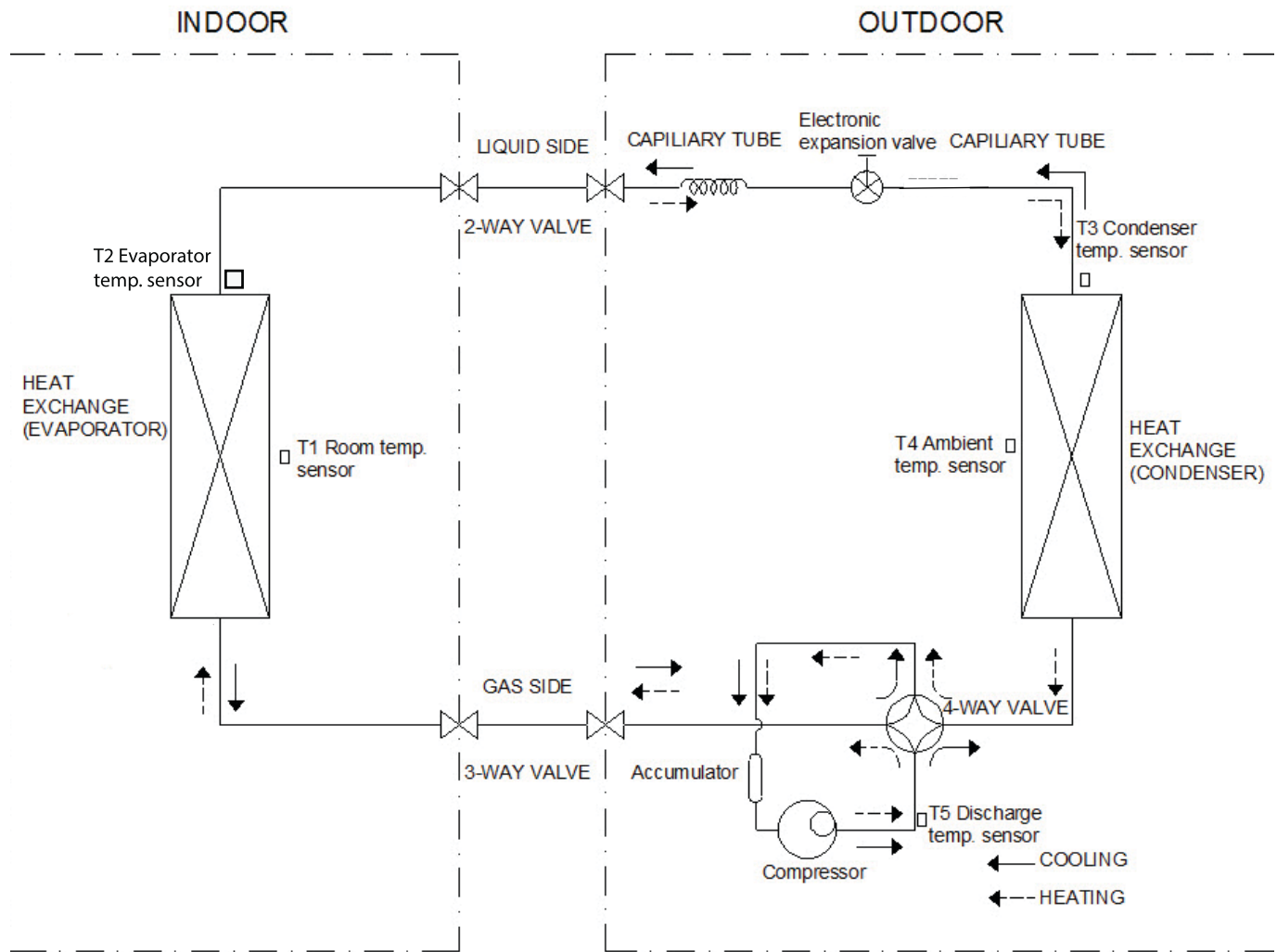


Fig. 4 —Indoor Unit Wiring Diagram (6K~36K)

REFRIGERANT CYCLE DIAGRAM



REFRIGERANT LINES

IMPORTANT: Both refrigerant lines must be insulated separately.

Refer to the outdoor unit's installation instructions for other allowed piping lengths and refrigerant information.

SPECIFICATIONS

Table 2 – Fan and Motor Specifications

Indoor Unit Model		45MAHAQ06XA3	45MAHAQ09XA3	45MAHAQ12XA1	45MAHAQ12XA3	45MAHAQ18XA3	45MAHAQ24XA3	45MAHAQ30XA3	45MAHAQ33XA3	45MAHAQ36XA3		
Power supply V;Ph;Hz		208/230V;1Ph;60HZ			115V;1Ph;60HZ	208/230V;1Ph;60HZ						
INDOOR FAN SPECIFICATIONS	Material	Acrylontrile Styrene +30%G										
	Type	GL-98*638-IN					GL-98*758-IN	GL-121*883-IN				
	Diameter	inch	3.9	3.9	3.9	3.9	3.9	4.8	4.8	4.8	4.8	
		mm	98	98	98	98	98	121	121	121	121	
	Height	inch	25.1	25.1	25.1	25.1	29.8	34.8	34.8	34.8	34.8	
		mm	638	638	638	638	758	883	883	883	883	
INDOOR MOTOR SPECIFICATIONS	Model	ZKFP-20-8-6-7		ZKFP-20-8-113	ZKFP-20-8-6-7	ZKFP-30-8-3-10	ZKFP-58-8-1-10		ZKFP-58-8-20L	ZKFP-58-8-1-10		
	Type	DC										
	Input	W	50	50	35	50	36	58	58	86.2	58	
	Max. input	W	70	70	65.8	70	70	102	102	112.5	102	
	Output	W	37.5	37.5	26	37.5	27	43.5	43.5	58	43.5	
	FLA	A	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.81	1.32	0.65	1.63	0.65	
	Rated HP	HP	0.05	0.05	0.03	0.05	0.04	0.06	0.06	0.08	0.06	
	Range of current	Amps	0.067~0.24	0.067~0.24	0.043~0.467	0.067~0.24	0.11~0.275	0.27~0.96	0.27~0.96	0.385~0.97	0.27~0.96	
	Rated current	Amps	0.16	0.16	0.257	0.16	0.11	0.780	0.780	0.740	0.780	
	Speed	rev/min	1100/850/700		1200/900/700	1100/850/700	1190/994/896	1000/850/630	1050/880/630	1300/1070/960	1050/880/630	
	Rated RPM	rev/min	1100	1100	1200	1100	1190	1000	1050	1300	1050	
	Insulation class	-	E									
	Safe class	-	IPX0	IPX0	IP20	IPX0	IPX4	IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20	

Table 3 – Indoor Refrigerant Coil Specifications

Indoor Unit Model		45MAHAQ06XA3	45MAHAQ09XA3	45MAHAQ12XA1	45MAHAQ12XA3	45MAHAQ18XA3	45MAHAQ24XA3	45MAHAQ30XA3	45MAHAQ33XA3	45MAHAQ36XA3
Power supply	V;Ph;Hz	208/230V;1Ph;60HZ		115V;1Ph; 60HZ	208/230V;1Ph;60HZ					
Number of rows	Rows	2	2	2	2	2	3	3	3	3
Tube outside dia.	inch	0.276								
	mm	Ø7								
Nominal Tube Wall	Inch (mm)	0.00945 (0.24)								
Tube Enhancement	(Yes/No)	Yes								
Tube Material		Copper								
Tube pitch(a)x row pitch(b)	inch	0.83x0.53								
	mm	21x13.37								
Fin Spacing	FPI	20								
	mm	1.3								
Fin type		Louvered								
Fin Material		Gold hydrophilic aluminum								
Coil length x height x width	inch	25x3.31x1.05 +25x4.96x1.0 5+25x4.13x1. 05	25x3.31x1.05 +25x4.96x1.0 5+25x4.13x1. 05	25x3.31x1.05 +25x4.96x1.0 5+25x4.13x1. 05	25x3.31x1.05 +25x4.96x1.0 5+25x4.13x1. 05	29.92x3.31x1 .05+29.92x4. 96x1.05+29.9 2x4.96x1.05	34.84x4.96x1 .58+34.84x4. 96x1.58+34.8 4x4.96x1.58	34.84x4.96x1 .58+34.84x4. 96x1.58+34.8 4x4.96x1.58	34.84x4.96x1 .58+34.84x4. 96x1.58+34.8 4x4.96x1.58	34.84x4.96x1 .58+34.84x4. 96x1.58+34.8 4x4.96x1.58
	mm	635x84x26.7 4+635x126x2 6.74+635x10 5x26.74	635x84x26.7 4+635x126x2 6.74+635x10 5x26.74	635x84x26.7 4+635x126x2 6.74+635x10 5x26.74	635x84x26.7 4+635x126x2 6.74+635x10 5x26.74	760x84x26.7 4+760x126x2 6.74+760x12 6x26.74	885x126x40. 11+885x126x 40.11+885x1 26x40.11	885x126x40. 11+885x126x 40.11+885x1 26x40.11	885x126x40. 11+885x126x 40.11+885x1 26x40.11	885x126x40. 11+885x126x 40.11+885x1 26x40.11
Face area	ft2	2.15	2.15	2.15	2.15	2.75	3.6	3.6	3.6	3.6
Number of circuits	#	3	3	3	3	4	7	7	7	7

SYSTEM EVACUATION AND CHARGING



CAUTION

UNIT DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in equipment damage or improper operation.

Never use the system compressor as a vacuum pump.

Refrigerant tubes and the indoor coil should be evacuated using the recommended 500 micron deep vacuum method. The alternate triple evacuation method may be used if the procedure outlined below is followed.

NOTE: Always break a vacuum with dry nitrogen.

USING VACUUM PUMP

1. Completely tighten flare nuts A, B, C, D. Connect the manifold gage charge hose to a charge port of the low side service valve (see Fig. 6).
2. Connect the charge hose to vacuum pump.
3. Fully open the low side of manifold gage (see Fig. 5).
4. Start the vacuum pump.
5. Evacuate using either the deep vacuum or triple evacuation method.
6. After evacuation is complete, fully close the low side of manifold gage and stop the vacuum pump operation.
7. The factory charge contained in the outdoor unit is good for up to 25 ft. (8 m) of line length. For refrigerant lines longer than 25 ft. (8 m), add refrigerant, up to the allowable length.
8. Disconnect the charge hose from the charge connection of the low side service valve.
9. Fully open service valves B and A.
10. Securely tighten the service valve caps.

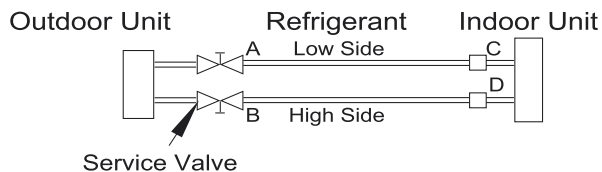


Fig. 5 —Service Valve

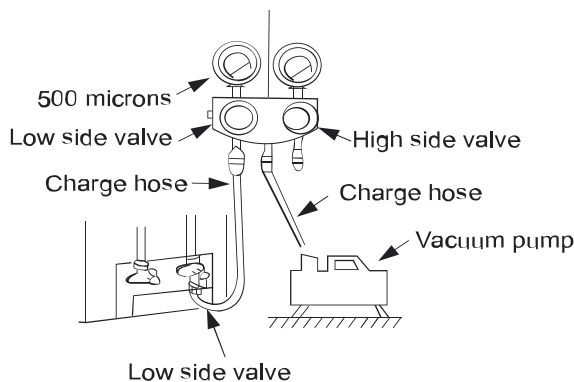


Fig. 6 —Manifold

EVACUATION

Evacuation of the system will remove air or nitrogen (non-condensables) as well as moisture. A proper vacuum will assure a tight, dry system before charging with refrigerant. The two methods used to evacuate a system are the deep vacuum method and the triple vacuum method.

DEEP VACUUM METHOD

The deep vacuum method requires a vacuum pump capable of pulling a vacuum of 500 micron and a vacuum gauge capable of accurately measuring this vacuum depth. This method is the most positive way of assuring a system is free of air and moisture (see Figure 7).

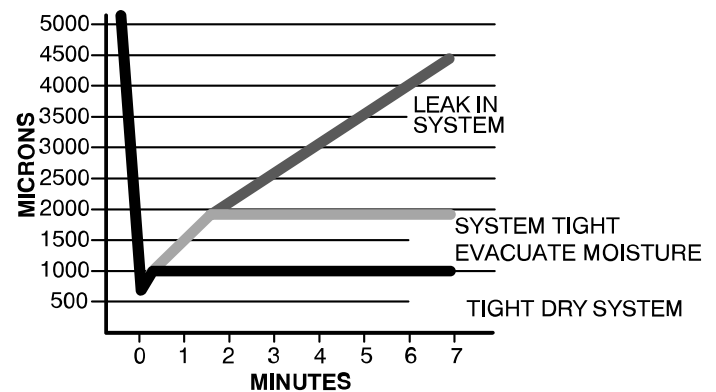


Fig. 7 —Deep Vacuum Graph

TRIPLE EVACUATION METHOD

The triple evacuation method should be used when vacuum pump is not capable of pumping down to 500 microns and system does not contain any liquid water. Refer to Fig. 8 and proceed as follows:

1. Attach refrigeration gauges and evacuate system down to 28 inches of mercury and allow pump to continue operating for an additional 15 minutes.
2. Close service valves and shut off vacuum pump.
3. Connect a nitrogen cylinder and regulator to system and flow nitrogen until system pressure is 2 psig.
4. Close service valve and allow system to stand for 1 hour. During this time, dry nitrogen will be able to diffuse throughout the system absorbing moisture.
5. Repeat this procedure as indicated in Fig. 8. System is now free of any contaminants and water vapor.

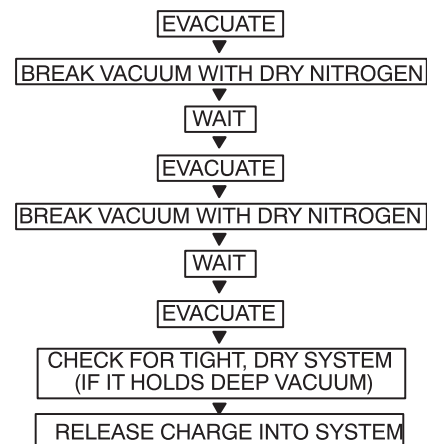


Fig. 8 —Triple Evacuation Method

FINAL TUBING CHECK

Check to be certain factory tubing on both the indoor and outdoor unit has not shifted during shipment. Ensure tubes are not rubbing against each other or any sheet metal. Pay close attention to the feeder tubes, making sure wire ties on feeder tubes are secure and tight.

Main Protection

Fan speed is out of control

When the indoor fan speed is too low (300RPM) or too high (1500RPM) for a certain time, the unit stops and the LED displays a failure.

Inverter module protection

The inverter module has a protection function for current, voltage and temperature. If any of these protections engage, the corresponding code displays on the indoor unit and the unit stops working.

Indoor fan delayed open function

When the unit starts up, the louver activates immediately and the indoor fan opens 10s later. If the unit is running in the HEATING mode, the indoor fan is controlled by the anti-cold wind function.

Zero crossing detection error protection

If the AC detects that the time interval is not correct for a continuous 240s, the unit stops and the LED displays the failure. The correct zero crossing signal time interval should be between 6-13ms. Sensor protection at open circuit and breaking disconnection If only one temperature sensor malfunctions, the air conditioner continues to work however the error code appears on the LED, in the event of any emergency use. If more than one temperature sensor malfunctions, the air conditioner stops working.

Operation Modes and Functions

FAN Mode

1. Outdoor fan and compressor stop
2. Temperature setting function is disabled and no setting temperature appears.
3. Indoor fan can be set to high/med/low/auto
4. The louver operates the same as in the COOLING mode.

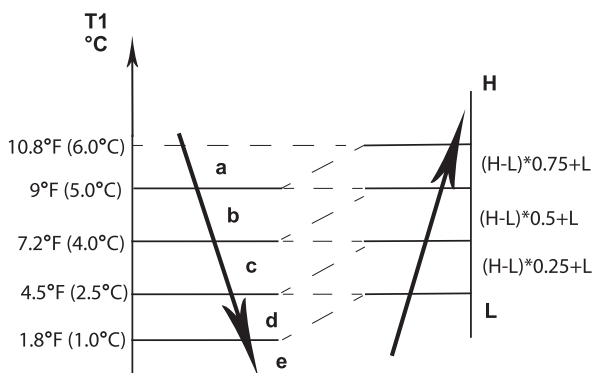


Fig. 9 —AUTO FAN Mode

COOLING Mode

Indoor Fan Running Rules:

In the COOLING mode, the indoor fan runs all the time and the speed can be selected as HIGH, MEDIUM, LOW and AUTO. When the setting temperature is reached, if the compressor stops running, the indoor fan motor runs at the minimum or setting speed. The indoor fan is controlled by the rules shown in Fig. 10.

Setting fan speed	T1-Td °C(°F)	Actual fan speed
H	A	H+ (H+=H+G)
	B	H (=H)
	C	H- (H-=H-G)
M	D	M+ (M+=M+Z)
	E	M (M=M)
	F	M- (M-=M-Z)
L	G	L+ (L+=L+D)
	H	L (L=L)
	I	L- (L-=L-D)

Fig. 10 —Indoor Fan Running Rules

The AUTO fan is controlled by the rules shown in Fig. 11.

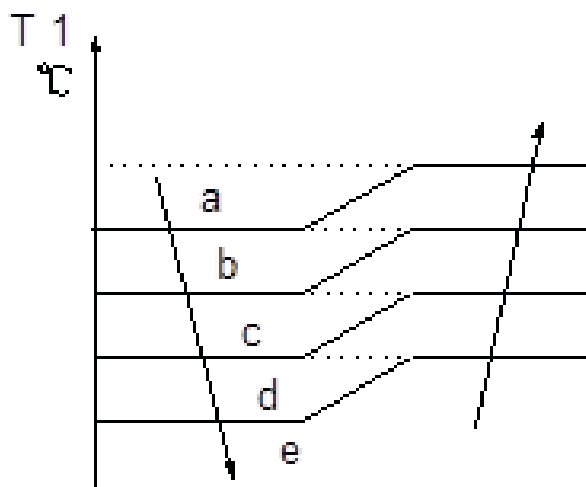


Fig. 11 —AUTO FAN Running Rules

Evaporator Temperature Protection

When the evaporator temperature is less than the setting value, the compressor stops.

HEATING Mode

Indoor Fan Running Rules:

When the compressor is on, the indoor fan can be set to HIGH, MEDIUM, LOW, AUTO, MUTE. When the indoor unit coil temperature is low, the anti-cold air function starts and the indoor fan motor runs at a low speed and the speed cannot be changed. When the temperature is lower than the setting value, the indoor fan motor stops.

When the indoor temp reaches the setting temperature, the compressor stops and the indoor fan motor runs at the minimum speed or setting speed. The anti-cold air function is valid. The indoor fan is controlled as shown in Fig. 12.

Setting fan speed	T1-Td°C	Actual fan speed
H		H- (H=H-G)
		H (=H)
		H+(H+=H+G)
M		M-(M=M-Z)
		M(M=M)
		M+(M+=M+Z)
L		L-(L=L-D)
		L(L=L)
		L+(L+=L+D)

Fig. 12 —HEATING Fan Running Rules

AUTO Fan Action in HEATING Mode

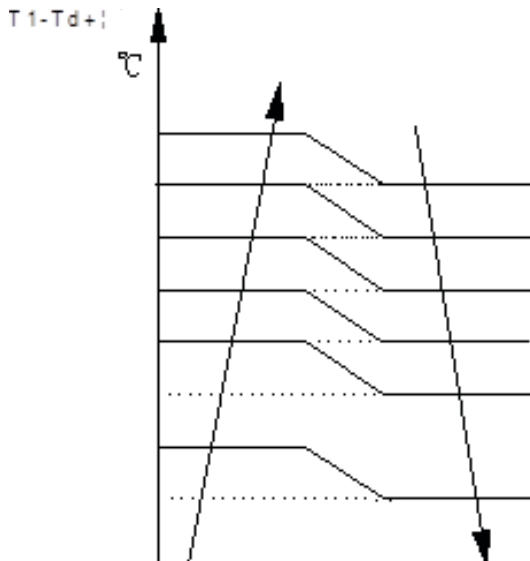


Fig. 13 —AUTO Fan Action in HEATING Mode

DEFROSTING Mode

The air conditioner enters the DEFROSTING mode according to the T3 temperature value and the T3 temperature change value range plus the compressor running time. During the DEFROSTING mode, the compressor continues to runs, the indoor and outdoor motors stop, and the indoor unit defrost lamp illuminates and “dF” appears.

Evaporator Anti-Freezing Protection

The evaporator anti-freezing protection condenser high temperature

Evaporator Coil Temperature Protection

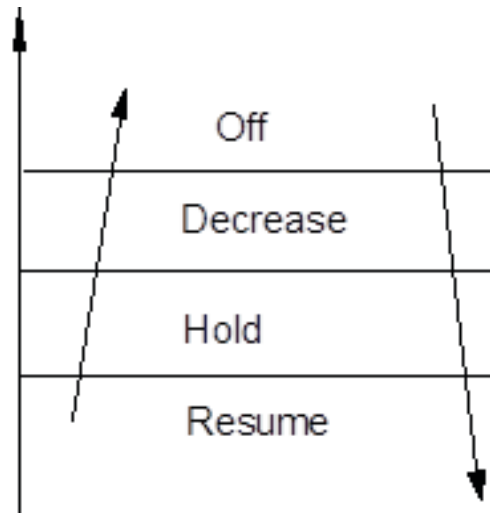


Fig. 14 —Evaporator Coil Temperature Protection

When the evaporator temperature is higher than the setting protection value, the compressor stops.

AUTO Mode

In the AUTO mode, the machine selects COOLING, HEATING or FAN ONLY on the basis of T1-Ts. Outdoor ambient temperature (T4) and relative humidity (Φ).

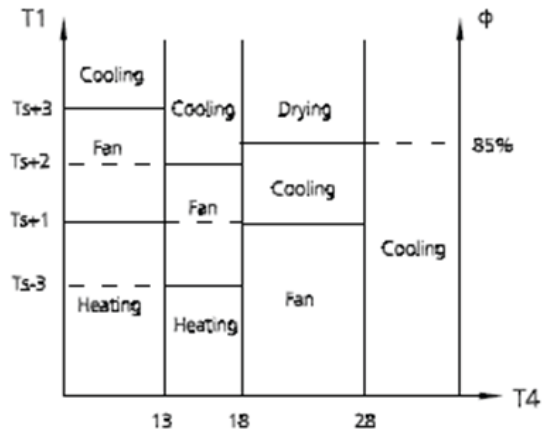


Fig. 15 —AUTO Mode

The indoor fan runs under AUTO fan in the relevant mode. The louver operates the same as in relevant mode. If the air conditioner switches between the HEATING and COOLING mode, the compressor stops for a certain period of time and then chooses the mode according to T1-Ts. If the setting temperature is modified, the air conditioner chooses the running function again.

DRYING Mode

Indoor Fan Speed is Fixed

Indoor fan speed is fixed at BREEZE and can not be changed. The louver angle is the same as in the COOLING mode.

Low Indoor Room Temperature Protection

In the DRYING mode, if the room temperature is lower than 50°F (10°C), the compressor stops and will not resume until the room temperature exceeds 53.6°F (12°C).

protection and outdoor unit frequency limit are active and the same as that in the COOLING mode.

Outdoor Fan

The outdoor fan operates the same as in the COOLING mode.

Forced Operation Function

When the air conditioner is off, press TOUCH to engage the Forced AUTO mode. Press TOUCH again within 5 seconds to engage the Forced COOLING mode. In the Forced AUTO, Forced COOLING or any other operation mode, press TOUCH to turn off the air conditioner.

Forced Operation Mode

In the Forced OPERATION mode, all the general protections and the remote controller are available.

Operation Rules**Forced Cooling Mode**

The compressor runs at the F2 frequency and the indoor fan runs in the BREEZE mode. After running for 30 minutes, the air conditioner enters the AUTO mode at the 75.2°F(24°C) setting temperature.

Forced Auto Mode:

The Forced AUTO mode is the same as the normal AUTO mode with a 75.2°F(24°C) setting temperature.

Forced DEFROSTING Mode:

1. Press and hold AUTO/COOL for 5s to enter the mode. The indoor fan stops and the defrosting lamp illuminates. Use the remote controller to exit this mode and turn off the air conditioner to stop the normal DEFROSTING mode.
2. To exit the Forced DEFROSTING mode, press and hold AUTO/COOL for 5s again.

AUTO-RESTART Function

The indoor unit is equipped with the AUTO-RESTART function, which is carried out through an auto-restart module. In the event of a sudden power failure, the module memorizes the setting conditions prior to the power failure. The air conditioner resumes the previous operation setting (not including the SWING function) automatically three (3) minutes after the power returns.

If the memorization condition is the Forced COOLING mode, the air conditioner runs in the COOLING mode for 30 minutes and turns to the AUTO mode at the 75.2°F(24°C) setting temperature. If the air conditioner is off before the power turns off and the air conditioner is required to start up, the compressor delays start-up for 1 minute before powering on. In other instances, the compressor waits three (3) minutes before restarts.

Refrigerant Leakage Detection - Basic

With this new technology, the display area displays 'EL0C' when the outdoor unit detects a refrigerant leak. This function is only active in the COOLING mode. The function can further prevent the compressor from being damaged by a refrigerant leak or a compressor overload.

- Open Condition: When the compressor is active, the value of the coil temperature of evaporator T2 experiences no to very little change.

Louver Position Memory Function

When starting the air conditioner again after a shut down, the louver returns to the angle originally set by the user, however the precondition is that the angle must be within the allowable range. If the louver exceeds the allowable range, the air conditioner memorizes the maximum angle of the louver. During operation, if the power fails or the end user shuts down the air conditioner in the TURBO mode, the louver returns to the default angle.

46°F (8°C) Heating

When the compressor is running, the indoor fan motor runs without the ANTI.COLD air function. When the compressor is off, the indoor fan motor is off.

Silence Operation

Press SILENCE on the remote controller to initiate the SILENCE function. When SILENCE is activated, the compressor running frequency remains lower than F2 and the indoor unit emits a faint breeze, which reduces the noise to the lowest level and creates a quiet and comfortable room for the user.

Inquiry Mode

Press and hold together the On/Off and Fan buttons for 8 seconds. The remote control remains in Inquiry Mode for 1 minute if no button is pressed. In the Inquiry Mode, the remote display cancels all icons except AUTO, COOL, DRY, HEAT and battery strength. The digital display defaults to '0' upon entering the Inquiry Mode. In Inquiry Mode, each digital code (from 0 to 30) is accessed by pressing the UP or DOWN arrow.

Refrigerant Leakage Detection - Leakage Sensor

The indoor unit is equipped with a refrigerant dissipation sensor. When a leak is detected either error code EH C1 (Leak Detected), or EH C2 (Leak Detected Sensor out of range) will be displayed on indoor display. The outdoor unit will shut off and the indoor fan will run at turbo speed, and louvers will fully open. An audible alarm will be triggered.

For single zone application, if refrigerant leak drops below LFL threshold audible alarm will reset after two minutes and the error code will clear after five minutes. Power cycling the outdoor unit (ODU) for five minutes will reset the audible alarm and the error code.

For multi-zone applications the outdoor unit will shut off, an emergency shutoff valve will close in the outdoor unit, all EEVs will close, and all indoor units will run at turbo fan speed. EH C1 or EH C2 will be displayed at the indoor unit detecting the leak. EC C1 will be displayed at indoor units not detecting a leak. An audible alarm will be triggered at indoor unit detecting the leak. If leak drops below LFL threshold the audible alarm will reset after two minutes, error codes will clear after five minutes, and emergency shutoff valve will automatically open after two and one half hours.

The shutoff valve time-lock can be bypassed by pushing and holding the point check button in the MZU for 10 seconds provided no leak is being detecting. Power cycling the MZU will not reset the time lock.

INQUIRY MODE





Accessing the INQUIRY Mode

CAUTION

Read and understand the function changes you wish to make in advance. Neither the indoor unit nor the remote control displays the new level of any of the changes made while in the INQUIRY mode. Be sure to document the changes you've made to the system's programming using the INQUIRY mode. Once you complete the changes and exit the INQUIRY mode, if additional changes are made to the programming, the system will not show the new previously set level(s).

For example, when you first access CODE 22, Heating Temperature Compensation, the remote control display defaults to 0. If you change it to -2, then save and exit out of the INQUIRY mode, the next time someone goes back in and accesses CODE 22, the remote's display will not display -2.

Instead it will show 0 because that's the default. If you are unsure of the previous changes, due to a lack of documentation, you could press the DOWN symbol to the maximum change range of -6, then press the UP symbol until you are back to 0, and make the new adjustments accordingly. Be sure to document the changes when you are done.

1. Simultaneously press ON/OFF   and FAN SPEED  for 8 seconds.
 - a. The remote is now in the INQUIRY mode.
 - b. The remote control remains in the INQUIRY mode for 1 minute if no other button is pressed.
 - c. While in the INQUIRY Mode, the remote display cancels all icons except AUTO, COOL, DRY, HEAT and Battery Strength.
 - d. The remote control digital display defaults to 0 upon entering the INQUIRY mode.
 - e. In the INQUIRY mode, each digital code (from 0 to 30) is accessed by pressing the UP or DOWN arrows .
 - f. The INQUIRY information appears on the high wall indoor unit display in approximately 1 second after accessing the digital code. Press OK to send as well.
 - g. In the INQUIRY mode, all other buttons and operations are invalid except for UP, DOWN and OK or the operation to exit the INQUIRY mode.

Remote Controller Service Mode Functions

NOTE: While in the INQUIRY mode, refer to the following instructions to enter SERVICE mode for the applicable codes.

Below is a list of INQUIRY modes and serviceable functions.

- a. Before using the remote's service functions, turn OFF the indoor unit with the remote.
- b. Turn OFF the power to the outdoor unit for 2 minutes. Turn the power back ON.
- c. Remove the batteries from the remote and wait for the remote screen to clear. Within 30 seconds of replacing the batteries, use UP or DOWN to scroll through the INQUIRY modes.
- d. To enter the SERVICE mode for an applicable INQUIRY mode, press ON/OFF for 2 seconds.
- e. After SERVICE adjustments have been made, press ON/OFF for 2 seconds to exit the SERVICE mode and return to the INQUIRY mode.
- f. Once operations in the INQUIRY mode are complete, press ON/OFF and FAN SPEED for 2 seconds to exit. All buttons on the remote controller are disabled for 60 seconds
- g. To ensure changes are locked, power down the outdoor unit for three (3) minutes after all the service mode changes are made.



Service Inquiry Codes

CODE	INQUIRY	INQUIRY DESCRIPTION	SERVICE/ INQUIRY	FOR SERVICE, PRESS ON/OFF FOR 2 SECONDS TO:	SELECTION GUIDE/NOTES
0		Error Code Check	SERVICE AND INQUIRY	Review error memory function. Displays "Ch". Press OK to send the query error code memory.	
1	T1	Indoor Ambient Temperature	SERVICE AND INQUIRY	Change the power off memory selection. This feature determines whether the unit memorizes the set conditions prior to a power failure. Displays "Ch". Press OK to return the current setting. Press UP or DOWN to cycle through settings 1 and 0 .	Memory settings are off Memory settings are on
2	T2	Indoor Coil Temperature	SERVICE AND INQUIRY	Change the option to control the indoor fan operation after reaching the set temperature. Displays "Ch". Press OK to return the current setting. Press UP or DOWN to cycle through settings 1 through 11. Next, press OK to confirm the selection.	Stop the fan Minimum fan speed Set speed - intermittent fan-off 4 minutes/on 1 min Terminate after run time of 10 mins Terminate after run time of 15 mins Terminate after run time of 20 mins Terminate after run time of 30 mins Terminate after run time of 40 mins Terminate after run time of 50 mins Terminate after run time of 60 mins
3	T3	Outdoor Coil Temperature	SERVICE AND INQUIRY	Change the option to control the COOLING and HEATING modes available for use on the unit. Press UP or DOWN to cycle through the settings CH , HH , CC or nU . Press OK to confirm.	CH - COOLING and HEATING : AUTO , COOLING , DRY , HEATING and FAN modes available HH - HEATING Only: HEATING and FAN modes available CC - COOLING without AUTO : COOLING , DRY and FAN modes available nU - COOLING and HEATING without AUTO : COOLING , DRY , HEATING and FAN modes available
4	T4	Outdoor Ambient Temperature	SERVICE AND INQUIRY	Change the selection of the lowest set temperature. NOTE: Temperature range is 60°F ~ 75°F (16°C ~ 24°C). Press UP or DOWN to select temperature setting. Press OK to confirm.	
5	TP (T5)	Compressor Discharge Temperature	SERVICE AND INQUIRY	Change the selection of the highest set temperature. NOTE: Temperature range is 77°F ~ 86°F (25°C ~ 30°C). Press UP or DOWN to select the temperature setting. Press OK to confirm.	
6	FT	Compressor target frequency	INQUIRY ONLY		
7	Fr	Compressor run frequency	INQUIRY ONLY		
8	dL	Unit amperage	SERVICE AND INQUIRY	Change the static pressure selection. Displays "Ch". Press OK to return the current setting. Press UP or DOWN to cycle through settings 0 through 4 or AF (constant air volume test). Press OK to confirm.	Only available on ducted air handler units. Refer to the ducted air handler installation manuals for Fan performances at varying static pressures for airflow settings.
9	Uo	Unit voltage	INQUIRY ONLY		
10	Sn	Capacity test (special usage)	INQUIRY ONLY		
11	----	Not available	INQUIRY ONLY		
12	Pr	Indoor fan speed	SERVICE AND INQUIRY	Change the heating frequency lower limit selection. Displays "Ch". Press OK to return the current heating minimum frequency limit selection code. Press UP and DOWN to select the minimum heating frequency limit value. Press OK to confirm.	

CODE	INQUIRY	INQUIRY DESCRIPTION	SERVICE/ INQUIRY	FOR SERVICE, PRESS ON/OFF FOR 2 SECONDS TO:	SELECTION GUIDE/NOTES
13	Lr	Electronic Expansion Valve (EEV) opening	SERVICE AND INQUIRY	Change the maximum operating frequency of T4 Cooling Only intervals. Displays " Ch ". Press OK to return the current operating frequency code of the T4 Cooling Only intervals. Press UP or DOWN to select the limit value and then press OK .	
14	ir	Indoor fan speed	INQUIRY ONLY		Multiple the display number by 8 to calculate the actual RPM
15	HU	Relative Humidity	INQUIRY ONLY		Available in INQUIRY mode for the high tier/new mid tier units that have an RH sensor.
16	TT	Setpoint compensation temperature	INQUIRY ONLY		
17	dT	Dust concentration (not used)	INQUIRY ONLY		
18	WIFI	Wi-Fi signal strength	INQUIRY ONLY		The value is measured in dBm . The display values are 0, 1, 2, 3 and 4 (4 is the highest and 0 is the lowest)
19	----	Not available	SERVICE ONLY	Change the cooling frequency upper limit selection in Hz. Displays " Ch ". Press OK to return the current frequency limit. Press UP or DOWN to select the preferred frequency upper limit value (in Hz). Press OK to confirm.	For example, the unit may be factory set to fluctuate between 40 and 84 Hz. If set to 50, the unit will now be limited to operating between 40 and 50 Hz.
20	oT	Indoor fan target frequency	SERVICE AND INQUIRY	Change the heating frequency upper limit selection in Hz. Displays " Ch "; press OK to return the current frequency limit. Press UP or DOWN to select the preferred frequency upper limit value (in Hz). Press OK to confirm.	For example, the unit may be factory set to fluctuate between 40 and 84 Hz. If set to 50, the unit is limited to operating between 40 and 50 Hz.
21	----	Cooling Temperature Compensation	SERVICE ONLY	Change the cooling temperature compensation value. Displays " Ch ". Press OK to return the current temperature compensation value code. Press UP or DOWN to select the cooling temperature difference compensation value. Press OK to confirm.	This setting is used to adjust for temperature differences due to the height of the unit install. The offset value can be set at a range of -6° to +6°.
22	----	Heating Temperature Compensation	SERVICE ONLY	Change the heating temperature compensation value. Displays " Ch ". Press OK to return the current temperature compensation value code. Press UP or DOWN to select the heating temperature difference compensation value. Press OK to confirm.	This setting is used to adjust for temperature differences due to the height of unit installation. The offset value can be set at a range of -6° to +6°.
23	----	Maximum Cooling Fan Speed	SERVICE ONLY	Change the maximum cooling fan speed setting as it relates to RPM. Displays " Ch ". Press OK to return the current maximum cooling fan speed setting. Press UP or DOWN to select the maximum cooling fan speed. Press OK to confirm.	For example, the unit may be factory set to fluctuate between 300 and 1000 RPM. If set to 800, the unit is limited to operating between 300 and 800 RPM. (reserved for AHUs and slim ducts)
24	----	Minimum Cooling Fan Speed	SERVICE ONLY	Change the minimum cooling fan speed setting as it relates to RPM. NOTE: Changing this setting is not recommended as it may trigger unit protection protocols. Displays " Ch ". Press OK to return the current minimum cooling fan speed setting. Press UP or DOWN to select the minimum cooling fan speed. Press OK to confirm.	For example, the unit may be factory set to fluctuate between 300 and 1000 RPM. If set to 500, the unit is limited to operating between 500 and 1000 RPM.

CODE	INQUIRY	INQUIRY DESCRIPTION	SERVICE/ INQUIRY	FOR SERVICE, PRESS ON/OFF FOR 2 SECONDS TO:	SELECTION GUIDE/NOTES
25	----	Maximum Heating Fan Speed	SERVICE ONLY	Change the maximum heating fan speed setting as it relates to RPM. Displays "Ch". Press OK to return the current maximum heating fan speed setting. Press UP or DOWN to select the maximum heating fan speed. Press OK to confirm.	For example, the unit may be factory set to fluctuate between 300 and 1000 RPM. If set to 800, the unit will now be limited to operating between 300 and 800 RPM. (reserved for AHUs and slim ducts)
26	----	Minimum Heating Fan Speed	SERVICE ONLY	Change the minimum heating fan speed setting as it relates to RPM. Note: Changing this setting is not recommended as it may trigger unit protection protocols. Displays "Ch". Press OK to return the current minimum heating fan speed setting. Press UP or DOWN to select the minimum heating fan speed. Press OK to confirm.	For example, the unit may be factory set to fluctuate between 300 and 1000 RPM. If set to 500, the unit is limited to operating between 500 and 1000 RPM.
27	----	Not available			
28	----	Not available			
29	----	Not available			
30	----	Not available			

To exit the Inquiry Mode:

Press and hold together the On/Off and Fan buttons   for 2 seconds.

GENERAL TROUBLESHOOTING

SAFETY

⚠ WARNING
ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD
 Be sure to turn off all power supplies or disconnect all wires to avoid electric shock. While checking indoor/outdoor PCB, equip yourself with anti-static gloves or wrist strap to avoid damage to the board. Follow lockout procedures and all safety measures.

⚠ WARNING
ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD
 Electricity remains in capacitors even when the power supply is off. Ensure the capacitors are fully discharged before troubleshooting.

NOTE: Remember to discharge the electrical power in capacitor.

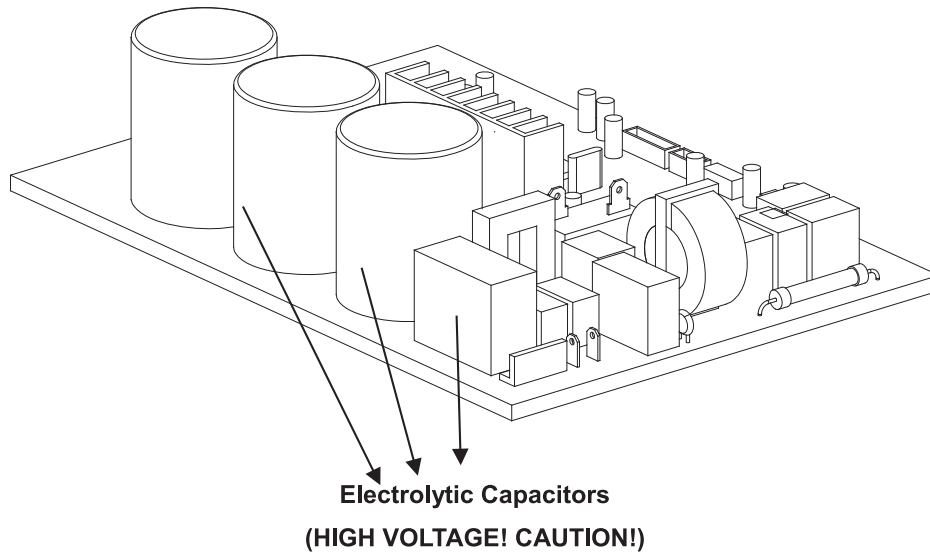


Fig. 16 —Electrolytic Capacitors

For other models, please connect discharge resistance (approximately 100fΩ 40W) or a soldering iron (plug) between the +, - terminals of the electrolytic capacitor on the contrary side of the outdoor PCB.

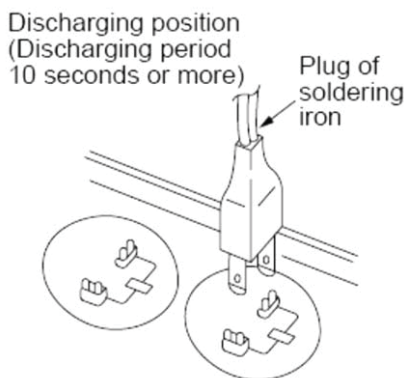


Fig. 17 —Discharge Position

NOTE: Figure is for reference only. The plug on your unit may differ.

Inverter Test Tool

NOTE: If using the inverter test tool for troubleshooting, shut off power, remove the electrical panel and locate the cable that is already connected to the test port on the outdoor unit. Connect the test tool to the cable with the connector provided with the test tool. After the maintenance is completed, insert the female end back into the port.

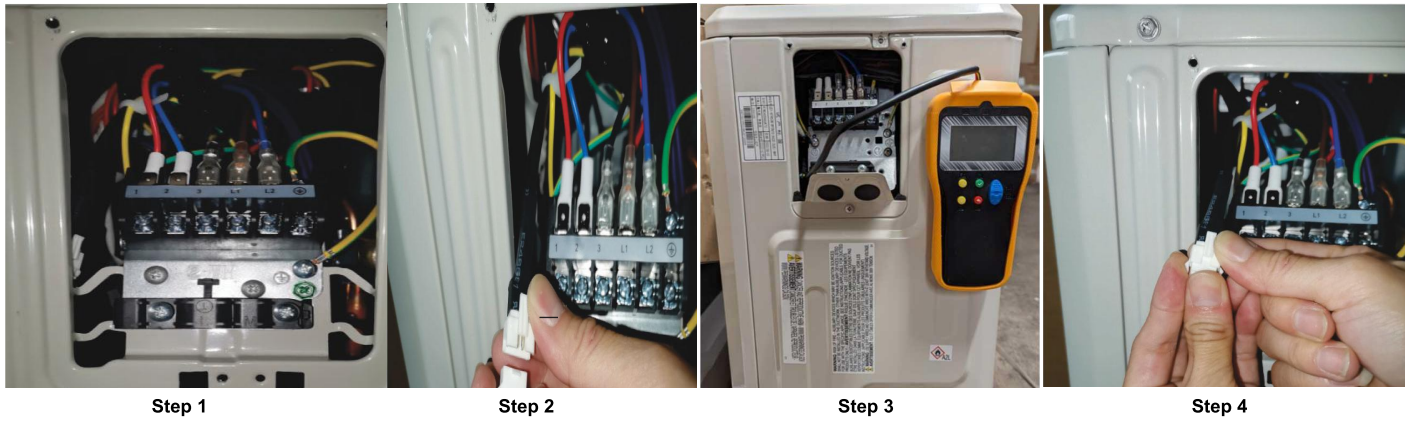


Fig. 18 —Inverter Test Tool Maintenance

Connect the Dr. SMART tool to the white terminal as shown in Step 3 above.



Fig. 19 —Dr. SMART Tool

NOTE: These pictures is for reference only. Actual appearance may vary.

INDOOR UNIT DIAGNOSTIC GUIDES

When the indoor unit encounters a recognized error, the operation lamp will flash in a corresponding series, the timer lamp may turn on or begin flashing, and an error code will be displayed.

Table 4 — Error Codes

DISPLAY	MALFUNCTION AND PROTECTION INDICATION
EC07	ODU fan speed out of control
EC0d	ODU malfunction
EC51	ODU EEPROM parameter error
EC52	ODU coil temp sensor error
EC53	ODU ambient temp sensor error
EC54	COMP. discharge temp sensor error
EC5b	IDU coil outlet temp sensor error
ECC1	Other IDU refrigerant sensor detects leakage (multi-zone)
EH00	IDU EEPROM malfunction
EH03	IDU fan speed out of control
EH0A	IDU EEPROM parameter error
EH0b	IDU main control and display boards communication error
EH0E	Water-level alarm malfunction
EH3A	External fan DC bus voltage is too low protection
EH3b	External fan DC bus voltage is too high fault
EH60	IDU room temp. sensor (T1) error
EH61	IDU coil temp. sensor (T2) error
EH62/EH6b	Evaporator coil inlet temp. sensor (T2B) is in open circuit or short circuit
EH65	Evaporator coil inlet temp. sensor (T2A) is in open circuit or short circuit
EHbA	Communication error between indoor unit and external fan module
EHb3	Communication malfunction between wire and master control
EHC1	Refrigerant sensor detects leakage
EHC2	Refrigerant sensor is out of range and leakage is detected
EHC3	Refrigerant sensor is out of range
EL01	IDU & ODU communication error
EL0C	System lacks refrigerant
EL1b	Communication malfunction between adapter board and outdoor main board
FHCC	Refrigerant sensor error
FL09	Mismatch between the new and old platforms
PC00	ODU IPM module protection
PC01	ODU voltage protection
PC02	Compressor top (or IPM) temp. protection
PC03/PC30 PC31	PC03 Pressure Protection, PC30 (High Pressure), and PC31 (Low Pressure)
PC04	Inverter compressor drive error
PC0L	Low ambient temp. protection

NOTE: The digital tube will show DF in defrost mode and FC in forced cooling mode. DF and FC are not error codes.

Table 5 — Refrigerant Leak Detection Error Codes

EHC1	Refrigerant Sensor detects a leak
EHC2	Working condition of the refrigerant sensor is out of range and a leak is detected

If you receive one of the codes in Table 5, call a technician as soon as possible. No need to panic, the unit goes into TURBO mode until the error code clears. There is a “beeping” noise coming from the indoor unit, which is normal in this case.

QUICK MAINTENANCE BY ERROR CODE

Part Requiring Replacement	Error Code									
	EH 00/ EH 0A	EL 01	EH 02	EH 03	EH 60	EH 61	EH 0b	EL 0C	EC 56	FH CC
Indoor PCB	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	x	✓
Outdoor PCB	x	✓	x	x	x	x	x	x	✓	x
Display board	x	x	x	x	x	x	✓	x	x	x
Indoor fan motor	x	x	x	✓	x	x	x	x	x	x
T1 sensor	x	x	x	x	✓	x	x	x	x	x
T2 Sensor	x	x	x	x	x	✓	x	✓	x	x
T2B Sensor	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	✓	x
Refrigerant sensor	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	✓
Reactor	x	✓	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Compressor	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	✓
Additional refrigerant	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	✓	x	x

Part Requiring Replacement	EC 53	EC 52	EC 54	EC 51	EC 07	PC 00	PC 01	PC 02	PC 03	PC 04
Outdoor PCB	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Indoor fan motor	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Outdoor fan motor	x	x	x	x	✓	✓	x	✓	x	✓
T3 Sensor	x	✓	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
T4 Sensor	✓	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
TP Sensor	x	x	✓	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Reactor	x	x	x	x	x	x	✓	x	x	x
Compressor	x	x	x	x	x	✓	x	x	x	✓
IPM module board	x	x	x	x	x	✓	✓	✓	x	✓
High pressure protector	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	✓	x	x
Low pressure protector	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	✓	x
Additional refrigerant	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	✓	x

Part Requiring Replacement	pc 06	pc 08/44/ 49	pc 0a	pc 0f	PC 40
Outdoor PCB	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Outdoor fan motor	x	✓	✓	x	x
T3 Sensor	x	x	✓	x	x
TP Sensor	✓	x	x	x	x
Pressure sensor	x	x	x	x	x
Reactor	x	✓	x	✓	x
Compressor	x	x	x	x	x
IPM module board	x	✓	x	x	✓
High pressure valve assy	✓	x	x	x	x
High pressure protector	x	x	x	x	x
Low pressure protector	x	x	x	x	x
Additional refrigerant	✓	x	✓	x	x
Electric control box	x	x	x	x	✓

Part Requiring Replacement	PC 41	PC 43	PC 10/11/12	PC 30	PC 31
Outdoor PCB	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Outdoor fan motor	x	x	x	✓	x
T3 Sensor	x	x	x	x	x
TP Sensor	x	x	x	x	x
Pressure sensor	x	x	x	x	x
Reactor	x	x	✓	x	x
Compressor	x	✓	x	x	x
IPM module board	x	x	✓	x	x
High pressure valve assy	x	x	x	x	x
High pressure protector	x	x	x	✓	x
Low pressure protector	x	x	x	x	✓
Additional refrigerant	x	x	x	x	✓

TROUBLESHOOTING BY ERROR CODE

EH 00/ EH 0A / EC 51 (EEPROM Malfunction Error Diagnosis and Solution)

Description: Indoor or outdoor PCB main chip does not receive feedback from EEPROM chip.

Recommended parts to prepare: Indoor PCB, Outdoor PCB

Troubleshooting and repair:

Troubleshooting and repair:

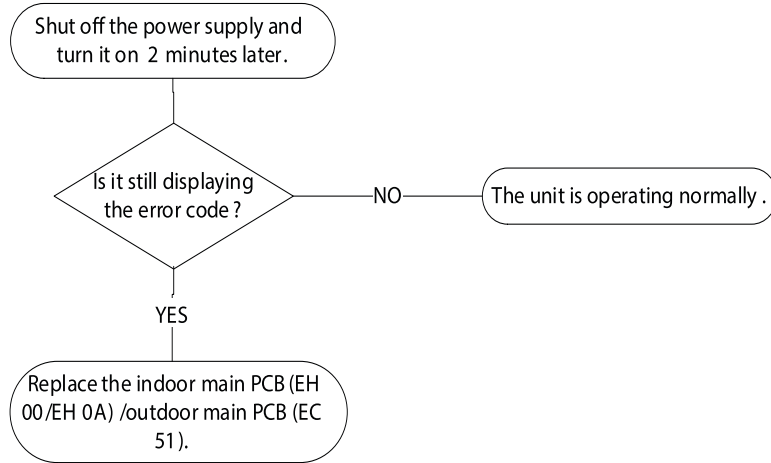


Fig. 20 —EC 51

Remarks:

EEPROM: A read-only memory whose contents can be erased and reprogrammed using a pulsed voltage.

The location of the EEPROM chip on the outdoor PCB is shown in the following image:

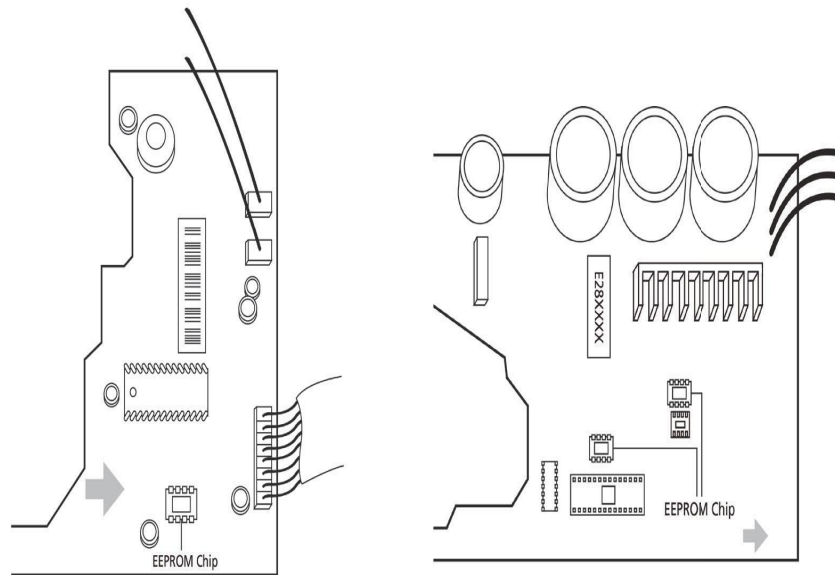


Fig. 21 —Location of EPROM Chip

NOTE: This picture is only for reference, actual appearance may vary.

IMPORTANT: Troubleshooting and repair of compressor driven chip EEPROM parameter error sand communication errors between outdoor main chip and compressor driven chip are same as EC 51.

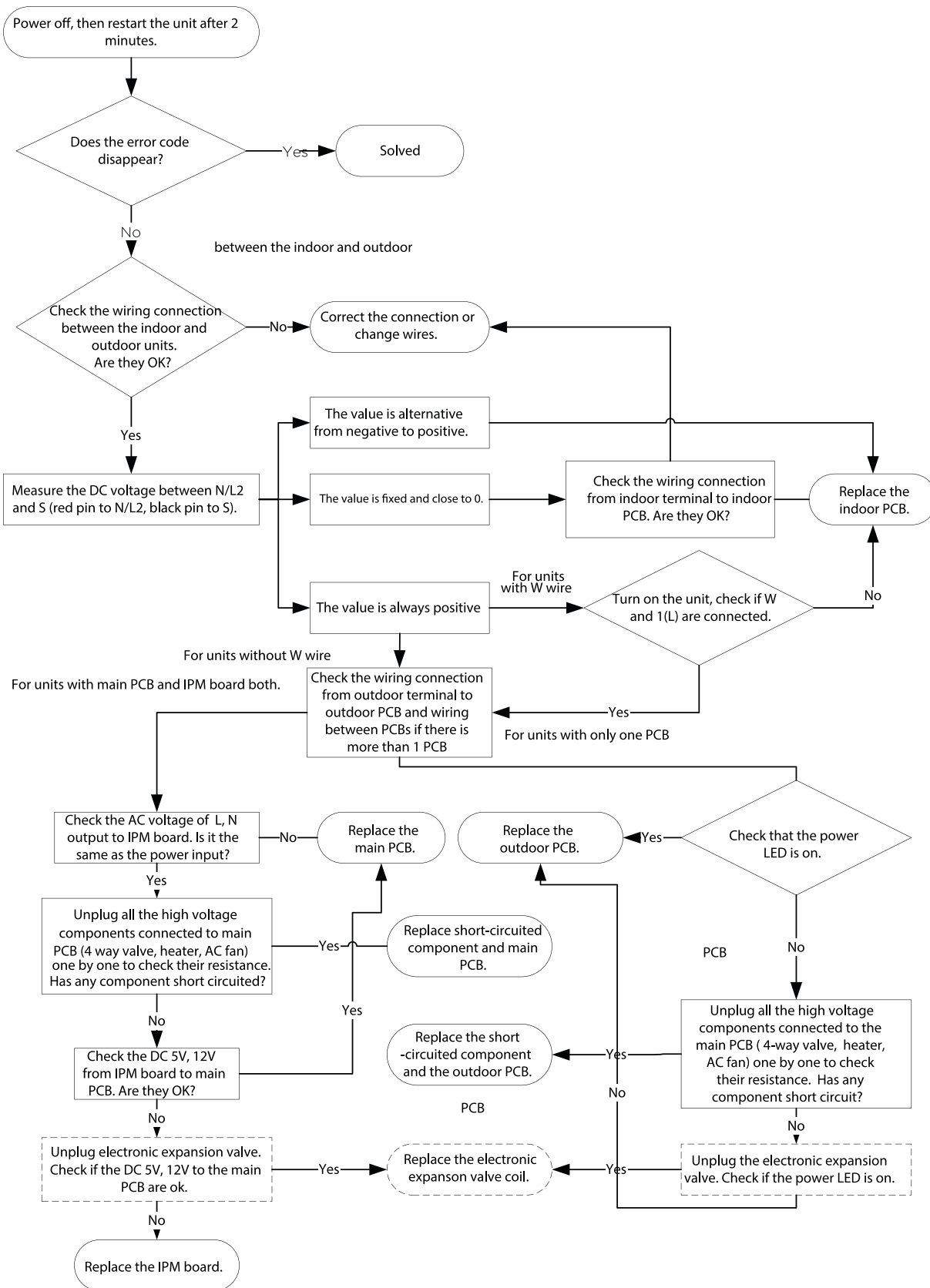
EL 01 (Indoor and Outdoor Unit Communication Error Diagnosis and Solution)

Description: Indoor unit can not communicate with outdoor unit

Recommended parts to prepare: Signal Wires, Magnetic Ring, Indoor PCB, Outdoor PCB

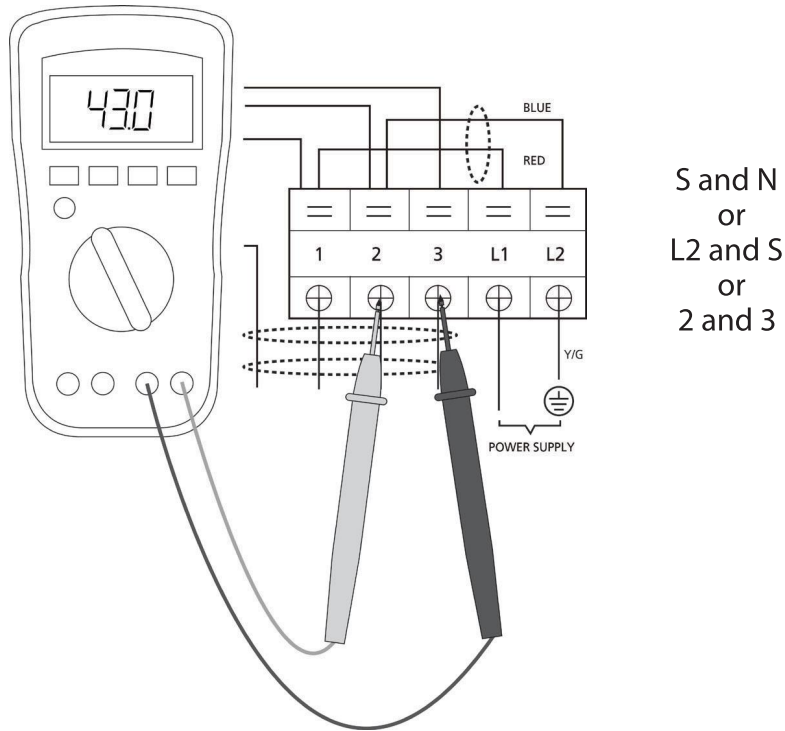
Troubleshooting and repair: RS 485 Communication

:

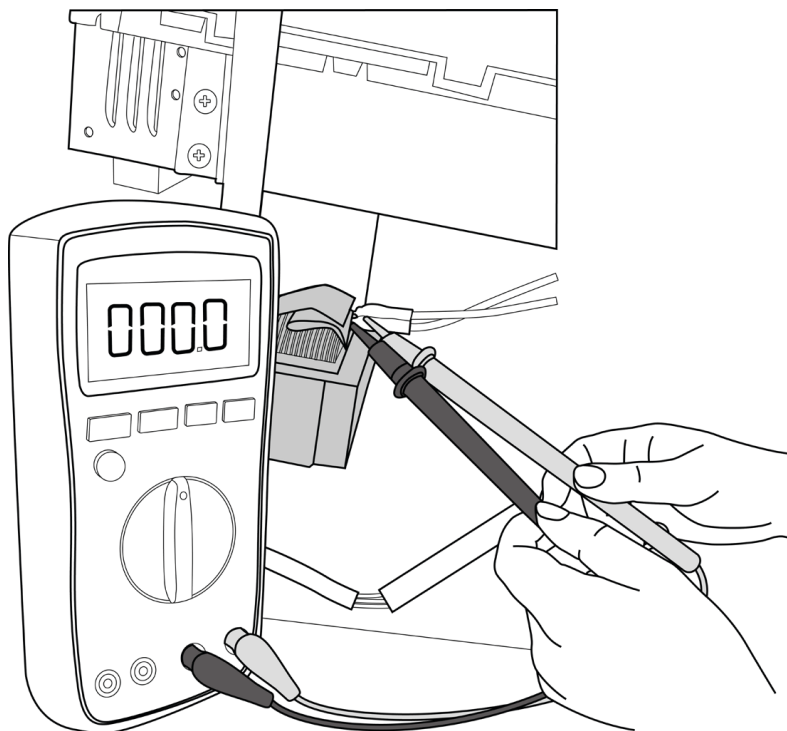


Remarks:

- Use a multimeter to test the DC voltage between the 2 port (or S or L2 port) and 3 port (or N or S port) of the outdoor unit.
- The red pin of multimeter connects with 2 port (or S or L2 port) while the black pin is for 3 port (or N or S port) the unit is running normal, the voltage is moving alternately as positive values and negative values.
- If the outdoor unit malfunctions, the voltage remains in a narrow positive value.
- If the indoor unit malfunctions, the voltage maintains a fixed value.



- Use a multimeter to test the reactor's resistance which does not connect with capacitor.
- The normal value should be around zero ohm. Otherwise, the reactor has malfunctioned. Check the reactor and make sure it is not shorted to the ground.

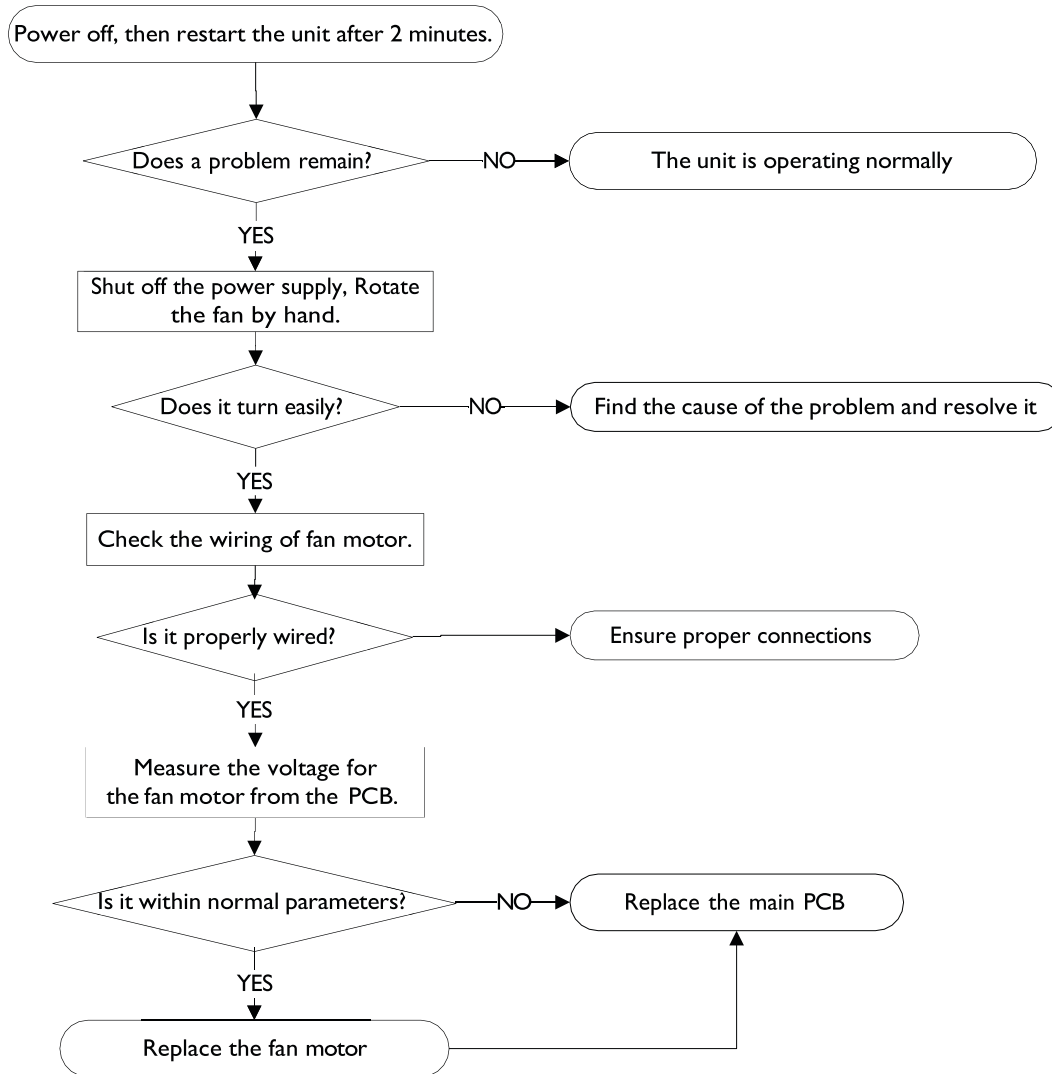


EH03 / EC 07 (Fan Speed Is Operating Outside of Normal Range Diagnosis and Solution)

Description: When indoor / outdoor fan speed keeps too low or too high for a certain time, the LED displays the failure code and the AC turns off.

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires, Fan assembly, Fan motor, PCB

Troubleshooting and repair:



Index

- Indoor or Outdoor DC Fan Motor (control chip is in fan motor)
With the power on and when the unit is in standby, measure the voltage of pin1- pin3, pin4- pin3 in the fan motor connector. If the value of the voltage is not in the range shown in below table, the PCB needs to be replaced.

No.	Color	Signal	Voltage
1	Red	Vs/Vm	192V~380V
2	—	—	—
3	Black	GND	0V
4	White	Vcc	13.5-16.5V
5	Yellow	Vsp	0~6.5V
6	Blue	FG	13.5-16.5V

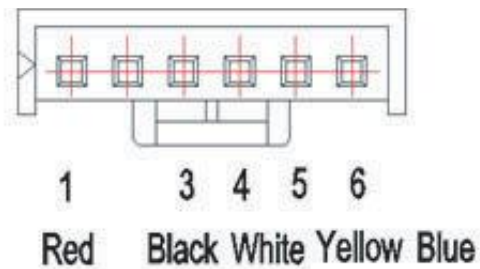


Fig. 22 —Fan Motor Connector, Pin Location

- Outdoor DC Fan Motor (control chip is in outdoor PCB)
Release the UVW connector. Measure the resistance of U-V, U-W, V-W. If the resistances are not equal to each other, the fan motor needs to be replaced. Otherwise, the PCB needs to be replaced.

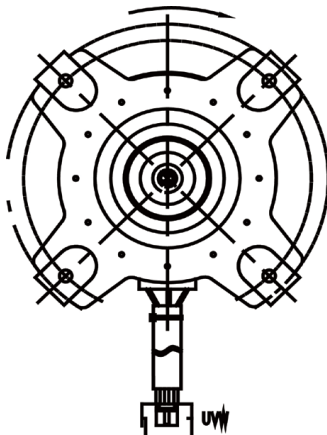


Fig. 23 —UVW Connector

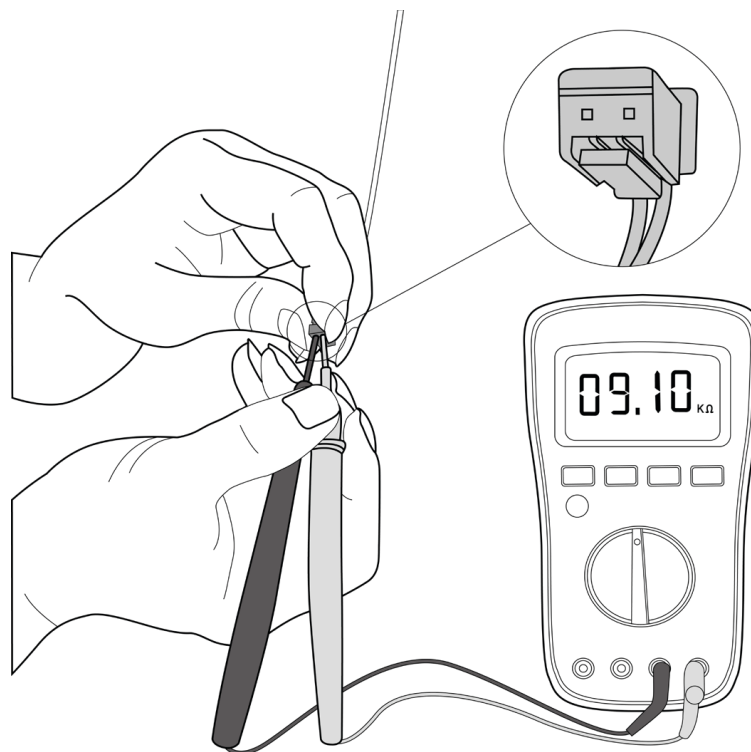
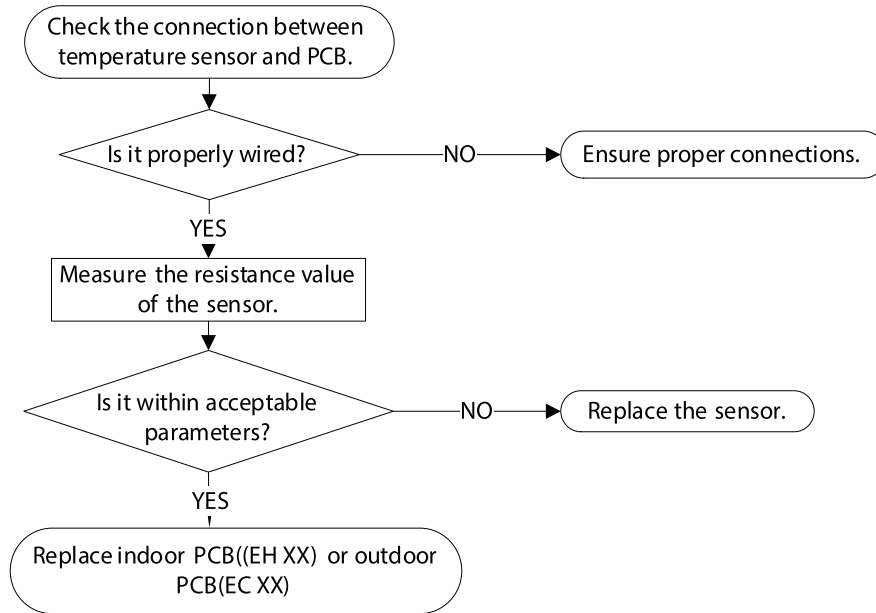
EH 60/EH 61/EH 62/EH 66/EH 65/EC 53/EC 52/EC 54/EC 56 (Open Circuit or Short Circuit of Temperature Sensor Diagnosis and Solution)

Description: If the sampling voltage is lower than 0.06V or higher than 4.94V, the LED displays the failure.

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires, Sensors, PCB

Troubleshooting and repair:

Refer to Appendix, page 67.



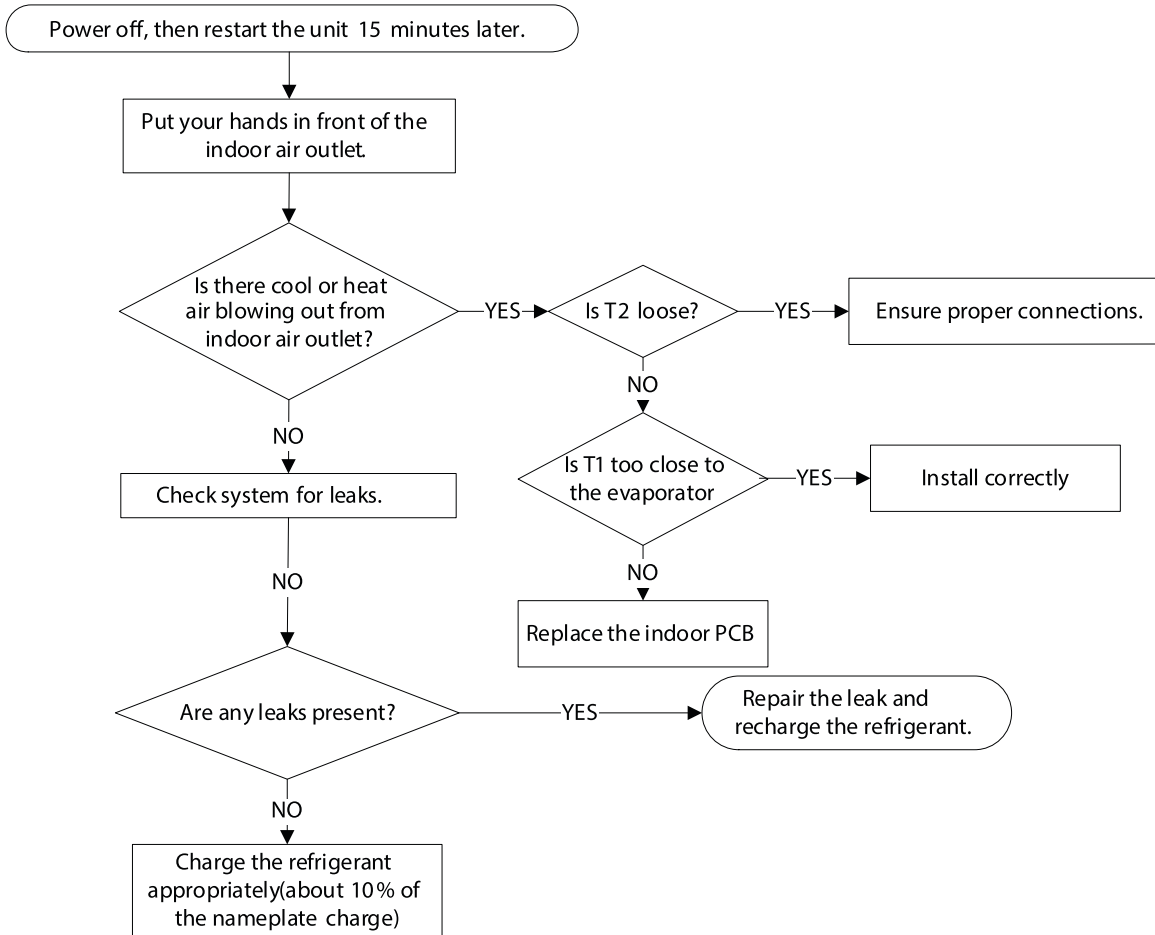
NOTE: This picture and the value are only for reference, actual appearance and value may vary.

EL 0C (System Lacks Refrigerant Diagnosis and Solution)

Description: Judging the abnormality of the refrigeration system according to the number of compressor stops and the changes in operating parameters caused by excessive exhaust temperature.

Recommended parts to prepare: Indoor PCB, Additional refrigerant

Troubleshooting and repair:



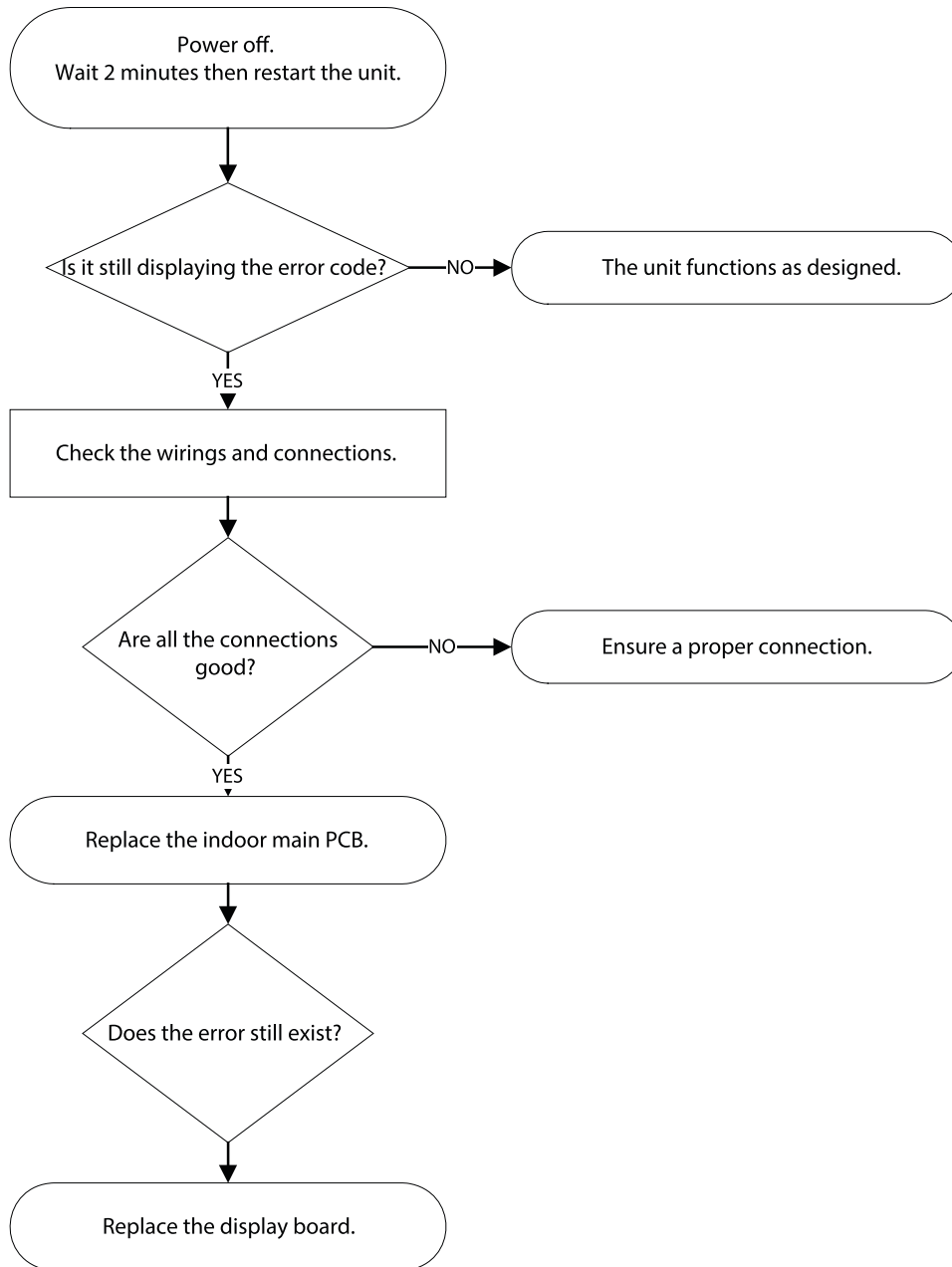
EH 06

Indoor PCB/Display Board Communication Error (EH06)

Description: The indoor PCB does not receive feedback from the display board.

Recommended parts to repair: Communication wire, Indoor PCB, Display board

Troubleshooting

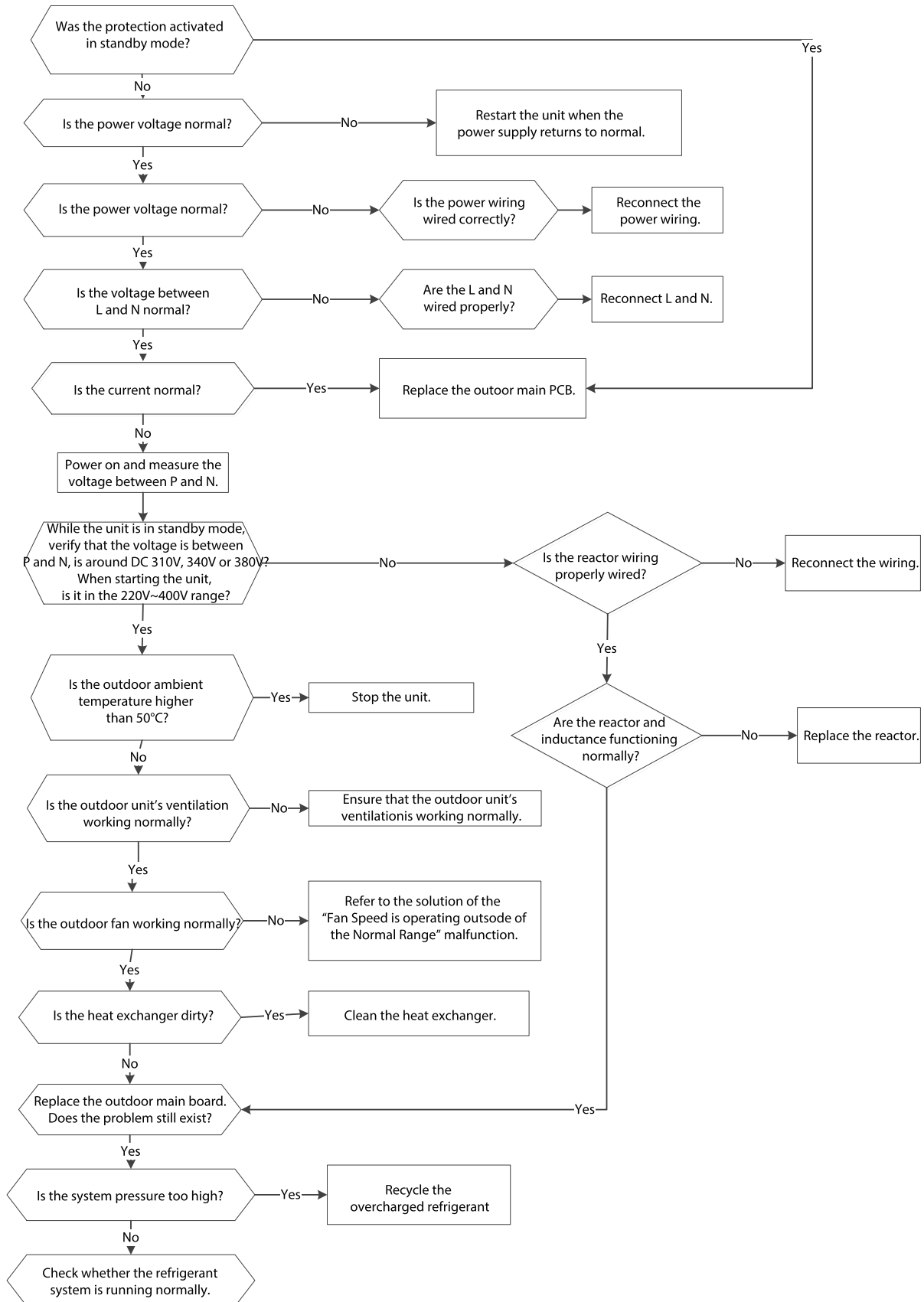


PC 08 Current Overload Protection

Description: An abnormal current rise is detected by checking the specified detection circuit.

Recommended parts to repair: Communication wires, Reactor, Outdoor fan, Outdoor PCB

Troubleshooting

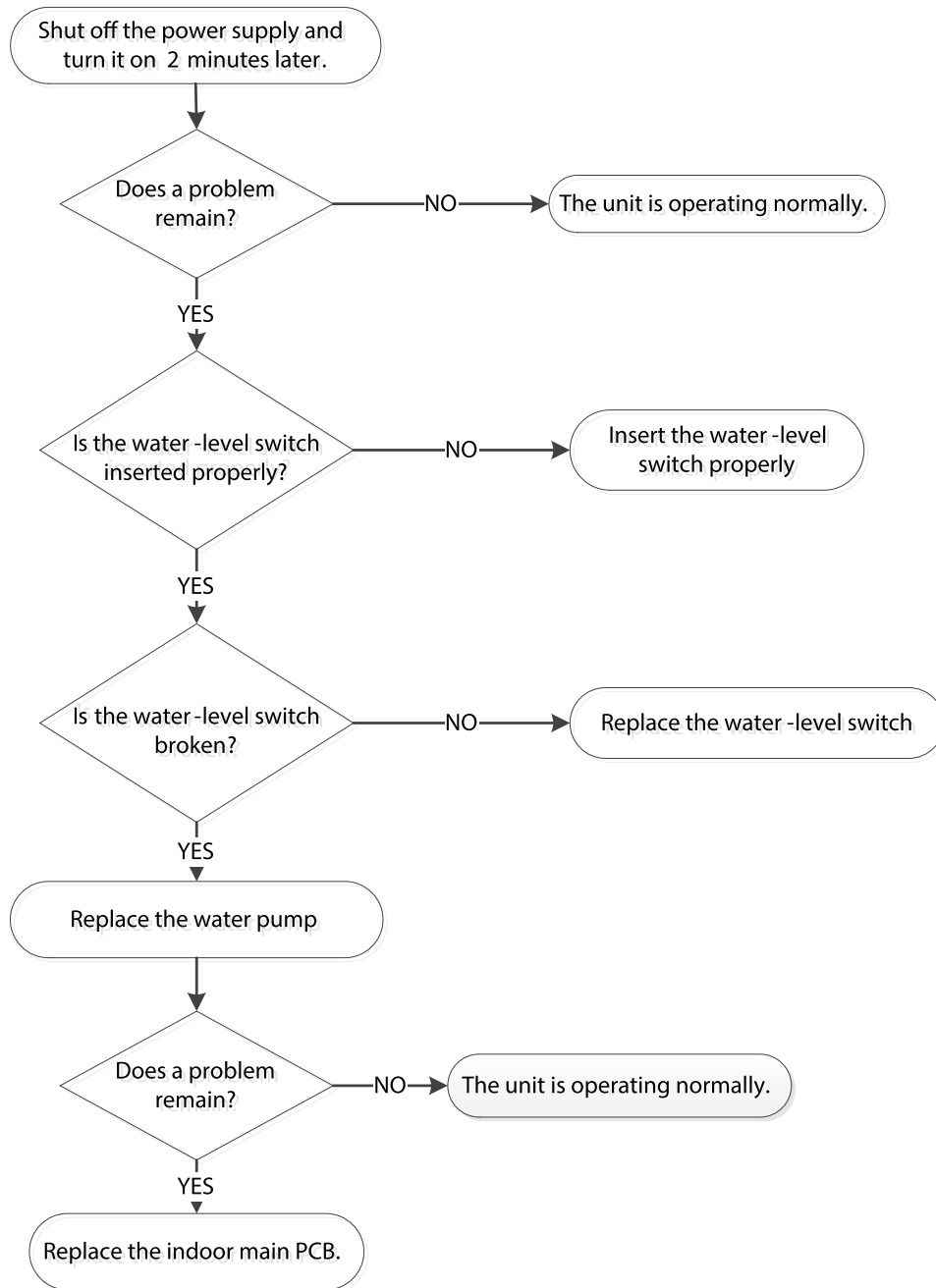


EH 0E (Water-Level Alarm Malfunction Diagnosis and Solution)

Description: If the sampling voltage is not 5V, the LED displays the failure code.

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires, Water-level switch, Water pump, Indoor PCB

Troubleshooting and repair:

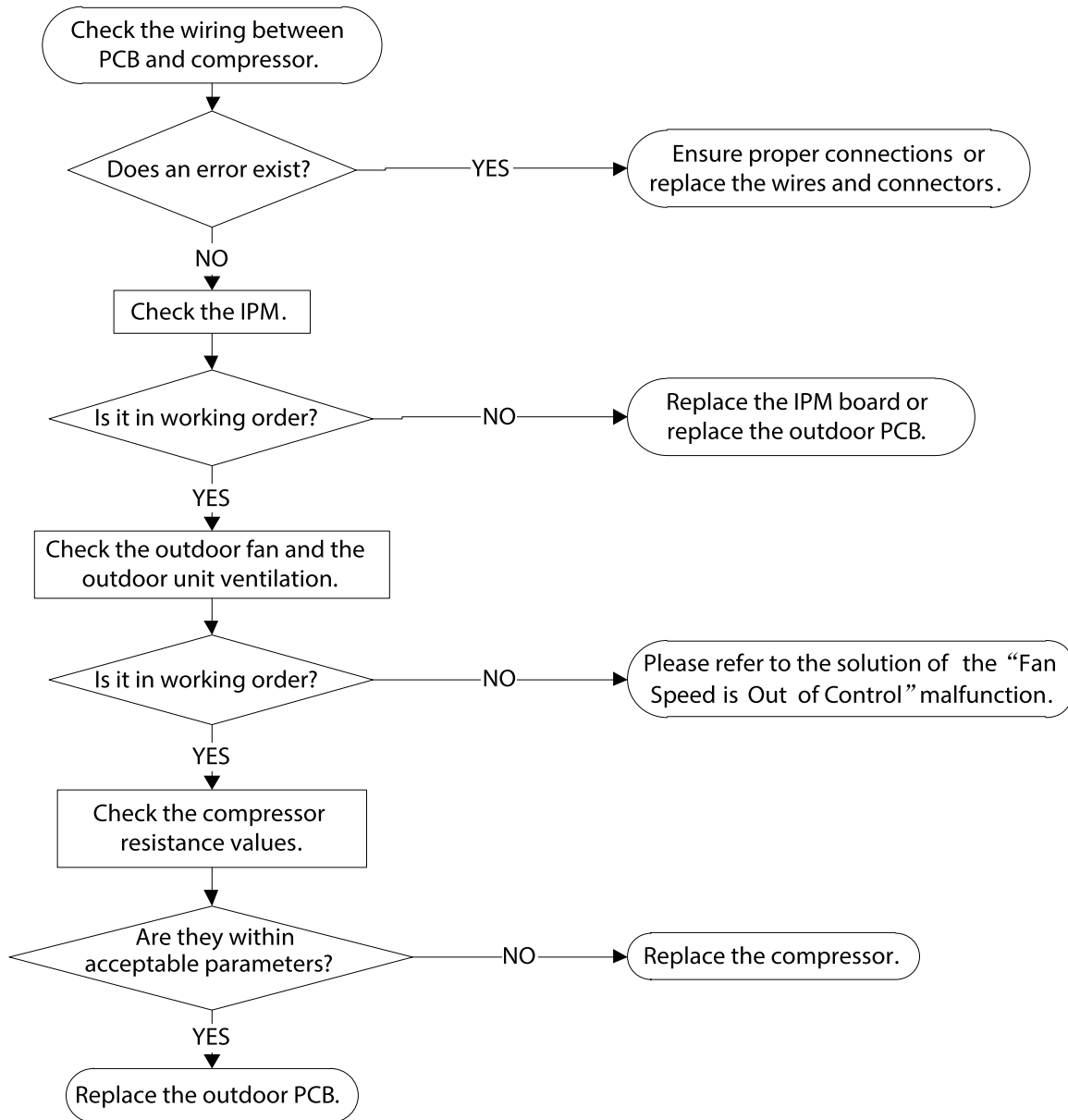


PC 00 (ODU IPM Module Protection Diagnosis and Solution)

Description: When the voltage signal the IPM sends to the compressor drive chip is abnormal, the display LED shows "PC 00" and the AC turn off.

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires, IPM module board, Outdoor fan assembly, Compressor, Outdoor PCB

Troubleshooting and repair:



IPM Continuity Check

! WARNING

ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD
 Electricity remains in the capacitors even when the power supply is off.
 Ensure the capacitors are fully discharged before troubleshooting.

1. Turn off the outdoor unit and disconnect the power supply.
2. Discharge the electrolytic capacitors and ensure all the energy storage has been discharge.
3. Disassemble the outdoor PCB or disassemble the IPM board.
4. Measure the resistance value between P and U (V,W,N), U (V,W) and N.

Table 6 – Resistance Value

Digital Tester		Resistance Value	Digital Tester		Resistance Value
(+) Red	(-) Black		(+) Red	(-) Black	
P	N	∞ (Several Mf Ω)	U	N	∞ (Several Mf Ω)
	U		V		
	V		W		
	W		-		

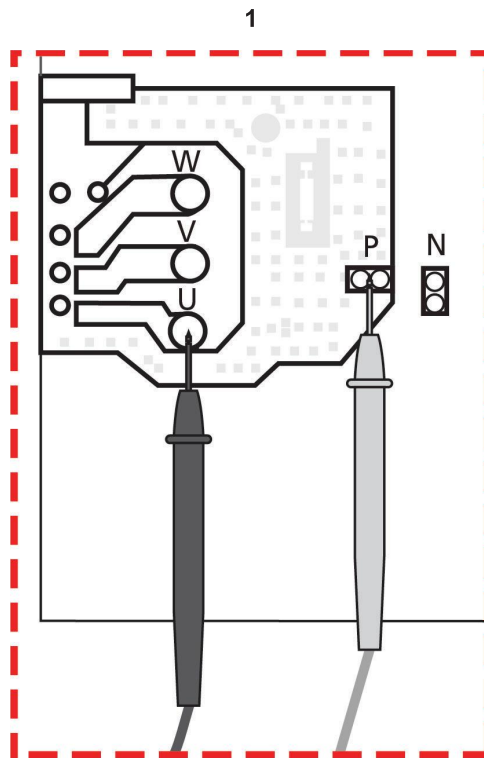


Fig. 24 —Resistance Value

Compressor Check

1. Disconnect the compressor power cord from the outdoor PCB.
2. Measure the resistance value of each winding using a multi-meter.
3. Check the resistance value of each winding in tables 9 through 12:

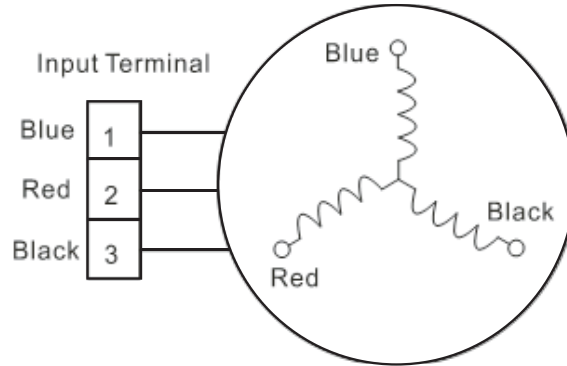


Fig. 25 —Compressor Check

Table 7 – Resistance Values

Resistance Value	KSN140D58UFZ	KTF250D22UMT	KTM240D46UKT2	KTF310D43UMT	MTH550UKPC8FU
Blue-Red	1.86Ω	0.75Ω	1.04Ω	0.65Ω	0.295Ω
Blue-Black					
Red-Black					

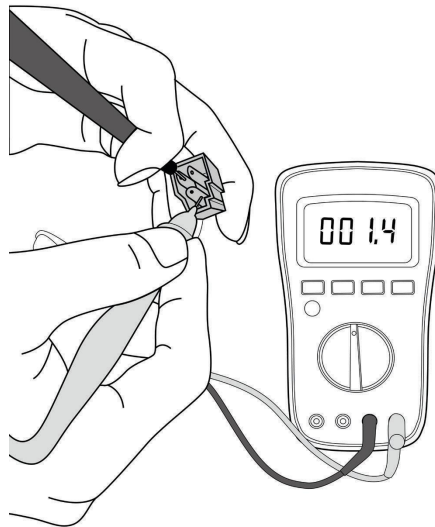


Fig. 26 —Resistance Check

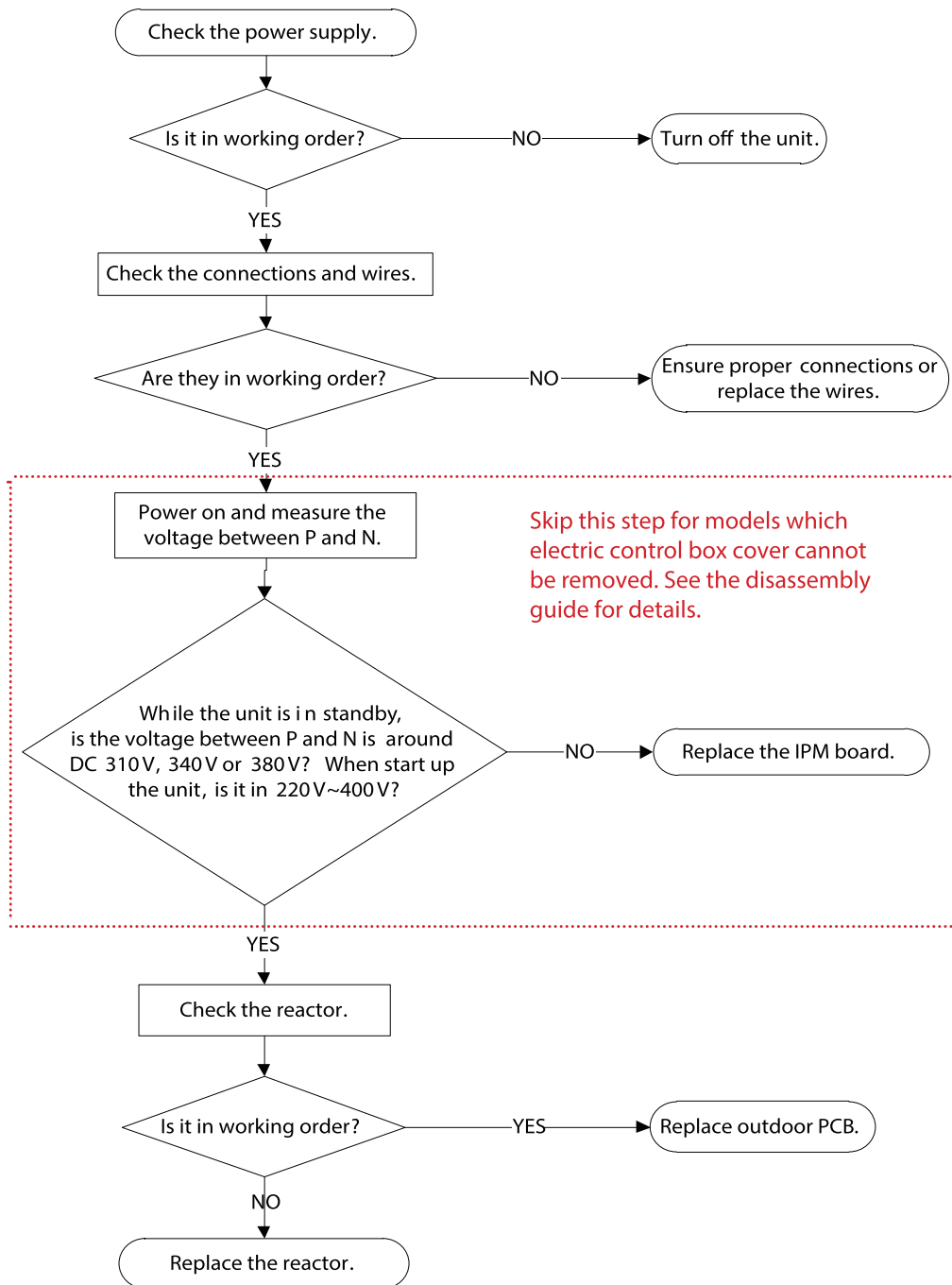
NOTE: The picture and the value are only for reference, actual condition and specific value may vary.

PC 01 (ODU Voltage Protection Diagnosis and Solution)

Description: Abnormal increases or decreases in voltage are detected by checking the specified voltage detection circuit.

Recommended parts to prepare: Power supply wires, IPM module board, PCB, Reactor

Troubleshooting and repair:

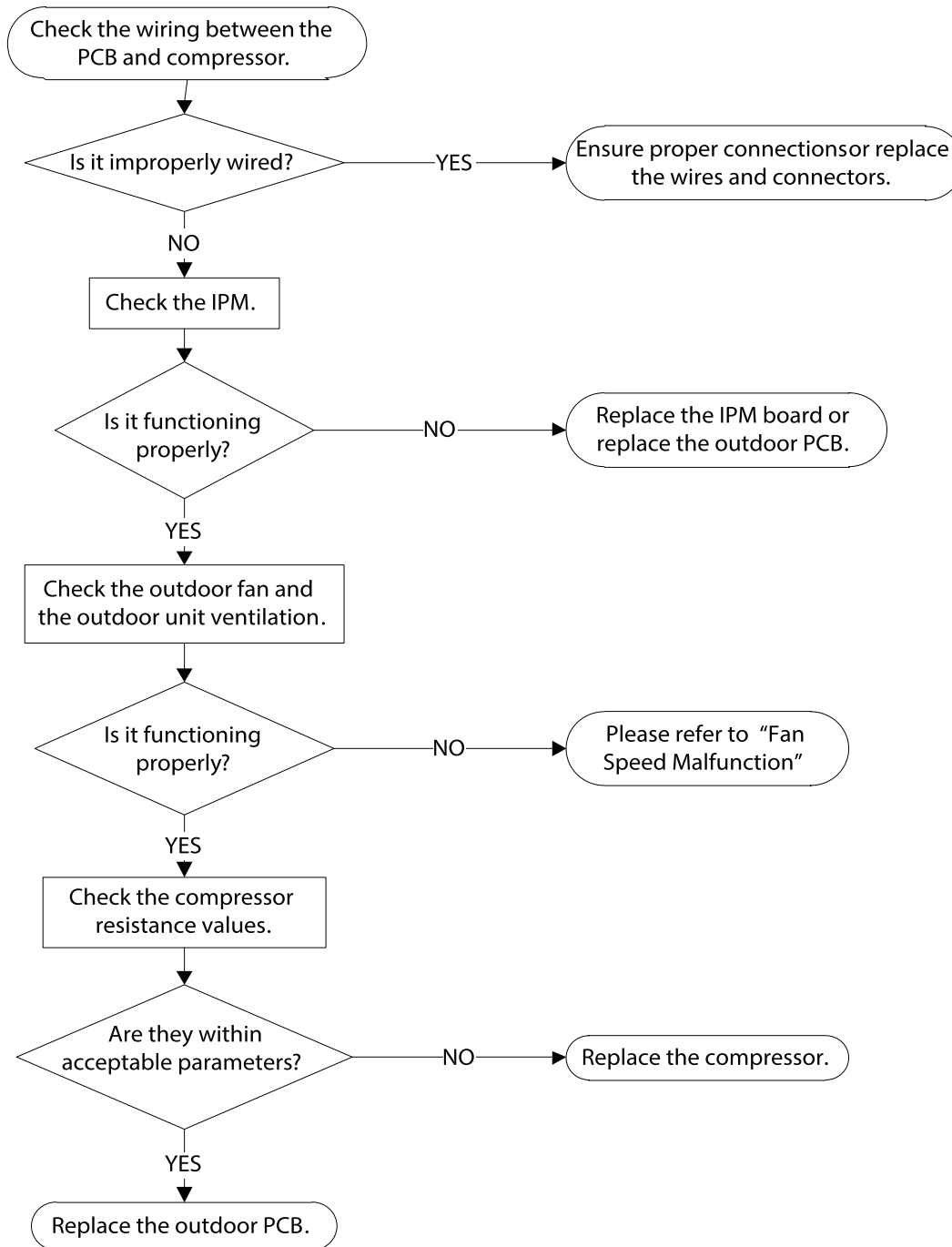


PC 04 (Inverter Compressor Drive Error Diagnosis and Solution)

Description: An abnormal inverter compressor drive is detected by a special detection circuit, including communication signal detection, voltage detection, compressor rotation speed signal detection and so on.

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires, IPM module board, Outdoor fan assembly, Compressor, Outdoor PCB

Troubleshooting and repair:

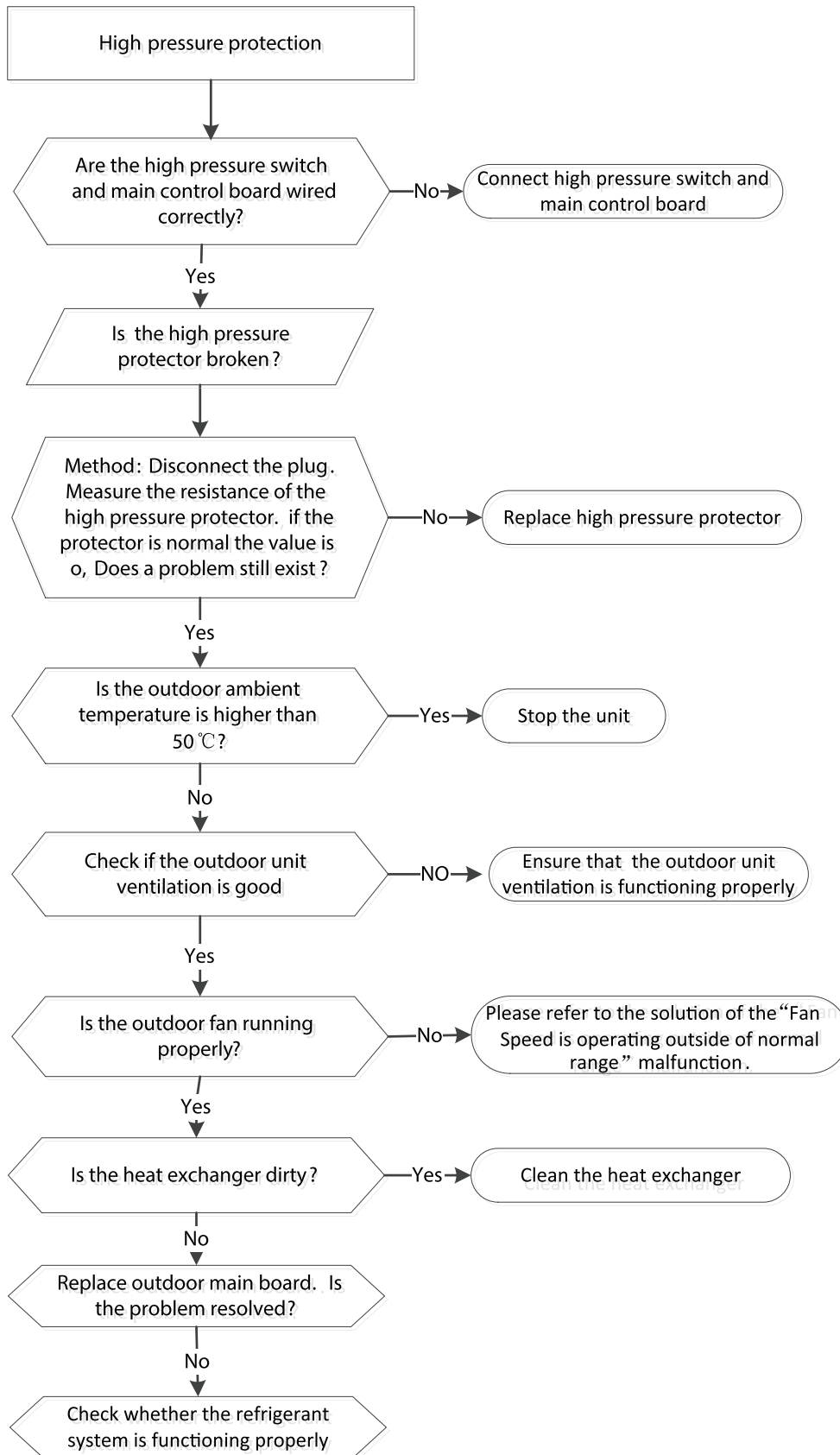


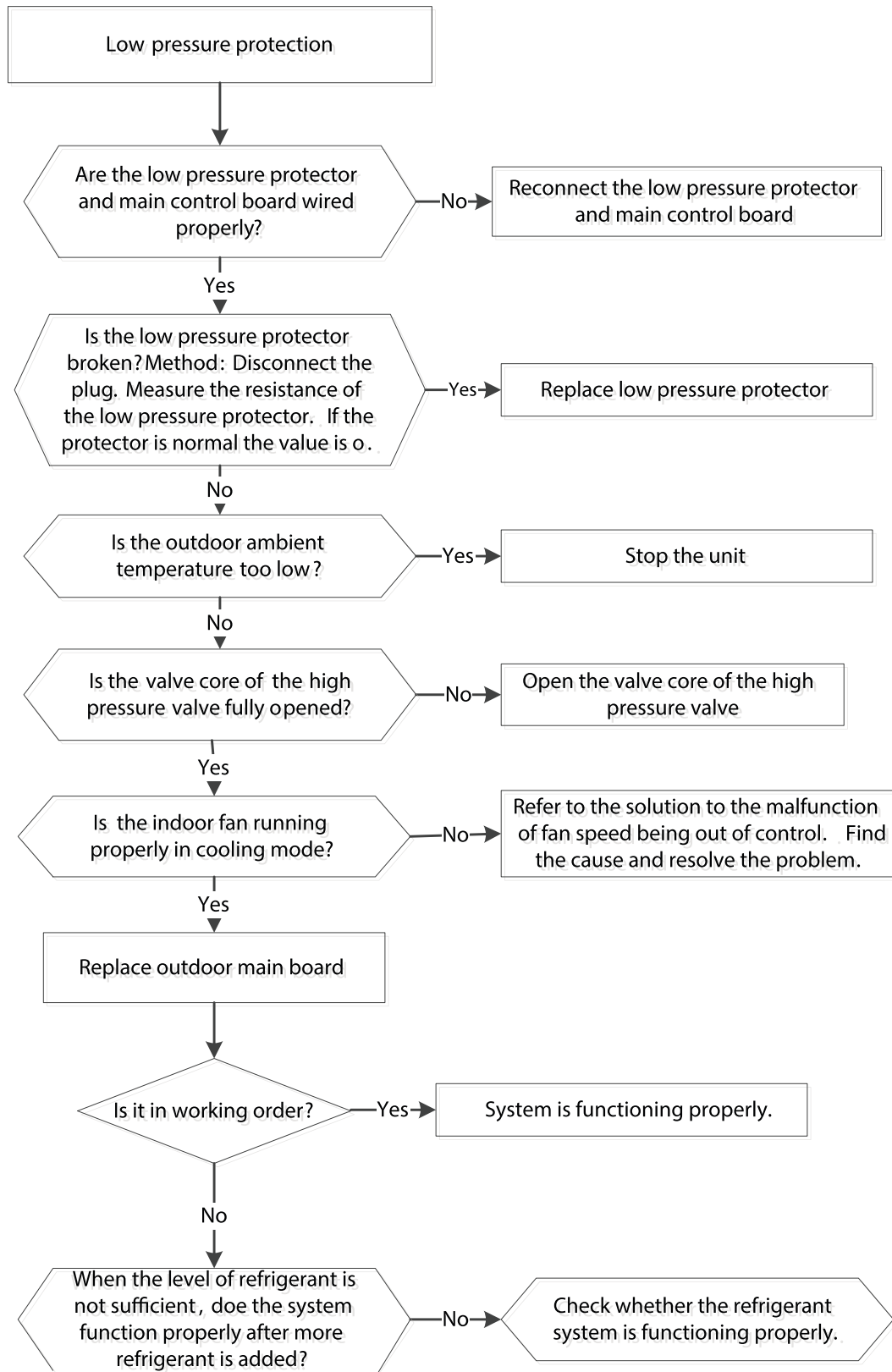
PC 03 Pressure Protection, PC30 (High Pressure), and PC31 (Low Pressure) Diagnosis and Solution

Description: Outdoor pressure switch cut off the system because high pressure is higher than 638 PSI /4.4MPa or outdoor pressure switch cut off the system because low pressure is lower than 19 PSI / 0.13 MPA, the LED displays the failure code.

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires, Pressure switch, Outdoor fan, Outdoor main PCB, Refrigerant

Troubleshooting and repair:



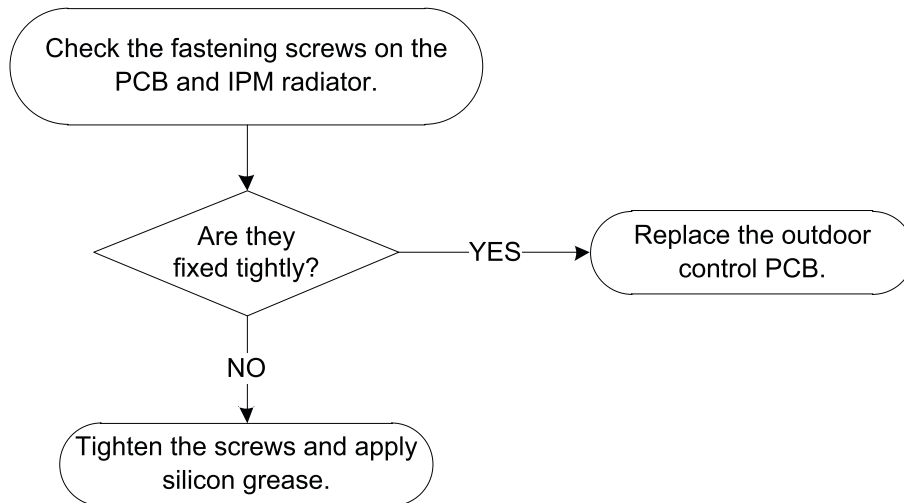
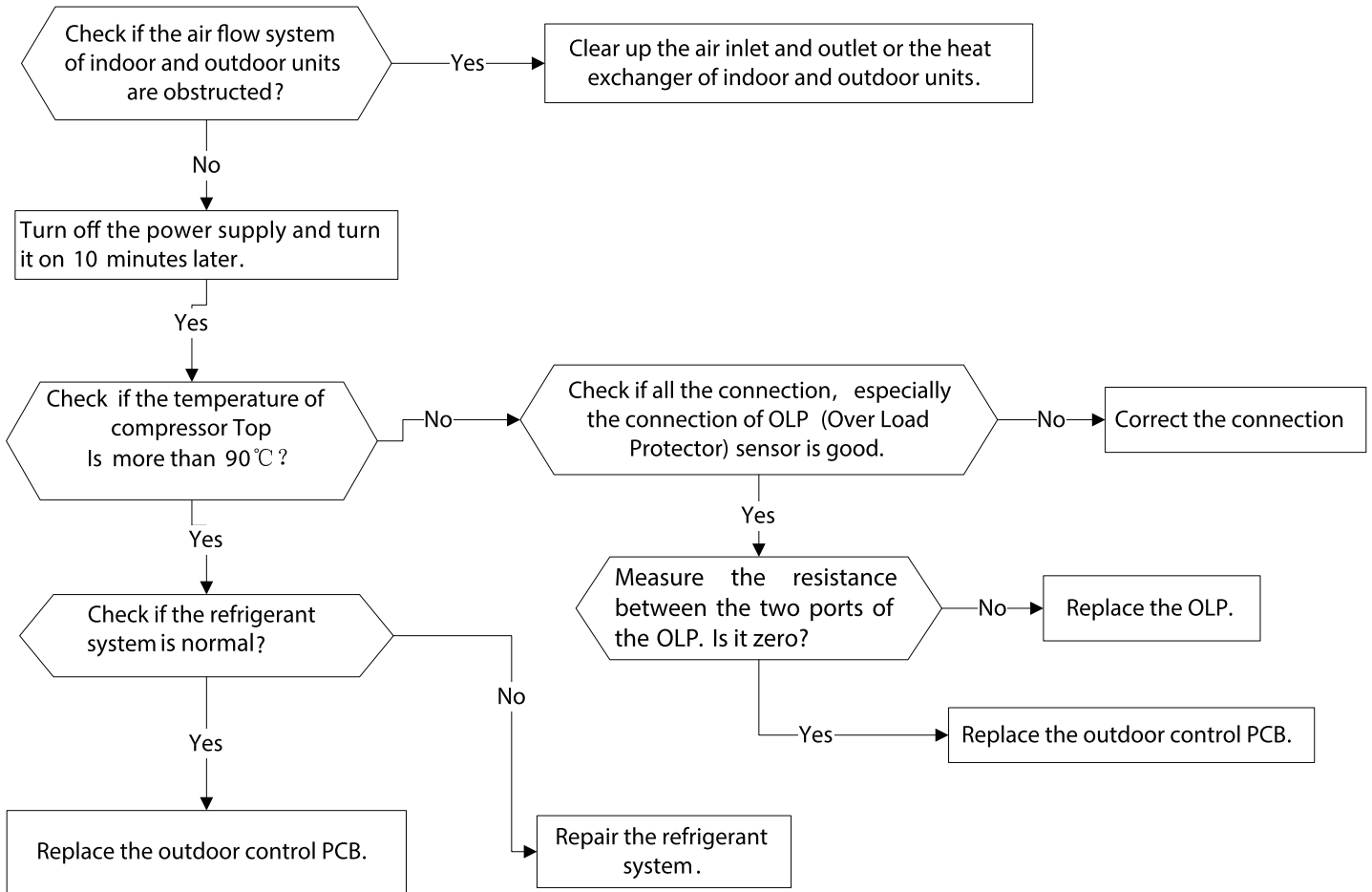


PC 02 (Compressor Top (or IPM) Temp. Protection Diagnosis and Solution)

Description: For some models with overload protection, If the sampling voltage is not 5V, the LED will display the failure. If the temperature of IPM module is higher than a certain value, the LED displays the failure code.

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires, Outdoor PCB, IPM module board, High pressure protector, System blockages

Troubleshooting and repair:



PC 0L (Low Ambient Temperature Protection)

Description: It is a protection function. When compressor is off, outdoor ambient temperature(T4) is lower than -35oC. for 10s, the AC will stop and display the failure code.

When compressor is on, outdoor ambient temperature(T4) is lower than -40oC.for 10s, the AC will stop and display the failure code.

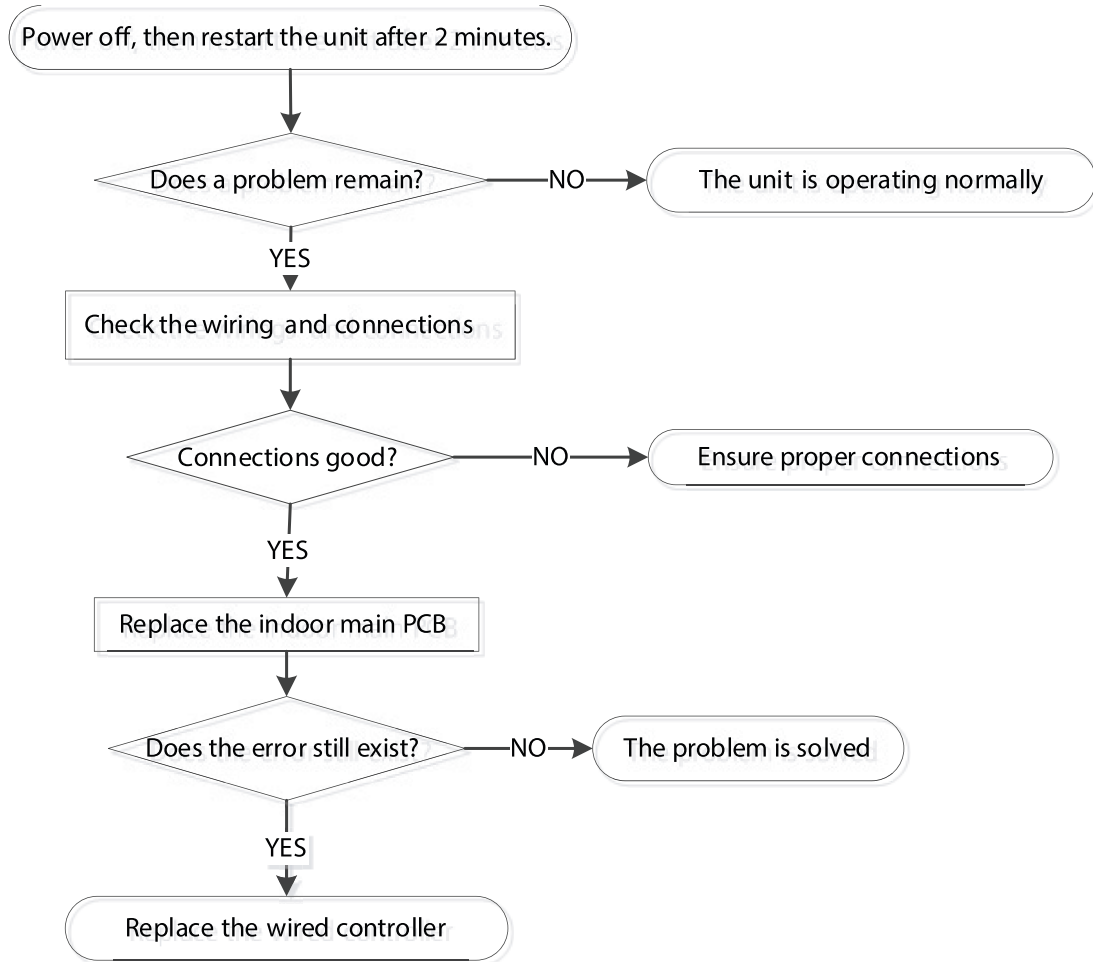
When outdoor ambient temperature(T4) is no lower than -32oC.for 10s, the unit will exit protection.

EH b3 (Communication Malfunction Between Wire and Master Control) Diagnosis and Solution

Description: If Indoor PCB does not receive feedback from wired controller, the error displays on the wired controller

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires, Indoor PCB, Wired controller

Troubleshooting and repair:

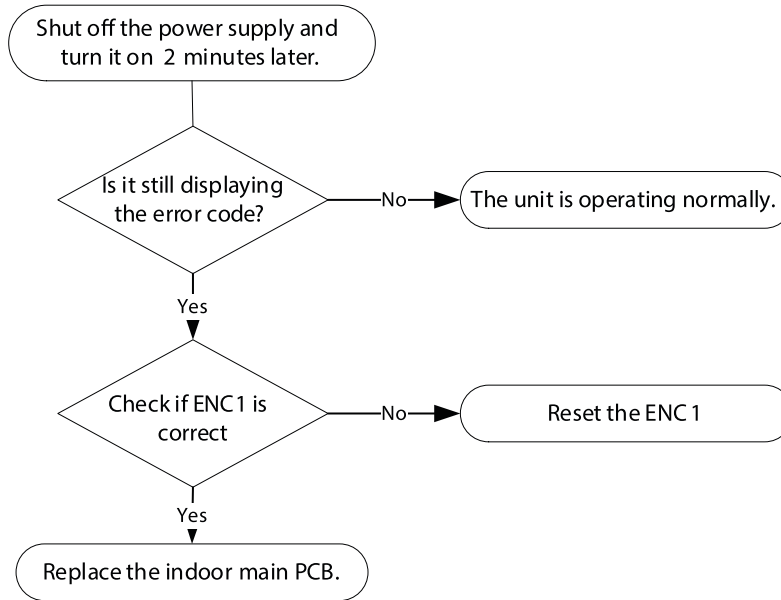


EH bA (Communication Malfunction Between Indoor Unit and External Fan Module)/ EH 3A(External Fan DC Bus Voltage Is Too Low Protection)/ EH 3b (External Fan DC Bus Voltage is Too High) Fault) Diagnosis and Solution

Description: Indoor unit does not receive the feedback from external fan module during 150 seconds. or Indoor unit receives abnormal increases or decreases in voltage from external fan module.

Recommended parts to prepare: Indoor main PCB

Troubleshooting and repair:

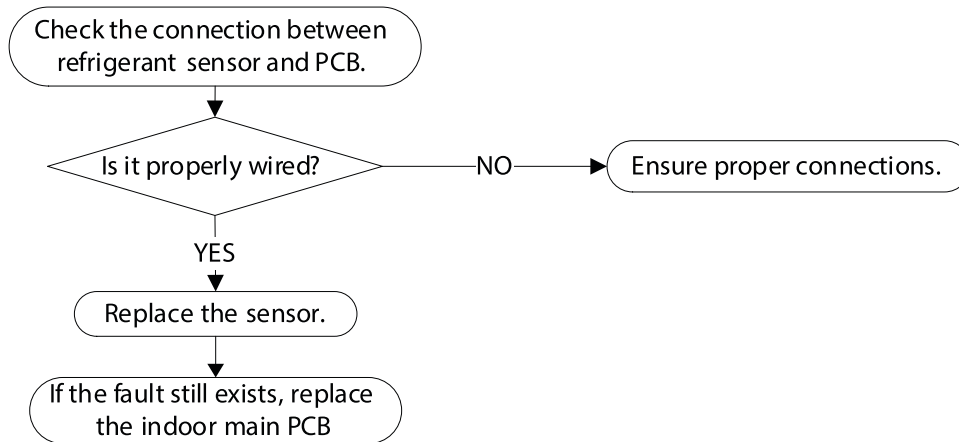


FH CC (Refrigerant Sensor Error) or EH C3(Refrigerant Sensor is Out of Range) Diagnosis and Solution

Description: Indoor unit receives fault signal for 10s or indoor unit does not receive feedback from refrigerant sensor for 150s.

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires, Sensors, Indoor main PCB

Troubleshooting and repair:



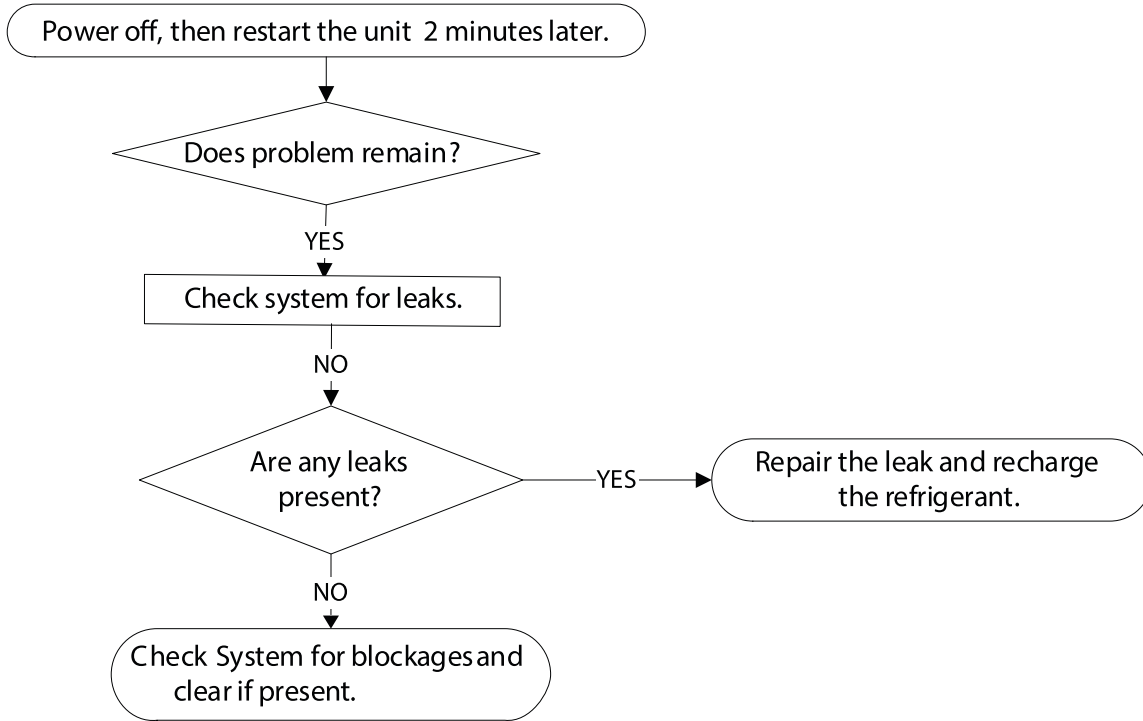
EH C1 (Refrigerant Sensor Detects Leakage) or EH C2 (Refrigerant Sensor is Out of Range and Leakage is Detected) Diagnosis and Solution

Description: The refrigerant sensor detects a concentration higher than or equal to 10%*LFL for 10 seconds or the refrigerant sensor detects a concentration higher than or equal to 20%*LFL or the multi model receives the refrigerant leakage protection fault sent by the outdoor unit.

Multi-zone: Only the buzzer of the indoor unit that detects refrigerant leakage continues to sound the alarm, the shortest sound is 10 seconds, and the longest sound is 5 minutes (you can press any key such as remote control or wire control, APP and so on to eliminate the alarm), and the other non-refrigerant leakage fault indoor unit only displays "ECC1", but the buzzer does not sound.

Recommended parts to prepare: Additional refrigerant

Troubleshooting and repair:

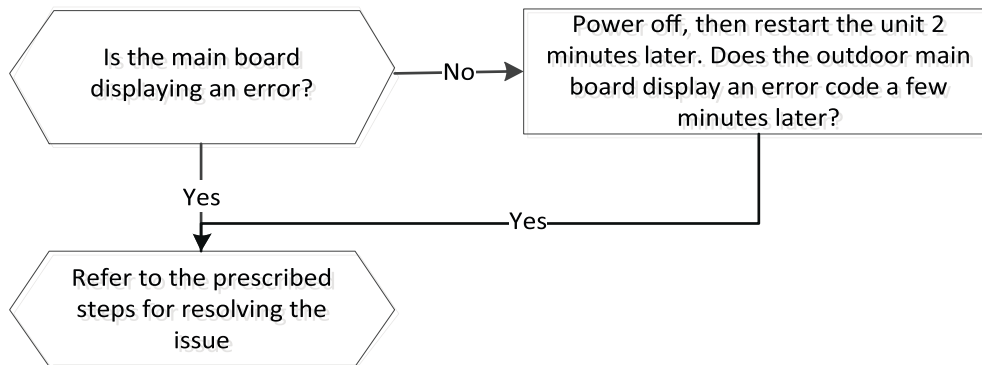


EC 0d (ODU Malfunction Diagnosis and Solution)

Description: The indoor unit detects the outdoor unit in error.

Recommended parts to prepare: Outdoor unit

Troubleshooting and repair:

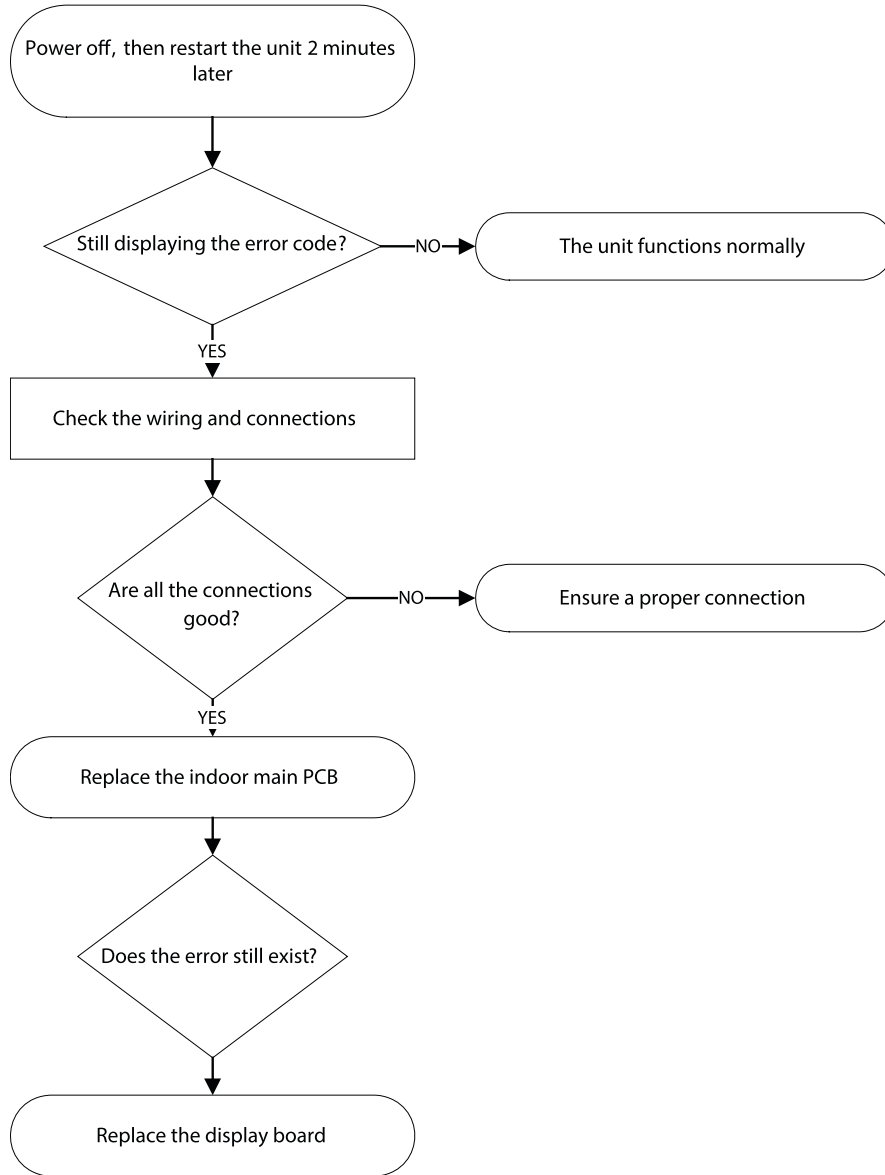


EH 0b(IDU Main Control Board and Display Board Communication Error Diagnosis and Solution)

Description: Indoor PCB does not receive feedback from the display board.

Recommended parts to prepare: Communication wire, Indoor PCB, Display board

Troubleshooting and repair:

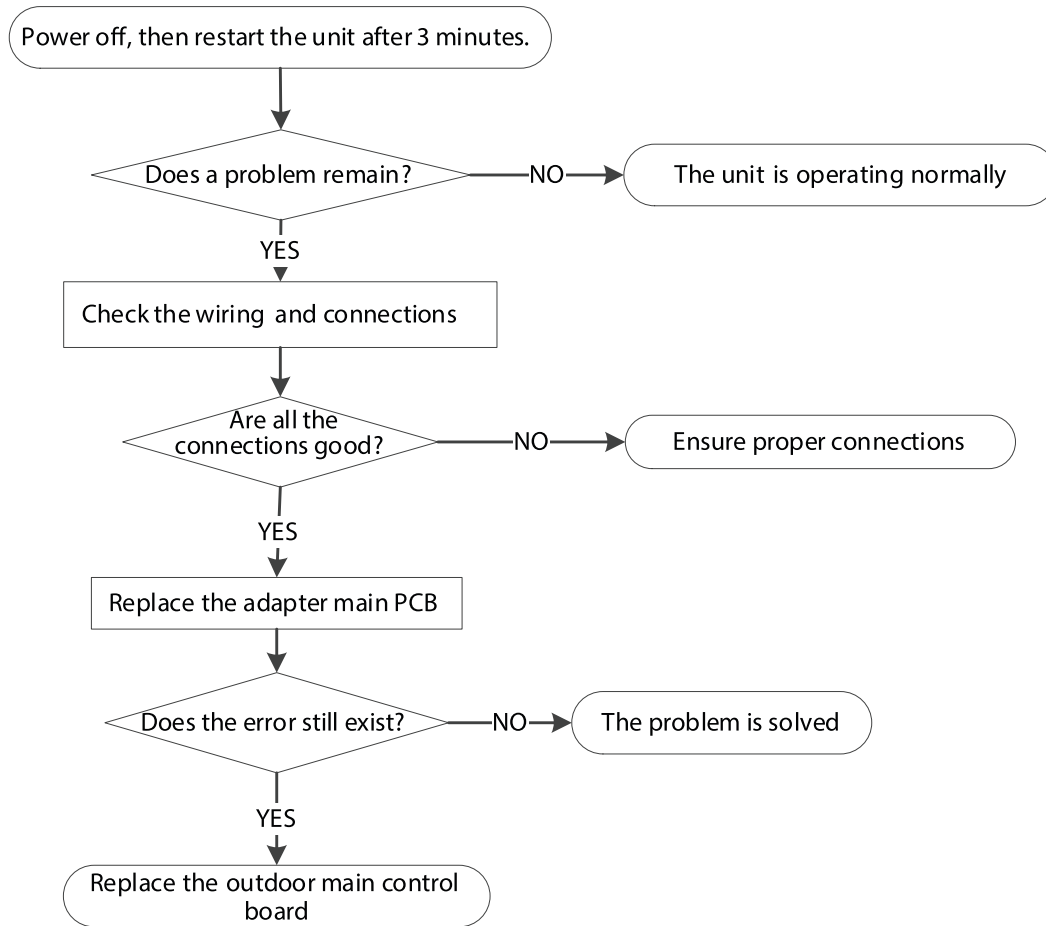


EL 16(Communication Malfunction Between Adapter Board and Outdoor Main Board Diagnosis and Solution)

Description: The adapter PCB cannot detect the main control board.

Recommended parts to prepare: Connection wires, Adapter board, Outdoor main PCB

Troubleshooting and repair:



FL 09(Mismatch between the new and old platforms diagnosis and solution)

Description: Indoor and outdoor units are mismatched, the LED displays this code. Please replace the matching indoor or outdoor unit.

Indoor Units Mode Conflict (match with multi outdoor unit)

Description: The indoor units cannot operate in the COOLING mode and HEATING mode simultaneously. The HEATING mode is the priority.

Examples:

- If indoor unit A is operating in the COOLING mode or the FAN mode, and indoor unit B is set to the HEATING mode, unit A will power off and unit B will continue to operate in the HEATING mode.
- If indoor unit A is operating in the HEATING mode and indoor unit B is set to the COOLING mode or fan mode, unit B will change to STANDBY mode and unit A will not change modes.

Table 8 – Mode Conflicts

	COOLING MODE	HEATING MODE	FAN	OFF
COOLING MODE	No	Yes	No	No
HEATING MODE	Yes	No	Yes	No
FAN	No	Yes	No	No
OFF	No	No	No	No

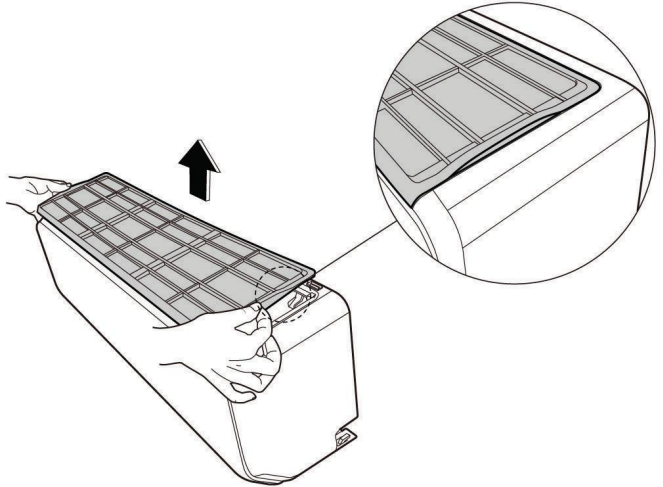
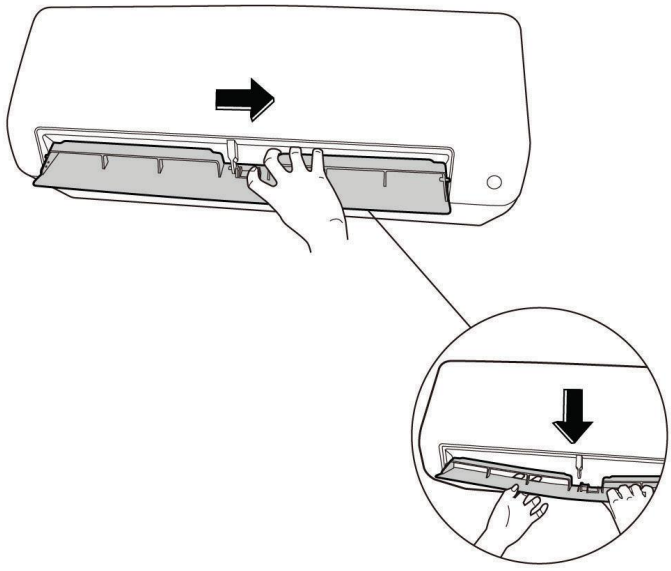
NOTE:

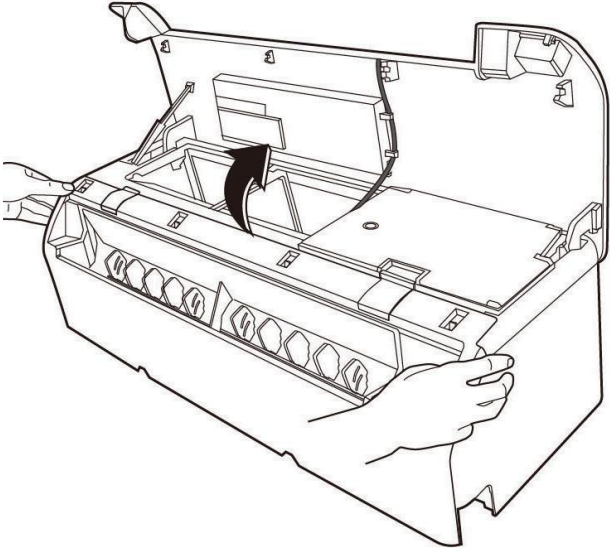
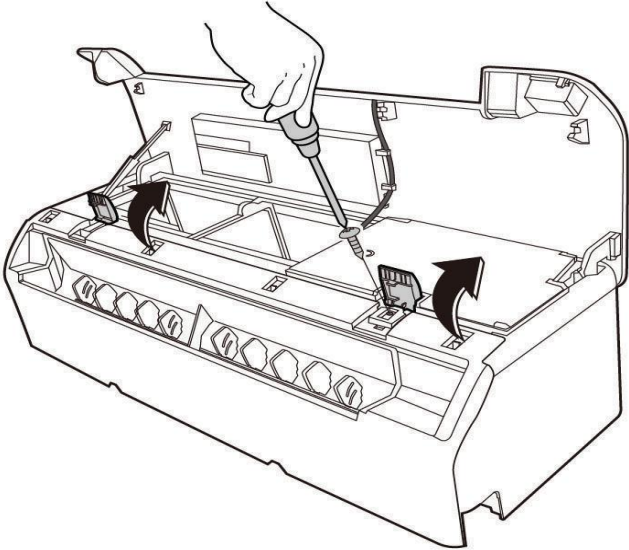
No: No mode conflict

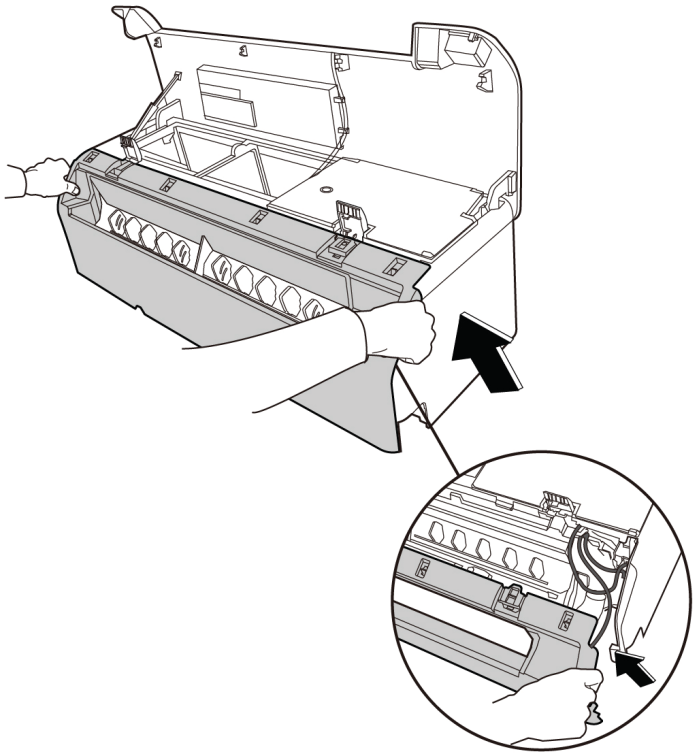
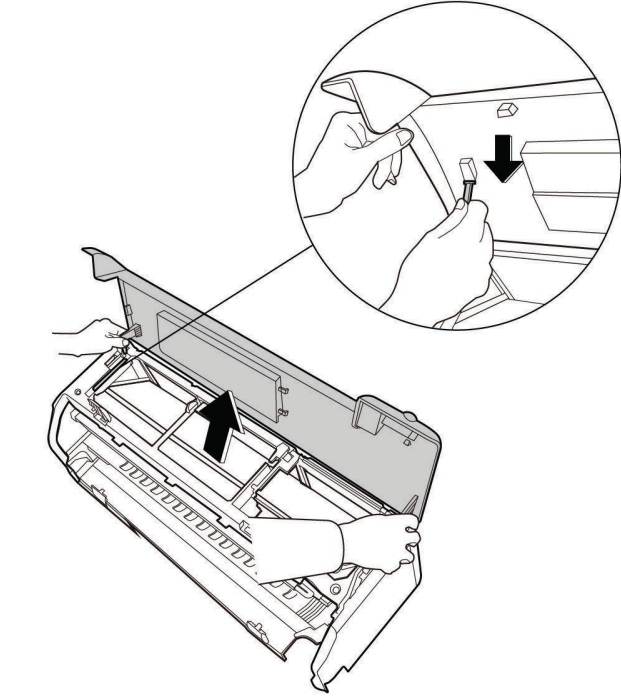
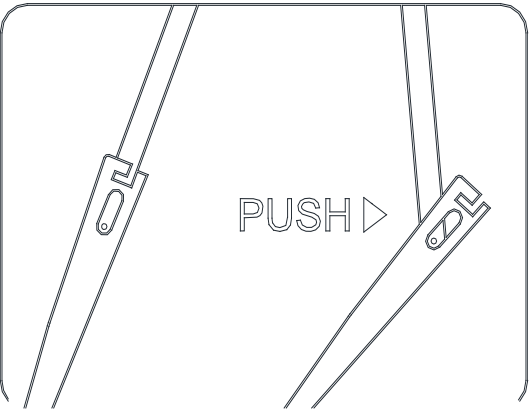
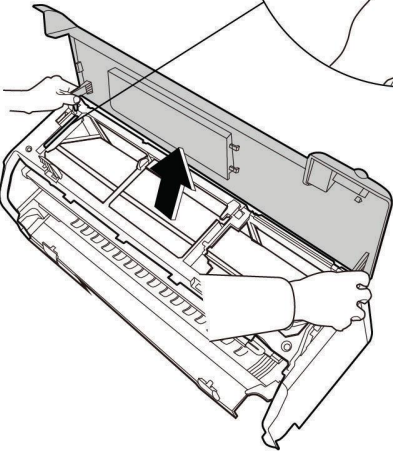
Yes: Mode conflict

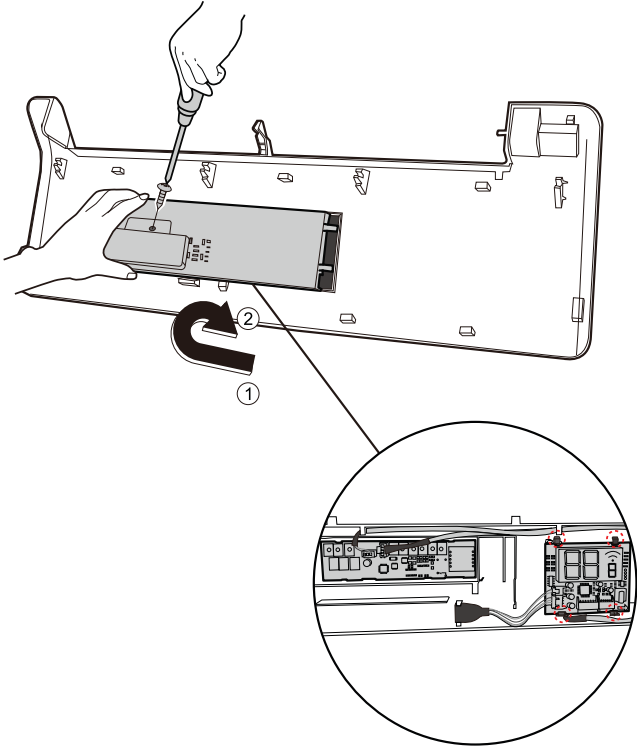
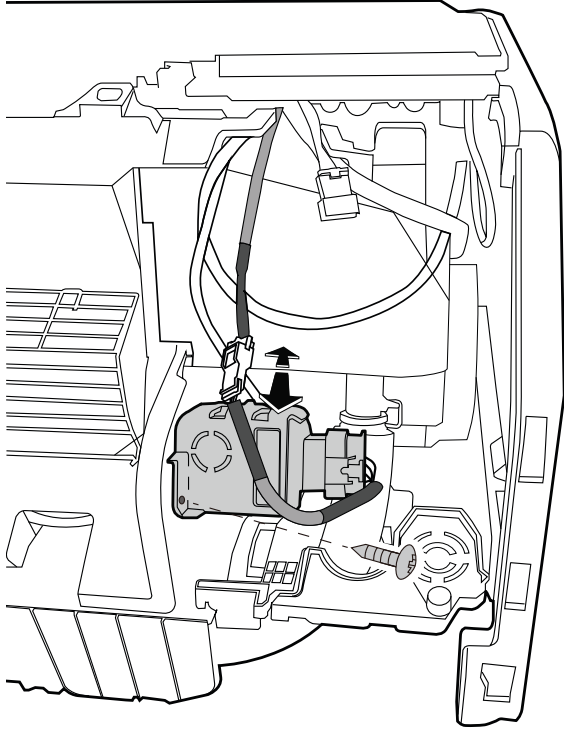
DISASSEMBLY INSTRUCTIONS

Unit Disassembly - Front Panel

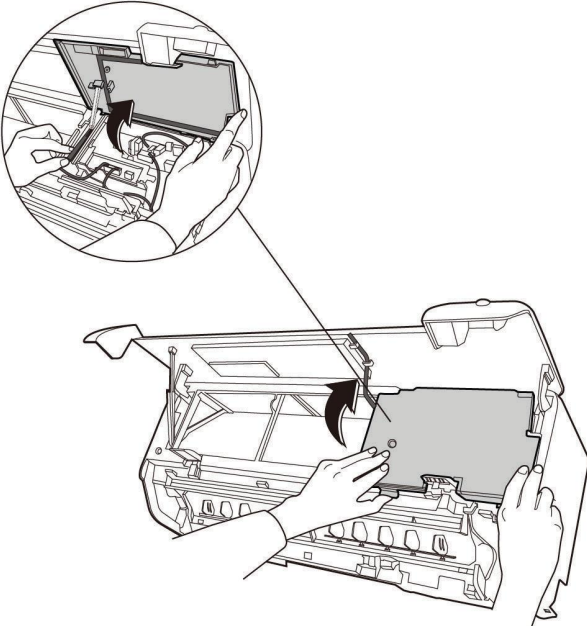
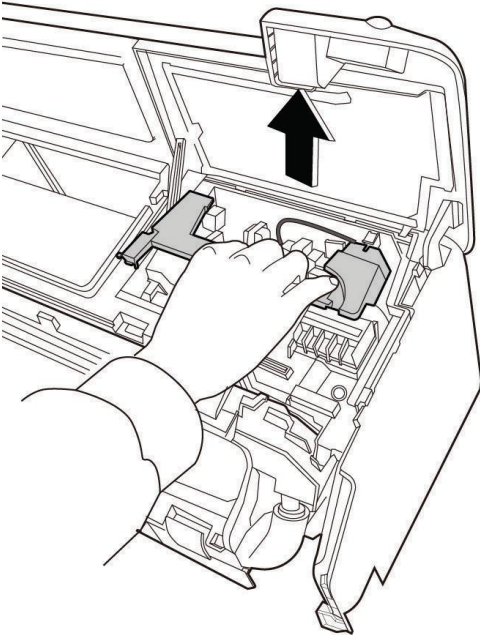
PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>1. Place your hands along the filter's sides, pull the filter gently along the vertical direction, and then remove it. (see illustration)</p>	
<p>2. Open the horizontal louver and push the locker towards the right to open.. (see illustration)</p> <p>3. Bend the horizontal louver slightly to loosen the hooks, then remove the horizontal louver.</p>	

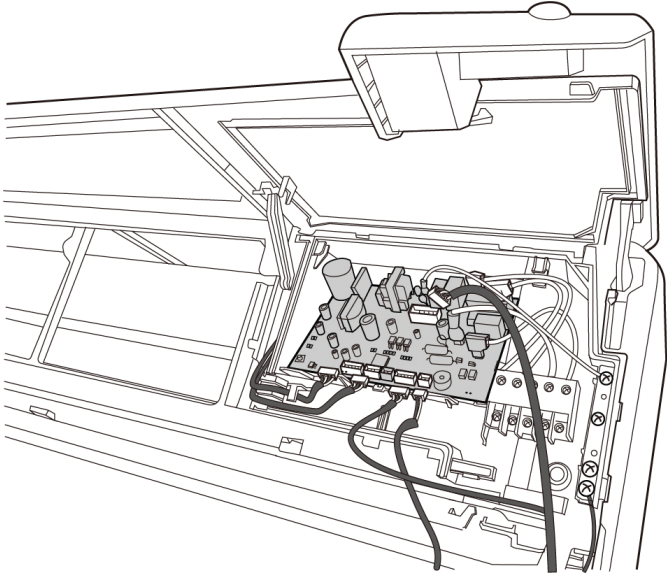
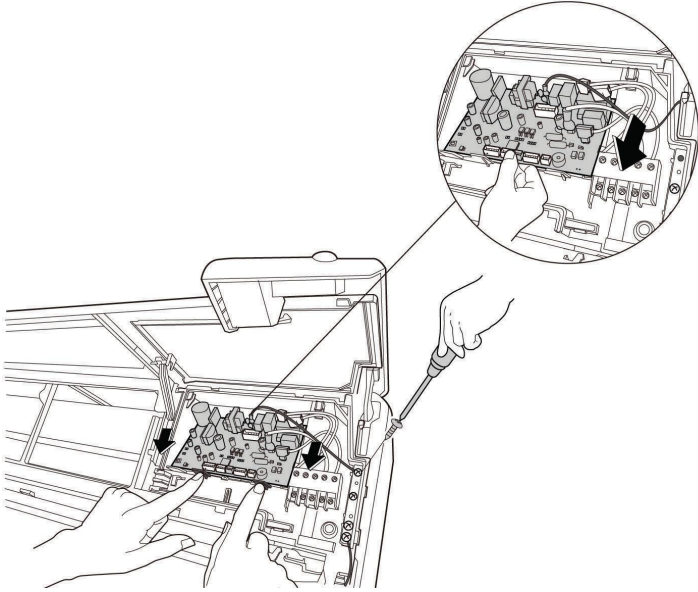
PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>4. Open the panel assembly, move the slider to secure the panel. (see illustration)</p>	 <p>The illustration shows a hand on the right side of the panel assembly, moving a slider component towards the center. A curved arrow indicates the direction of movement. The panel is shown in an open position, revealing internal components.</p>
<p>5. Open the two stop blocks of the panel frame assembly (see illustration)</p> <p>6. Remove 1 screw in the panel frame.</p>	 <p>The illustration shows a hand using a screwdriver to remove a screw from the panel frame. Two curved arrows indicate the direction of movement for the stop blocks, and another curved arrow indicates the direction of the screw being removed.</p>

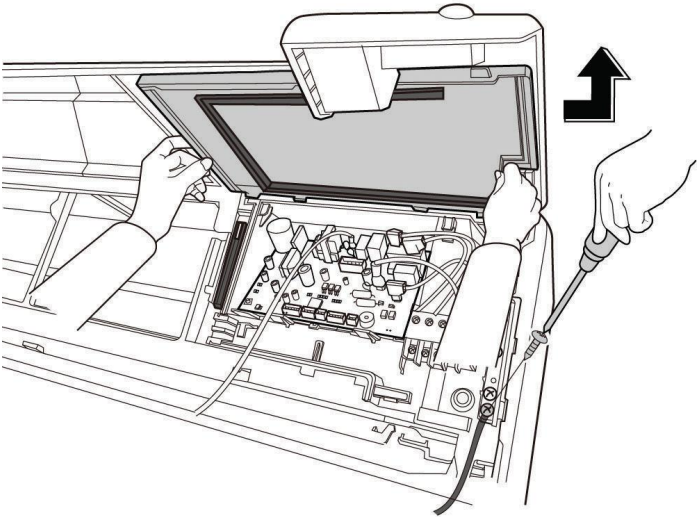
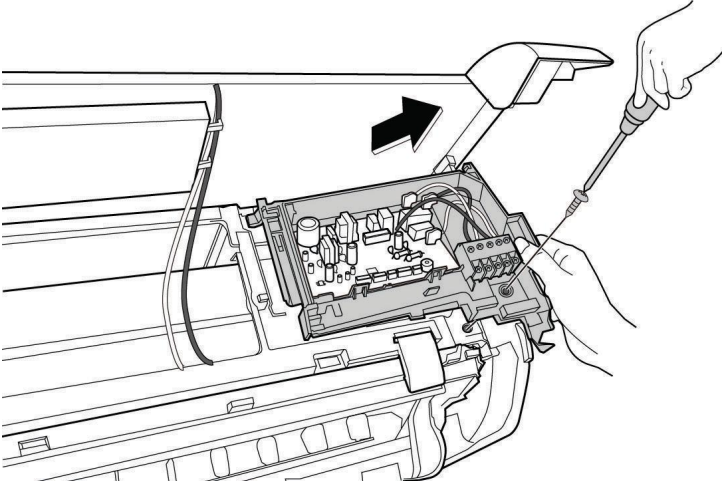
PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>7. Pull the two sides of the bottom panel along the direction shown in the image to the right to remove it. (see illustration)</p>	
<p>8. Pull the panel's support bar to remove it.</p> <p>9. Remove the panel assembly.</p> <p>Caution: If you want to close the panel, you must bend the middle of the support bar, otherwise it will break. For 6K~18K models, the support bar is located on the left of the unit. For 24K and up, it is located in the middle of the unit.</p>  	

PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>10. Remove 1 screw from the display board.</p> <p>11. Rotate the display board subassembly in the direction shown in the picture to the right.</p> <p>12. Pull the four clips to remove the display board.</p> <p>13. Pull the two clips to remove the adapter board subassembly.(</p>	
<p>14. Remove 1 screw and remove the refrigerant sensor.</p>	

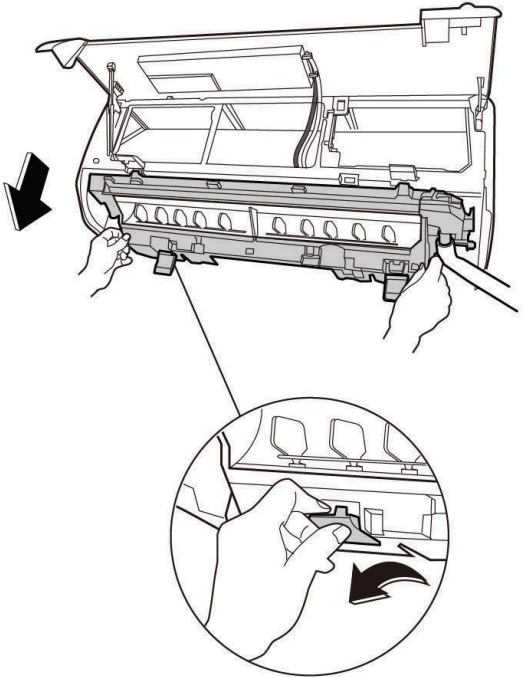
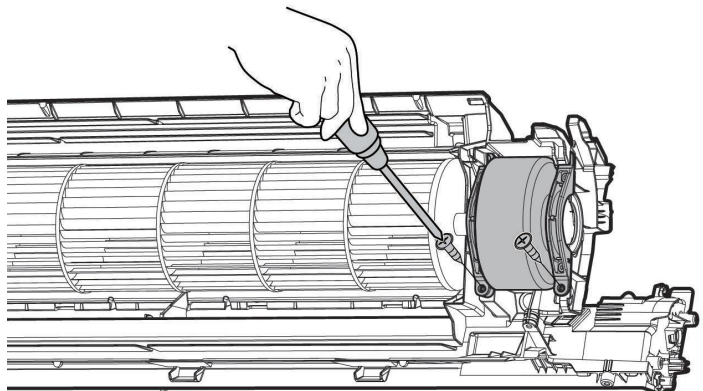
Electrical Parts (Anti static gloves must be worn.)

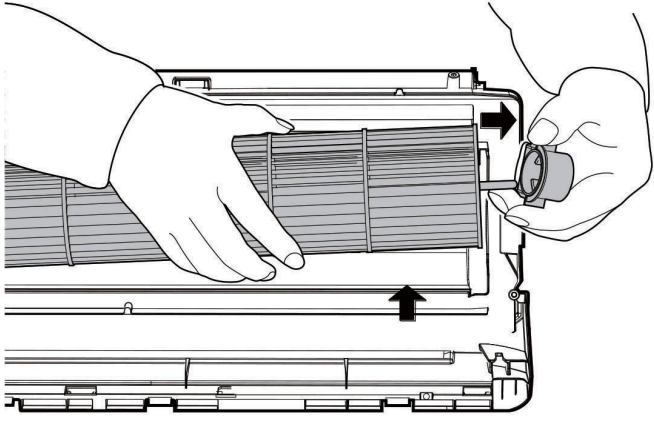
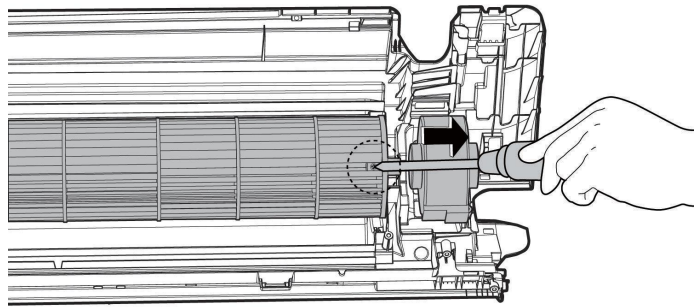
PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>1. Pull the two ends of the electronic control box cover with your thumbs to open.. (see illustration)</p> <p>2. Raise the support bar to secure the cover.</p>	
<p>3. Pull the electrical control box holder to remove it.. (see illustration))</p>	

PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>4. Disconnect the wires..(see illustration)</p>	 <p>A line drawing showing the interior of a control panel. The electronic control box is mounted, and several wires are shown disconnected from their terminals. The panel's lid is open, and the internal structure is visible.</p>
<p>5. Remove one screw used for the ground connection.</p> <p>6. Pull two clips of the electronic control box along the direction shown in the picture to the right to remove the main control board.(see illustration)</p> <p>If you want to repair the main control board assembly, perform steps 1 through 6. If you want to repair the electrical control box subassembly, perform steps 7-10.</p>	 <p>A line drawing showing a hand using a screwdriver to remove a screw from the electronic control box. A circular inset provides a magnified view of the screw being removed. Two arrows point to the clips of the control box that are to be pulled out.</p>

PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>7. Remove the other screw used for the ground connection. (see illustration)</p> <p>8. Collapse the support bar.</p> <p>9. Pull the electronic control box cover along the direction shown in the image to the right to remove it.</p>	
<p>10. Remove one screw then pull out the electronic control box subassembly.(see illustration)</p>	

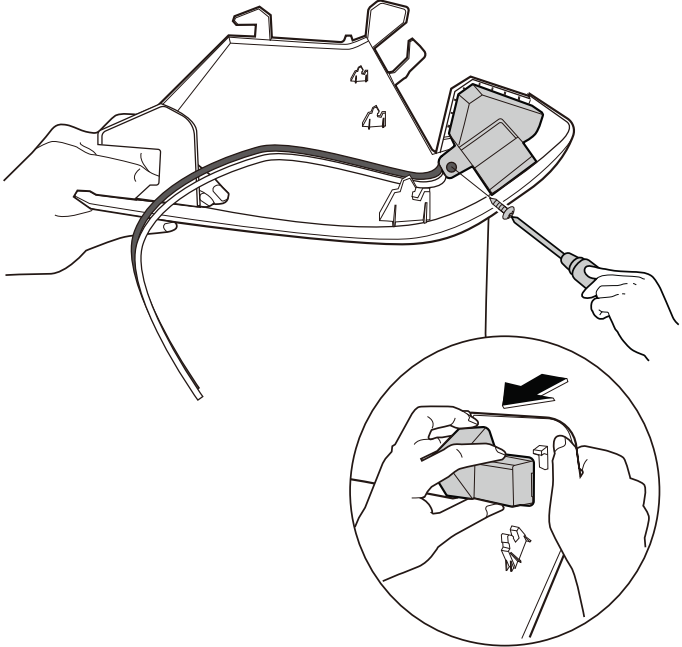
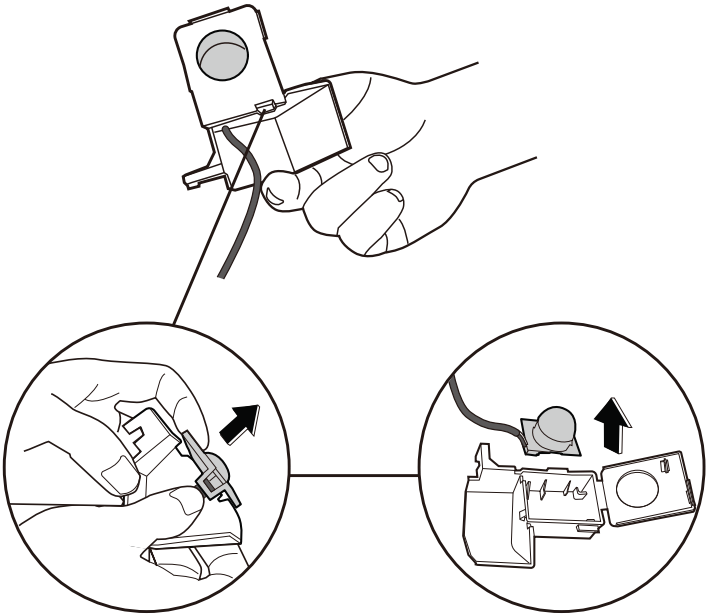
Fan Motor and Fan

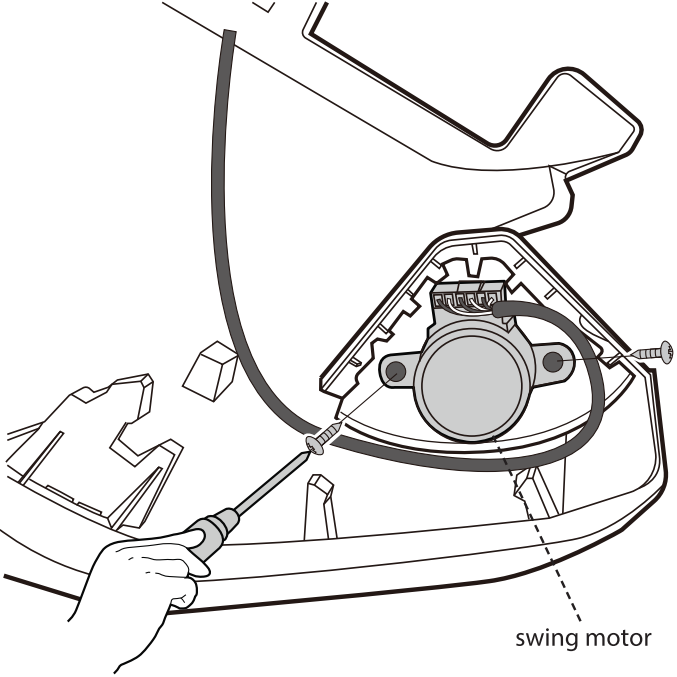
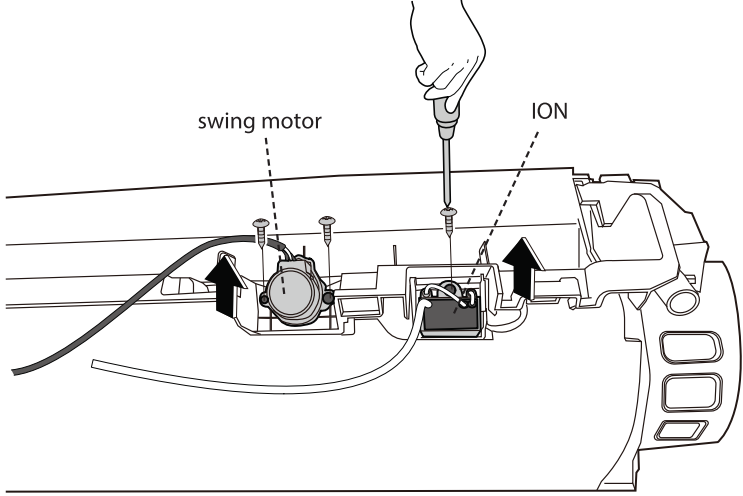
PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>1. Open the two stop blocks of the chassis assembly (see illustration)</p> <p>2. Remove the chassis assembly (below) along the direction (see illustration)</p>	
<p>3. Remove the two screws and remove the fan motor board. (see illustration)</p>	

PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>4. Remove the bearing sleeve. (see illustration)</p>	
<p>5. Remove the screw. (see illustration)</p> <p>6. Pull out the fan motor and the fan assembly from the side.</p>	

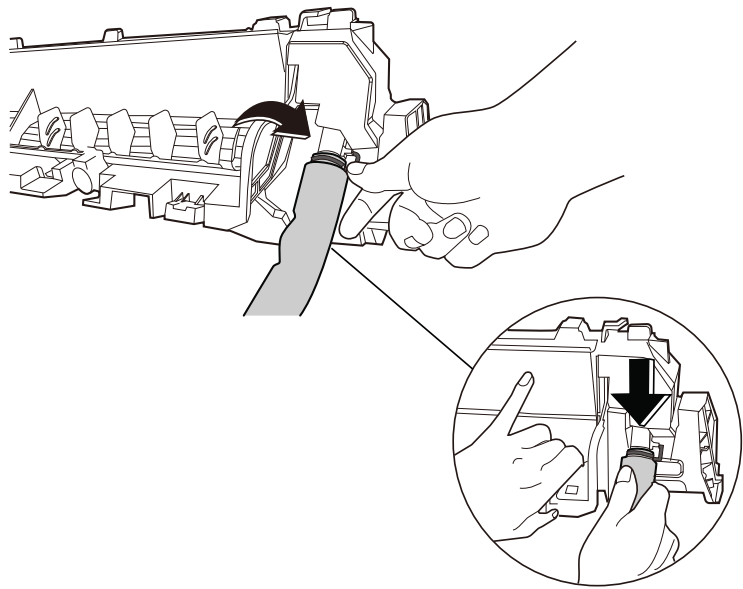
Step Motor

NOTE: Remove the front panel and chassis assembly(below) (refer to Front panel and Fan motor and fan) before disassembling step motor.

PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>1. Remove one screw to remove cover of louver motor. (see illustration)</p>	
<p>2. Open the cover of louver motor, pull out intelligent eye subassembly. (see illustration)</p>	

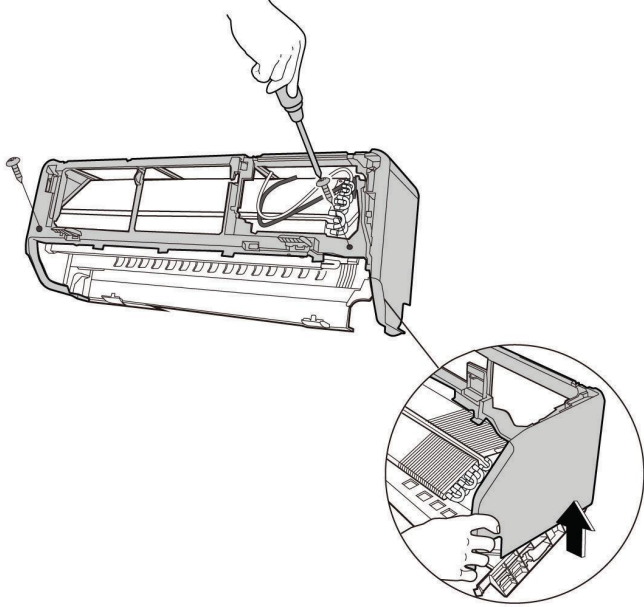
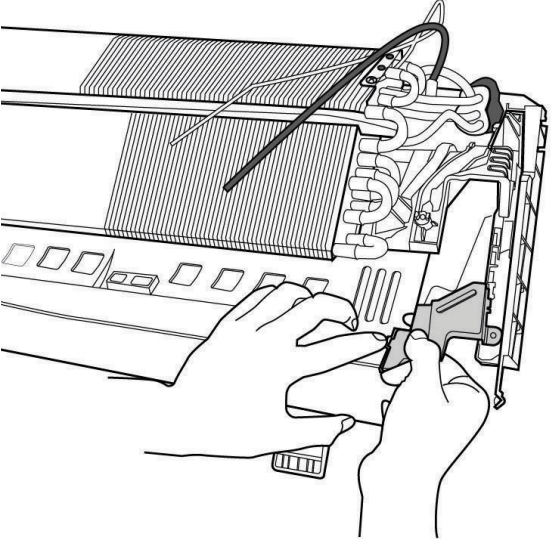
PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>3. Remove the two screws, then remove the horizontal swing motor (see illustration)</p> <p>NOTE: The horizontal swing motor is located in panel assembly.</p>	 <p>The illustration shows a hand using a screwdriver to remove a screw from the horizontal swing motor. The motor is mounted on a panel assembly. A label 'swing motor' points to the motor with a dashed line.</p>
<p>4. Remove 2 screws, then remove the vertical swing motor (see illustration)</p> <p>5. Remove 1 screw, then remove the ionizer generator</p> <p>NOTE: The vertical swing motor and ionizer generator are located in chassis assembly (below).</p>	 <p>The illustration shows a hand using a screwdriver to remove a screw from the ionizer generator. The vertical swing motor is labeled 'swing motor' and the ionizer generator is labeled 'ION'. Arrows point to the locations of the components.</p>

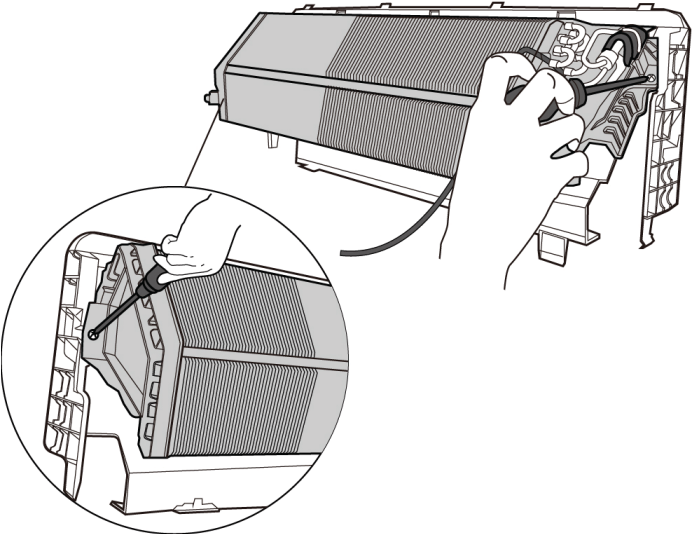
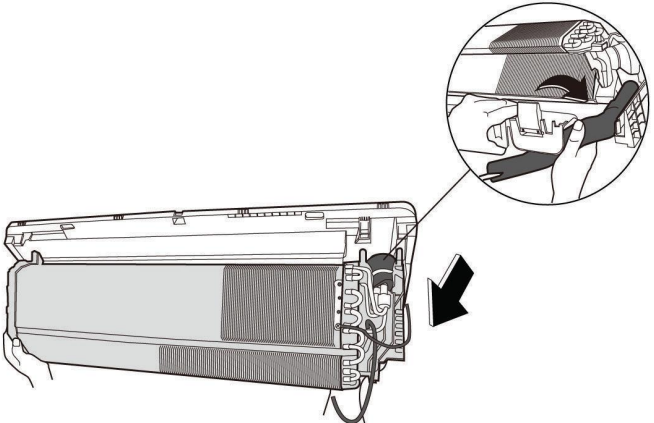
Drain Hose

PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>1. Rotate the fixed wire clockwise indicated in right image. (see illustration)</p> <p>2. Pull up the drain hose to remove it.</p>	

Evaporator

NOTE: Remove the front panel, electrical parts and the fan first.

PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>1. Remove the 2 screws and then remove the panel frame assembly.(see illustration)</p>	
<p>2. Disassemble the pipe clamp board. (see illustration)</p>	

PROCEDURES	ILLUSTRATION
<p>3. Remove the screw (1) on the evaporator located at the left fixed plate. (see illustration)</p> <p>4. Remove the screw (1) on the evaporator located on the right side.</p>	
<p>5. Bend the piping carefully, separate the chassis assembly (above) and the evaporator, then remove the evaporator. (see illustration)</p>	

APPENDIX**Temperature Sensor Resistance Value Table for TP (°C - K)**

°C	°F	K Ohm	°C	°F	K Ohm	°C	°F	K Ohm	°C	°F	K Ohm
-20	-4	542.7	20	68	68.66	60	140	13.59	100	212	3.702
-19	-2	511.9	21	70	65.62	61	142	13.11	101	214	3.595
-18	0	483	22	72	62.73	62	144	12.65	102	216	3.492
-17	1	455.9	23	73	59.98	63	145	12.21	103	217	3.392
-16	3	430.5	24	75	57.37	64	147	11.79	104	219	3.296
-15	5	406.7	25	77	54.89	65	149	11.38	105	221	3.203
-14	7	384.3	26	79	52.53	66	151	10.99	106	223	3.113
-13	9	363.3	27	81	50.28	67	153	10.61	107	225	3.025
-12	10	343.6	28	82	48.14	68	154	10.25	108	226	2.941
-11	12	325.1	29	84	46.11	69	156	9.902	109	228	2.86
-10	14	307.7	30	86	44.17	70	158	9.569	110	230	2.781
-9	16	291.3	31	88	42.33	71	160	9.248	111	232	2.704
-8	18	275.9	32	90	40.57	72	162	8.94	112	234	2.63
-7	19	261.4	33	91	38.89	73	163	8.643	113	235	2.559
-6	21	247.8	34	93	37.3	74	165	8.358	114	237	2.489
-5	23	234.9	35	95	35.78	75	167	8.084	115	239	2.422
-4	25	222.8	36	97	34.32	76	169	7.82	116	241	2.357
-3	27	211.4	37	99	32.94	77	171	7.566	117	243	2.294
-2	28	200.7	38	100	31.62	78	172	7.321	118	244	2.233
-1	30	190.5	39	102	30.36	79	174	7.086	119	246	2.174
0	32	180.9	40	104	29.15	80	176	6.859	120	248	2.117
1	34	171.9	41	106	28	81	178	6.641	121	250	2.061
2	36	163.3	42	108	26.9	82	180	6.43	122	252	2.007
3	37	155.2	43	109	25.86	83	181	6.228	123	253	1.955
4	39	147.6	44	111	24.85	84	183	6.033	124	255	1.905
5	41	140.4	45	113	23.89	85	185	5.844	125	257	1.856
6	43	133.5	46	115	22.89	86	187	5.663	126	259	1.808
7	45	127.1	47	117	22.1	87	189	5.488	127	261	1.762
8	46	121	48	118	21.26	88	190	5.32	128	262	1.717
9	48	115.2	49	120	20.46	89	192	5.157	129	264	1.674
10	50	109.8	50	122	19.69	90	194	5	130	266	1.632
11	52	104.6	51	124	18.96	91	196	4.849	?	?	?
12	54	99.69	52	126	18.26	92	198	4.703	?	?	?
13	55	95.05	53	127	17.58	93	199	4.562	?	?	?
14	57	90.66	54	129	16.94	94	201	4.426	?	?	?
15	59	86.49	55	131	16.32	95	203	4.294	?	?	?
16	61	82.54	56	133	15.73	96	205	4.167	?	?	?
17	63	78.79	57	135	15.16	97	207	4.045	?	?	?
18	64	75.24	58	136	14.62	98	208	3.927	?	?	?
19	66	71.86	59	138	14.09	99	210	3.812	?	?	?

Other Temperature Sensors Resistance Value Table (°C - K)

°C	°F	K Ohm	°C	°F	K Ohm	°C	°F	K Ohm	°C	°F	K Ohm
-20	-4	115.266	20	68	12.6431	60	140	2.35774	100	212	0.62973
-19	-2	108.146	21	70	12.0561	61	142	2.27249	101	214	0.61148
-18	0	101.517	22	72	11.5	62	144	2.19073	102	216	0.59386
-17	1	96.3423	23	73	10.9731	63	145	2.11241	103	217	0.57683
-16	3	89.5865	24	75	10.4736	64	147	2.03732	104	219	0.56038
-15	5	84.219	25	77	10	65	149	1.96532	105	221	0.54448
-14	7	79.311	26	79	9.55074	66	151	1.89627	106	223	0.52912
-13	9	74.536	27	81	9.12445	67	153	1.83003	107	225	0.51426
-12	10	70.1698	28	82	8.71983	68	154	1.76647	108	226	0.49989
-11	12	66.0898	29	84	8.33566	69	156	1.70547	109	228	0.486
-10	14	62.2756	30	86	7.97078	70	158	1.64691	110	230	0.47256
-9	16	58.7079	31	88	7.62411	71	160	1.59068	111	232	0.45957
-8	18	56.3694	32	90	7.29464	72	162	1.53668	112	234	0.44699
-7	19	52.2438	33	91	6.98142	73	163	1.48481	113	235	0.43482
-6	21	49.3161	34	93	6.68355	74	165	1.43498	114	237	0.42304
-5	23	46.5725	35	95	6.40021	75	167	1.38703	115	239	0.41164
-4	25	44	36	97	6.13059	76	169	1.34105	116	241	0.4006
-3	27	41.5878	37	99	5.87359	77	171	1.29078	117	243	0.38991
-2	28	39.8239	38	100	5.62961	78	172	1.25423	118	244	0.37956
-1	30	37.1988	39	102	5.39689	79	174	1.2133	119	246	0.36954
0	32	35.2024	40	104	5.17519	80	176	1.17393	120	248	0.35982
1	34	33.3269	41	106	4.96392	81	178	1.13604	121	250	0.35042
2	36	31.5635	42	108	4.76253	82	180	1.09958	122	252	0.3413
3	37	29.9058	43	109	4.5705	83	181	1.06448	123	253	0.33246
4	39	28.3459	44	111	4.38736	84	183	1.03069	124	255	0.3239
5	41	26.8778	45	113	4.21263	85	185	0.99815	125	257	0.31559
6	43	25.4954	46	115	4.04589	86	187	0.96681	126	259	0.30754
7	45	24.1932	47	117	3.88673	87	189	0.93662	127	261	0.29974
8	46	22.5662	48	118	3.73476	88	190	0.90753	128	262	0.29216
9	48	21.8094	49	120	3.58962	89	192	0.8795	129	264	0.28482
10	50	20.7184	50	122	3.45097	90	194	0.85248	130	266	0.2777
11	52	19.6891	51	124	3.31847	91	196	0.82643	131	268	0.27078
12	54	18.7177	52	126	3.19183	92	198	0.80132	132	270	0.26408
13	55	17.8005	53	127	3.07075	93	199	0.77709	133	271	0.25757
14	57	16.9341	54	129	2.95896	94	201	0.75373	134	273	0.25125
15	59	16.1156	55	131	2.84421	95	203	0.73119	135	275	0.24512
16	61	15.3418	56	133	2.73823	96	205	0.70944	136	277	0.23916
17	63	14.6181	57	135	2.63682	97	207	0.68844	137	279	0.23338
18	64	13.918	58	136	2.53973	98	208	0.66818	138	280	0.22776
19	66	13.2631	59	138	2.44677	99	210	0.64862	139	282	0.22231

System Pressure Table-R454B

Pressure			Temperature		Pressure			Temperature	
Kpa	bar	PSI	°C	°F	Kpa	bar	PSI	°C	°F
58.196	0.58	8.44	-60	-76	935.23	9.35	135.64	8	46.4
61.517	0.62	8.92	-59	-74.2	963.75	9.64	139.78	9	48.2
64.988	0.65	9.43	-58	-72.4	992.93	9.93	144.01	10	50
68.615	0.69	9.95	-57	-70.6	1022.8	10.23	148.34	11	51.8
72.402	0.72	10.50	-56	-68.8	1053.3	10.53	152.76	12	53.6
76.354	0.76	11.07	-55	-67	1084.5	10.85	157.29	13	55.4
80.478	0.80	11.67	-54	-65.2	1116.4	11.16	161.91	14	57.2
84.776	0.85	12.30	-53	-63.4	1149	11.49	166.64	15	59
89.256	0.89	12.95	-52	-61.6	1182.3	11.82	171.47	16	60.8
93.923	0.94	13.62	-51	-59.8	1216.3	12.16	176.40	17	62.6
98.781	0.99	14.33	-50	-58	1251.1	12.51	181.45	18	64.4
103.84	1.04	15.06	-49	-56.2	1286.6	12.87	186.60	19	66.2
109.1	1.09	15.82	-48	-54.4	1322.8	13.23	191.85	20	68
114.56	1.15	16.61	-47	-52.6	1359.9	13.60	197.23	21	69.8
120.25	1.20	17.44	-46	-50.8	1397.7	13.98	202.71	22	71.6
126.15	1.26	18.30	-45	-49	1436.3	14.36	208.31	23	73.4
132.28	1.32	19.18	-44	-47.2	1475.7	14.76	214.02	24	75.2
138.64	1.39	20.11	-43	-45.4	1515.9	15.16	219.85	25	77
145.24	1.45	21.06	-42	-43.6	1557	15.57	225.82	26	78.8
152.09	1.52	22.06	-41	-41.8	1598.9	15.99	231.89	27	80.6
159.18	1.59	23.09	-40	-40	1641.6	16.42	238.09	28	82.4
166.54	1.67	24.15	-39	-38.2	1685.2	16.85	244.41	29	84.2
174.15	1.74	25.26	-38	-36.4	1729.7	17.30	250.86	30	86
182.04	1.82	26.40	-37	-34.6	1775	17.75	257.43	31	87.8
190.2	1.90	27.59	-36	-32.8	1821.3	18.21	264.15	32	89.6
198.65	1.99	28.81	-35	-31	1868.4	18.68	270.98	33	91.4
207.39	2.07	30.08	-34	-29.2	1916.5	19.17	277.95	34	93.2
216.42	2.16	31.39	-33	-27.4	1965.6	19.66	285.08	35	95
225.76	2.26	32.74	-32	-25.6	2015.5	20.16	292.31	36	96.8
235.41	2.35	34.14	-31	-23.8	2066.5	20.67	299.71	37	98.6
245.37	2.45	35.59	-30	-22	2118.4	21.18	307.24	38	100.4
255.67	2.56	37.08	-29	-20.2	2171.3	21.71	314.91	39	102.2
266.29	2.66	38.62	-28	-18.4	2225.2	22.25	322.73	40	104
277.25	2.77	40.21	-27	-16.6	2280.2	22.80	330.70	41	105.8
288.56	2.89	41.85	-26	-14.8	2336.1	23.36	338.81	42	107.6
300.22	3.00	43.54	-25	-13	2393.2	23.93	347.09	43	109.4
312.24	3.12	45.28	-24	-11.2	2451.3	24.51	355.52	44	111.2
324.63	3.25	47.08	-23	-9.4	2510.4	25.10	364.09	45	113
337.39	3.37	48.93	-22	-7.6	2570.7	25.71	372.84	46	114.8
350.54	3.51	50.84	-21	-5.8	2632.1	26.32	381.74	47	116.6
364.08	3.64	52.80	-20	-4	2694.7	26.95	390.82	48	118.4
378.02	3.78	54.83	-19	-2.2	2758.3	27.58	400.04	49	120.2
392.37	3.92	56.91	-18	-0.4	2823.2	28.23	409.46	50	122
407.13	4.07	59.05	-17	1.4	2889.3	28.89	419.04	51	123.8

System Pressure Table-R454B (Continued)

Pressure			Temperature		Pressure			Temperature	
Kpa	bar	PSI	°C	°F	Kpa	bar	PSI	°C	°F
422.31	4.22	61.25	-16	3.2	2956.5	29.57	428.79	52	125.6
437.92	4.38	63.51	-15	5	3025	30.25	438.72	53	127.4
453.98	4.54	65.84	-14	6.8	3094.7	30.95	448.83	54	129.2
470.47	4.70	68.23	-13	8.6	3165.7	31.66	459.13	55	131
487.43	4.87	70.69	-12	10.4	3238.1	32.38	469.63	56	132.8
504.84	5.05	73.22	-11	12.2	3311.7	33.12	480.30	57	134.6
522.73	5.23	75.81	-10	14	3386.7	33.87	491.18	58	136.4
541.1	5.41	78.48	-9	15.8	3463	34.63	502.25	59	138.2
559.95	5.60	81.21	-8	17.6	3540.7	35.41	513.52	60	140
579.31	5.79	84.02	-7	19.4	3619.9	36.20	525.00	61	141.8
599.16	5.99	86.90	-6	21.2	3700.5	37.01	536.69	62	143.6
619.54	6.20	89.85	-5	23	3782.7	37.83	548.61	63	145.4
640.43	6.40	92.88	-4	24.8	3866.3	38.66	560.74	64	147.2
661.86	6.62	95.99	-3	26.6	3951.5	39.52	573.10	65	149
683.82	6.84	99.18	-2	28.4	4038.3	40.38	585.69	66	150.8
706.34	7.06	102.44	-1	30.2	4126.8	41.27	598.52	67	152.6
729.41	7.29	105.79	0	32	4217	42.17	611.60	68	154.4
753.06	7.53	109.22	1	33.8	4309	43.09	624.95	69	156.2
777.28	7.77	112.73	2	35.6	4402.9	44.03	638.56	70	158
802.08	8.02	116.33	3	37.4	4498.7	44.99	652.46	71	159.8
827.48	8.27	120.01	4	39.2	4596.5	45.97	666.64	72	161.6
853.49	8.53	123.78	5	41	4696.5	46.97	681.15	73	163.4
880.11	8.80	127.64	6	42.8	4798.9	47.99	696.00	74	165.2
907.35	9.07	131.60	7	44.6	4904.1	49.04	711.25	75	167

FB, FE, FF1E, FFM, FG, FH, FJ, FMA, FT, FV, FX, FY, FZ, F54, PF Residential Fan Coil Units

Service and Maintenance Instructions

NOTE: Read the entire instruction manual before starting the installation.


SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS	1
INTRODUCTION	1
Fan Coil Description and Troubleshooting.....	2
FY5, FH4, PF4 (even sizes) and FF1E (even sizes)	2
FB4C, FJ4, FX4D, F54, PF4, FF1E, and FZ (odd sizes).....	4
FV, FT4, FG4.....	6
InteliSense™ Technology (FT4, FT5).....	13
FFM and FMA.....	19
Electric Heater Function and Troubleshooting.....	24
FB4, FE4, FE5B, FF1E, FG5, FH4, FJ4, FJ5, FT4, FT5, FV4, FX4, FZ, PF4, PF5	24
Description of Electric Heater Components	24
Troubleshooting KFC and KFD Series Electric Heaters.....	24
FFM, FMA.....	25
Description of Electric Heater Components	25
Leak Dissipation System	25
Operation (Models with R-454B Refrigerant).....	25
System Self-Test	25
Troubleshooting	26
Care and Maintenance	26
FF1E, FFMA, FMA.....	27
Refrigerant Flow-Control Devices.....	28
Piston Body Cleaning and Replacement	30
Aluminum Coil Repair.....	30
Pre-Installation	30
Installation – A-Coil Units Only.....	31
Installation – Slope Coil Units Only.....	32

SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Improper installation, adjustment, alteration, service, maintenance, or use can cause explosion, fire, electrical shock, or other conditions which may cause death, personal injury or property damage. Consult a qualified installer, service agency, or your distributor or branch for information or assistance. The qualified installer or agency must use factory-authorized kits or accessories when modifying this product. Refer to the individual instructions packaged with kits or accessories when installing.

Follow all safety codes. Wear safety glasses, protective clothing and work gloves. Have a fire extinguisher available. Read these instructions thoroughly and follow all warnings or cautions included in literature and attached to the unit. Consult local building codes and the current editions of the National Electrical Code (NEC) NFPA 70.

In Canada, refer to the current editions of the Canadian Electrical Code CSA C22.1.

Recognize safety information. This is the safety-alert symbol . When you see this symbol on the unit and in instruction manuals, be alert to the potential for personal injury.

Understand the signal words DANGER, WARNING, and CAUTION. These words are used with the safety-alert symbol. DANGER identifies the most serious hazards which will result in severe personal injury or death. WARNING signifies hazards which could result in personal injury or death. CAUTION is used to identify unsafe practices which

may result in minor personal injury or product and property damage. NOTE is used to highlight suggestions which will result in enhanced installation, reliability, or operation.

WARNING

UNIT OPERATION AND SAFETY HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death. R-454B systems operate at higher pressures than R-410A systems. Do not use R-410A service equipment or components on R-454B equipment. Ensure service equipment is rated for R-454B.

WARNING

PERSONAL INJURY AND PROPERTY DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in property damage, personal injury, or death.

For continued performance, reliability, and safety, the only approved accessories and replacement parts are those specified by the equipment manufacturer. The use of non-manufacturer approved parts and accessories could invalidate the equipment limited warranty and result in fire risk, equipment malfunction, and failure. Please review manufacturer's instructions and replacement part catalogs available from your equipment supplier.

CAUTION

HOT TUBE WARNING

Failure to follow this caution could result in personal injury and/or property damage.

Refrigerant lines can reach or exceed 130 °F (54 °C). Avoid contact with the vapor header or vapor line, especially in Heating Mode. Do not service A2L refrigerant (ex; R-454B) fan coils while these components are hot to avoid risk of ignition source.


INTRODUCTION

These fan coil units are designed for flexibility in a variety of applications that meet upflow, horizontal, or downflow requirements. Units are available in 1-1/2 through 5 ton nominal cooling capacities. Factory-authorized, field-installed electric heater packages are available in 3 through 30 kilowatts.

FMA family Fan Coils are designed with application flexibility in mind and are suitable for closet and flush mount installations. Units are available with field-installed electric heat with circuit breaker. Units are used indoors as the fan coil for split-system heat pumps or air conditioners. The FMA5L uses a refrigerant piston metering device and a 3 speed PSC Motor. FMA5X uses a TXV and a 5 speed multi-tap ECM Motor for efficiency. Units are available in 18,000 through 36,000 Btu/h nominal cooling capacities.

NOTE: Nuisance sweating may occur if the unit is installed in a humid location with low airflow.

Units are designed for upflow application only. Local codes may limit this free-air-return type unit to installation in single-level applications.


WARNING

ELECTRICAL OPERATION HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death. Before installing or servicing unit, always turn off all power to unit. There may be more than one disconnect switch. Turn off accessory heater power if applicable. Lock out and tag switch with a suitable warning label.

Fan Coil Description and Troubleshooting FY5, FH4, PF4 (even sizes) and FF1E (even sizes)

Fan Motor

The motor is two or three speed direct drive. High-speed lead is black, low-speed lead is red, and common lead is yellow. Be sure proper blower speed has been selected.

The motor is turned on through two different routes. The first occurs when thermostat calls for the fan in cooling, heat pump, or fan-only mode. A 24VAC signal is sent to relay, causing relay to close its normally open contacts, turning fan on.

The second occurs when there is a call for electric heat. A 24VAC signal is sent to heater sequencer/relay, causing it to close, directing 230V through the normally closed contact of fan relay, turning fan on. The fan remains on until sequencer/relay opens.

If motor does run, test motor for an open winding or a winding shorted to motor case. If either is present, replace motor.

Electric Heater Service

Service can be completed with heater in place. Shut off power before servicing.

Limit Switch

Refer to the [\(Electric Heater Function and Troubleshooting on p24\)](#) section of this manual.

Sequencer

Refer to the [\(Electric Heater Function and Troubleshooting on p24\)](#) section of this manual.

Transformer

A 40-VA transformer supplies 24V power for control circuit. Check for 208/230V on primary side of transformer. If present, check for 24V on secondary side.

NOTE: Transformer is fused. Do not short circuit.

Fan Relay

Relay coil is 24V. Check for proper control voltage. Replace relay if faulty.

Cleaning or Replacing Refrigerant Flow-Control Device

Refer to [Fig. 28](#) and instructions given in [\(Piston Body Cleaning and Replacement on p30\)](#).

The refrigerant flow-control device is protected by a wire mesh strainer. It is located inside the 3/8-in. liquid tube at field braze joint next to flow-control device. Access to strainer is through field braze joint.

Sequence of Operation

Condensing Unit

COOLING—When thermostat calls for cooling, the circuit between R and G is complete and single-pole single-throw relay FR is energized. The normally open contacts close causing blower to operate.

The circuit between R and Y is also complete. This completed circuit causes contactor in outdoor unit to close which starts compressor and outdoor fan.

HEATING—When thermostat calls for heating and FAN switch is set on AUTO, the circuit between R and W is complete. The heater sequence SEQ is energized which closes contacts of relay. There will be a time delay. This completed circuit energizes all heating elements HTR and blower motor.

Heat Pump

COOLING—On a call for cooling, the thermostat makes circuits R-O, R-Y, and R-G. Circuit R-O energizes reversing valve, switching it to cooling position. Circuit R-Y energizes contactor starting outdoor fan motor and compressor. Circuit R-G energizes indoor unit blower relay starting indoor blower motor.

When thermostat is satisfied, its contacts open de-energizing contactor reversing valve and blower relay. This stops compressor and fan motors.

HEATING—On a call for heating, the thermostat makes circuits R-Y and R-G. Circuit R-Y energizes contactor starting outdoor fan motor and compressor. Circuit R-G energizes indoor blower relay starting blower motor.

Should temperature continue to fall, R-W circuit is made through second-stage room thermostat bulb. Circuit R-W energizes a sequencer bringing on supplemental electric heat.

When thermostat is satisfied, its contacts open de-energizing contactor and sequencer. All heaters and motors should stop.

CES013003-00, 01 (HK61EA002, HK61EA006) Control Boards

This section examines the functional operation of the PCB components.

Printed Circuit Board (PCB) Component

Layout of the actual PCB is depicted in [Fig. 1](#) and [Fig. 2](#).

1. The low-voltage stripped leads are used to connect the 24V side of transformer to indoor thermostat and outdoor section.
2. A 5A fuse is used to protect the low-voltage transformer secondary.
3. The fan relay is controlled by thermostat and turns fan on and off.
4. A plug is used as the connection for PCB power and electric heaters. Note the pin numbers on plug.
5. A time-delay relay circuit keeps fan motor running for approximately 90 seconds after G is de-energized. The time-delay can be defeated by cutting jumper JW1.

Unit Functions

Transformer

1. Proper Wiring of Transformer Primary or High Side
Yellow wire from Molex plug is wired to C terminal on transformer and black wire from PCB relay (normally-open) terminal is wired to 208V or 230V terminal on transformer. Units are factory wired at 230V terminal.
2. Proper Wiring of Transformer Secondary or 24V Side
Red wire of transformer is wired to T terminal on PCB and brown wire of transformer is wired to C terminal on PCB.

NOTE: T terminal on PCB is used to protect the transformer. T terminal is connected through the fuse to R terminal on PCB.

Indoor Fan

1. Wiring
Indoor fan motor yellow lead is wired to C terminal on transformer. The red, blue, or black speed lead is wired to SPT terminal on fan relay part of PCB. Units are factory wired on medium speed (blue lead connected).

NOTE: Unused fan speed leads must be capped or taped off to prevent direct short to cabinet surface.

2. Functional Control
 - a. Thermostat and Relay Control
When thermostat calls for the fan in cooling, heat pump, heating, or fan-only mode, a 24VAC signal is sent to relay. This causes

the relay to close its normally-open contacts, turning on fan. When thermostat no longer calls for the fan, the signal sent to relay is turned off and relay opens causing fan to turn off after a 90-second fan-off delay.

b. Sequencer/Electric Heat Relay Interlock

The fan will also operate whenever there is a call for electric heat, even if fan relay is not energized. This happens because fan is interlocked with first stage of electric heat through the normally-closed contact of fan relay.

NOTE: The fan interlock is only connected to first stage electric heat (W2). W3 and E do not contain an interlock with fan. See outdoor thermostat installation instructions when electric heat staging is desired.

Electric Heat

When thermostat calls for electric heat, a 24VAC signal is sent to sequencer/heat relay through W2, causing first stage to turn on. W3 and E also receive signal if wired in with W2. If W3 and E are not wired to W2, the sequencers/heat relays can be controlled individually to stage additional electric heat. The sequence control is described in the following section:

1. W2

When thermostat sends a signal to W2, a 24VAC signal is applied across sequencer/relay No. 1, causing it to close. When sequencer/relay No. 1 closes, first stage of electric heat is energized. In straight electric heat, fan is also energized through the normally closed contacts of fan relay. In cooling, heat pump, or manual fan mode, fan will already be running since fan relay would have been energized. When thermostat stops calling for electric heat, the 24VAC signal to sequencer/relay No. 1 turns off and sequencer opens after a delay of 60 to 90 seconds. Heaters equipped with relays will be de-energized immediately. When sequencer/relay opens, first stage of heat turns off along with fan, providing thermostat is not calling for the fan.

2. W3

When a signal is sent to W3, a 24VAC signal to sequencer/relay No. 2 causes it to close, with second stage of electric heat turning on. The 24VAC signal applied to sequencer/relay No. 1 causes fan to operate. Timing is such that sequencer/relay No. 1 will turn on before sequencer/relay No. 2. When signal to W3 is turned off, sequencer/relay No. 2 opens. If W2 is also satisfied, first stage of electric heat and fan will also turn off, providing thermostat is not calling for the fan.

3. E

When thermostat sends a signal to E, a 24VAC signal is sent to sequencer/relay No. 3. The 24VAC signal applied to sequencer/relay No. 3 turns on third stage of electric heat. The 24VAC signal applied to sequencer/relay No. 1 turns on first stage of electric heat and fan. When thermostat stops calling for electric heat, the signal to sequencers/relays 1, 2, and 3 are turned off, and sequencers/relays open. This causes electric heat to turn off with fan, providing thermostat is not calling for the fan.

NOTE: Electric heaters are factory wired with all stages tied together. If independent staging is desired, consult outdoor thermostat installation instructions, or corporate thermostat instructions.

Troubleshooting the Printed Circuit Board (CES013000-00, 01 / HK61EA002 / HK61EA006)

Use wiring schematics shown in Fig. 1 and Fig. 2 as a guide in troubleshooting PCB unless otherwise noted.

If Fan Will Not Turn On from Thermostat:

- IF THERE IS NO HIGH VOLTAGE TO TRANSFORMER:
 - (1.) Check plug/receptacle connection. This supplies power from heaters to PCB Fan Relay. Be sure plug is connected properly.

- (2.) Check sequencer/relay No. 1 and plug wiring. Yellow wire should be connected to Pin No. 9 of plug and to limit switch. Black wire should be connected to Pin No. 7 of plug and to sequencer/relay No. 1.
 - (3.) Check field power leads L1 and L2. If these are not receiving power, system cannot function.
- IF TRANSFORMER HAS HIGH VOLTAGE APPLIED TO IT:
 - (1.) Check low-voltage transformer leads R (red) and C (brown). Be sure they are wired to correct locations.
 - (2.) Check output voltage of transformer secondary side R (red) and C (brown). Be sure transformer output is between 18VAC and 30VAC. If transformer output is incorrect and transformer is receiving correct input voltage (208V or 230V), then transformer needs to be replaced with recommended transformer. If no problem exists with transformer secondary, proceed to items 3 and 4.
 - (3.) Check low-voltage fuse shown in Fig. 1 or Fig. 2. If fuse is blown, replace it with an identical 5A fuse. The transformer cannot supply power to board with fuse blown or loose. If fuse blows when unit has power applied to it, the system most likely has one of the following problems:
 - Check all 24V wiring for an electrical short.
 - The maximum load on transformer is 40VA. If load on transformer is excessive, the low-voltage 5A fuse will blow to protect transformer. If load exceeds VA rating of transformer, a larger VA rated transformer needs to be installed. Check sequencers/relays for excessive current draw.
 - Check wiring of heaters. If a heater is miswired, fuse may blow. If a heater is miswired, correct miswiring by comparing it to heater wiring label.
 - (4.) Check connections on primary side of transformer. If they are not connected properly, the transformer secondary cannot supply the 24V signal to energize fan relay. If transformer is receiving correct primary voltage but is not putting out correct secondary voltage, transformer needs to be replaced.

If Electric Heat Stages Will Not Turn On But Fan Will Turn On:

- IF THERE IS NO HIGH VOLTAGE TO TRANSFORMER:
 - (1.) Check plug connection between heaters and board. This supplies power to transformer and fan. Be sure plug is connected properly.
 - (1.) Check sequencer/relay No. 1 and plug wiring. Yellow wire should be connected to Pin No. 9 of plug and to limit switch. Black wire should be connected to Pin No. 7 of plug and to sequencer/relay No. 1.
 - (1.) Check incoming high-voltage power leads. If these are not receiving power, system cannot function.
- IF TRANSFORMER HAS VOLTAGE APPLIED TO IT:
 - (1.) Check low-voltage transformer leads R (red) and C (brown). Make sure they are wired to correct location. The unit will not function without proper connections.
 - (1.) Check output voltage of transformer secondary side R (red) and C (brown). If transformer output is low (less than 18VAC), refer to items 3 and 4 of previous “IF TRANSFORMER HAS HIGH VOLTAGE APPLIED TO IT” section.
- IF TRACES ARE OVERHEATED ON BACK OF PCB:

Usually whenever a trace is blown on PCB, it means either there has been a high-voltage short or high voltage has been applied to low-voltage circuit. This can be prevented by making sure PCB is wired correctly before PCB has power applied to it.

 - If Transformer Fuse Keeps Blowing:

When low-voltage fuse blows, it means transformer would have blown if fuse had not been in circuit to protect it. The fuse usually

blows when there is a high current draw on transformer, high voltage applied to low-voltage circuit, or a direct secondary short. When there is a high current draw on transformer, it is most likely because transformer has been shorted or system is trying to draw more VA than transformer rating allows. When fuse blows because of high voltage, the system has mixed high- and low-voltage signals.

- (1.) Check wiring of sequencers/relays as shown in Fig. 1 and Fig. 2. Be sure transformer is not shorting out because thermostat wires are miswired.
- (1.) Check wiring of relays as shown in Fig. 1 and Fig. 2. Be sure low-voltage and high-voltage wiring is correct.
- (1.) Check VA draw on transformer. If VA draw is more than VA rating of transformer, fuse will blow. If this is the case, replace transformer with one that has a higher VA rating and meets system specifications.

If Fan Runs Continuously:

- (1.) If PCB has no low-voltage power, check blue and black fan leads. These may be switched at sequencer/relay.
- (1.) If PCB has low-voltage power, check fan relay to see if it is opening and closing. It may be stuck in the normally closed position due to debris in relay.

Transformer Failure:

Check 208V and 230V transformer connections. They may be miswired.

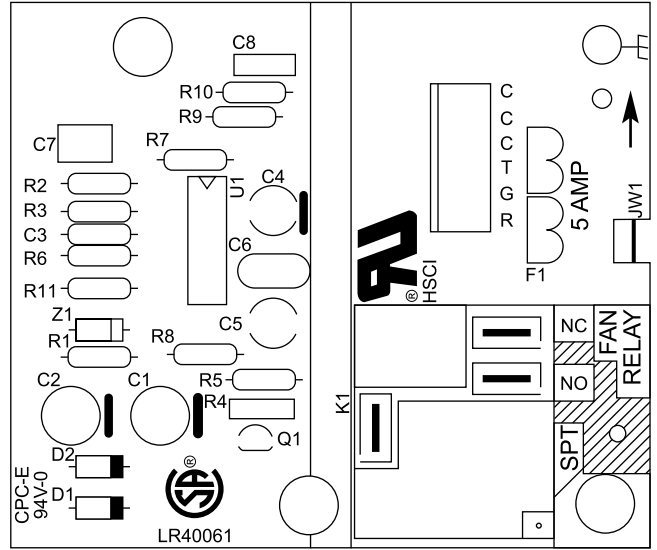


Fig. 1 – Fan Coil Printed Circuit Board (HK61EA006)

A03010

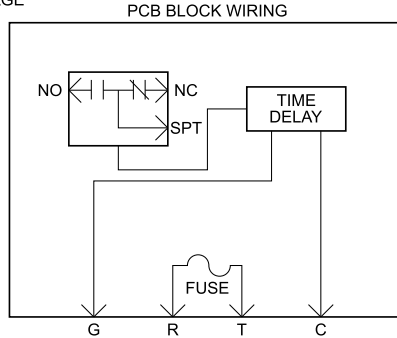
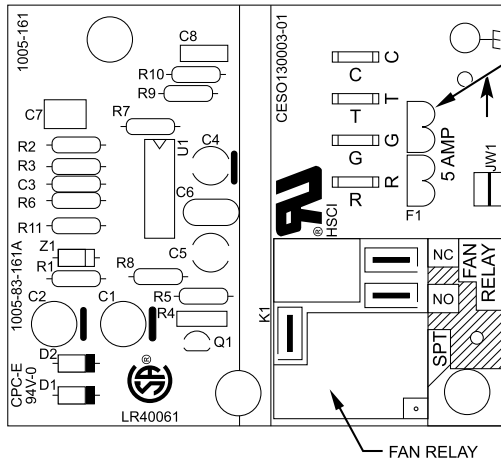
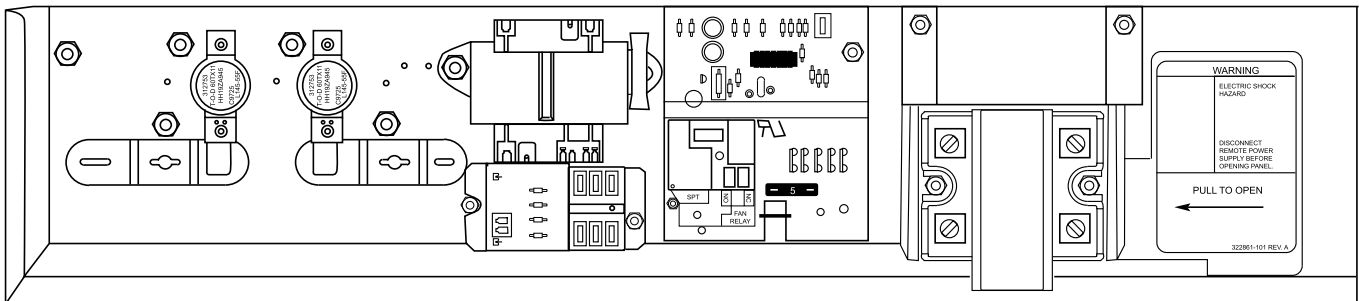


Fig. 2 – Fan Coil Printed Circuit Board (CES013003-00, 01 / HK61EA002)

A97020



FF1E CONTROL BOX

Fig. 3 – Electric Heater Control Box

A13032

FB4C, FJ4, FX4D, F54, PF4, FF1E, and FZ (odd sizes)

Fan Motor

The multi-speed ECM motor used with this product contains two parts: the control module and the motor winding section. Do not assume the motor or module is defective if it will not start. Go through the steps

described below before replacing control module or entire motor. The control module is available as a replacement part.

1. It is normal for the motor to rock back and forth on startup. Do not replace the motor if this is the only problem identified.
 - (1.) If the motor is not running:
 - Check for proper high voltage and ground at the L, G, and N connections at the motor. Correct any voltage issue before proceeding to the next step.

- The motor is communicated through 24VAC signals to the 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and C (common) terminals. Not all taps are programmed, if low voltage is applied to a non-programmed terminal, the motor will not operate, which is normal. Verify the part number of the motor matches the correct replacement motor part number for the unit model number.
- Initiate a demand from the thermostat and check the voltage between C (common) and terminal 1- 5. If voltage is present and the motor isn't operating, then the motor/control module is failed.

- (2.) Prior to installing the replacement control module, the motor section condition needs to be verified.
- Check to see if the blower wheel spins freely.
 - To check for short to ground, use an ohmmeter to measure the resistance from any one of the motor connector pins to the aluminum end plate of the motor. This resistance should be greater than 100,000 ohms.
 - Check the motor phase-to-phase resistance between each of the leads in the three-pin motor connector. The lead-to-lead resistance across any two leads should be less than 20 ohms. Each lead-to-lead resistance should be the same within ± 10 percent.
 - If any motor fails any of the three tests, do not install a new control module. The new control can fail if placed on a defective motor.

The prior fan coil models with multi-speed ECM blower motors used a printed circuit board, similar to the PSC models. The current fan coils do not use the printed circuit board and rely on the motor control programming to provide the off-delay timing.

Another design aspect of the control board was to provide a resistor in the "G" circuit in case a power stealing thermostat was used. This resistor is no part of the wiring harness, as shown on wiring diagram. The resistor is a 2W, 1500-ohm resistor.

If the resistor has failed open, a likely cause is due to the power stealing thermostat. Connecting C (common) may resolve the issue. Having an open resistor should not affect the operation of the motor.

Fan Speed Selection

The fan speed selection is done at the motor connector. Units with or without electric heaters require a minimum CFM. Refer to the unit wiring label to ensure that the fan speed selected is not lower than the minimum fan speed indicated.

To change motor speeds disconnect the BLUE fan lead from motor connector terminal No. 2 (factory default position) and move to desired speed-tap; 1, 2, 3, or 5.

Speed-taps 1, 2, and 3 have a 90-second blower off time delay pre-programmed into the motor. Speed-tap 4 is used for electric heat only (with 0 second blower time delay) and the WHITE wire should remain on tap 4. Speed-tap 5 is used for high static applications, but has a 0-second blower time delay pre-programmed into the motor. See Airflow Performance tables for actual CFM. Also, see Fig. 4 for motor speed selection location.

NOTE: In low static applications, lower motor speed tap should be used to reduce possibility of water being blown off coil.

Tap 1	Low	90 sec off delay
Tap 2	Medium	90 sec off delay
Tap 3	High	90 sec off delay
Tap 4	Electric heat †	0 sec off delay
Tap 5	Max ‡	0 sec off delay

† electric heat airflow is same CFM as Tap 3, except 0 sec off delay
 ‡ high static applications, see airflow tables for max airflow

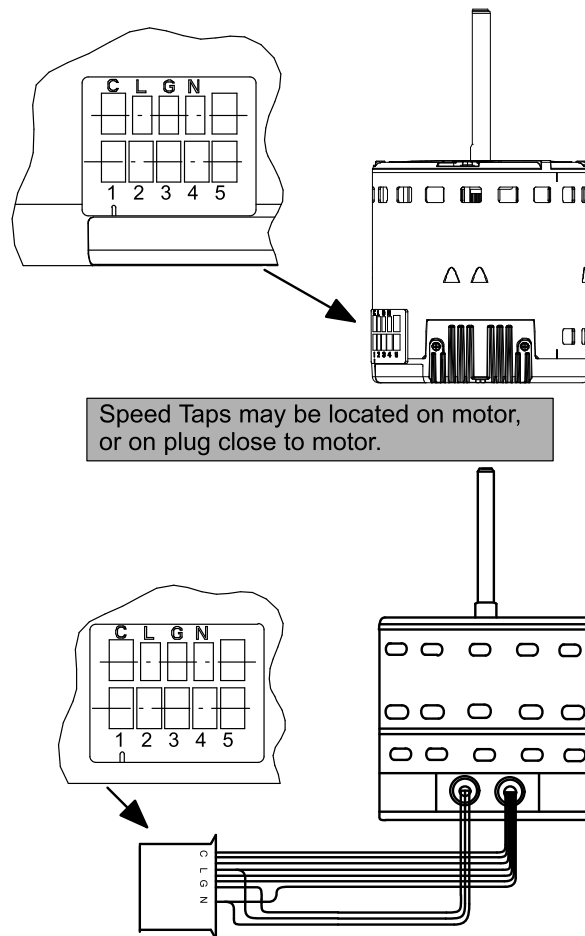


Fig. 4 – Motor Speed Selection for FB4C, FJ4, FX4D, FZ4A, F54 & PF4 (odd sizes)

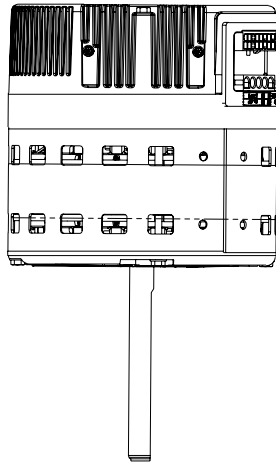
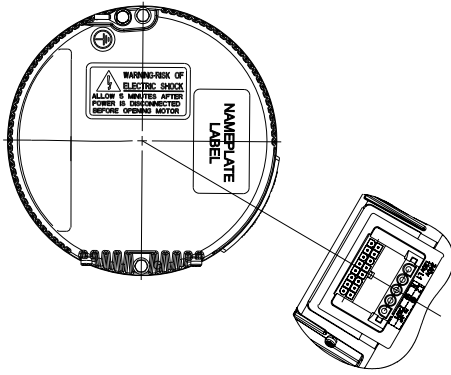


Fig. 5 – FV4 Motor / ECM5.0 Motor (pre-2023)

A13028

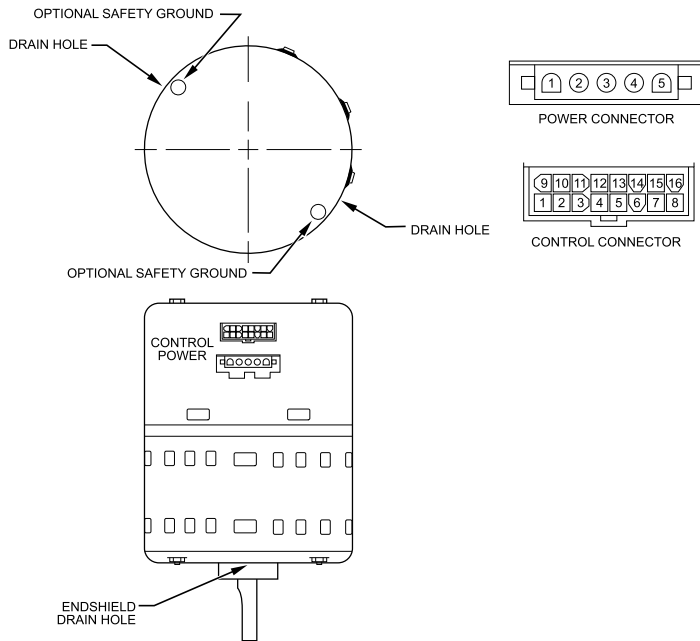


Fig. 6 – FV4 Motor / ECM2.3 Motor (pre-2023)

A98201

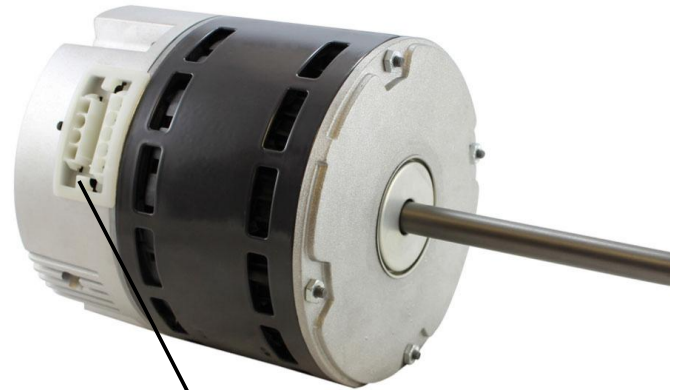


Fig. 7 – ECM Motor, post-2023

A230463

FV, FT4, FG4
Constant Air Flow

Unlike fan coils using induction motors where static pressure affects airflow, these fan coils are constant airflow units. The blower delivers requested airflow regardless of static pressure. Consult fan coil Product Data for static pressure limits. The ECM2.3/5.0 is pre-programmed and contains airflow tables for all modes of operation. Blower characteristics (requested airflow, torque, and speed) are known from laboratory testing. If any two characteristics are known, the third is defined.

Requested airflow is known from Easy Select board configuration and thermostat signals. Torque is known because it is directly related to stator current, which is measured by motor control. Speed is measured by counting back EMF pulses from stator windings. This information is entered into an expression that calculates torque from speed and airflow numbers. If calculation does not match stored blower characteristics, torque is adjusted until agreement is reached. This calculation and adjustment is performed every 0.8 seconds while motor is in operation. There is no direct measure of static pressure, but unit does react to a change in static to maintain constant airflow. A change in pressure will result in a change in stator speed and torque. The motor will begin to adjust on the next sampling, calculate new desired speed and torque, and adjust as necessary.

Integrated Controls and Motor ECM2.3/5.0

An ECM2.3/5.0 is fed high voltage AC power through the 5-pin connector (Fig. 6 or Fig. 5). The AC power is then internally rectified to DC by a diode module. After rectification, DC signal is electronically communicated and fed in sequential order to three stator windings. The frequency of these commutation pulses determines motor speed. The rotor is permanently magnetized.

An ECM2.3/5.0 is powered with high voltage at all times. The motor will not run with high voltage alone. Low voltage must be applied to control plug to run motor.

ECM2.3/5.0 Control Power

The ECM2.3/5.0 control power is supplied from R circuit through printed circuit runs to motor control Connector-Pin 8, through motor control harness to motor. The C side of low-voltage control power circuit is connected by printed circuit runs to motor Connector pins 9, 10, and 11, then through motor control harness to motor.

Low-Voltage Circuit Fusing and Reference

The low-voltage circuit is fused by a board-mounted 5A automotive-type fuse placed in series with transformer SEC2 and R circuit. The C circuit of transformer is referenced to chassis ground through a printed circuit run at SEC1 connected to metal standoff marked.

For FT: The low-voltage circuit is fused by a board-mounted 5A automotive fuse placed in series with the transformer SEC1 (24VAC) and the R circuit. The C circuit of the transformer is referenced to chassis ground through a printed circuit run at SEC2 (COM) connected to metal standoff marked with ground symbol.

NOTE: The PCB must be mounted with two screws and motor ground lead secured to blower housing or erratic motor operation can result.

Transformer, Motor, and Electric Heater Power Connection

Transformer high voltage supplied from electric heater package or high voltage leads through 12-pin heater connector plug/recp2. The ECM2.3/5.0 power connections are made at the transformer primary terminals. The transformer secondary connections are made at SEC1 and SEC2 connectors.

PCB Layout and Description (FT4, FV4)

NOTE: Layout of actual PCB is depicted in Fig. 8.

The Easy Select Board is the interface between the ECM motor and other system components. The board offers choices of electric heater size, outdoor unit size and type, comfort or efficiency settings, on and off delay profiles, and continuous fan speed. The installer should select the correct size of components that are being installed in each installation. If no selections are made, the factory default settings are for the largest heater, largest outdoor unit, AC system type, nominal airflow adjust, and 0/90 time delay.

A 16x4 motor signal translator is present for the translation of data from the board to the motors and is mounted on the back of the PCB bracket.

NOTE: Outdoor unit model should have an AHRI rating with the variable speed fan coil. Some outdoor unit models will not work properly with this fan coil.

- Power for system is supplied from a 230VAC, 60-Hz line. Class 2 voltage (24VAC nom.), used for thermostat connections, is derived from transformer located in close proximity to PCB.
 - The 24VAC secondary circuit includes 5A automotive type fuse.
- Connection to heater panel is made through 12-pin connector PL-1. Connections to thermostat are made at screw terminals. Twenty-one pin terminals comprise field select taps for motor.
- Fuse Data: 5A automotive-type ATC/ATO (tan)
- 32V

- 200 percent current opening time of five seconds maximum

Electrical Connections

Twenty-one 0.110-in pin terminals are used to provide programming selections for operating modes of ECM2.3/5.0. The selection modes are listed below. For additional information, refer to Easy Select Configuration Taps section.

- AUX Heat Range—(Violet Wire)
- AC/HP Size—(Blue Wire) Type—(Orange Wire)
- AC/HP CFM Adjust—(Black Wire)
- AC/HP Time Delay—(Grey Wire)
- Continuous Fan—(Yellow Wire)

Sequence of Operation (FT4, FV4)

Continuous Fan Mode

The thermostat closes circuit R to G. The unit delivers the airflow selected for fan only operation.

Cooling Mode—Single Speed or Two-Speed High

Thermostat closes circuits R to G, R to Y/Y2 and R to O (heat pump only). A circuit R to Y1 is required for two-speed high operation. Airflow delivered the airflow selected by AC/HP SIZE selection and CFM ADJUST selection.

Cooling Mode—Two-Speed Low

Thermostat closes R to G and R to Y1 and R to O (heat pump only). Unit delivers two-speed low airflow for AC/HP SIZE and CFM ADJUST selected.

Cooling + Dehumidify Mode (Thermidstat or Comfort Zone II-B and Single-Speed Outdoor Unit Installed)

J1 jumper must be pulled from Easy Select Board. Control closes R to G, R to Y/Y2, and R to O (heat pump only) and open R to DH. Dehumidification is active when 24VAC is removed from DH terminal. Unit delivers 20 percent less airflow.

SuperDehumidify Mode (Thermidstat or Comfort Zone II-B indoor control, Single-Speed Outdoor Unit)

This mode is only activated by the indoor control when COOL to DEHUMIDIFY and SUPERDEHUMIDIFY are configured at the control and there is a call for dehumidification without a call for cooling. The control closes R to Y/Y2, R to O (heat pump only) and opens R to DH and R to G. This signals the fan coil to run at minimum airflow for maximum humidity removal. The control will cycle the equipment 10 minutes on and 10 minutes off until satisfied.

NOTE: Super Dehumidification and Thermidstat functionality is not available with certain thermostat models. Verify with the thermostat manufacturer if this functionality is critical to the application.

Table 1 – Motor and Modules

Model Size	Motor Type	Current Blower Motor P/N	Required Control Module Replacement Kit Number
FV4B_002	ECM2.3	HD44AE131	RMOD44AE131
FV4B_003	ECM2.3	HD44AE132	RMOD44AE132
FV4B_005	ECM2.3	HD44AE133	RMOD44AE133
FV4B_006	ECM2.3	HD46AE244	RMOD46AE244
FV4C_002 (Series A)	ECM2.3	HD44AR131	RMOD44AR131
FV4C_003 (Series A)	ECM2.3	HD44AR132	RMOD44AR132
FV4C_005 (Series A)	ECM2.3	HD44AR133	RMOD44AR133
FV4C_006 (Series A)	ECM2.3	HD46AR244	RMOD46AR244
FV4C_002 (Series B)	ECM5.0	HD44AR120	HK44ER120
FV4C_003 (Series B)	ECM5.0	HD44AR121	HK44ER121
FV4C_005 (Series B)	ECM5.0	HD44AR122	HK44ER122
FV4C_006 (Series B)	ECM5.0	HD46AR223	HK46ER223

Table 2 – Motor and Modules – post-2023 (Mid and Deluxe Tier)

Configuration	Fan Coil Model Family	Size	Motor Type	Motor P/N	Motor Signal Translator P/N	Control Module P/N
Singular	FT4, FT5	24	ECM	HD44RM600	HK43EJ001	HK38EA060
Singular	FT4, FT5	36	ECM	HD44RM600	HK43EJ002	HK38EA060
Singular	FT4, FT5	48	ECM	HD46RM600	HK43EJ003	HK38EA060
Modular	FT4, FT5	60	ECM	HD44RM600	HK43EJ002	HK38EA060
Modular	FT4, FT5	48	ECM	HD46RM600	HK43EJ003	HK38EA060
Modular	FT4, FT5	60	ECM	HD46RM600	HK43EJ004	HK38EA060
Singular	FG4, FG5	24	ECM	HD44RM600	HK43EJ001	HK61EA024
Singular	FG4, FG5	36	ECM	HD44RM600	HK43EJ002	HK61EA024
Singular	FG4, FG5	48	ECM	HD46RM600	HK43EJ003	HK61EA024
Modular	FG4, FG5	60	ECM	HD46RM600	HK43EJ004	HK61EA024
Singular	FE4, FE5	24	ECM	HD44RM600	n/a	HK38EA061
Singular	FE4, FE5	36	ECM	HD44RM600	n/a	HK38EA061
Singular	FE4, FE5	48	ECM	HD46RM600	n/a	HK38EA061
Modular	FE4, FE5	36	ECM	HD44RM600	n/a	HK38EA061
Modular	FE4, FE5	48	ECM	HD46RM600	n/a	HK38EA061
Modular	FE4, FE5	60	ECM	HD46RM600	n/a	HK38EA061

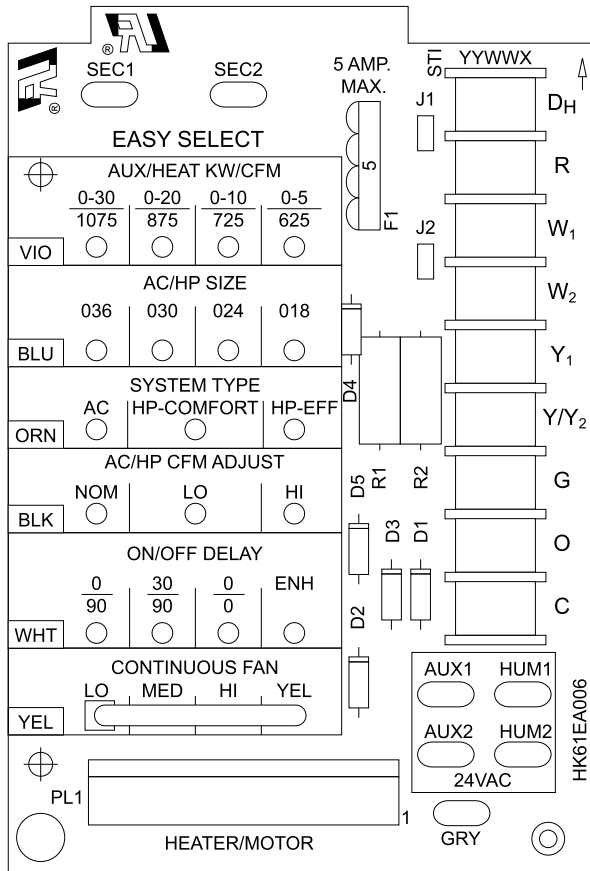


Fig. 8 – Easy Select Board
(for non-Limitless models; see [Table 1](#) and [Table 2](#) for P/N)

A13029

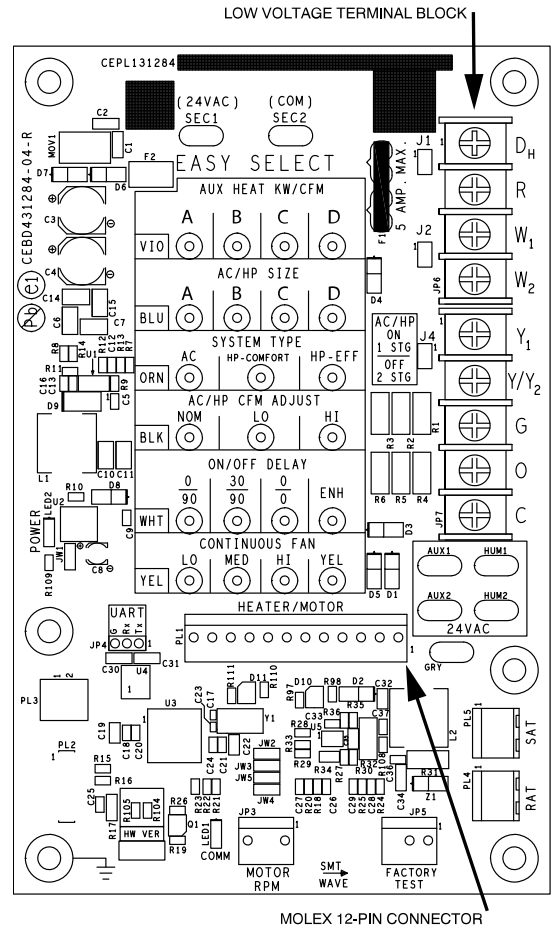
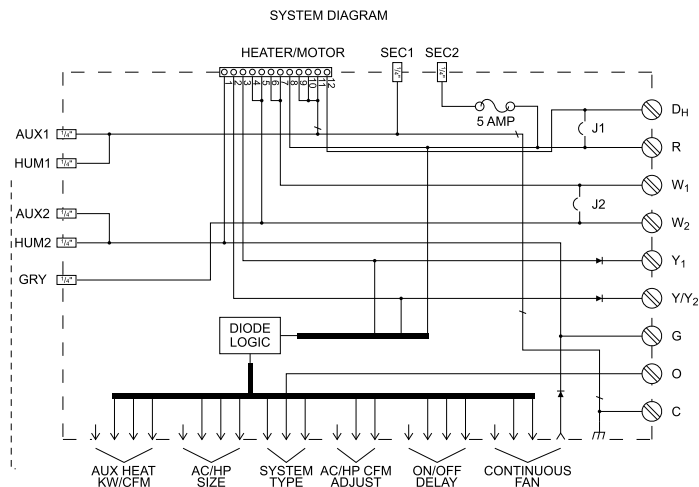


Fig. 9 – Detail of Limitless Printed-Circuit Board
(FT4B/FT5 only; see [Table 2](#) for P/Ns) and [Table 5](#) for Adjustments

A95275B



NOTE: On FT4, SEC1 and SEC2 are reversed in the above image. See (Low-Voltage Circuit Fusing and Reference on p7)

Fig. 10 – Easy Select Board Schematic

A96431

Table 3 – Connections and Connectors (FK4, FV4)

Type Connection	Type Connector	Pin No.	Description
Heater Connection	12-Pin	Pin 1	Common to screw terminal G
		Pin 2	Common to screw terminal Y/Y2 through diode D3
		Pin 3	Common through Y1 through diode D2
		Pin 4	Common to W2 screw terminal
		Pin 5	Common to W2 screw terminal
		Pin 6	Common to W1 screw terminal
		Pin 7	Common to W1 screw terminal
		Pin 8	R 24Vac
		Pin 9	Common to transformer C
		Pin 10	Common to transformer C
		Pin 11	Common to transformer C
		Pin 12	Common to DH screw terminal

Table 4 – Typical Operating Modes

Operating Mode	Terminals Energized
Heat Pump Only Heating	R, Y/Y2, G, DH
Heat Pump Only Heating + Super Comfort Heat Mode	R, Y/Y2, DH
Heat Pump Heating + Auxiliary Heat (non-staged)	R, Y/Y2, G, DH, W2
Cooling	R, Y/Y2, G, DH, O
Cooling + Dehumidification	R, Y/Y2, G, O

Heat Pump Heating Mode — Single Speed or Two-Speed High

Thermostat closes R to Y/Y2 and R to G. A circuit R to Y1 is required for two-speed high operation. The unit delivers airflow selected by AC/HP SIZE selection and CFM ADJUST selection. Selected delay profile is active in this mode.

Heat Pump Heating Mode — 2-Speed Low

Thermostat closes R to G and R to Y1. Unit delivers two-speed low airflow for AC/HP SIZE and CFM ADJUST selected. Selected delay profile is active in this mode.

Non-Staged Auxiliary with Heat Pump Heating Mode

Thermostat should already have closed R to G, R to Y2 for heat pump heating operation. With J2 jumper in place, energizing either W1 or W2 will produce the W2 airflow. This is the greater of heat pump heating

and auxiliary heat airflow plus an additional 15 percent. The elected delay profile is not active in this mode.

Staged Auxiliary Heat with Heat Pump Heating Mode

The auxiliary heat can be staged by removing the J2 jumper that ties W1 and W2 terminals together. Staging can be done by using outdoor thermostats or by using the Intelligent Heat Staging option where the indoor control can be configured for three-stage electric heat. The unit will automatically adjust airflow when the different stages of heat are energized. The airflow delivered will depend on the heat pump size selected and electric heat size selected. The greater of the two airflows will be delivered. The selected delay profile is not active in this mode.

Electric Heat without Heat Pump

Thermostat closes R to W and thermostat should be set up to energize G with W. This is due to the Super Comfort Heat programming in the

motor. Energizing W without G will result in 25% lower airflow delivery. The selected delay profile is not active in this mode.

Super Comfort Heat Mode

This is a special heating mode only available on FV4 fan coils combined with a Thermostat Control or Comfort Zone II-B. When this option is selected, the indoor control will monitor the outdoor temperature. The control will drop the G signal to the fan coil when the outdoor temperature is between 10° and 40° F. This triggers the motor to slow to approximately 213 CFM per ton. The heaters will stage as needed during this mode and the motor will adjust airflow as required. Below 10° F, the W1 control output will automatically energize on a call for heat. The ECM2.3/5.0 power connections are made at the transformer primary terminals. The transformer secondary connections are made at SEC1 and SEC2 connectors.

Easy Select Configuration Taps

The Easy Select taps are used by installer to configure system. The ECM2.3/5.0 uses selected taps to modify its operation to a pre-programmed table of airflows. Airflows are based on system size and mode of operation and those airflows are modified in response to other inputs such as the need for de-humidification (Fig. 8).

The FV4 and FT4 Fan Coils must be configured to operate properly with system components with which it is installed. To successfully configure a basic system (see information printed on circuit board located next to select pins), move the six select wires to pins which match components used, along with homeowner preferences.

Auxiliary Heat Range

The installer must select the auxiliary heat airflow approved for application with kW size heater installed. Each select pin is marked with a range of heaters for which airflow (also marked) is approved. For increased comfort select the narrowest kW range matching the heater size, for example, 0-10 for a 10-kW heater. This airflow must be greater than the minimum CFM for electric heater application with the size system installed for safe and continuous operation. Note that airflow marked is the airflow which will be supplied in emergency heat mode and heating mode on air conditioners when electric heat is primary heating source. To ensure safe heater operation in heat-pump heating mode, when electric heaters are energized, the ECM2.3/5.0 will run the higher of heat pump airflow and electric heater airflow. The factory default selection is largest heater range approved (Fig. 8).

AC/HP Size

The factory default setting for air conditioner or heat pump size is largest unit meant for application with model of fan coil purchased. The installer needs to select air conditioner or heat pump size to ensure that airflow delivered falls within proper range for size of unit installed in all operational modes (Fig. 8).

The letters A, B, C, D may be marked on the silk screen. In that case, use the unit’s installation instructions to determine the Aux heat and AC/HP size. See Fig. 9.

Table 5 – Airflow Adjustment Table

Unit Size	AUX Heat Range (kW/CFM)				
	VIO	A	B	C	D
24	0-20 / 1200	0-15 / 1050	0-10 / 750	0-5 / 700	
36	0-20 / 1225	0-15 / 1050	0-10 / 750	0-5 / 700	
48	0-30 / 1500	0-20 / 1350	0-15 / 1200	0-10 / 1000	
60	0-30 / 1750	0-20 / 1350	0-15 / 1250	0-10 / 1200	
AC/HP Size					
BLU	A	B	C	D	
24	036	030	024	018	
36	042	036	030	024	
48	048	042	036	030	
60	060	048	042	036	

Unpack unit and move to final location. Remove carton taking care not to damage unit. Inspect equipment for damage prior to installation. File claim with shipping company if shipment is damaged or incomplete.

Locate unit rating plate which contains proper installation information. Check rating plate to be sure unit matches job specifications.

System Type

The type of system must be selected.

1. AC—air conditioner (approx. 350 CFM/ton)
2. HP-COMFORT—provides lower airflow than air conditioner selection (approximately 315 CFM/ton) in heating mode. In cooling mode supplies 350 CFM/ton.
3. HP-EFF—provides same airflow for heat pump heating and cooling modes (approximately 350 CFM/ton).

The factory setting is AC (Fig. 8).

AC/HP CFM Adjust

Select low, nominal, or high airflow. The factory selection is NOM. The adjust selections HI/LO will regulate airflow supplied for cooling and heat pump heating modes only, +15 percent and -10 percent respectively. The adjust selection options are provided to adjust airflow supplied to meet individual installation needs for such things as noise, comfort, and humidity removal (Fig. 8).

ON/OFF Delay

NOTE: ON/OFF Delay is active only in cooling and heat pump only heating modes. In auxiliary heat mode or emergency heat mode, the ON delay is 0 seconds and the OFF delay is fixed and cannot be overridden.

Select desired time delay profile. Four motor-operation delay profiles are provided to customize and enhance system operation (Fig. 8). The selection options are:

1. The standard 90-seconds OFF delay (factory setting 0/90).
2. No delay option used for servicing unit or when a thermostat is utilized to perform delay functions (0/0).
3. A 30–seconds ON / 90–seconds OFF delay profile is used when it is desirable to allow system coils time to heat up/cool down prior to airflow. This profile will minimize cold blow in heat pump operation and could enhance system efficiency (30/90).
4. ENH, enhanced selection provides a 30–seconds ON / 150–seconds at 70 percent airflow and no OFF delay.

Continuous Fan

Select desired continuous-fan profile LO, MED, or HI. Airflow are provided to customize and enhance the continuous fan functions (Fig. 8). The possible selections are:

1. LO – provides 50 percent of Y/Y2 Cool airflow.

- 2. MED – provides 80 percent of Y/Y2 Cool airflow.
- 3. HI – provides 100 percent of Y/Y2 Cool airflow.

The factory setting is LO.

NOTE: If applied to two-speed unit, do not select continuous fan as HI since low speed cooling will also run at HIGH airflow and insufficient dehumidification may result.

Easy Select Board Jumpers

J1 – This jumper must be pulled to activate dehumidification mode. The jumper connects R to DH. With the jumper in, the DH terminal is always energized. With the jumper pulled, the DH terminal is de-energized. A control such as the Thermidstat must be used to supply the 24V signal when there is no call for dehumidification, and turn off the 24V when there is a call for dehumidification.

J2 – This jumper activates heat staging. The jumper connects the W1 and W2 terminals together. If either is energized, W2 airflow is delivered. With the jumper pulled, there are separate airflows for W1 and W2.

J4 – This jumper is for IntelliSense™ operation (FT4B/FT5). As shipped, Y1 is connected to Y/Y2 by a field-removable jumper J4. With the jumper in place, in single stage operation IntelliSense™ communication is enabled. For 2-stage application, remove jumper J4.

Airflow Delivery

These units deliver airflow depending on the system size selections and operating mode. The thermostat energizes a combination of terminals on the Easy Select Board which tells the motor what CFM to deliver. The following are typical operating modes and the terminals that should be energized on the Easy Select Board.

NOTE: The DH terminal on the Easy Select Board is for dehumidification. It is de-energized on a call for dehumidification.

Variable Speed Motor Logic Sequence:

The ECM motors in these fan coils are programmed to deliver a variety of airflows. The motor goes through:

COOLING – The nominal cooling airflow for these fan coils is 350 CFM per ton. Selecting the HI adjust tap increases the airflow to 400 CFM per ton. The LO tap decreases airflow to 315 CFM per ton. The low adjustment is only active during normal cooling mode. Removing the signal from the DH terminal reduces the airflow to 80 percent of cooling airflow. Removing the G signal for Superdehumidify reduces the airflow to 50 percent of cooling.

HEATING – The base heat pump only heating airflow is determined by the SYSTEM TYPE selection on the Easy Select Board. If HP-EFFICIENCY is selected, the airflow is the same as Cooling. If HP-COMFORT is selected, the airflow is 315 CFM per ton. The airflow will adjust up if necessary when auxiliary heating is required. When both the Y/Y2 and W1 or W2 terminals are energized, the motor will run the higher of the heat pump or electric heat airflows. During Super Comfort Heat mode, the indoor control removes the G signal from the board. This slows the motor to 75 percent of heat pump airflow. If the CFM adjust is set to LO, it will deliver 67.5 percent of heat pump airflow during Super Comfort Heat mode.

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting Easy Select Board (FV, FT4)

If Traces Are Overheated on Back of PCB:

Usually whenever there is a trace broken on PCB, it means either there has been a high-voltage short or high voltage has been applied to low-voltage circuit. This can be prevented by making sure PCB is wired correctly before fan coil has power applied to it.

If PCB Fuse Keeps Blowing:

When low-voltage fuse blows, it means transformer would have blown if fuse had not been in circuit to protect it. The fuse usually blows when there is a high current drawn on transformer, high voltage applied to

low-voltage circuit, or a direct secondary short. When there is a high current drawn on transformer, it is most likely because transformer has been shorted or system is trying to draw more VAC than transformer rating allows. When fuse blows because of high voltage, the system has mixed high and low-voltage signals.

1. Check transformer and thermostat wiring (Fig. 8). Be sure transformer is not shorting out because thermostat wires are miswired.
2. Check wiring of relays (Fig. 8). Be sure low-voltage and high-voltage wiring are connected to proper sequencers.
3. Check VA draw on transformer. If VA draw is more than VA rating of transformer, fuse will blow. If this is the case, replace transformer with one that has a higher VA rating.

Troubleshooting Common Problems

Airflow Too Low:

- Y1 instead of Y/Y2 on single-speed air conditioner or heat pump application. Y1 input is only for two-speed applications. Using this terminal will deliver about 60 percent of full cooling airflow.
- Wrong Easy Select Board selection. Selecting an outdoor unit or electric heater smaller than actually installed will result in low airflow for the application.
- G not energized with call for cooling or heating. This triggers Super Comfort Heat or SuperDehumidify mode which delivers 50 percent of cooling airflow.
- J1 jumper pulled with no thermidstat or dehumidistat installed. The J1 jumper ties the DH terminal to R and is installed at the factory. When pulled, a Thermidstat or dehumidistat supplies a 24V signal to DH when there is no call for dehumidification (reverse logic). When there is no signal on DH, the motor reduces airflow to 80 percent for better dehumidification.

Airflow Too High:

- Wrong Easy Select Board selection. Fan coil is factory set for the largest outdoor unit and largest electric heater. Select sizes that are actually installed.
- Continuous fan set too high for two-speed applications. Set to MED or LO.

Motor Will Not Stop:

- Allow time for off delay to time out. In units built before serial number 0101A, any W call will have a two-minute off delay independent of delay selection. This is programmed into the motor and cannot be overridden.
- In units built after 0101A, the off delay on any W call is one minute and cannot be overridden.
- Some power-stealing thermostats could bleed enough voltage to cause motor to run slowly when there is no heating or cooling call. Disconnect thermostat wires and wait two minutes to see if motor stops. If it stops, replace thermostat, or install resistor per thermostat installation instructions.

Motor Will Not Start:

- See following section, “Troubleshooting ECM2.3/5.0 Motor and Controls.”

Troubleshooting ECM2.3/5.0 Motor and Controls

CAUTION

ELECTRICAL OPERATIONS HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in equipment damage or improper operation.

High voltage is always present at motor. Disconnect power to unit before removing or replacing connectors or servicing motor. Wait at least five minutes after disconnecting power before opening motor.

The ECM/ICM motor used with this product contains two parts: the control module and the motor winding section. Do not assume the motor or module is defective if it will not start. Go through the steps described below before replacing control module, Easy Select Board or entire motor. The control module is available as a replacement part.


If Motor Turns Slowly:

1. It is normal operation to run noticeably slower if G terminal is not energized in cooling or heat pump heating modes.
2. Attach blower access panel. Motor may appear to run slowly if access panel is removed.

If Motor Does Not Run:

Turn power off, wait five minutes and check the following:

1. With power turned off, check 5A fuse on Easy Select Board.
2. Check all plugs and receptacles for any deformation or corrosion that could cause bad connections. Be sure plugs are fully seated.


CAUTION

ELECTRICAL OPERATION HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in equipment damage or improper operation.

DO NOT remove or apply 5-pin plug on motor with power on. Arcing could occur, which can damage control module.

Turn power back on and check the following:

3. Check for 24VAC on SEC1 and SEC2. If no voltage is present, check transformer.
4. Verify that approximately 230VAC is present at motor.
5. Verify low voltage control signals to motor according to procedure below.

Use following procedure to check low voltage signals:

The ECM motor in these fan coils receive low voltage signals from the Easy Select Board through the wiring harness assembly. The combination of pins energized at the motor determines the speed the motor will run. The procedure below isolates the fan coil from all external devices such as a thermostat, condensing unit, humidifier or electronic air cleaner. There is also a specific troubleshooting example to demonstrate the process. [Table 6](#) provides information needed to verify that the correct voltages are present at the motor and the Easy Select Board.

THERMOSTAT:

1. Remove all thermostat and accessory wires from Easy Select Board.
2. On Easy Select Board, jumper screw terminals (1 at a time): R-G, R-Y/Y2, R-Y1, R-W1, R-W2. If motor runs in all cases, check thermostat outputs. Thermostat wires may be broken, or thermostat may be miswired, configured incorrectly, or defective. If the motor does not run, or runs in some cases, but not others, continue this procedure to check wiring harness and circuit board.

WIRING HARNESS:

1. Remove 16-pin/4-pin plug from motor.
2. Check for appropriate voltages on 16-pin/4-pin connector with screw terminals jumpered ([Table 3](#)).
3. If signals check correctly, and motor does not run, inspect wiring harness for loose pins or damaged plastic that could cause poor connections.
4. If connections are good, either control module or motor is defective.
5. If proper signals are not present, check circuit board using procedure below:

6. If the unit contains a motor signal translator box (16X4), repeat these steps with the connections on these connectors.

12-PIN PLUG (PL-1) ON EASY SELECT BOARD:

1. Completely disconnect wire harness from Easy Select Board.
2. Jumper the screw terminals one at a time; R-G, R-Y/Y2, R-Y1, R-W1, R-W2 and check for appropriate voltages on the Easy Select Board pins. If proper signals are not present, replace Easy Select Board. If proper signals are present at the pins and not at 16-pin connector to the motor, the wiring harness is defective.

TROUBLESHOOTING EXAMPLE:

Motor is not running on a call for heat pump heating after jumpering the Easy Select Board screw terminals as described in Thermostat section above.

With all thermostat wires removed from Easy Select Board, place a jumper wire between R and Y/Y2 low-voltage screw terminals on the Easy Select Board.

1. Check [Table 6](#) for pin number on 16-pin connector associated with the Y/Y2 signal. The correct pin is No. 14. The far right column of the table shows that (-)12VDC should be present between Pin No. 14 and Pin No. 1 (common) on the 16-pin connector.
2. Set meter to read DC voltage. Place meter leads between Pins No. 1 (common) and No. 14 and check for (-)12VDC. If signal is present, the problem is in the module or motor. If signal is not present, the problem is either in wiring harness or Easy Select Board.

These steps can be repeated for other modes of operation.

To check Easy Select Board:

1. Leave jumper wire in place between R and Y/Y2.
2. Check [Table 6](#) under “Volt Meter on Easy Select Board Plug” column and row for Pin No. 14 on motor plug to see pin number on Easy Select Board that should have voltage. The correct pin is No. 2. The column on far right will show voltage that should be present between Pin No. 2 and Pin No. 9 (common).
3. Place meter leads between Pins No. 2 and No. 9 on Easy Select Board and check for (-)12VDC.
4. If voltage is present, the wiring harness is bad. If not, the Easy Select Board is bad.

Verify Motor Winding Section:

Before proceeding with module replacement, check the following to ensure motor winding section is functional. With control module removed and unplugged from winding section:

1. The resistance between any two motor leads should be similar.
2. The resistance between any motor lead and the unpainted motor end plate should be greater than 100,000 ohms.

If motor winding fails one of these tests, it is defective and must be replaced.

Accessories

AUXILIARY TERMINALS—The AUX and HUM terminals on the Easy Select Board are tied directly to the G terminal, and provide a 24VAC signal whenever the G terminal is energized ([Fig. 10](#)). During Superdehumidify mode, the G signal is not present and the auxiliary terminals are not energized. If the installation includes the use of this operating mode, do not use these terminals to control accessories. See Electronic Air Cleaner and Humidifier sections for further information.

ELECTRONIC AIR CLEANER CONNECTIONS—The AUX1 and AUX2 terminals are not always energized during blower operation, as described above. When using an electronic air cleaner with the FV4 fan coil, use an Airflow Sensor or Airflow Verification switch. The airflow sensor turns on the electronic air cleaner when the fan coil blower is operating.

HUMIDIFIER/HUMIDISTAT CONNECTIONS—Easy Select Board terminals HUM1 and HUM2 are provided for direct connection to the

low-voltage control of a humidifier through a standard humidistat. These terminals are energized with 24VAC when G thermostat signal is present. Alternately, the 24VAC signal may be sourced from the W and C terminal block connections when electric heaters are used as primary heating source. When using a Thermidistat™ Control, Zone Perfect Plus, or Comfort Zone II, the 24VAC signal may be source directly from the Thermidistat HUM terminal.

Dehumidify Mode

NOTE: Humidistat must open on humidity rise.

Latent capacities for systems using the FK4, FT4, FV4, and 40FK fan coils are better than average systems. If increased latent capacity is an

application requirement, the field wiring terminal block provides connection terminals for use of a standard humidistat. The FK4, FT4, FV4, and 40FK fan coils will detect the humidistat contacts opening on increasing humidity and reduce its airflow to approximately 80 percent of nominal cooling mode airflow. This reduction will increase the system latent capacity until the humidity falls to a level which causes the humidistat to close its contacts. When the contacts close, airflow will return to 100 percent of the selected cooling airflow. To activate this mode, remove jumper J1 and wire in a standard humidistat. Carefully consult product airflow data for cooling and dehumidification modes.

Table 6 – FV4/FT4 Motor Control Test Values (With 16-pin connector at motor unplugged)

Terminals Jumpered	Volt Meter on 16-pin Harness Plug		Volt Meter on 12-pin Easy Select Board Plug		Voltage
	+	-	+	-	
R to W1	Pin 2	Pin 1	Pin 7	Pin 9	24VAC
R to W2	Pin 13	Pin 1	Pin 4	Pin 9	24VAC
R to Y1	Pin 6	Pin 1	Pin 3	Pin 9	(-)12VDC
R to Y/Y2	Pin 14	Pin 1	Pin 2	Pin 9	(-)12VDC
R to G (LO)	Pin 15	Pin 1	Pin 3	Pin 9	0VAC
R to G (MED)	Pin 6	Pin 1	Pin 3	Pin 9	(-)12VDC
R to G (HI)	Pin 14	Pin 1	Pin 2	Pin 9	(-)12VDC

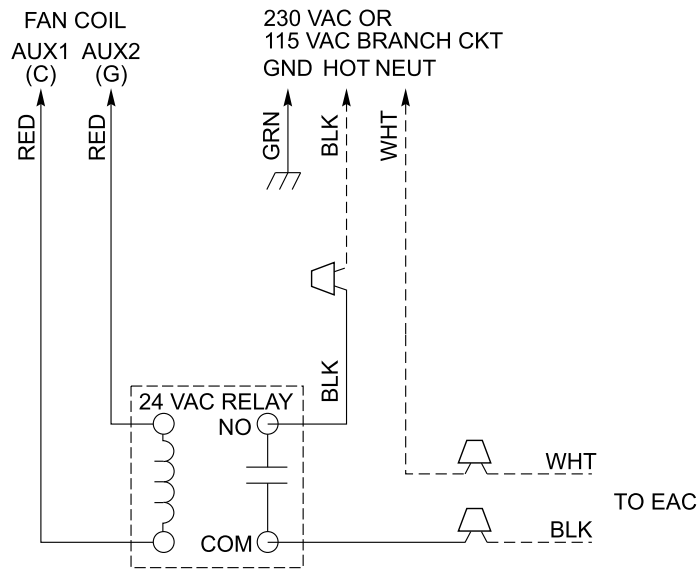


Fig. 11 – KFAIR0201ACR Relay Kit Wiring Schematic

A98625

InteliSense™ Technology (FT4, FT5)

This unit is InteliSense capable when used with an InteliSense thermostat. InteliSense allows for the collection of performance data in the cloud. The unit comes with two interchangeable sensors: a Return Air Temperature (RAT) sensor and a Supply Air Temperature (SAT) sensor for installation in the field. Make sure the sensors are connected to the appropriate terminals for proper temperature data collection when used with the InteliSense board. See installation instructions for detailed information on RAT/SAT placement and installation.

The InteliSense board uses the existing Easy Select layout for airflow selection with additional circuitry to manage the InteliSense data collection. Refer to the thermostat instructions for Easy Select operation details.

NOTE: When installing and servicing electronic equipment use appropriate safety PPE and avoid damaging system components by utilizing electrostatic discharge protection.

Connected Portal and Service Tech App

The Carrier Connected portal and Service Tech App provide a connection between the dealer/service tech and the homeowner's system. They can provide information about the homeowner's account, equipment configuration, operating performance and fault code history, current equipment status, and allow you to view and update thermostat settings. They can perform remote service diagnostics using real time suction line temperature and pressure w/ superheat calculation, liquid line temperature and pressure with subcooling calculation, outdoor air temperature, supply and return air temperatures, and blower motor RPMs. The dealer's unique contractor PIN can be located through either of these applications.

Power On LED/Board States

The amber LED is illuminated solid when there is power to the product. The green LED is illuminated solid when there is communication between the board and the InteliSense-enabled thermostat.

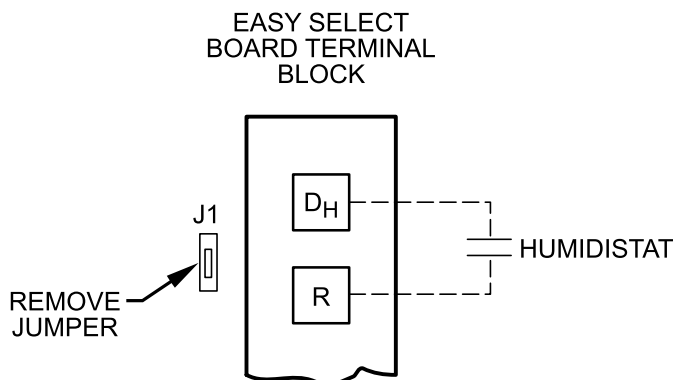


Fig. 12 – Humidistat Wiring for De-Humidify Mode

A95316

Table 7 – Diagnostic Code List*

Code	Description
30.1	InteliSense Communication Loss
30.2	InteliSense Communication Board Fault
52.1	Supply Air Temperature Open Fault
52.2	Supply Air Temperature Short Fault
53.1	Return Air Temperature Open Fault
53.2	Return Air Temperature Short Fault

*. Refer to the Service Tech App or Connected Portal for more information. Timestamps shall be applied to the fault when it occurs. Fault codes can be read through the dealer portal or through the service tech app.

How to Troubleshoot

RAT/SAT Functionality

One method of determining RAT/SAT functionality is to compare the actual resistance of the sensor with the nominal resistance at sample temperatures. The table below indicates several example values in the operating range of the sensors.

Communication Loss and Board Fault

Refer to thermostat advanced installation and configuration instructions found at carrier.hvacpartners.com/InteliSense.

Table 8 – RAT/SAT Sensor Values

Temperature (°F)	Nominal Resistance (K-ohms)	Tolerance (± %)
23	42.6	5.92
32	32.8	2.85
41	25.5	2.76
50	19.9	2.68
59	15.7	2.59
68	12.5	2.51
77	10.0	2.44
86	8.1	2.37
95	6.5	2.30
104	5.3	4.48

How Does the Service Tech Know when the System is Functioning Properly?

InteliSense is fully functioning when communication is established (indicated by LED or through the thermostat) and the thermostat has successfully fully learned all of the equipment and data is being displayed on the Connected Portal/service tech app.

FE, FT

Model FE and FT fan coil is designed to be installed with a communicating user interface. The FE and FT fan coil will provide airflow at a rate commanded by the User Interface. The nominal airflow/ton rate is 350 CFM/ton. The User Interface will modify the commanded airflow under certain operating modes. Refer to the User Interface literature for further system control details. This fan coil will not respond to commands from a common thermostat except under certain emergency situations explained in this document.

Electronically Commutated Motor ECM

An ECM motor is fed high voltage AC power through the 5-pin connector. The AC power is then internally rectified to DC by a diode module. After rectification, DC signal is electronically communicated and fed in sequential order to 3 stator windings. The frequency of these

communication pulses determines motor speed. The rotor is permanently magnetized.

ECM Control Power

The ECM control power is supplied from R circuit through printed circuit runs to motor control connector Plug 1, Pin 1, through motor control harness to motor. The C side of low-voltage control power circuit is connected by printed circuit runs to motor connector Plug 1, Pin 2 then through motor control harness to motor. A digital signal is sent from Plug 1, Pins 3 and 4 to communicate with the motor including all airflow requirements.

Low-Voltage Circuit Fusing and Reference

The low-voltage circuit is fused by a board-mounted 5A automotive type fuse placed in series with transformer SEC2 and R circuit. The C circuit of transformer is referenced to chassis ground through a printed circuit run at SEC1 connected to metal standoff.

NOTE: The PCB must be mounted with two screws and motor ground lead secured to blower housing or erratic motor operation can result.

Transformer, Motor, and Electric Heater Power Connection

Transformer high voltage supplied from electric heater package or high voltage leads through 12-pin heater connector plug/recp2. The ECM 3.0 power connections are made at the transformer primary terminals. The transformer secondary connections are made at SEC1 and SEC2 connectors.

Troubleshooting (FE4/FE5A/FE5B)

NOTE: Always check high and low voltage supply to the fan coil components. Check the integrity of the plug receptacle connections and fan coil wiring harness prior to assuming a component failure.

LED Description

LEDs built into fan coil control provide installer or service person information concerning operation and/or fault condition of the fan coil control and ECM motor. This information is also available at system User Interface in text with basic troubleshooting instructions. Careful use of information displayed will reduce the need for extensive manual troubleshooting.

The amber LED located at bottom center of control adjacent to motor harness plug is Motor Status LED, and it is labeled MOTOR. A second amber LED, located in upper right center of control adjacent to System Communications connector (A,B,C,D) is the System Status LED, and it is labeled STATUS. The green LED labeled COMM is also located adjacent to System Communications connector, below STATUS LED, and is used as an indicator of system communications status. Status Codes will be displayed on the STATUS LED using the following protocol:

1. The number of short flashes indicates first digit of code.
2. The number of long flashes indicates second digit of code.
3. A short flash is 0.25 seconds on. A long flash is one second on.
4. The time between flashes is 0.25 seconds.
5. The time between last short flash and first long flash is 1 second.
6. The LED will be off for 2.5 seconds before repeating code.

Fan Coil Control Start-Up and System Communications Troubleshooting

On power up, green COMM LED will be turned off until successful system communications are established (this should happen within 10 seconds). Once communications with User Interface are successful, COMM LED will be lit and held on. At the same time, amber STATUS LED will be lit and held continuously on until a request for operating mode is received. The STATUS LED will be on any time fan coil is in idle mode.

If, at any time, communications are not successful for a period exceeding two minutes, fan coil control will only allow emergency heating or cooling operation using a common thermostat, a non-communicating

outdoor unit and the R, C, Y, O, W outdoor unit terminal strip connections and will display Status Code 16, System Communication Fault, on amber STATUS LED. No further fan coil troubleshooting information will be available at User Interface until communications are re-established.

If COMM LED does not light within proper time period and status code is not displayed:

1. Check system transformer high and low voltage to be sure the system is powered.
2. Check fuse on fan coil control to be sure it is not blown. If fuse is open, check system wiring before replacing it to be sure a short does not cause a failure of replacement fuse.

If COMM LED does not light within proper time period and status code is displayed:

Check system wiring to be sure User Interface is powered and connections are made A to A, B to B, etc. and wiring is not shorted. Mis-wiring or shorting of the ABCD communications wiring will not allow successful communications.

NOTE: Shorting or mis-wiring low voltage system wiring will not cause damage to fan coil control or User Interface but may cause low voltage fuse to open.

Table 9 – Troubleshooting Status Codes

Code	Description / Procedure Link to Text
16	(STATUS CODE 16, SYSTEM COMMUNICATION FAULT: on p17)
45	(STATUS CODE 45, CONTROL BOARD TEST FAULT: on p16)
37	(STATUS CODE 37, HEATER OUTPUT SENSED "ON" WHEN NOT ENERGIZED: on p16)
44	(STATUS CODE 44, MOTOR COMMUNICATION FAULT: on p16)
25	(STATUS CODE 25, INVALID MOTOR / MODEL SELECTION: on p16)
27	(STATUS CODE 27, INVALID OUTDOOR UNIT SIZE: on p16)
26	(STATUS CODE 26, INVALID HEATER SIZE: on p16)
36	(STATUS CODE 36, HEATER OUTPUT NOT SENSED WHEN ENERGIZED: on p17)
41	(STATUS CODE 41, BLOWER MOTOR FAULT: on p17)
46	(STATUS CODE 46, BROWNOUT CONDITION: on p17)
53	(STATUS CODE 53, OUTDOOR AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR FAULT: on p17)

ECM Motor Troubleshooting

The ECM motor used in this product consists of two parts: the control module and the motor winding section. Do not assume motor or module is defective if it will not start. Use the designed-in LED information aids and follow troubleshooting steps described below before replacing motor control module or entire motor. Motor control module is available as a replacement part.

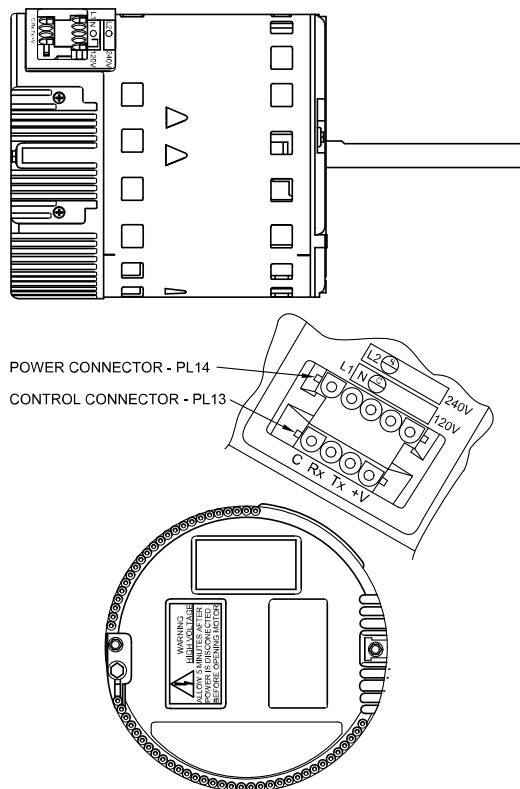


Fig. 13 – FE4/FE5 ECM Motor

A12231

Verify Motor Winding Section

⚠ WARNING

ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death or possible equipment damage.

After disconnecting power from the ECM motor, wait at least five minutes before removing the control section. Internal capacitors require time to discharge. Minor injury from electrical shock may result from early contact with live metal parts.

Before proceeding to replace a motor control module:

1. Check motor winding section to be sure it is functional.
2. Remove motor control module section and unplug winding plug. Motor shaft should turn freely, resistance between any two motor leads should be similar and resistance between any motor lead and unpainted motor end should exceed 100,000 ohms.
3. Failing any of these tests, entire ECM motor must be replaced.
4. Passing all of the tests, motor control module alone can be replaced.

Motor Turns Slowly

1. Low static pressure loading of blower while access panel is removed will cause blower to run slowly. Particularly at low airflow requests. This is normal, do not assume a fault exists.
2. Recheck airflow and system static pressure using User Interface service screens with access panel in place.

NOTE: Blower motor faults will not cause a lockout of blower operation. Fan coil control will attempt to run the blower motor as long as User Interface maintains a demand for airflow. Fan coil control will not operate electric heaters while a fault condition exists. The fan coil control communicates with the motor at least once every five seconds, even when the motor is idle. If, during operation, the fan coil control does not communicate with the motor for more than 25 seconds, the reestablished.

motor will shut itself down and wait for communications to be

Using Motor LED in Troubleshooting

The MOTOR LED is connected to the blower motor communication line and works with the fan coil control microprocessor and the STATUS LED to provide fan coil operation and troubleshooting information. When the motor is commanded to operate, the MOTOR LED will be turned on and will flash each time instructions are sent to the motor. When the motor is commanded to stop, the MOTOR LED will be turned off.

If the MOTOR LED is lit, flashing and the motor is running or if the MOTOR LED is off and the motor is stopped, operation is normal and no motor fault exists.

If the MOTOR LED is lit, flashing and the motor does not run, or if the MOTOR LED is off and the motor is running, check the STATUS LED for the Status Code. Refer to the troubleshooting instructions for the indicated Status Code in Section E, Fan Coil Troubleshooting.

Fan Coil Troubleshooting

Fan coil faults indicated by flashing codes on the amber system STATUS LED can be resolved using troubleshooting information provided below. Codes are listed in order of their priority, highest to lowest. Though multiple faults can exist at any time, only the highest priority code will be displayed on STATUS LED. Clearing the indicated fault when multiple faults exist will cause the next highest priority Status Code to be flashed. All existing faults, as well as a fault history, can be viewed at User Interface.

STATUS CODE 45, CONTROL BOARD TEST FAULT:

Fan coil control has failed internal start-up tests and must be replaced. No other service procedure will correct.

STATUS CODE 37, HEATER OUTPUT SENSED "ON" WHEN NOT ENERGIZED:

Fan coil control is provided with circuitry to detect presence of a 24VAC signal on Electric Heater stage 1 and stage 2 outputs.

If fan coil control detects a 24VAC signal on either heater stage output and it is not supplying signal, Status Code 37 will be displayed on STATUS LED. Fan coil control will turn off output and command blower motor to supply an airflow determined to be safe for current operation mode with electric heaters energized.

To find the fault:

1. Stop all system operations at User Interface and check heater stage 24VAC outputs.
2. Disconnect electric heater at plug/receptacle 2 and check heater wiring for faults. See Status Code 36 for more information.

STATUS CODE 44, MOTOR COMMUNICATION FAULT:

The MOTOR LED is connected to the blower motor communication line and works with the fan coil control microprocessor and STATUS LED to provide fan coil operation and troubleshooting information.

When motor is commanded to operate, the MOTOR LED will be turned on and will flash each time instructions are sent to the motor.

When the motor is commanded to stop, the MOTOR LED will be turned off. The MOTOR LED will not flash to indicate communications when it is turned off.

Fan coil control is constantly communicating with the motor, even when the motor and MOTOR LED are off. If motor does not acknowledge receipt of communications, the control will display Status Code 44 on STATUS LED and continue to try to communicate with the motor. If motor acknowledges communication, status code will be cleared.

If MOTOR LED is lit and flashing and motor does not run:

1. Check the STATUS LED. If STATUS LED is indicating a Status 44 code, check the motor wiring harness for proper connection to control and motor receptacles.

2. Check motor wiring harness to be sure all wiring complies with wiring diagram description, makes a complete circuit from connector to connector and is not shorted.
3. Check 12VDC low-voltage supply to motor at Pins 1 (+) and 2 (-) of motor header connection to fan coil control.

If all checks are normal, fan coil control is good and control module on motor may need replacement. Check motor and Motor Control Module following the instructions in [\(ECM Motor Troubleshooting on p15\)](#).

Shorted or mis-wiring of the low voltage motor harness wiring will not cause damage to fan coil control or to motor control module.

If the MOTOR LED is off, STATUS LED is indicating a Status Code 44 and motor is running:

Disconnect the motor harness at the fan coil control. If motor continues to run, fan coil control is good and control module on motor may need replacement

STATUS CODE 25, INVALID MOTOR / MODEL SELECTION:

On initial start-up, fan coil control shall poll motor for its size data and check fan coil size data stored in fan coil control memory.

1. If motor size is incorrect for fan coil size or fan coil size data is invalid, Status Code 25 will be displayed on STATUS LED.
2. If model size data is missing (as is the case when a replacement fan coil control is installed), system User Interface will prompt installer to enter correct model size from a list of valid sizes.
3. If motor size is incorrect for model size, motor must be replaced with proper size motor. Fan coil control will not respond to operation requests until this fault condition is resolved.

STATUS CODE 27, INVALID OUTDOOR UNIT SIZE:

On initial power-up, fan coil control will write into memory outdoor unit size as provided by User Interface in a fully communicating system.

1. If outdoor unit size is invalid, Status Code 27 will be displayed on STATUS LED.
2. User Interface will prompt the installer to choose size from a list of valid sizes for application with fan coil.
3. Check communications wiring to be sure User Interface has established communications with outdoor unit or select proper size from valid size list provided at User Interface.
4. Check motor and motor control module following the instructions in [\(ECM Motor Troubleshooting on p15\)](#).

STATUS CODE 26, INVALID HEATER SIZE:

On initial power-up, fan coil control will write into memory electric heater size as read from heater if heater is provided with Identifier Resistor (IDR). Heater size must be valid for combination of indoor and outdoor components installed. Fan coil control will read IDR value connected to Pins 5 and 8 of heater harness connector. If no resistor is found, system User Interface will prompt installer to verify that no heater is installed.

Verifying that this is correct will establish that fan coil is operating without an electric heater accessory. Upon choosing negative option, installer will be prompted to select heater size installed from a list of valid heater sizes for fan coil and outdoor unit size installed.

If heater ID resistor value read is invalid, Status Code 26 will be displayed on STATUS LED.

If heater installed is equipped with a resistor connected to Pins 5 and 8 of heater harness connector and Status Code 26 is displayed on STATUS LED:

1. Check wiring harness connections to be sure connections are secure.
2. If symptoms persist, disconnect wiring harness at fan coil control heater header and check for a resistance value greater than 5000 ohms.
3. Check for proper wiring of resistor assembly.

4. Make sure heater size installed is an approved size for outdoor unit and fan coil sizes installed.

NOTE: Fan coil control will not operate electric heater until this Status Code is resolved. If the heater size is set through the User Interface, the heater will be operated as a single stage heater. If staging is desired, the IDR value must be read in by the fan coil control.

Table 10 – FE4/FE5 Self-identifying Resistor Values

Heater Size kW	Resistor Ohms Nominal
No heater	Open
9	11k
15	18k
20	24k
24	33k
30	39k
Hydronic Heat	270k

STATUS CODE 36, HEATER OUTPUT NOT SENSED WHEN ENERGIZED:

Fan coil control is provided with circuitry to detect presence of a 24VAC signal on Electric Heater stage 1 and stage 2 outputs.

If fan coil control energizes either heater stage and does not detect the 24VAC signal on output, Status Code 36 will be displayed on the STATUS LED Fan coil control will continue to energize heater output(s) and adjust blower operation to a safe airflow level for energized electric heat stage(s).

To find the fault, check for 24VAC on heater stage outputs. Fan coil control or sensing circuit may be bad.

NOTE: It may be useful as an electric heater troubleshooting procedure to disconnect the system communications to force Status Code 16 enabling of emergency heat mode. It is difficult to know which heater output is energized or not energized in normal operation. When fan coil is operated in emergency heat mode using electric heaters, both outputs are energized and de-energized together. Terminal strip inputs to control can then be connected R to W to turn on both electric heat outputs. Heater output sensing circuits can then be checked to resolve Status Code 36 or 37 problems.

STATUS CODE 41, BLOWER MOTOR FAULT:

If MOTOR LED is lit and flashing and motor does not run:

1. Check STATUS LED. If STATUS LED is indicating Status Code 41, motor control has detected that the motor will not come up to speed within 30 seconds of being commanded to run or that the motor has been slowed to below 250 rpm for more than 10 seconds after coming up to speed. Motor wiring harness and fan coil control are operating properly, do not replace.
2. Check to be sure that the blower wheel is not rubbing the housing.
3. Check motor to be sure that the motor shaft is not seized (motor control module must be removed and electronics disconnected from windings to perform this check properly).
4. Check motor windings section following instructions in [\(ECM Motor Troubleshooting on p15\)](#).

If all these checks are normal, the motor control module may need replacement.

STATUS CODE 16, SYSTEM COMMUNICATION FAULT:

If, at any time, system communications are not successful for a period exceeding two minutes, the fan coil control will only allow emergency heating or cooling operation using a common thermostat, a non-communicating outdoor unit, and the R, C, Y, O,W outdoor unit terminal strip connections and will display Status Code 16 on the amber STATUS LED. See [\(Emergency Heating and Cooling Modes on p17\)](#).

No further fan coil troubleshooting information will be available at the User Interface until communications are reestablished.

Check system wiring to be sure the User Interface is powered and connections are made A to A, B to B, etc. and wiring is not shorted. Mis-wiring or shorting of the ABCD communications wiring will not allow successful communications. Correcting wiring faults will clear the code and reestablish communications.

Shorting or mis-wiring the low voltage system wiring will not cause damage to fan coil control or to User Interface but may cause the low voltage fuse to open.

STATUS CODE 46, BROWNOUT CONDITION:

If the secondary voltage of the transformer falls below 15VAC for a period exceeding four seconds, Status Code 46 will be displayed on STATUS LED.

If system includes a non-communicating outdoor air conditioner or heat pump, the User Interface will command the fan coil to turn off Y output controlling compressor.

When secondary voltage rises above 17VAC for more than four seconds, the brownout condition is cleared and normal system operation will resume subject to any minimum compressor off delay function which may be in effect. Brownout does not affect blower or electric heater operation.

STATUS CODE 53, OUTDOOR AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR FAULT:

If an OAT sensor is found at power-up, input is constantly checked to be within a valid temperature range. If sensor is found to be open or shorted at any time after initial validation, Status Code 53 will be displayed at amber STATUS LED.

Check for faults in wiring connecting sensor to OAT terminals. Using an Ohmmeter, check resistance of thermistor for a short or open condition.

If thermistor is shorted or open, replace it to return the system to normal operation. If fault is in the wiring connections, correcting the fault will clear the code and return the system to normal operation.

NOTE: If fault condition is an open thermistor or a wiring problem that appears to be an open thermistor and the power to the fan coil control is cycled off, the fault code will be cleared on the next power-up but the fault will remain and system operation will not be as expected. This is because on power-up, the fan coil control cannot discern the difference between an open sensor or if a sensor is not installed.

Emergency Heating and Cooling Modes

Fan coil control can provide emergency heating or cooling using a common heat/cool thermostat in the event that there are no system communications, fault is in User Interface and no replacement is immediately available.

To activate these modes, the thermostat and outdoor unit must be wired as a common heating/cooling system to fan coil control RYWC terminals. Fan coil control must be powered and displaying Status Code 16, System Communication Fault.

NOTE: These emergency modes do not provide the level of comfort and efficiency expected by the consumer and should only be activated when User Interface cannot be replaced immediately.

SEQUENCE OF OPERATION

The FE4/FE5 fan coil is designed for installation with a communicating User Interface. This fan coil will not respond to commands provided by a common thermostat except under certain emergency situations described in the Start Up and Troubleshooting sub-section.

The User Interface uses temperature; humidity and other data supplied from indoor and outdoor system components to control heating or cooling system for optimum comfort.

ADVANCED TROUBLESHOOTING:

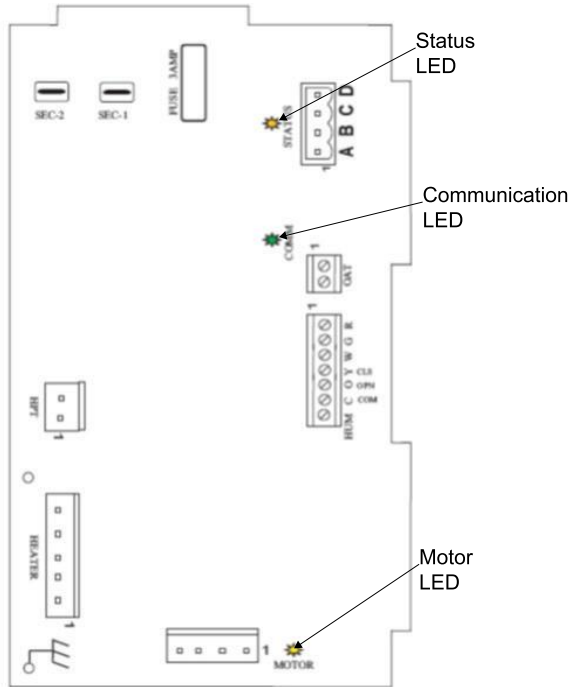


Fig. 14 – Circuit Board LED Locations

A13030

Troubleshooting the FE4/FE5 Fan Coil Circuit Board:

- Production Unit circuit board Fan Coil part number HK38EA061
- RCD Replacement circuit board HK38EA061
- Older circuit board part numbers HK38EA006, HK38EA009, and HK38EA011

Primary test that should be performed:

Motor Line Voltage Check

1. Turn off power (240V).
2. Remove Plug 3 from ECM motor
3. Turn on power.
4. Check Plug 3, terminals 4 and 5, to ensure there are 240V.
5. Turn off power.
6. Reconnect Plug 3 to motor.

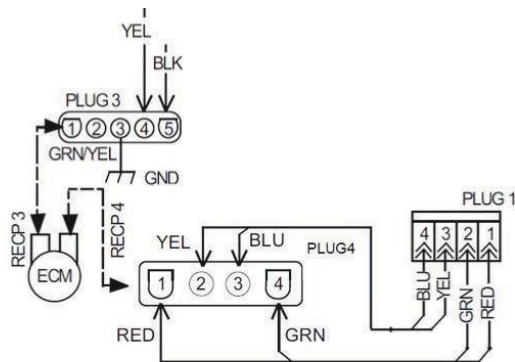


Fig. 15 – ECM / Plug Wiring Diagram

A13031

The following troubleshooting techniques will assist in determining the correct component to replace when the Fan Coil Board presents a Fault Code 44 or 41:

1. Disconnect power from the unit (240V).
2. Disconnect the ABCD connector from the board.
3. Disconnect Plug 1 from the board (Fig. 15).
4. Turn on power (240V).

5. After reestablishing power, you should receive Fault Code 44, and the motor LED should be off.
6. Place a jumper across the R and G terminals on the low voltage terminal block
7. Fault Code 44 should still be flashing.
8. The Motor LED should be flashing, indicating the board is able to transmit a signal to the motor.
9. If Motor LED is not flashing, check to ensure that 24V is present across R and C on the low voltage terminal block and that there is a good connection with the R and G jumper.
10. If 24V is present and the jumper/connections are good,
11. Replace the board.

Check Board

1. If Fault Code 44 and the Motor LED are both flashing, place a DC voltmeter across terminals PL1-1 Red (+) to PL1-2 Green (-) (Fig. 15).
2. Across terminal PL1-1 and PL1-2, a 12VDC should be present. If 12VDC is not present, replace circuit board.
3. If Fault Code 44 is flashing and the Motor LED is flashing, place a DC voltmeter across terminal PL1-3 (+) and PL1-2 (-).
4. Across terminal PL1-3 (+) and PL1-2 (-), the DC volt meter should display 5VDC. The voltage should be very stable and should not fluctuate more than 0.02VDC. If the voltage fluctuates, get a different voltmeter before proceeding to the following steps.
5. Reconnect Plug 1 to circuit board and connect DC voltmeter across terminals PL1-3 Yellow (+) and PL1-2 Green (-). Does the voltage appear to fluctuate more than in step 15? Typical voltmeters will show a fluctuation of 0.2VDC to 1VDC. The amount of fluctuation is not important. You could see even more fluctuation depending on the voltmeter used.
6. Check the blower motor serial output signal. The blinking LED on the control board represents the serial output signal. You can measure the signal with a DC voltmeter by removing Plug 1 from the circuit board and connecting the DC voltmeter across PL1-4 (+) and PL1-2 (-). The voltage should be near 0VDC but it will fluctuate briefly several times per second. If you have an analog voltmeter, the needle briefly will go high several times per second. If you have a digital voltmeter with a bar graph, it will show a large change in magnitude on the bar graph several times per second. If you have a plain, digital voltmeter, it will show a brief fluctuation in voltage, and the magnitude may vary depending on the voltmeter used.

! WARNING

ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death. Disconnect all power to the unit before servicing the field wires or removing the control package. The disconnect (when used) on the access panel does not disconnect power to the line side of the disconnect, but does allow safe service to all other parts of the unit.

The minimum maintenance requirements for this equipment are as follows:

1. Inspect and clean or replace air filter each month or as required.
2. Inspect cooling coil, drain pan, and condensate drain each cooling season for cleanliness. Clean as necessary. An inspection port is provided on all A-coil delta plates. Remove plastic plug to inspect. Replace plug after inspection.
3. Inspect blower motor and wheel for cleanliness each heating and cooling season. Clean as necessary.

- Inspect electrical connections for tightness and controls for proper operation each heating and cooling season. Service as necessary.

! CAUTION

CUT HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in personal injury. Sheet metal parts may have sharp edges or burrs. Use care and wear appropriate protective clothing and gloves when handling parts.

Filter Assembly

To clean or replace air filter, push plastic connectors toward center of unit and remove filter access panel outward. Push filter up and back into unit. Then slide filter out.

Clean filter by using cold water and mild detergent. Rinse and allow filter to dry. No oiling or coating of filter is required. New filters are available from your local distributor. Place filter in slot with cross-mesh binding up or facing cooling coil and replace filter access panel.

Cooling Coil, Drain Pan, and Condensate Drain

The cooling coil is easily cleaned when it is dry. Inspect the coil and clean (if necessary) before each cooling season. To check or clean cooling coil, remove coil access panel. If coil is coated with dirt or lint, vacuum it with a soft brush attachment.

Be careful not to bend coil fins. If coil is coated with oil or grease, clean it with a mild detergent and water solution. Rinse coil thoroughly with clear water. Be careful not to splash water on insulation.

FFM and FMA

! WARNING

ELECTRICAL OPERATION HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death. Before installation or servicing system, always turn off main power to system. There may be more than one disconnect switch. Turn off accessory heater power if applicable. Lock out and tag switch with a suitable warning label.

Fan Motor

The FFMANP (018,024,030,036), FMA4P and FMA5L motor is three-speed PSC direct drive. High-speed lead is black, medium-speed lead is red, low-speed lead is blue, and common lead is purple. The FFMANP (019,025,031,037) and FMA4X/5X motor is a five speed ECM direct drive. The cooling speed tap is selected by connecting the green wire to the desired motor tap number indicated on the motor plug. For the electric heat fan speed selection connect the white wire to the desired motor tap number indicated on the motor plug. Be sure proper blower speed has been selected.

The blower motor in this unit has blower-off delays. The blower-off delay is 30–90 seconds and will keep the motor running after a heating or cooling call ends.

The motor is turned on through two different routes. The first occurs when thermostat calls for the fan in cooling, heat pump, or fan-only mode. A 24VAC signal is sent to relay, causing relay to close its normally open contacts, turning fan on.

The second occurs when there is a call for electric heat. A 24VAC signal is sent to heater sequencer/relay, causing it to close, directing 230V through the normally closed contact of fan relay, turning fan on. The fan remains on until sequencer/relay/PCB opens.

FMA5 only—has a third way to start the fan motor. If the dissipation system detects a refrigerant leak, G is energized and completes the circuit to the indoor blower motor.

If motor does not run, test motor for an open winding or a winding shorted to motor case. If either is present, replace motor.

Time Delay

FFMANP (019,025,031,037) and FMA4X/5X have time delay built into the motor logic. FFMANP (018,024,030,036), FMA4P and FMA5L units with date codes prior to 1715V have sequencers. FFMANP (018,024,030,036), FMA4P and FMA5L units with date codes 1715V or later have a time delay printed circuit board.

The Time Delay Printed Circuit Board (PCB) is a logic controlled time delay activated by low-voltage control signal (G) from thermostat. The PCB includes a normally open relay which closes to energize the blower motor when the G terminal is energized. Then when the G terminal is de-energized the relay energizing the blower motor remains closed for 90–100 seconds before opening.

NOTE: Aluminum coil models with PSC motor can be wired to different OFF time delay. See installation instructions for wiring diagram.

FMA5X units have time delay built into the motor logic. See the Motor Speed Taps table in the installation instructions. FMA5L have the time delay functionality integrated into the control board.

Table 11 – Speed Tap and Off-Delay Time (FMA4)

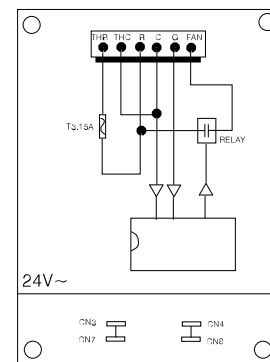
Speed Tap	Off-Delay Time	18	24	30	36
Tap 1	30	-	-	-	-
Tap 2	90	Default	-	Default	-
Tap 3	30	-	-	-	-
Tap 4	90	-	Default	-	Default
Tap 5	30	-	-	-	-

Table 12 – FMA5X ECM Motor Speed Taps Delay Off Time Setting

Tap	18	24	30	36
Tap 1	30	30	30	30
Tap 2	30	30	30/90*	30/90
Tap 3	90*	90	90/30	90/30
Tap 4	90/0	90/0	90	90*
Tap 5	90	90*	90/0	90/0

*. Default setting

Where two numbers are shown, left represents Minor series 1 and right represents Minor series 2.



Comments:

- The THR and THC are connected to transformer output.
- When the G has signal, the FAN will supply 24VAC power to control fan relay.
- When the G signal is gone, the FAN will stop 24 VAC output after 90 seconds.
- CN3, CN7 are dummy connection terminals.

Fig. 1 – Time Delay PCB Schematic

A150455B

NOTE: The following sequence of operation is based on units installed with PSC motor and Time Delay Printed Circuit Board (PCB), and all FMA5L units. For units with ECM motor, the off-delay is programmed into the motor. Follow [Table 11](#) below, ECM Motor Speed Taps & the corresponding blower OFF delays for each speed tap. For FMA5X units, see the Motor Speed Taps table in the Installation Instructions.

Continuous Fan

Thermostat closes R to G. G energizes and completes circuit to indoor blower motor. When G is de-energized, there is a 90-second blower off-delay.

Cooling Mode

Thermostat energizes R to G, R to Y, and R to O (heat pump only). G energizes and completes indoor blower motor. Y energizes outdoor unit (O is energized for heat pump). When cooling call is satisfied, G is de-energized, there is a 90-second blower off-delay.

Heat Pump Heating Mode

Thermostat energizes R to G and R to Y. G energizes and completes circuit to indoor blower motor. When heating call is satisfied, G is de-energized, there is a 90-second blower off-delay.

Heat Pump Heating with Auxiliary Electric Heat

Thermostat energizes R to G, R to Y, and R to W1. G energizes and completes circuit to indoor blower motor. W1 energizes electric heat relay(s) which completes circuit to heater element(s). When W1 is de-energized, electric heat relay(s) open, turning off heater elements. When G is de-energized there is a 90-second blower off-delay.

Electric Heat or Emergency Heat Mode

Thermostat closes R to W1. W1 energizes electric heat relay(s) which completes circuit to heater element(s). Blower motor is energized through normally closed contacts on fan relay. When W1 is de-energized, electric heat relay(s) opens, there is no blower off-delay. (units with ECM motor will have a blower off-delay based on motor speed tap selection).



Fig. 16 – FMA4 Size 18 & 24 PCB

A150462

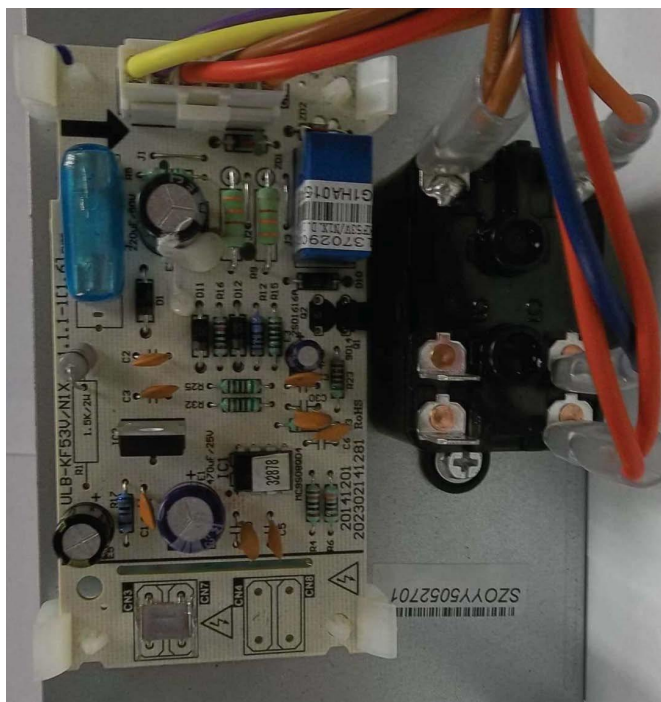


Fig. 17 – SMA4 Size 30 & 36 PCB

A150463

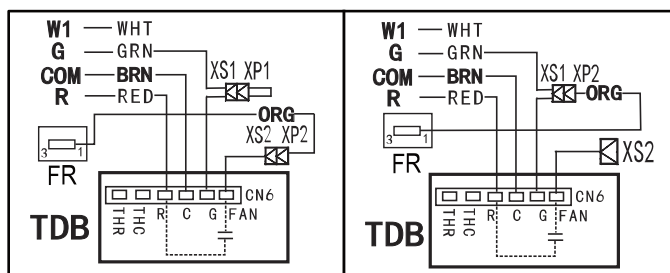


Fig. 18 – Time Delay Schematic

A180074

Electric Heater Service

Service can be completed with heater in place. Shut off power before servicing.

Limit Switch

Refer to [\(Electric Heater Function and Troubleshooting on p24\)](#).

Sequencer

Early EHK2 heater kits included sequencers instead of relays. Refer to [\(Electric Heater Function and Troubleshooting on p24\)](#).

Transformer

A 40VA transformer supplies 24V power for control circuit. Check for 208/230V on primary side of transformer. If present, check for 24V on secondary side.

NOTE: Transformer is fused. Do not short circuit.

Fan Relay

Later EHK2 heater kits included relays instead of sequencers. Relay coil is 24V. Check for proper control voltage. Replace relay if faulty.

Cleaning or Replacing Refrigerant Flow-Control Device

FFM, FMA4P

The piston can be removed and cleaned if believed to be plugged. This unit’s piston is unique and replacements are available from RCD.

The filter drier should be located on the liquid line at the indoor unit to prevent particulate from plugging the piston.

FFM, FMA4X, FMA5L, FMA5X

These fan coils use a TXV. The TXV's are preset at the factory and do not need adjustment for reliable operation. Reference the outdoor unit instructions to properly charge the unit to the correct subcooling. For optimal performance, adjust the TXV so that 6° F of superheat is measured at the outdoor unit's vapor service valve when the indoor return air is 80° F DB/67° F WB and outdoor ambient is 82° F DB. To increase superheat turn the TXV adjustment stem clockwise no more than one rotation at a time. After an adjustment is made, wait until the superheat temperature has been stable for 15 minutes before making further adjustments.

Sequence of Operation

Condensing Unit

COOLING—When thermostat calls for cooling, the circuit between R and G is complete and single-pole single-throw relay FR is energized. The normally open contacts close causing blower to operate.

The circuit between R and Y is also complete. This completed circuit causes contactor in outdoor unit to close which starts compressor and outdoor fan. When thermostat is satisfied, its contacts open de-energizing contactor and blower relay. This stops compressor and outdoor fan motor. The indoor fan motor will stop after 90-100 seconds on the FFMANP(018,024,030,036) and FMA4P, and 30 or 90 seconds on the FFMANP(019,025,031,037), FMA4X, and FMA5L/X.

HEATING—When thermostat calls for heating and FAN switch is set on AUTO, the circuit between R and W is complete. The heater sequence SEQ is energized which closes contacts of relay. There will be a time delay. This completed circuit energizes all heating elements HTR and blower motor. When thermostat is satisfied, its contacts open de-energizing heat relay. This de-energizes the sequencer. All heaters should stop. The indoor fan motor will stop after 90-100 seconds on the

FFMANP(018,024,030,036) and FMA4P, and 30 or 90 seconds on the FFMANP(019,025,031,037), FMA4X and FMA5L/X.

Heat Pump

COOLING—On a call for cooling, the thermostat makes circuits R-O, R-Y, and R-G. Circuit R-O energizes reversing valve, switching it to cooling position. Circuit R-Y energizes contactor starting outdoor fan motor and compressor. Circuit R-G energizes indoor unit blower relay starting indoor blower motor.

When thermostat is satisfied, its contacts open de-energizing contactor reversing valve and blower relay. This stops compressor and outdoor fan motor. The indoor fan motor will stop after 90-100 seconds on the FFMANP(018,024,030,036) and FMA4P, and 30 or 90 seconds on the FFMANP(019,025,031,037), FMA4X and FMA5L/X.

HEATING—On a call for heating, the thermostat makes circuits R-Y and R-G. Circuit R-Y energizes contactor starting outdoor fan motor and compressor. Circuit R-G energizes indoor blower relay starting blower motor.

Should temperature continue to fall, R-W circuit is made through second-stage room thermostat bulb. Circuit R-W energizes a sequencer bringing on supplemental electric heat.

When thermostat is satisfied, its contacts open de-energizing contactor and sequencer. All heaters should stop. The indoor fan motor will stop after 90-100 seconds on the FFMANP(018,024,030,036) and FMA4P, and 30 or 90 seconds on the FFMANP(019,025,031,037) and FMA4X.

FMA5L and FMA5X units are equipped with an R-454B refrigerant dissipation system. This system comes with a leak detection sensor located behind the slope coil. While a leak event is being detected by the sensor, the EHK2 (heater kit) will be inoperable until the unit is no longer in dissipation mode.

18K&24K_CASE

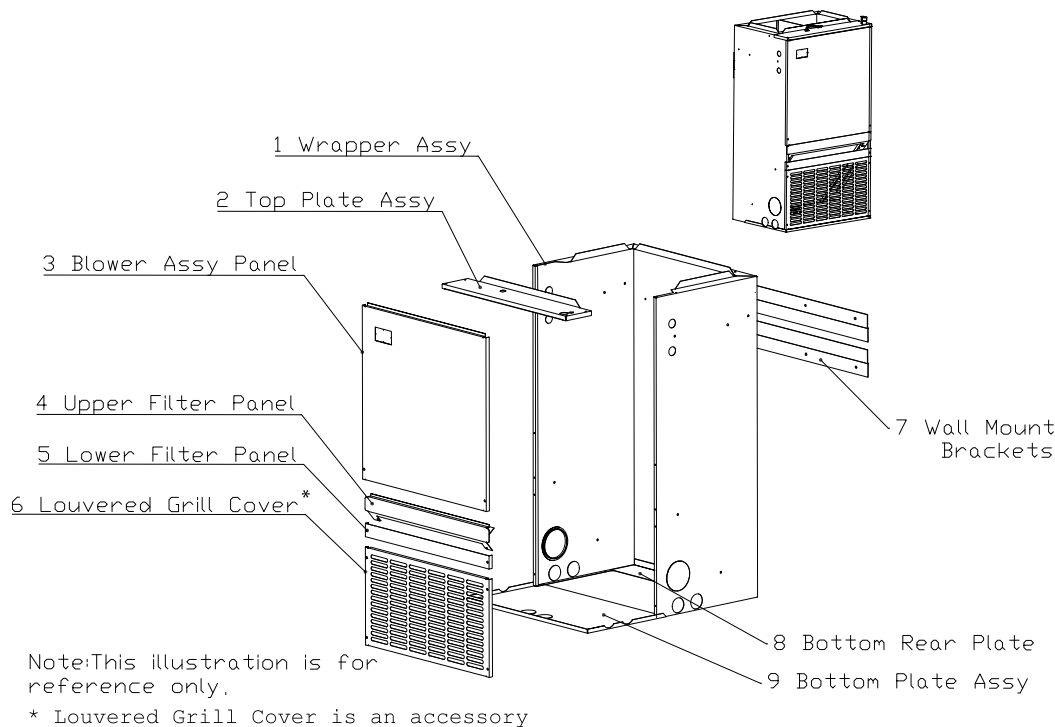
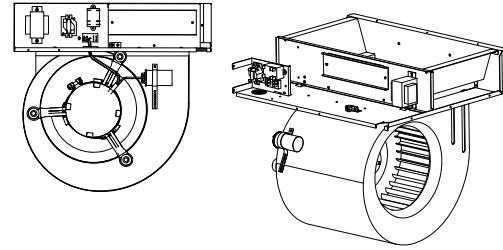
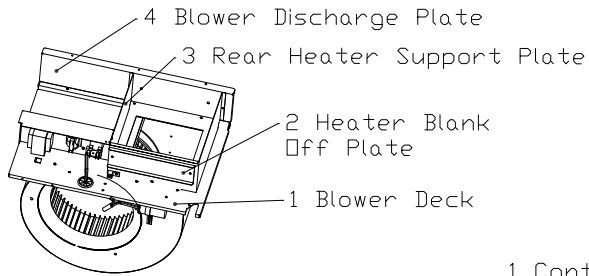


Fig. 19 – FFMA, FMA4, FMA5 (Sizes 18 & 24) Expanded View - Case

A14213

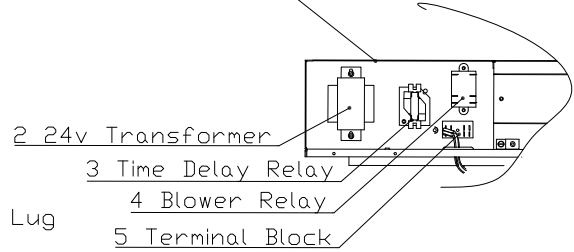
DUCT COMPONENTS(18K&24K)
 BLOWER&ELECTRICAL PARTS

DUCT COMPONENTS

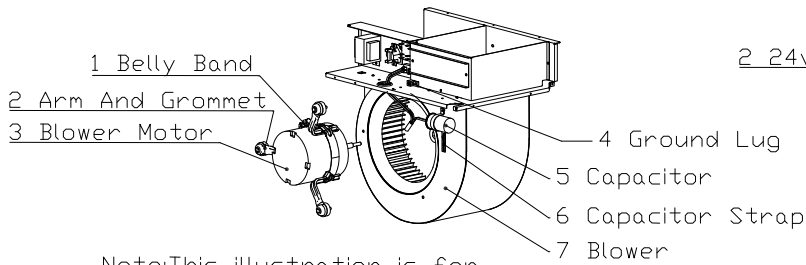


ELECTRICAL PARTS

1 Control Mounting Plate



BLOWER, MOTOR



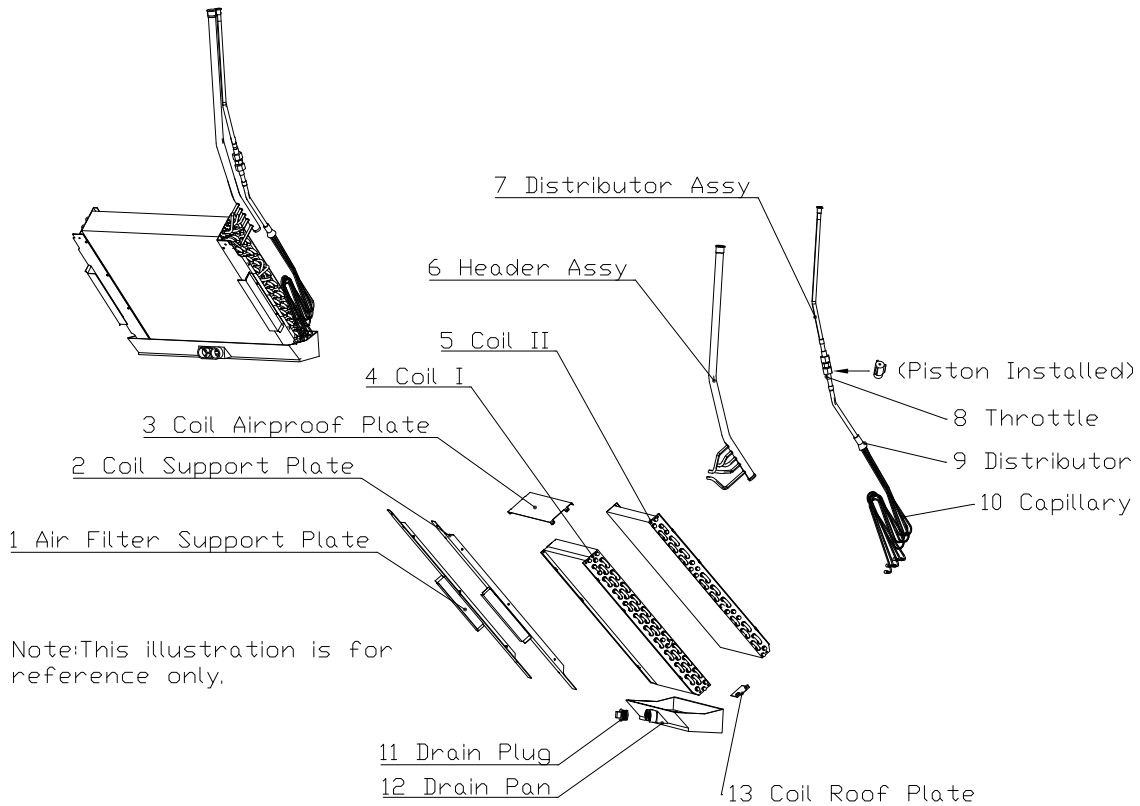
Note: This illustration is for reference only.

NOTE: Time delay PCB replaced Time delay relay in new production models.

Fig. 20 – FFMA, FMA4, FMA5 (Sizes 18 & 24) Expanded View - Duct Components, Blower & Electrical Parts

A150305

EVAPORATOR PARTS & DRAIN PAN(18K&24K)



Note: This illustration is for reference only.

Fig. 21 – FFMA, FMA4, FMA5 (Sizes 18 & 24) Expanded View - Evaporator Parts & Drain Pan

A13137

30K&36K_CASE

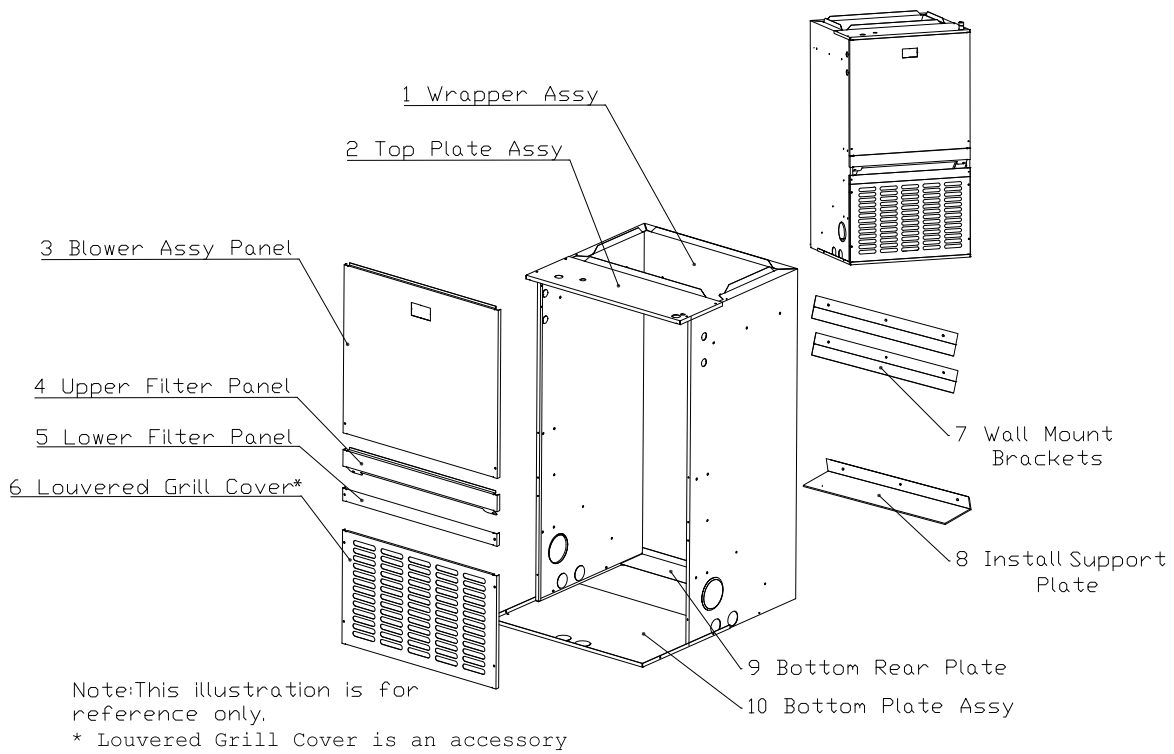


Fig. 22 – FFMA, FMA4, FMA5 (Sizes 30 & 36) Expanded View - Case

A14214

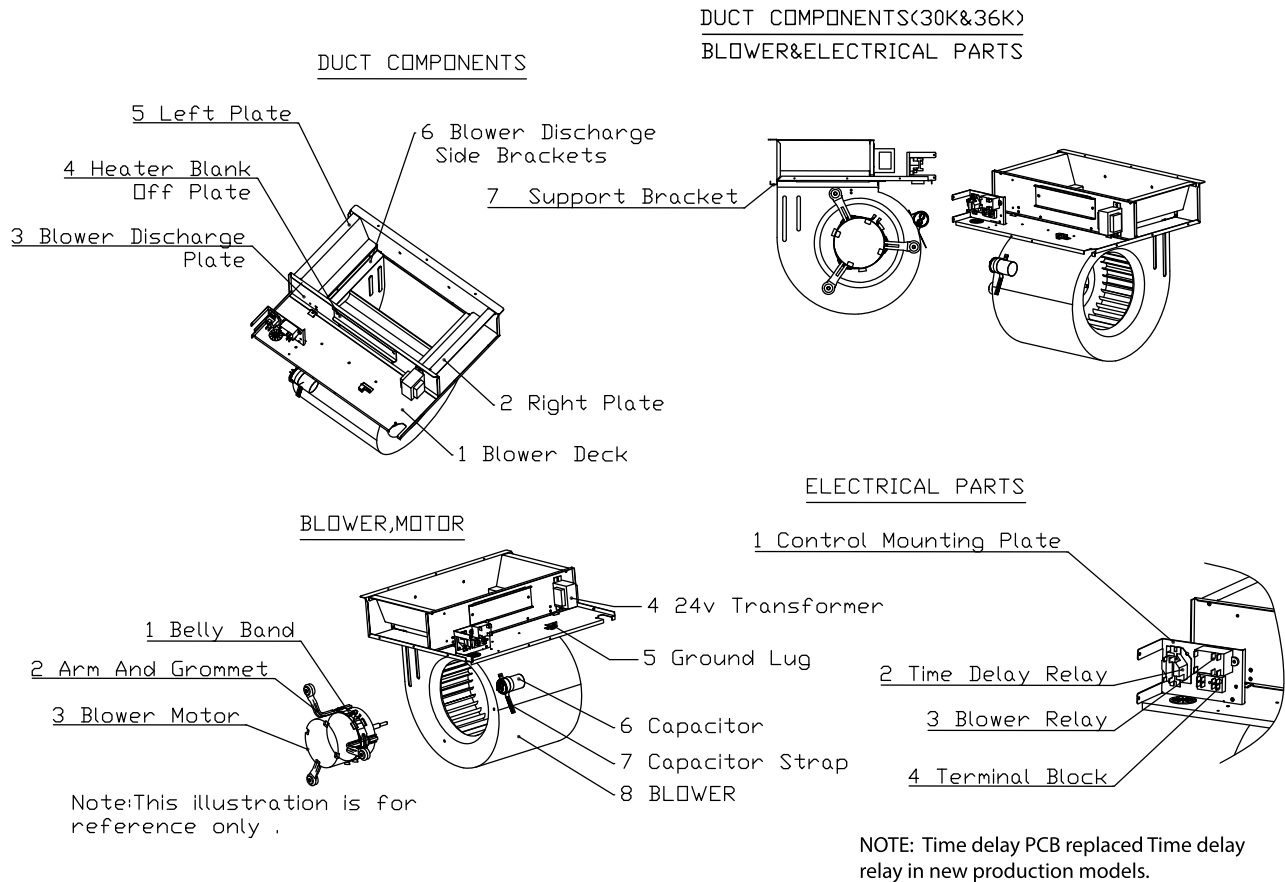


Fig. 23 – FFMA, FMA4, FMA5 (Sizes 30 & 36) Expanded View - Duct Components, Blower & Electrical Parts

A150306

EVAPORATOR PARTS & DRAIN PAN(30K&36K)

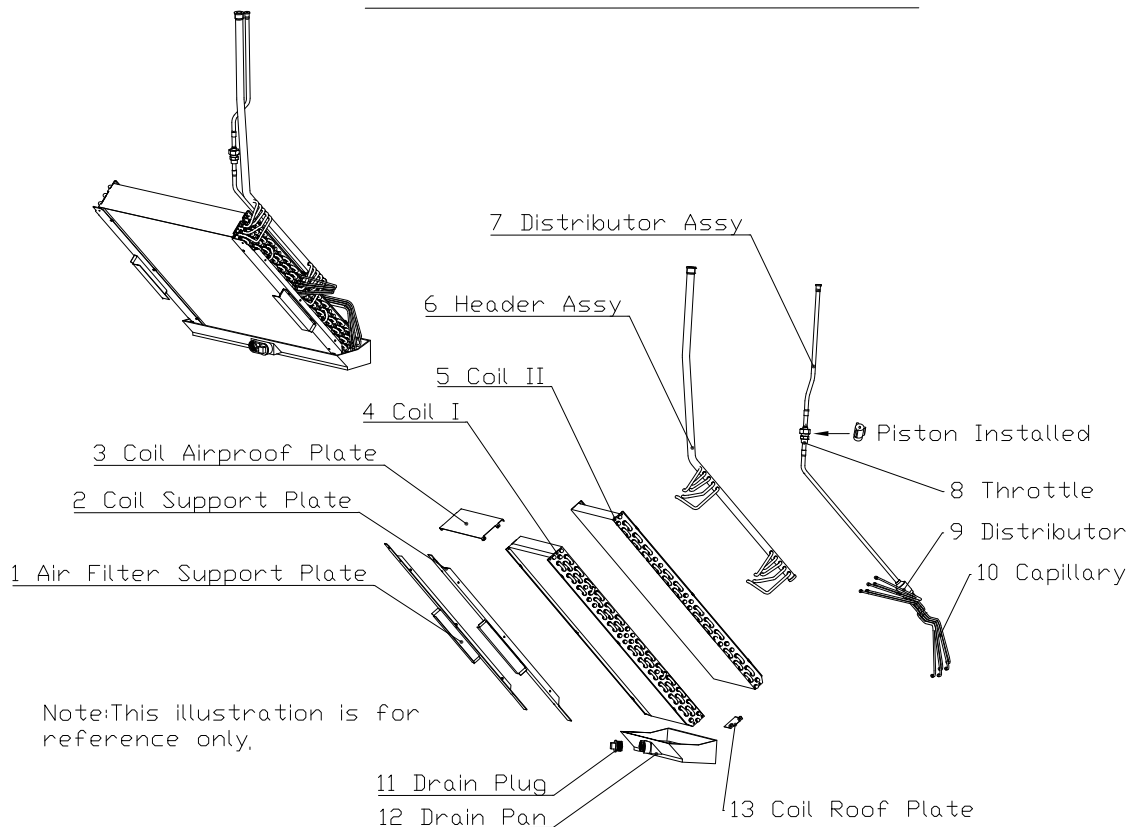


Fig. 24 – FFMA, FMA4, FMA5 (Sizes 30 & 36) Expanded View - Evaporator Parts & Drain Pan

A13140

**Electric Heater Function and Troubleshooting
FB4, FE4, FE5B, FF1E, FG5, FH4, FJ4, FJ5, FT4,
FT5, FV4, FX4, FZ, PF4, PF5**

IMPORTANT: 2023 model fan coils (FJ4/5, FT4/5, FE4B/FE5) are designed to use KFFEH electric heaters, and are not compatible with KFCEH heaters – they use different and incompatible plugs and polarities.

This section describes KFC, and KFD series electric heaters in exclusion of Smart Heat by examining the functional operation of these heaters.

Description of Electric Heater Components

Limit Switch

The limit switch is a temperature sensitive control whose function is to prevent system from overheating in abnormal conditions. The temperature settings often vary from heater to heater due to variations in airflow patterns and element radiant heat conditions.

The devices are sized to remain on-line under heat pump conditions (115° air off coil) and minimum CFM, but trip to prevent outlet air conditions above 200° F or excessive component or duct temperatures.

The device itself consists of a bimetallic disc, which when overheated "snaps through" to open a normally closed high-voltage, high-current switch. When system temperatures cool sufficiently, the switch will automatically reset to its closed position. Normal failure mode for this switch is open.

If a limit switch has been determined to be defective, NEVER BYPASS THE LIMIT SWITCH. When replacing limit switch, ensure that it is replaced with a limit switch of identical opening temperature and closing differential. Limit switches are typically color coded to identify their range.

KFC and KFD Electric Heat Relay

KFC and KFD electric heater packages have relays controlling the heater elements instead of sequencers. A small rectifier PCB is mounted to each relay which converts the incoming 24VAC control signal to DC.

In addition to the rectifier circuit, the second and third stage relays contain a time-on delay circuit of five seconds for second stage, and eight seconds for third stage. When the control signal is removed from the relays, all relays will open with no time-off delay.

Troubleshooting KFC and KFD Series Electric Heaters

Discolored Wire Insulation at Terminal

Check quick-connect terminal at discoloration. Connection may be loose, creating a high resistance through connection point.

Fuse Failure

1. Check for shorted wire. Replace wire. Never try to fix wire using electrical tape.
2. Check shorted element. If element is shorted, replace heater.

No Heat

1. Check fuse for failure. If fuse has failed, refer to ([Fuse Failure on p24](#)).
2. Check for faulty transformer. Check output voltage of transformer secondary side R (red) and C (brown). Make sure output is between 18VAC and 30VAC. If output voltage is low and input voltage tests normal, replace transformer.
3. Check for miswired heater plug harness.
4. Check limit switch or sequencer failure. These switches should have failed in open position. If output voltage is zero volts, replace switch.
5. Check heater relay and PCB. Control voltage input to PCB should be 24VAC. Output to relay should be 18VDC minimum. If input is

present but no output, replace PCB. If output is present, replace relay.

Heater Will Not Turn Off

1. Check low-voltage wiring for miswire.
2. Check for shorted elements to ground.
3. Replace sequencer/relays. They may be stuck closed.

Nuisance Trips

1. Check for low airflow due to dirty filters, blocked registers, or undersized duct.
2. Check blower motor and wheel for proper operation. Excessive current draw of motor will cause internal overload to trip.
3. The fan speed may be low.

FFM, FMA

This section describes EHK2 series electric heaters by examining functional operation of this heater.

Service can be completed with heater in place. Shut off power before servicing.

Description of Electric Heater Components

Limit Switch

The limit switch is a temperature sensitive control that’s function is to prevent system from overheating in abnormal conditions. The temperature settings often vary from heater to heater due to variations in airflow patterns and element radiant heat conditions.

The devices are sized to remain on-line under heat pump conditions (115° F air off coil) and minimum CFM, but trip to prevent outlet air conditions above 200° F or excessive component or duct temperatures. The device itself consists of a bimetallic disc, which when overheated “snaps through” to open a normally closed high-voltage, high-current switch. When system temperatures cool sufficiently, the switch will automatically reset to its closed position. Normal failure mode for this switch is open.

If a limit switch has been determined to be defective, NEVER BYPASS THE LIMIT SWITCH. When replacing limit switch, ensure that it is replaced with a limit switch of identical opening temperature and closing differential. Limits switches are typically color-coded to identify their range.

Sequencer

Early production EHK2 heaters have sequences controlling the heater elements. The sequencer is essentially a thermally-activated time-delay relay normally activated by low-voltage control signals from thermostat. The typical sequencer is a 1- or 2-pole normally open device which energizes within 30 to 70 seconds after application of control signal and de-energizes 60 to 90 seconds after control signal is removed.

In simplistic terms, the sequencers which we use are nothing more than normally open limit switches which sit on top of a small resistive heater. When voltage is applied to this heater, a positive temperature coefficient resistor (PTC), heat is supplied to a bimetallic disc which “snaps through” and closes switch.

The time required for PTC to heat to a sufficient point controls ON timing of device. The time required for disc to cool down when power is removed controls OFF time of device. The PTC can be varied to provide varied timing. Typically a short ON equates to a long OFF.

Because this is a thermally-activated device, ambient conditions affect the ON/OFF cycle. Higher ambient temperature means shorter ON times and longer OFF times.

Application of these devices is such that the first switch ON not only turns on first heater element, but also ensures that indoor fan is energized, because first ON is last OFF. This ensures fan remains ON until the last heater de-energizes. The Time Delay Printed Circuit Board (PCB) is a logic controlled time delay activated by low-voltage control

signal (G) from thermostat. The PCB includes a normally open relay which closes to energize the blower motor when the G terminal is energized. Then when the G terminal is de-energized the relay energizing the blower motor remains closed for 90 – 100 seconds before opening.

Relays

Later production EHK2 heaters have relays controlling the heater elements instead of sequencers. A small rectifier PCB is mounted to each relay which converts the incoming 24VAC control signal to DC.

In addition to the rectifier circuit, the second and third stage relays contain a time-on delay circuit of five seconds for second stage, and eight seconds for third stage. When the control signal is removed from the relays, all relays will open with no time-off delay.

Leak Dissipation System

Operation (Models with R-454B Refrigerant)

When no leak is detected, G, Y, and W pass through the dissipation board and operate normally. In this state, the Dissipation Board Status LED remains solid yellow. When the A2L Detection Sensor reaches a threshold of detected R-454B refrigerant, the Status LED flashes one time and the dissipation board enters dissipation mode. While the detected refrigerant is over the threshold, the Status LED will continue to flash a Fault Code of 1. After the level is lower than the threshold, the Status LED flashes a code of 3 as the dissipation board completes its dissipation actions. These actions include de-energizing Y and W and energizing G for 15 minutes. After the 15 minutes if the refrigerant detected is below the threshold, there is a 5 minute delay before returning to normal operation. If the refrigerant detected is above the threshold, G continues to be energized until refrigerant is below the threshold. At that point the 5-minute delay begins.

After dissipation is complete, the unit returns to normal operation with the Status LED being solid.

System Self-Test

Power on the unit and verify proper functioning of equipment. The yellow LED on the dissipation board should be steady. If flash codes are present, see (Troubleshooting on p26).

NOTE: Operation of the Test Mode is only possible if no faults exist on the dissipation board.

IMPORTANT: Press the Test button for roughly ONE SECOND to enter Test Mode. Pressing the Test button for a longer periods enables different functions (Table 13).

Press the Test button on the dissipation system control board to ensure proper dissipation system operation under each test condition listed below. After pressing the Test button, system will enter Dissipation Mode for 60 seconds to help verify correct operation.

Table 13 – Dissipation Board Test Button Functions

Hold Button Time (sec)	Function
1 - 4	Dissipation Mode for 60 seconds
5 - 29	Display flash code history
30+	Flash code 6
3 rapid presses	Clear flash code history

Ensure that the fan coil is able to meet the minimum required dissipation mode airflows. These required minimum airflow rates during Dissipation Mode are listed in Table 15. They are based on the total system refrigerant charge quantity.

Table 14 – Required Operational Checks to Ensure Proper Dissipation System Function

Normal Operation				
Test #	T-Stat Call	Compressor	Indoor Fan	Electric/Gas Heat
1	None	Off	Off	Off
2	Cool	On	On	Off
3	Heat	Off	On	On
Dissipation Activated				
4	None	Off	On	Off
5	Cool	Off	On	Off
6	Heat	Off	On	Off

Table 15 – Required Minimum Dissipation Mode Airflows, based on Total System Refrigerant Charge Quantity

Total System Charge (lb)	Minimum Required Dissipation Airflow (CFM)	Total System Charge (lb)	Minimum Required Dissipation Airflow (CFM)
5	133	16	426
6	160	17	452
7	186	18	479
8	213	19	505
9	239	20	532
10	266	21	559
11	293	22	585
12	319	23	612
13	346	24	639
14	372	25	665
15	399		

Troubleshooting

For all flash codes, first try power cycling the system to remove the code. Refer to [Table 16](#) and [Table 17](#).

No power

Verify the wiring to/from pins 1 and 8 on the power harness plug. Check the 24V system wiring from the transformer.

Flashing 1

Check for refrigerant leaks using an independent R-454B detector. If no leaks are present, replace the sensor.

Flashing 2

Check both ends of the sensor wire harness to ensure proper attachment. Power cycle the system to check whether the flash code has been removed. If the flash code is still present, replace the sensor.

Flashing 3

Check for refrigerant leaks using an independent R-454B detector.

Flashing 4

If the code does not clear after power cycling the system, replace the dissipation board.

Flashing 5

If the code does not clear after power cycling the system, replace the sensor.

Flashing 6

Press the test button repeatedly. Power cycle the system. If the button cannot be reset, replace the dissipation board.

Flashing 7

Verify wiring of all "Y" and "W" wires in the applicable wiring diagram.

Flashing 8

Verify wiring of all "Y" and "W" wires in the applicable wiring diagram.

Table 16 – Flash Code Chart

Yellow LED	Reason	Mode
Solid	Normal Operation	Normal Operation
Flashing 1	Sensor >= 20% LFL	Dissipation
Flashing 2	Sensor Open	Dissipation
Flashing 3	Normal Mitigation after Leak	Dissipation
Flashing 4	No Power to G Output	Dissipation with no Blower
Flashing 5	Fault with A2L Digital Sensor	Dissipation
Flashing 6	Test Button Stuck (>30 s)	Dissipation
Flashing 7	Y or W Wiring Inverted	Normal Operation
Flashing 8	Y or W Shorted	Normal Operation

Table 17 – Wall-Hung FMA5 Control Board Test Functions

LED Status	Description
Steady ON	Normal Operation
OFF	Power Supply Failure
Steady Flashing	Dissipation Mode Active
3 Flash / Cycle	A2L Sensor Error
4 Flash / Cycle	A2L Sensor Communication Error
8 Flash / Cycle	A2L Sensor Over Service Life

Care and Maintenance

To continue high performance, and minimize possible equipment failure, it is essential periodic maintenance be performed on this equipment.

The ability to properly perform maintenance on this equipment requires certain mechanical skills and tools. The only consumer service recommended or required is filter maintenance ([Filter Assembly on p27](#))

WARNING

ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death. Disconnect all power to the unit before servicing the field wires or removing the control package. The disconnect (when used) on the access panel does not disconnect power to the line side of the disconnect, but does allow safe service to all other parts of the unit.

The minimum maintenance requirements for this equipment are as follows:

1. Inspect and clean or replace air filter each month or as required.
2. Inspect cooling coil, drain pan, and condensate drain each cooling season for cleanliness. Clean as necessary.
3. Inspect blower motor and wheel for cleanliness each heating and cooling season. Clean as necessary.
4. Inspect electrical connections for tightness and controls for proper operation each heating and cooling season. Service as necessary.

CAUTION

CUT HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in personal injury. Sheet metal parts may have sharp edges or burrs. Use care and wear appropriate protective clothing and gloves when handling parts.

Filter Assembly

To clean or replace air filter, push plastic connectors toward center of unit and remove filter access panel outward. Push filter up and back into unit. Then slide filter out.

Clean filter by using cold water and mild detergent. Rinse and allow filter to dry. No oiling or coating of filter is required. New filters are available from your local distributor. Place filter in slot with cross-mesh binding up or facing cooling coil and replace filter access panel.


Cooling Coil, Drain Pan, and Condensate Drain

The cooling coil is easily cleaned when it is dry. Inspect the coil and clean (if necessary) before each cooling season. To check or clean cooling coil, remove coil access panel. If coil is coated with dirt or lint, vacuum it with a soft brush attachment.

Be careful not to bend coil fins. If coil is coated with oil or grease, clean it with a mild detergent and water solution. Rinse coil thoroughly with clear water. Be careful not to splash water on insulation.

Inspect drain pan and condensate drain at the same time cooling coil is checked. Clean drain pan and condensate drain by removing any foreign matter from pan. Flush pan and drain tube with clear water.

If drain tube is restricted, it can generally be cleared by high-pressure water. Cut plastic line and work outside condensate pan and away from coil to clean drain tube.



CAUTION

UNIT DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in equipment damage. Do not use caustic household drain cleaners in the condensate pan or near the coil. Drain cleaners can quickly destroy a coil.

Blower Motor and Wheel

Clean blower motor and wheel when cooling coil is cleaned.


WARNING

ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death. Disconnect electrical power before removing any access panels. Lock out and tag switch with a suitable warning label.

To clean blower motor or blower wheel:

1. Remove blower access panel.
2. Remove motor leads from fan coil control. Note lead location for ease of reassembly.
3. Remove the two outside screws holding blower/motor assembly against blower deck flange and slide assembly out of cabinet.
 - Servicing the blower assembly may require the removal of two screws that attach the blower housing to the fan deck. It is not necessary to reinstall these screws after service.
4. (If applicable) Remove screw in strap holding motor capacitor to blower housing and slide capacitor out from under strap. Remove screw with green wire from blower housing. Mark blower wheel, motor, and motor support in relation to blower housing before disassembly to ensure proper reassembly. Note position of blades on wheel.
5. Loosen setscrew holding blower wheel onto motor shaft.
6. Remove the three bolts holding motor mount to blower housing and slide motor and mount out of housing. Further disassembly should not be necessary as adequate clearance is available.
7. Remove blower wheel from housing by removing cutoff plate from blower housing outlet. Note wheel orientation and cutoff location

for reassembly. The blower motor and wheel may be cleaned by using a vacuum with a soft brush attachment.

8. Remove grease with a mild solvent such as hot water and detergent. Be careful not to disturb balance weights (clips) on blower-wheel vanes. Also, do not drop or bend wheel, as balance will be affected.


To reassemble blower:

1. Place blower wheel back into housing. Be sure to position correctly for proper location.
2. Reassemble cutoff plate to housing using identified holes from disassembly procedure.
3. Position motor and mount in same position as when blower housing was in unit. Secure motor mount on housing, using removed bolts. Make sure mount or motor is grounded to blower housing.
4. Locate blower wheel setscrew over flat on motor shaft. Rotate wheel in housing. It should not rub housing and should be centered in inlet opening. If not, loosen setscrew and align as necessary.
5. Attach green wire to blower housing with screw.
6. (If applicable). Secure motor capacitor under strap and tighten strap screw.
7. Slide blower assembly to blower deck. Be sure (once blower is within the unit casing) to force blower assembly toward control box while sliding assembly into unit to ensure that blower assembly engages deck properly.
8. Fasten blower assembly to deck with screws previously removed.
9. Reconnect electrical leads to fan coil control.
10. Reconnect electrical power to unit and test fan for proper rotation.

FF1E, FFMA, FMA

The minimum maintenance requirements for this equipment are as follows:

1. Inspect and clean or replace air filter each month or as required.
2. Inspect cooling coil, drain pan, and condensate drain each cooling season for cleanliness. Clean as necessary.
3. Inspect blower motor and wheel for cleanliness each heating and cooling season. Clean as necessary.
4. Inspect electrical connections for tightness and controls for proper operation each heating and cooling season. Service as necessary.
5. **FMA5 units only**—verify dissipation system is in normal operation by verifying the status LED on the control board is Steady ON and not blinking or OFF.


CAUTION

CUT HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in personal injury. Sheet metal parts may have sharp edges or burrs. Use care and wear appropriate protective clothing and gloves when handling parts.

Air Filter

The air filter should be replaced as needed.

NOTE: Refer to the installation instructions and product data for filter dimensions. 2023 product has been designed to accommodate common sized filters.


CAUTION

UNIT DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in equipment damage. Never operate unit without a filter.

Cooling Coil, Drain Pan, and Condensate Drain

The cooling coil is easily cleaned when it is dry. Inspect coil and clean (if necessary) before each cooling season. To check or clean cooling coil, remove blower/heater access panel to gain full access to cooling coil. If coil is coated with dirt or lint, vacuum with a soft brush attachment.

Be careful not to bend coil fins. If coil is coated with oil or grease, clean it with a mild detergent and water solution. Rinse coil with clear water.

Be careful not to splash water onto insulation.

Inspect drain pan and condensate drain at same time cooling coil is checked. Clean drain pan and condensate drain by removing any foreign matter from pan. Flush pan and drain tube with clear water.

If drain tube is restricted, it can generally be cleared by high-pressure water. Cut plastic line and work outside condensate pan and away from coil to clear drain tube.

NOTE: There MUST be a trap in the condensate line. The trap must be at least 3-in. deep, not higher than the bottom of unit condensate drain opening, and pitched downward to an open drain or sump.

! CAUTION

UNIT DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in equipment damage. Do not use caustic household drain cleaners in the condensate pan or near the coil. Drain cleaners can quickly destroy a coil.

Blower Motor and Wheel

Clean blower motor and wheel when cooling coil is cleaned.

To clean or service wheel or motor, proceed as follows:

1. Pull unit disconnect (when used) and remove blower access panel.
2. Disconnect motor electrical leads from control box and capacitor. Mark location of wires for reassembly.
3. Remove the three bolts holding motor mount to blower housing while supporting motor shell with hand.
4. Pull motor inlet ring and blower wheel assembly out of blower housing.

5. With blower wheel, inlet ring, and motor mount still attached to motor, place motor on flat, horizontal surface, shaft up. Mark position of wheel on motor shaft for reassembly.
6. Loosen blower wheel setscrew and remove blower wheel from motor shaft.

NOTE: Further disassembly of motor and mount is not necessary as adequate clearance is available to clean motor.

7. Clean blower motor and wheel using a vacuum with a soft brush attachment. Remove grease with a mild solvent such as hot water and detergent. Be careful not to disturb balance weights (clips) on blower wheel vanes. Do not drop or bend wheel as balance will be affected.

To reassemble unit, proceed as follows:

1. Place motor with mount attached on flat, horizontal surface with shaft up.
2. Set inlet ring on top of motor mount grommets. Center inlet ring flush on all three grommets.
3. Slide blower wheel onto motor shaft with setscrew upward and aligned with shaft flat portion. Vertically position wheel along shaft to position marked during disassembly.

NOTE: If previous shaft was not marked or if replacing previous motor, set blower wheel position by sliding blower wheel along motor shaft to 1-1/8-in. above rubber grommets (Fig. 25).

4. Hold blower wheel in place and carefully tighten setscrew.
5. Position motor and blower wheel assembly to blower housing as originally oriented.
6. Secure motor mount to blower housing using bolts previously removed.
7. Attach green wire to blower housing with screw.
8. Connect electrical and capacitor leads to original terminals.
9. Replace blower access door and tighten all four screws.
10. Reinsert disconnect pullout only after blower access door is secured. Test blower for proper operation.

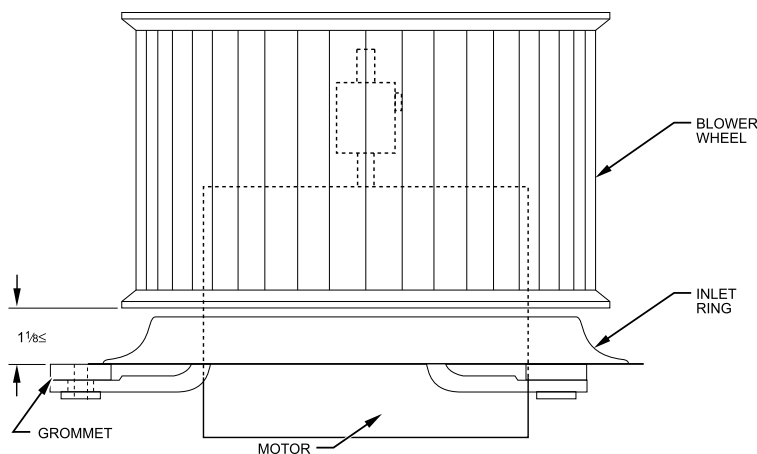


Fig. 25 – Motor, Inlet Ring, and Blower Wheel Assembly

A86006

Refrigerant Flow-Control Devices

Thermostatic Expansion Valves (TXV)

NOTE: 2023 models (FE4B, FE5B, FJ4, FJ5, F54, FT4, FT5, PF5) and beyond (R-454B models) use a mechanical TXV. Refer to the TXV Installation Instructions. Torque the equalizer fitting to 10–20ft-lb; do not exceed 20 ft-lb.

All Fan Coils with a TXV are factory equipped with a hard shutoff (HSO) TXV. The hard shutoff TXV has no bleed port and allows no bleed-through after system is shutdown.

The TXV is a bi-flow metering device that is used in condensing and heat pump systems to adjust to changing load conditions by maintaining a preset superheat temperature at the outlet of the evaporator coil. The volume of refrigerant metered through the valve seat is dependent upon the following:

1. Superheat temperature is sensed by a sensing bulb on the suction tube at the outlet of the evaporator coil. As long as this bulb contains some liquid refrigerant, this temperature is converted into pressure pushing downward on the diaphragm, which opens the valve via push rods.

- The suction pressure at the outlet of the evaporator coil is transferred via the external equalizer tube to the underside of the diaphragm.

The bi-flow TXV is used on split system heat pumps. In cooling mode, the TXV operates the same as a standard TXV previously explained. However, when the system is switched to heating mode of operation, refrigerant flow is reversed.

The bi-flow TXV has an additional internal check valve and tubing. These additions allow refrigerant to bypass TXV when refrigerant flow is reversed with only a 1-psig to 2-psig pressure drop through device.

When heat pump switches to defrost mode, refrigerant flows through a completely open (not throttled) TXV. The bulb senses the residual heat of outlet tube of coil that had been operating in heating mode (about 85° F and 155 psig). This temporary, not-throttled valve decreases indoor pressure drop, which in turn increases refrigerant flow rate, decreases overall defrost time, and enhances defrost efficiency.

Problems Affecting TXV

Low Suction Pressure

- Restriction in TXV
- Low refrigerant charge
- Low indoor load
- Low evaporator airflow

High Suction Pressure

- Overcharging
- Sensing bulb not secure to vapor tube
- High indoor load

- Large evaporator face area

NOTE: When installing or removing TXV, wrap TXV with a wet cloth. When reattaching TXV, make sure sensing bulb is in good thermal contact with suction tube.

- The needle valve on pin carrier is spring-loaded, which also exerts pressure on underside of diaphragm via push rods, which closes valve. Therefore, bulb pressure equals evaporator pressure at outlet of coil plus spring pressure. If load increases, temperature increases at bulb, which increases pressure on topside of diaphragm, which pushes pin carrier away from seal, opening valve and increasing flow of refrigerant. The increased refrigerant flow causes increased leaving evaporator pressure which is transferred via the equalizer tube to underside of diaphragm, with which the pin carrier spring pressure closes valve. The refrigerant flow is effectively stabilized to load demand with negligible change in superheat.

Aluminum Coil Unit TXV's

The distributor used on the all-aluminum coils is also made of aluminum. The TXV connection to the distributor is accomplished with a 3/4" Chatleff nut (Fig. 26). The threads are coated with Loctite Heavy Duty Anti-Seize which is a graphite/calcium fluoride formulation, for applications that is free from copper, lead and sulfur. This product is typically used in applications with an operating range of -20° F to +2400° F. When replacing a TXV it is recommended to reapply with the same thread sealer.

Extra care should be taken during brazing of copper equalizer on the aluminum coils to prevent the braze material from splattering on the aluminum. Also, route the copper equalizer so that it doesn't touch the aluminum components.

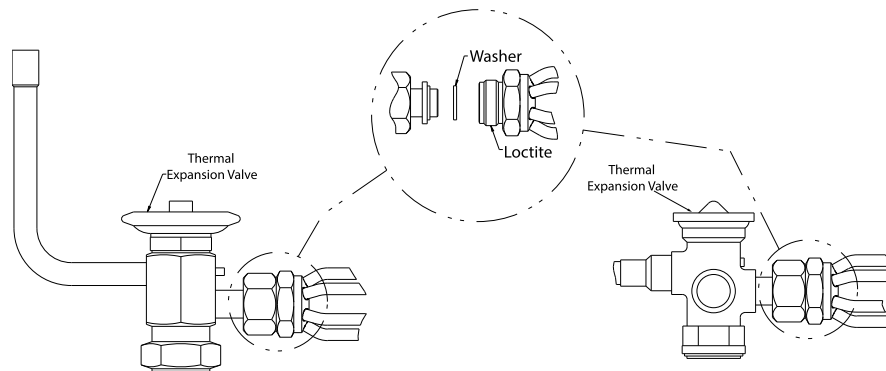


Fig. 26 – Aluminum Coil Unit TXV's

A14212

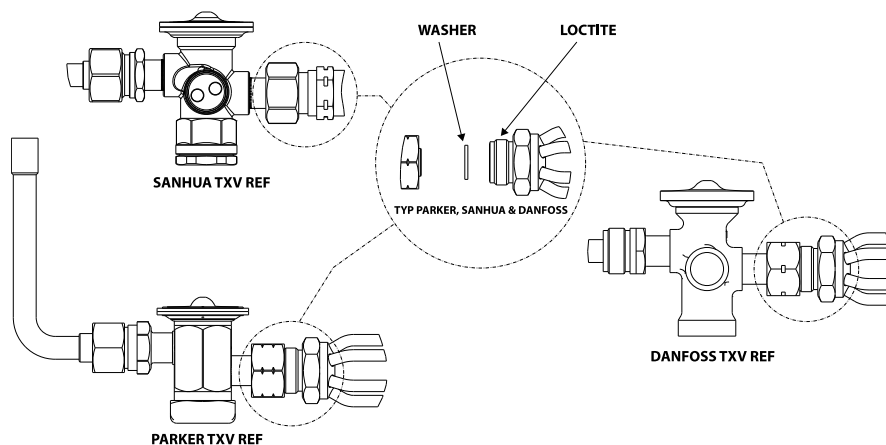


Fig. 27 – TXV Examples (Mechanical)

A230413

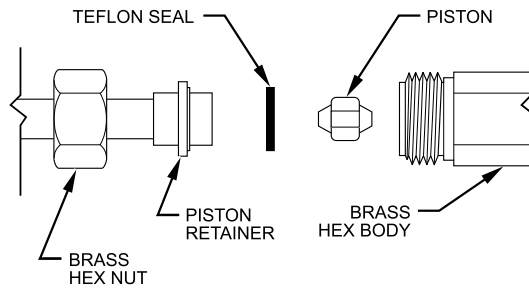


Fig. 28 – Refrigerant Flow-Control Device (For FB and FMA4P)

A93530

Piston Body Cleaning and Replacement

! CAUTION

ENVIRONMENTAL HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in environmental damage. Do not vent refrigerant to atmosphere. Recover during system repair or final unit disposal.

! CAUTION

UNIT DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution could result in equipment damage. Damage may occur to the scroll compressor if operated at a negative suction pressure during a system pumpdown.

1. Pump down outdoor unit. Close service valves at outdoor unit.
2. Recover remaining refrigerant from tubing and coil through gage port on vapor-tube service valve. Disconnect refrigerant (liquid) tube from piston body (Fig. 28).
3. Avoid damaging seal ring or machined surfaces on piston, bore, and retainer.
4. Using small wire with a hook on end of it, remove piston from body.

! CAUTION

UNIT DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution could result in equipment damage. When cleaning the piston orifice, be careful not to scratch or enlarge the opening, as this will affect operation.

1. Install new or cleaned piston into body.
2. Replace seal ring on retainer.
3. The threads are coated with Loctite Heavy Duty Anti-Seize. It is recommended to reapply with the same thread sealer.
4. Reconnect refrigerant tube to piston body.
5. Pressurize tubing and coil, then leak check.
6. Evacuate tubing and coil as necessary.

! CAUTION

UNIT DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution could result in equipment damage. Use a backup wrench and do not over tighten, as deformation of the piston body will occur, causing the piston to lodge in a partially open or closed position.

Liquid Tube Strainer

In R-22 all units, the TXV and refrigerant flow-control device is protected on the indoor coil by a wire mesh strainer. It is located inside the 3/8" liquid tube at field braze joint just outside unit casing. Access to strainer is through field braze joint.

Aluminum Coil Repair

Repairing leaks on aluminum coils is possible using the aluminum brazing method. Specific braze and flux material designed for aluminum are necessary for aluminum brazing. A kit containing all materials necessary for making and aluminum braze repair is available through Replacement Components (kit No. 337748-751).

Do not use a previously-used wire brush to clean copper when preparing an aluminum braze site. Copper particles in contact with an aluminum coil may cause premature failure. Service aluminum coils are also available as a coil repair option.

NOTE: Replacement of an indoor slope or A-coil must include recovery and recycling of refrigerant currently in the system. Provided the refrigerant has not been contaminated with moisture, acid, solid particulate, or non-condensibles, it may be recovered by following the procedures listed below. However, if the refrigerant is contaminated, recycling or reclaiming methods are required. If leaks are present in the system, meaning the refrigerant may be contaminated, recycling or reclaiming methods **MUST** be used. Installation of new filter drier(s) is required. The filter drier-type will depend upon the contaminants in the system. See Split-System Residential Air Conditioners and Heat Pumps Service Manuals for further information.

! WARNING

PERSONAL INJURY HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in personal injury. Relieve pressure and recover all refrigerant before system repair or final unit disposal to avoid personal injury or death. Use all service ports and open all flow-control devices, including solenoid valves.

Pre-Installation

Except for coils only used with TXV fan coils, all-aluminum replacement coils are shipped with a piston body distributor, piston, and 90 degree inlet tube with piston retainer (including Teflon seal). Coil sizes used only with TXV fan coils include the TXV as part of the replacement coil.

Before installation of replacement coil, verify the piston is the correct orifice size. The correct size should be on the outdoor unit rating plate. If in doubt, reuse the piston from the old indoor coil.

Use two wrenches to separate the 13/16" Chatleff nut from the distributor body. The threads will contain Loctite anti-seize, do not remove this from the threads.

Install the piston and reattach nut to finger tight plus 1/2 turn.

The distributor used on the all-aluminum replacement coil is also made of aluminum. The distributor threads are coated with Loctite Heavy Duty Anti-Seize which is a graphite/calcium fluoride formulation, for applications that are free from copper, lead and sulfur. This product is typically used in applications with an operating range of -20° F to +2400° F (Fig. 29). When replacing a TXV it is recommended to reapply with the same thread sealer. Extra care should be taken during brazing of copper equalizer on the aluminum coils to prevent the braze material from splattering on the aluminum. Also, route the copper equalizer so that it doesn't touch the aluminum components.

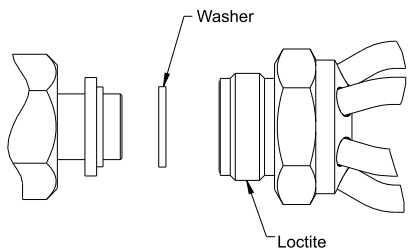


Fig. 29 – TXV Thread (Sealer) Location

A14398

Old Copper or Tin-Plated Coils with TXV

The all-aluminum replacement coil with piston will also be used for TXV style coils by reusing the original TXV. An adapter is provided to connect the replacement coil distributor to the original TXV (Fig. 30). Insulation is also provided to wrap the copper adapter tube and brass nuts to prevent any copper or brass particles from coming in contact with the aluminum coil. Even if the adapter tube is not in contact with the aluminum coil dripping condensation from the adapter tube can be a mechanism of particulate transport.

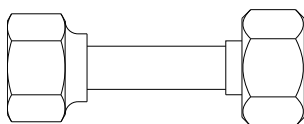


Fig. 30 – Replacement Coil Distributor Adapter

A14397

If it is preferred to install the old TXV external to the cabinet due to access, follow the steps below:

1. Field fabricate a piece of 3/8" OD copper tubing with flare and nut to attach to the TXV outlet.
2. The piston in the replacement coil must be removed. Use two wrenches to separate the 13/16" Chatleff nut from the distributor body. The threads will contain Loctite anti-seize, do not remove this from the threads.
3. Remove the piston
4. Reattach the inlet tube and tighten the nut finger tight plus 1/2 turn.
5. Remove the old coil and install replacement coil per instructions below. Reinstall the fitting door to the cabinet.
6. Field fabricate a 3/8" OD copper tubing with flare and nut.
7. Braze this tubing and nut onto the liquid stub out.
8. Attach flare and nut to TXV outlet by tightening to finger tight plus 1/2 turn with two wrenches.
9. Drill equalizer hole into suction line and braze the equalizer into the hole.
10. Attach the TXV bulb onto the suction line and insulate.

11. Insulate the entire TXV body and outlet tubing to prevent sweating.

Old All-Aluminum Coils with TXV

When replacing a previous all-aluminum coil that contains a TXV, the old TXV can be reused and mounted inside the cabinet.

1. After removal of the distributor inlet tube and piston, the old TXV is attached to the distributor with 13/16" Chatleff nut. The threads contain Loctite anti-seize that can be reused.
2. Tighten the nut finger tight plus 1/2 turn.
3. The vapor header contains a small diameter stub tube for the equalizer line.
4. Cut the end of the stub tube.
5. Insert TXV equalizer and braze together. Caution must be taken to avoid braze splatter from the aluminum surfaces of the new coil. Caution must be taken to avoid heating the factory joint of the stub tube to the vapor header.
6. The vapor header contains an indentation for the TXV bulb. Attach the bulb and insulate.

Installation – A-Coil Units Only

1. Recover system refrigerant.
 - a. Attach gage/manifold set to service valves.
 - b. Start unit in cooling mode.
 - c. Front seat (close) liquid line service valve.
 - d. Operate unit until vapor pressure reaches 5 psig (35kPa), or until suction line LPS opens.
 - e. Turn off electrical supply to outdoor unit.
 - f. Front seat (close) vapor service valve.
 - g. Recover any remaining refrigerant.

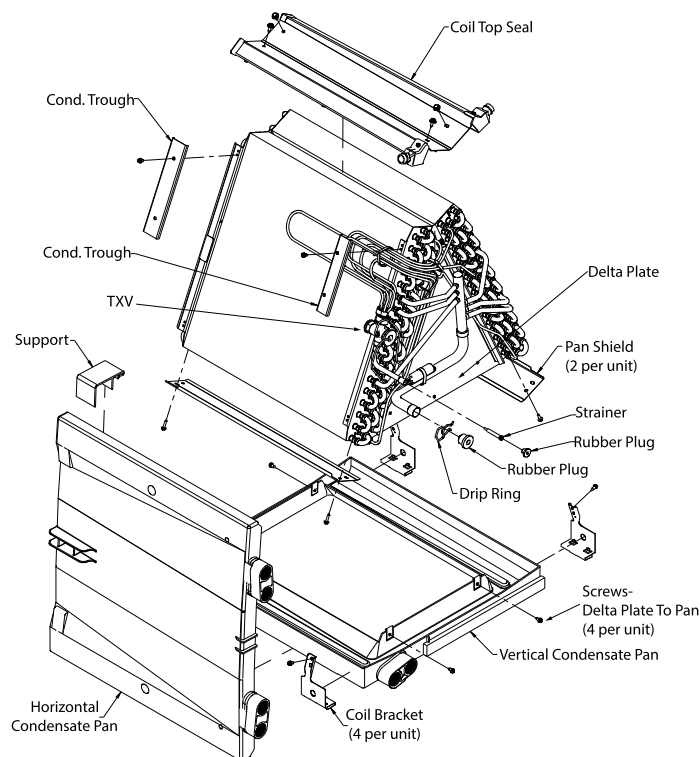


Fig. 31 – A-Coil Component Location

A13359

NOTE: All condenser coils hold only a factory-supplied amount of refrigerant. Excess refrigerant, such as in long-line applications, may cause compressor internal pressure relief valve to open (indicated by sudden rise in vapor pressure) before refrigerant is recovered. If this occurs, turn off electrical supply to outdoor unit immediately, front seat (close) vapor service valve, and recover any remaining refrigerant.

2. Turn off electrical supply to indoor unit.

3. Disconnect condensate drain line.

WARNING

PERSONAL INJURY HAZARD
 Failure to follow this caution may result in personal injury.
 Use of torch may cause oil to catch fire, resulting in personal injury or death. To remove components use tubing cutter only.

4. Disconnect liquid and vapor lines from indoor coil. Use a tubing cutter to cut the lines.
5. Remove coil access panel.
6. Remove clip securing fitting panel to condensate drain pan and remove fitting panel.
7. Remove all shipping clips (if present), including horizontal pan clip. Slide coil and condensate pan assembly out of unit.
8. Remove horizontal condensate drain pan from coil (if present) and condensate pan assembly (Fig. 31).
9. Remove 4 coil brackets if present (Fig. 31).
10. Remove screws at delta plates and remove coil from vertical condensate drain pan (Fig. 31).
11. Horizontal Applications Only—Remove drain connections and J-shaped tube from original coil, and install them in same position on new coil (Fig. 31).
12. Place coil assembly in plastic condensate pan and secure with 4 screws through delta plate (Fig. 31).
13. Horizontal and Upflow Applications Only—Attach 4 coil brackets to coil and pan assembly (Fig. 31).
14. Horizontal Applications Only—Place horizontal condensate pan into position on coil and pan assembly.

NOTE: Installation of horizontal condensate pan is not necessary for upflow or downflow applications.

15. Slide completed assembly into unit.
16. Reinstall fitting panel and reconnect clip securing fitting panel to condensate drain pan.
17. Horizontal Applications Only—Reinstall horizontal pan clip and secure with 1 screw (Fig. 31).
18. Reinstall coil access panel.
19. Reconnect liquid and vapor refrigerant lines and condensate drain line. Install new filter drier(s).

NOTE: If a torch is used to unbrazed the line set, protect the fitting panel with a wet cloth or braze shield as necessary.

20. Evacuate line set and indoor coil to 500 microns, back seat (open) liquid and vapor service valves.
21. Turn on electrical supplies to indoor and outdoor units.
22. Check system refrigerant charge and operation. See Split-System Residential Air Conditioners and Heat Pump Service Manuals for further information.

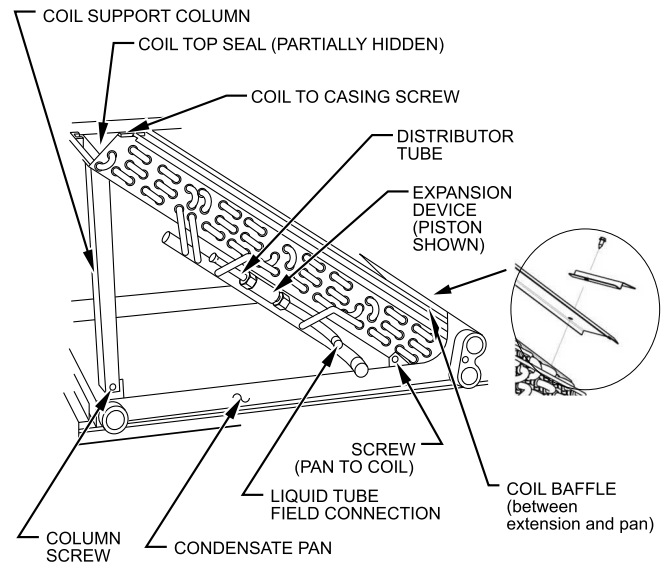


Fig. 32 – Slope Coil Component Location (Prior to 1996) ^{A14304}

Installation – Slope Coil Units Only

1. Recover system refrigerant.
 - a. Attach gage/manifold set to service valves.
 - b. Start unit in cooling mode.
 - c. Front seat (close) liquid line service valve.
 - d. Operate unit until vapor pressure reaches 5 psig (35kPa), or until suction line LPS opens.
 - e. Turn off electrical supply to outdoor unit.
 - f. Front seat (close) vapor service valve.
 - g. Recover any remaining refrigerant.

NOTE: All condenser coils hold only a factory-supplied amount of refrigerant. Excess refrigerant, such as in long-line applications, may cause compressor internal pressure relief valve to open (indicated by sudden rise in vapor pressure) before refrigerant is recovered. If this occurs, turn off electrical supply to outdoor unit immediately, front seat (close) vapor service valve, and recover any remaining refrigerant.

2. Turn off electrical supply to indoor unit.
3. Disconnect condensate drain line.
4. Disconnect liquid and vapor lines from indoor coil. Use a tubing cutter to cut the lines.
5. Remove coil access and fitting panels.

WARNING

PERSONAL INJURY HAZARD
 Failure to follow this caution may result in personal injury.
 Use of torch may cause oil to catch fire, resulting in personal injury or death. To remove components use tubing cutter only.

6. Remove 1 screw securing coil to unit casing.
7. Remove coil/pan assembly from unit.
8. Place assembly on a flat surface. On units manufactured prior to 1996, remove two screws securing coil support columns to pan (Fig. 32).
9. Rotate columns 90°, pull away from coil, and remove columns from assembly.
10. Remove two screws securing coil to condensate pan (Fig. 32 and Fig. 33).
11. Remove coil from condensate pan.
12. Attach new painted Top Seal to new coil using brass colored screws included with packaging (Fig. 32 and Fig. 33).

13. Remove screw at bottom of coil extension and reuse to attached Coil Baffle in same location. Long side of baffle toward pan (Fig. 32 and Fig. 33).
14. Install new coil into condensate pan using two original screws and two support columns.
15. Install new coil pan assembly into unit and secure with one screw previously removed from unit casing (Fig. 32).
16. Reinstall coil access panel.
17. Reconnect liquid and vapor refrigerant lines and condensate drain line. Install new filter drier(s).

NOTE: If a torch is used to unbraze the line set, protect the fitting panel with a wet cloth or braze shield as necessary.

18. Evacuate line set and indoor coil to 500 microns, back seat (open) liquid and vapor service valves.
19. Turn on electrical supplies to indoor and outdoor units.
20. Check system refrigerant charge and operation. See Split- System Residential Air Conditioners and Heat Pump Service Manuals for further information.

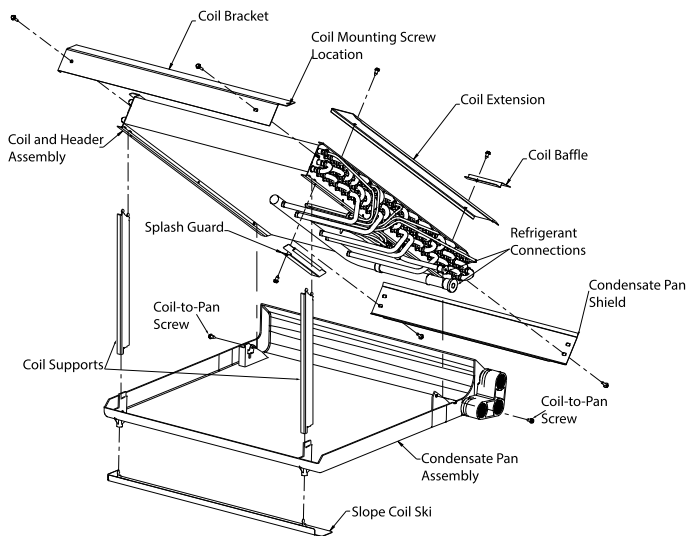


Fig. 33 – Slope Coil Component Location (1996 and Later) ^{A14307}

Installation, Operation and Maintenance Manual

Please read and save these instructions for future reference. Read carefully before attempting to assemble, install, operate or maintain the product described. Protect yourself and others by observing all safety information. Failure to comply with instructions could result in personal injury and/or property damage!

Model SP

Model SP is a direct drive ceiling exhaust fan designed for clean air applications where low sound levels are required. Many options and accessories are available such as lights, motion detectors, ceiling radiation dampers and speed controls. Capacities range from 25 to 1,600 cfm (42 to 2,718 m³/hr) and 1 in. wg (248 Pa). AMCA Licensed for Sound and Air Performance.



ENERGY STAR[®] Certified models include:
SP-A, 50, 70, 90, 200, 250, 290 and 410;
SP-B, 50, 70, 80 and 90.

WARNING!

To reduce the risk of fire, electric shock, or injury to persons, observe the following:

- Suitable for use with solid state speed controls.
- Use this unit only in the manner intended by the manufacturer. If you have questions, contact the manufacturer.
- Before servicing or cleaning unit, switch power off at service panel and lock service disconnecting means to prevent power from being switched on accidentally. When the service disconnecting means cannot be locked, securely fasten a prominent warning device, such as a tag, to the service panel.
- Installation work and electrical wiring must be done by qualified person(s) in accordance with all applicable codes and standards, including fire-rated construction.
- Sufficient air is needed for proper combustion and exhausting of gases through the flue (chimney) of fuel burning equipment to prevent back drafting. Follow the heating equipment manufacturer's guideline and safety standards such as those published by the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA), and the American Society for Heating, Refrigeration and Air Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE) and the local code authorities.
- When cutting or drilling into wall or ceiling, do not damage electrical wiring or other hidden utilities.
- Acceptable for use over a bathtub or shower when installed in a GFCI protected branch circuit. (Up through size SP-A390)
- Never place a switch where it can be reached from a tub or shower.
- Ducted fans must always be vented to the outdoors.
- These fans are not recommended for cooking exhaust applications. They are designed primarily for low temperature, clean air applications only. The diagram shows the minimum distance these fans should be placed in relation to cooking equipment.
- Fan/Light combination not to be installed in a ceiling thermally insulated to a value greater than R40.

CAUTION!

- For general ventilating use only. Do not use to exhaust hazardous or explosive materials and vapors.

Model CSP

Model CSP is a direct drive inline exhaust fan designed for clean air applications where low sound levels are required. Capacities range from 70 to 3,800 cfm (119 to 6,456 m³/hr) and 1 in. wg (248 Pa). AMCA Licensed for Air Performance.



AVERTISSEMENT!

Pour réduire le risque d'incendie, de choc électrique ou de blessure corporelle, respecter ce qui suit:

- Appareil pouvant être utilisé avec un régulateur de vitesse à semi-conducteurs.
- Utiliser cet appareil exclusivement comme prévu par le fabricant. En cas de questions, communiquer avec le fabricant à l'adresse ou au numéro de téléphone figurant dans la garantie.
- Avant tout entretien ou nettoyage de l'appareil, couper l'alimentation sur le tableau électrique et verrouiller le dispositif de sectionnement pour empêcher toute mise sous tension accidentelle. Si le dispositif de sectionnement ne peut pas être verrouillé, attacher un moyen de mise en garde bien visible, tel qu'un panneau, au tableau électrique.
- La pose et le câblage électrique doivent être effectués par des personnes qualifiées en conformité avec les codes et normes en vigueur, y compris pour la résistance au feu du bâtiment.
- Une quantité d'air suffisante est nécessaire pour la bonne combustion et l'extraction des gaz brûlés par le conduit d'évacuation (cheminée) d'appareils à combustible afin d'éviter le refoulement. Veiller à suivre les indications du fabricant du matériel de chauffe, les normes de sécurité telles que celles publiées par la National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) et l'American Society for Heating, Refrigeration and Air Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE) et la réglementation en vigueur.
- Lors de la découpe ou du perçage de murs ou plafonds, ne pas endommager les câbles électriques et autres conduites masquées.
- Pose admissible au-dessus d'une baignoire ou d'une douche sous réserve de raccordement à un circuit de dérivation à protection GFCI (disjoncteur différentiel). (Jusqu'à la taille SP-A390 incluse)
- Ne jamais placer d'interrupteur à un emplacement à portée d'une baignoire ou d'une douche.
- Les caissons d'extraction à gaine doivent toujours être évacués vers l'extérieur.
- Ces caissons ne sont pas conseillés pour les applications d'aspiration de vapeurs de cuisson. Ils sont conçus essentiellement pour l'aspiration d'air propre à basse température. Le schéma indique la distance minimale de placement de ces caissons par rapport à l'équipement de cuisson.
- Le combiné ventilateur/luminaire ne devra pas être installé dans un plafond ayant une isolation thermique d'une valeur supérieure à R40.

ATTENTION!

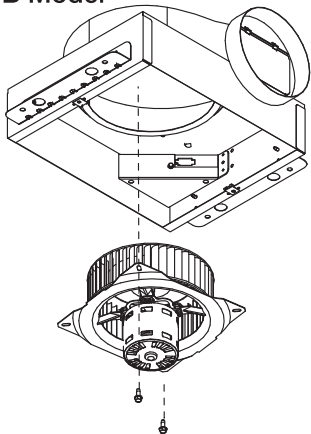
- À utiliser pour la ventilation générale uniquement. Ne pas utiliser pour l'aspiration de matières et vapeurs dangereuses ou explosives.

Prepare the fan

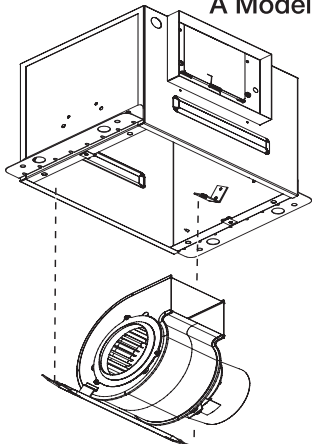
Power Assembly

If power assembly (motor, wheel, and scroll) is not installed in housing, insert the electrical plug into fan socket, then slide scroll end of power assembly into fan housing. Attach by using two sheet metal screws provided.

B Model

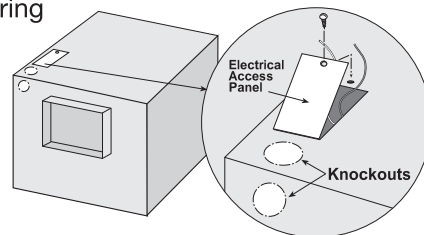


A Model



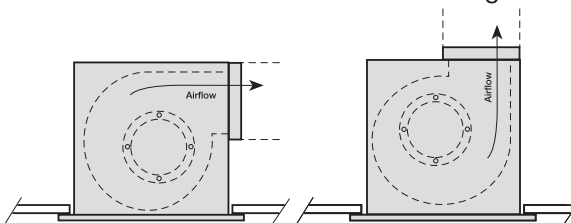
Remove Wiring Knockout

Remove either top or side wiring knockout, depending on wiring direction, by bending it back and forth to break tabs.



Ductwork

Check ductwork to see if the fan's discharge requires rotation from horizontal to vertical discharge.

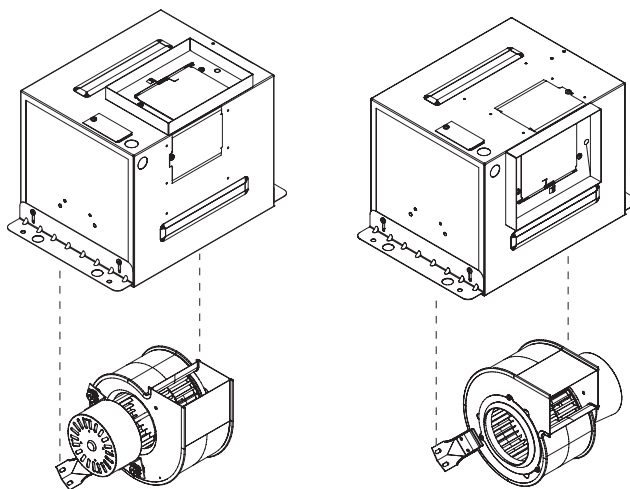


Fan Rotation

To rotate from horizontal to vertical discharge
A-Models Only

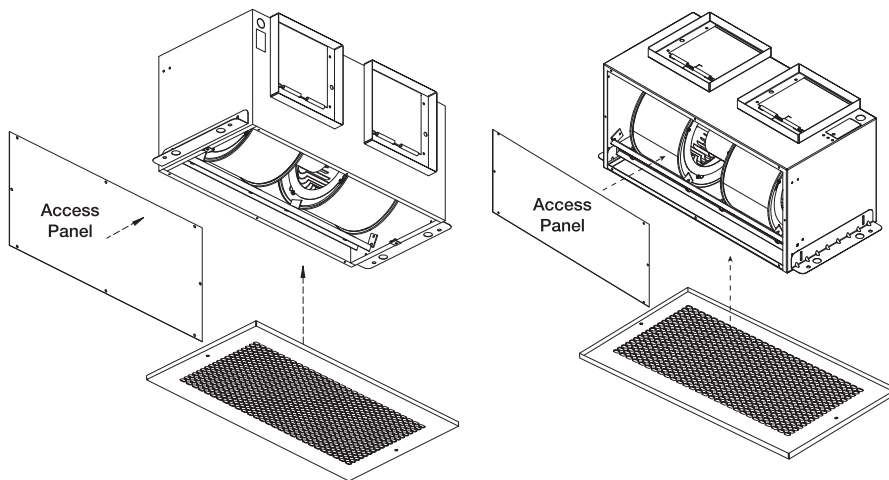
A-50-500, 710, 780 Models

Remove the two screws holding the power assembly in and pull power assembly out. Rotate power assembly 180 degrees and put back into fan. Use the same screws to reattach power assembly to fan housing. Flip fan over and remove the four screws holding the discharge duct and damper assembly. Exchange the assembly with plate mounted on top of fan, as shown in these illustrations.



A-700, 900-1500 Models

Remove the eight screws holding the access panel or collar as shown in picture. Rotate the fan housing so the discharge is facing up. Replace access panel or collar and screws.



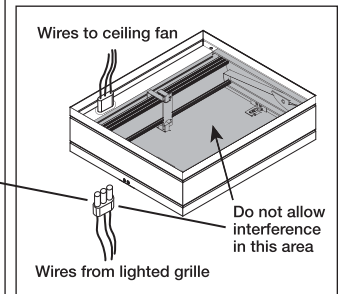
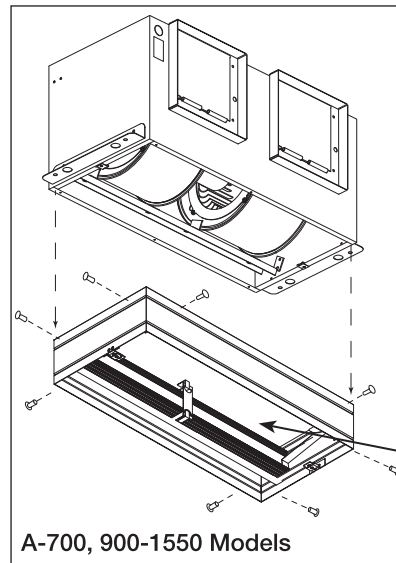
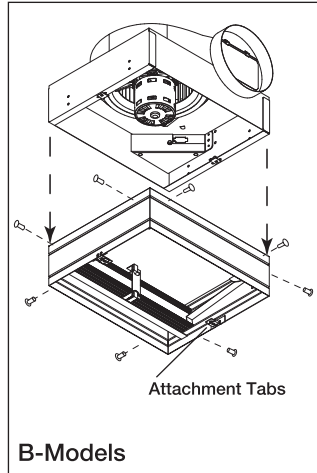
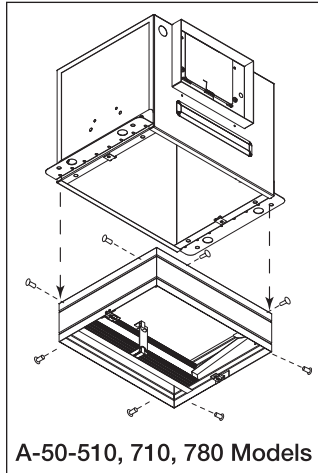
Ceiling Radiation Damper (CRD)

If fan is to be used in a fire resistive membrane ceiling, a ceiling radiation damper must be used.

If the ceiling radiation damper is already mounted to the fan from the factory, proceed to Install the Fan.

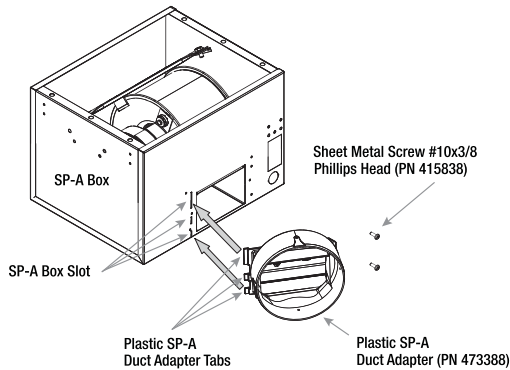
To mount the ceiling radiation damper to fan, make sure grille attachment tabs are facing down. Then place the inlet part of the fan into the ceiling radiation damper collar, and use self-tapping sheet metal screws (by others) to screw through the damper collar and into the fan housing. If the fan/light combination is being used, make sure ceiling

radiation damper has an electrical plug in it. The electrical plug must be inserted into the fan. Make sure the electrical wire will not interfere with damper operation as shown in figure below.

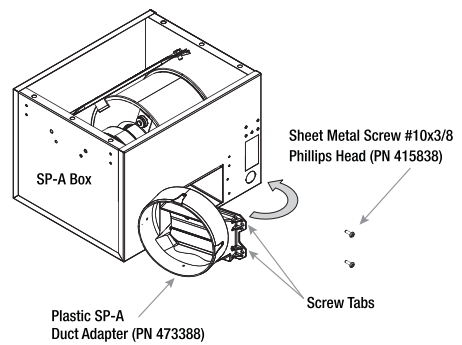


Discharge Installation SP-A 50-90 Models

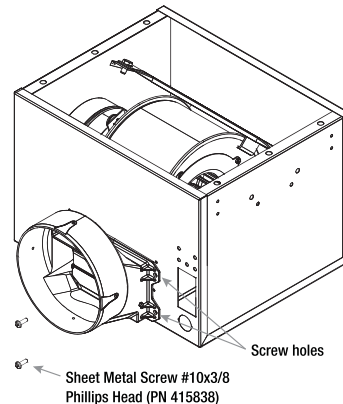
1 Insert plastic duct tab into SP-A box slots.



2 Rotate plastic SP-A duct adapter (PN 473388) until the screw tabs meet SP-A box.

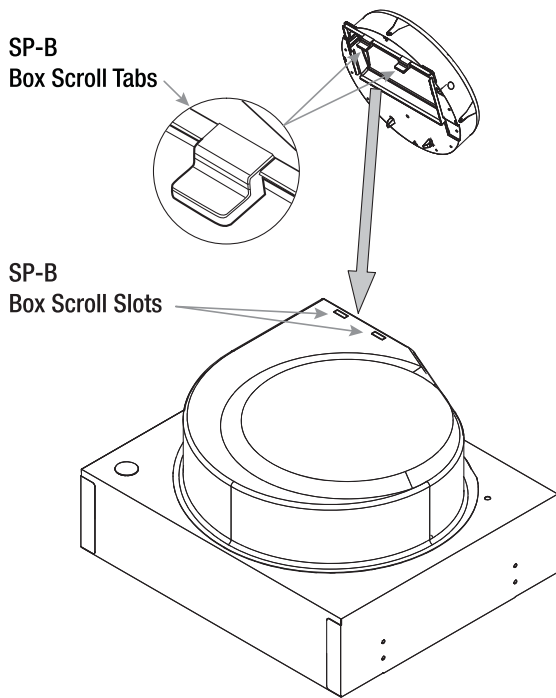


3 Install screws provided to secure discharge.

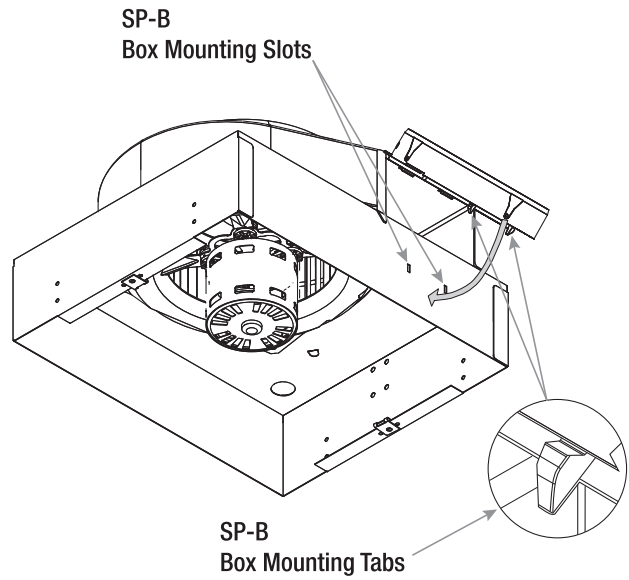


Discharge Installation SP/CSP-B 50-200 Models

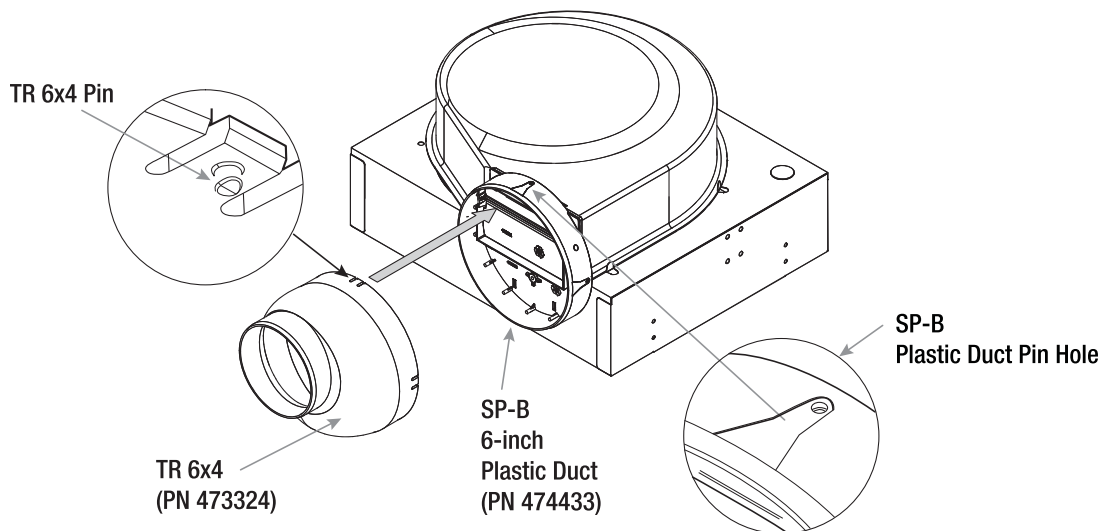
- 1** Insert SP-B box scroll tab into SP-B box scroll slots.



- 2** Rotate plastic SP-B duct adapter (PN 474433) until the two SP-B mounting tabs fully engage into the two SP-B box mounting slots.



- 3** **OPTIONAL**
Align the pins on the TR 6x4 adaptor to the duct pin hole on the SP-B 6-inch duct. Push until the adaptor snaps into place.



Install the Fan

- For best performance, choose a location with the shortest possible duct run and minimum number of elbows. Do not mount near cooking equipment, as shown in Fig. 1.

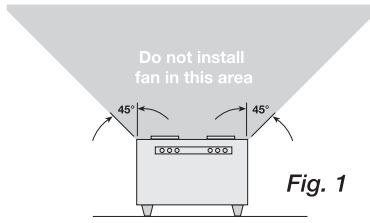


Fig. 1

- Attach adjustable mounting brackets to fan, but leave the screws loose until proper height is determined, shown in Fig. 2. Cut hole to dimensions shown in table below:

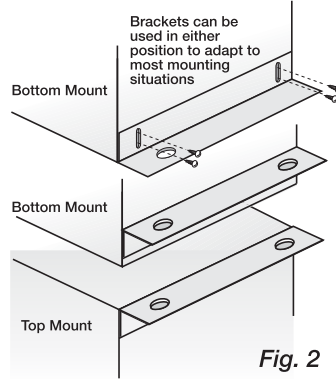


Fig. 2

Ceiling Openings		
Sizes	Fan or Fan/Light	Fan/CRD
SP-A50, A70, A90 SP-A110, A125, A190	10 ⁷ / ₈ x 13 ³ / ₈	11 ¹ / ₈ x 13 ⁷ / ₁₆
SP-A200, A250, A290, A390	12 ¹ / ₈ x 14 ¹ / ₄	12 ¹ / ₄ x 14 ³ / ₈
SP-A700	23 ³ / ₄ x 11 ³ / ₄	24 ¹ / ₈ x 12 ¹ / ₄
SP-A410, A510, A710, A780	14 ³ / ₄ x 18 ³ / ₈	14 ⁷ / ₈ x 18 ⁷ / ₁₆
SP-A900, A1050, A1410, A1550	14 ³ / ₄ x 24	14 ⁷ / ₈ x 24 ¹ / ₈
SP-B 50 - 200	14 ¹ / ₈ x 11 ³ / ₄	14 ³ / ₈ x 12 ¹ / ₄

NOTE

Model SP-A 50-90 are standard with a round duct. Should Model SP-A 110-190 require a round duct, Model RDC (Round Duct Connector) may be ordered from Greenheck for field installation.

For Frame Construction:

Position unit between joists. Position brackets such that bottom edge of housing will be flush with finished ceiling, and tighten the adjustable mounting brackets, shown in Fig. 3.

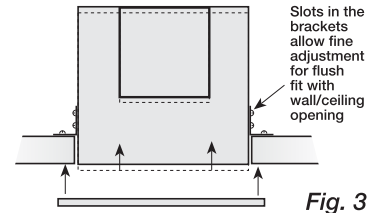


Fig. 3

For Hanging Installations:

Use Greenheck's optional vibration isolator kit Part Number VI Kit. Using the fan's standard adjustable mounting brackets and 10 by 32 threaded rod (by others), hang unit as shown in Fig. 4.

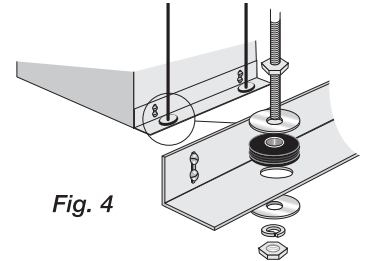
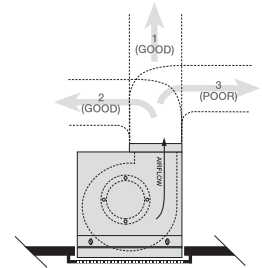


Fig. 4

- Installation of ductwork is critical to the performance of the fan, shown in Fig. 5. Straight ductwork (1) or ductwork that turns in the same direction as the wheel (2) is recommended. Ductwork turning opposite the wheel direction (3) will cause turbulence and back pressure resulting in poor performance.

Fig. 5



- Slide ductwork over the fan's discharge collar and securely attach it with sheet metal screws.

Make sure the screws do not interfere with damper operation. Check damper to make sure it opens freely.

Wire the Fan

- If installed, remove wiring cover. If fan/light combination is being used, make sure the fan plug is connected to the fan receptacle and the light plug is connected to the light receptacle, shown in Fig. 6. Using proper wire connectors, wire the fan as shown in Fig. 7a. For wiring of light proceed to Fig. 7b.

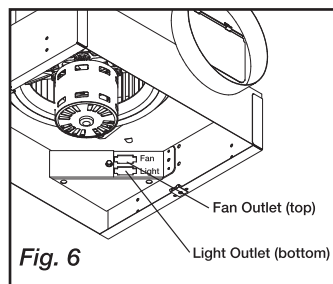


Fig. 6

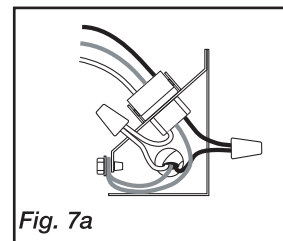


Fig. 7a

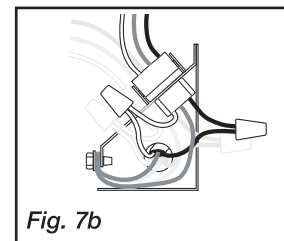


Fig. 7b

115 & 277 Volt
Black wire is "Hot"
White wire is "Neutral"
Green wire is "Ground"

220 - 240 Volt
Black wire is "Hot"
White wire is "Hot"
Green wire is "Neutral/Ground"

- Push all wiring into the unit's cover and replace wiring cover.

Attach the Grille

1. If lighted grille is being used, plug wire into fan socket.
If lighted grille and ceiling radiation damper are being used, plug wire from lighted grille into ceiling radiation damper socket. Do not plug wire directly into the fan socket. Make sure the wire does not interfere with the ceiling radiation damper operation.
2. Attach grille with two screws provided. Make sure not to over tighten; over tightening will damage grille.
3. Slide attachment screw covers over the attachment screws, shown in Figure 8 and 9.
4. If lighted grille is being used, install light bulb(s) into light socket(s). For incandescent lights, use maximum 100 watt bulb (by others). For fluorescent lights, use 27W GU24 bulbs. Greenheck has replacement 27W GU24 bulbs call 1-800-355-5354 to order.
5. If lighted grille is being used, snap lens into place, by pushing on the outside edges of lens, shown in Fig. 9. To remove lens, use small screw driver and pry on one side of lens.
6. Turn on power and check fan and light operation.

Fig. 8

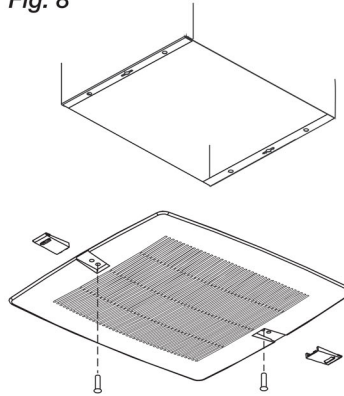
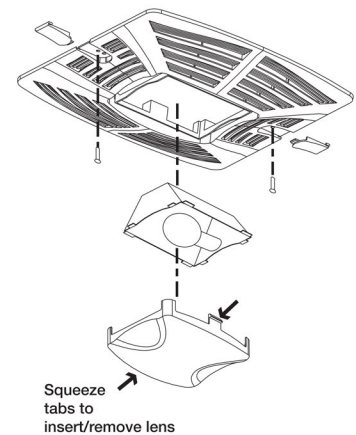


Fig. 9



Converting from ceiling to cabinet design for Model SP fans

All SP convertible sizes will be shipped with grille and duct collar cover.

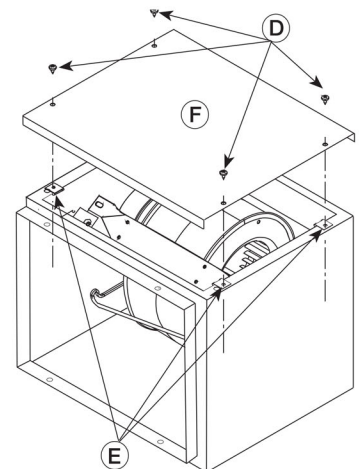
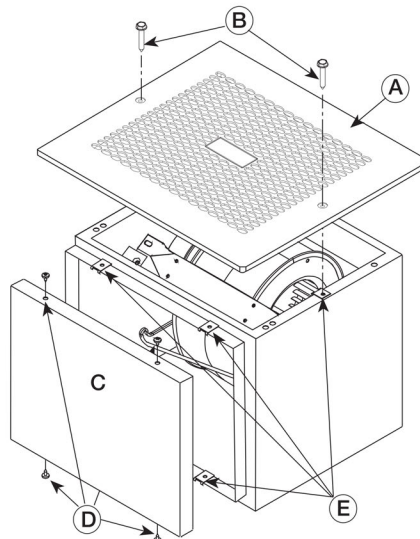
Conversion Kit Parts List

- Qty. of 1 Blower Box Cover

Tools Required

- Phillips Head Screwdriver

- Step 1: Remove grille (A) by removing the two grille screws (B).
- Step 2: Remove duct collar cover (C) by removing the four duct collar screws (D).
- Step 3: Discard grille (A), two grille screws (B), and duct collar cover (C).
- Step 4: Remove the six (6) tinnerman clips (E) by twisting them to one side and pulling straight out. Discard two of the six tinnerman clips.
- Step 5: Insert the remaining four tinnerman clips (E) on grille opening side.
- Step 6: Place blower box cover (F) over tinnerman clips (E), which were inserted in step 5.
- Step 7: Screw the blower box cover (F) into place with four blower box cover screws (D).



SP/CSP models shown are
UL and cUL listed E 33599

Other Installation Considerations

Ductwork and Noise

Fiberglass ductboard is a better choice than metal ductwork for reducing fan noise and is highly recommended for low sound applications. Where metal duct is used, sound transmission can be reduced with flexible duct connections between the fan and the duct.

Sound and Location

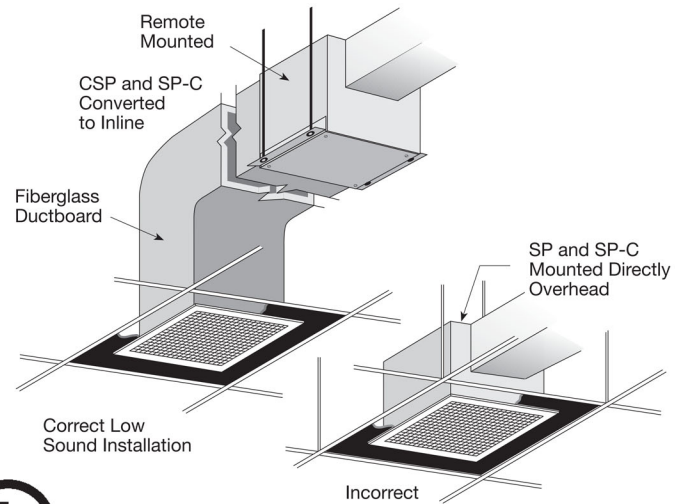
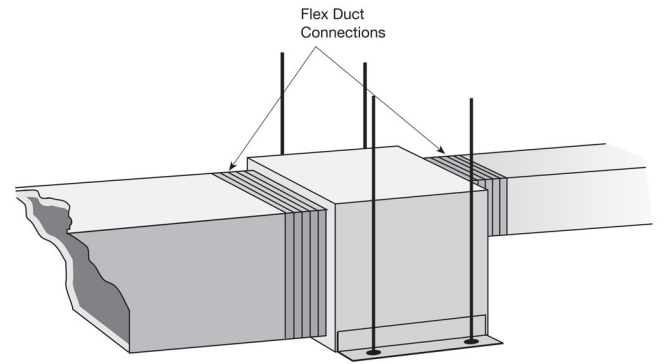
The location of these fans must be taken into consideration before installation. In critical sound installations, insulated ductwork, flexible duct connections or placing the fan in a remote section of ductwork are solutions to meeting the required fan sound levels.

Filters

The addition of an intake filter is highly recommended for these fans, even in clean air environments excess dirt can accumulate on wheels and motors causing reduced performance and imbalance.

Filters, once installed, should be checked and cleaned periodically to maintain performance.

Greenheck offers washable aluminum mesh filters specifically designed for these fans. Please consult our SP/CSP catalog for more information.



SP/CSP models shown are UL and cUL listed E 33599

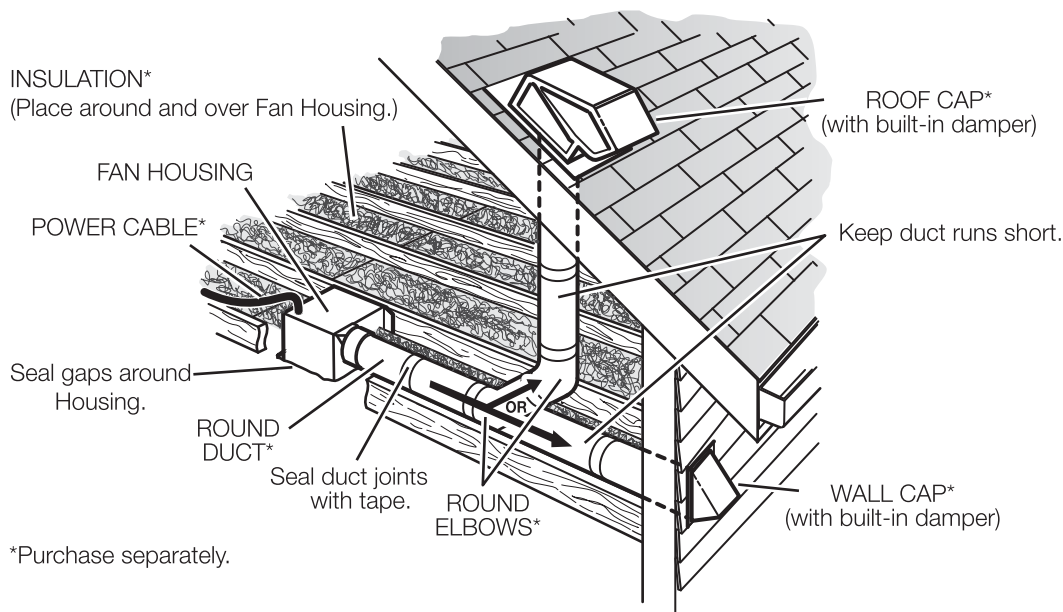
General Maintenance Suggestions

Model SP/CSP ceiling exhaust fans require very little maintenance. But since small problems over time left unchecked could lead to loss of performance or early motor failure, we do recommend that the unit be inspected periodically (once or twice a year).

The fan motor and wheel should be checked for dust and dirt accumulations. Dirt buildup can lead to loss of performance and motor overheating. Cleaning can be accomplished by brushing off any dust that may have accumulated. Even filtered units can accumulate build-up and should be checked when cleaning filters.

The motor should be checked for lubrication at this time. Lubricate only those motors which have an oil hole provided. A few drops of all purpose oil (SAE 20) will be sufficient.

Typical Installation



Our Commitment

As a result of our commitment to continuous improvement, Greenheck reserves the right to change specifications without notice.

Specific Greenheck product warranties are located on greenheck.com within the product area tabs and in the Library under Warranties.

Greenheck's Centrifugal Ceiling and Cabinet Exhaust Fans catalog provides additional information describing the equipment, fan performance, available accessories, and specification data.

AMCA Publication 410-96, Safety Practices for Users and Installers of Industrial and Commercial Fans, provides additional safety information. This publication can be obtained from AMCA International, Inc. at www.amca.org.



Warranty Statement for Centrifugal Ceiling and Cabinet Exhaust – SP and CSP

Greenheck Fan Corporation warrants its SP/CSP products to be free of any defect in material or workmanship for a period of three years from the date of shipment. In the event of such a defect during the warranty period, Greenheck Fan Corporation agrees, at its option, to either repair or replace the defective product free of charge.

This warranty runs to the original purchaser of such SP/CSP products for a period of three years from the date of shipment. Any product repaired or replaced under this warranty will, itself, be warranted only for the remainder of the warranty period of the original product being repaired or replaced.

All light bulbs are excluded under this limited warranty. Greenheck Fan Corporation is not responsible for any removal, installation, or transportation cost.

As a result of our commitment to continuous improvement, Greenheck reserves the right to change specifications without notice.

Aprilaire®

Model 8620W Thermostat with Wi-Fi, Event-Based™ Air Cleaning and Humidity or Ventilation Control



Owner's Manual

Includes
Operating Instructions and
Warranty Information

READ AND SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ABOUT YOUR NEW THERMOSTAT

Thermostat features	3
Controls & display overview	4-5

WI-FI SETUP & REMOTE ACCESS

Wi-Fi set-up & remote access	6
------------------------------------	---

OPERATION

Select system mode (EM HEAT/HEAT/OFF/COOL/AUTO)	6
Change temperature set point	7
Select fan setting (ON/AUTO/CIRC)	7
Clean screen	8
Maintenance reminders	8
Screen lockout	8

INDOOR AIR QUALITY FUNCTIONS

Event-Based™ air cleaning	9-10
Humidity control	11
Automatic mode	11-12
Manual mode	13-14
If dehumidification is installed	15-17
If dehumidification is done with air conditioner	17
Fresh Air	18-19

PROGRAM SCHEDULE AND HOLDS

Set time and date	20
Understanding program schedules	21-22
Progressive recovery	22
Changing program schedules	23-24
Heat Blast®	25
Program schedule holds	
Temporary	25-26
Permanent	26
Away	27
Vacation	28-29

WI-FI MAINTENANCE AND TROUBLESHOOTING

Clearing router settings	30
Removing the thermostat from a my.aprilaire.com account	30
Disabling the Wi-Fi radio	31
Troubleshooting Wi-Fi connection	31-32

SETUP MENU

How to enter the setup menu to change settings	33
User system settings table	34-36

WARRANTY

Limited warranty and registration	37
-----------------------------------------	----

ABOUT YOUR NEW THERMOSTAT

WARNING

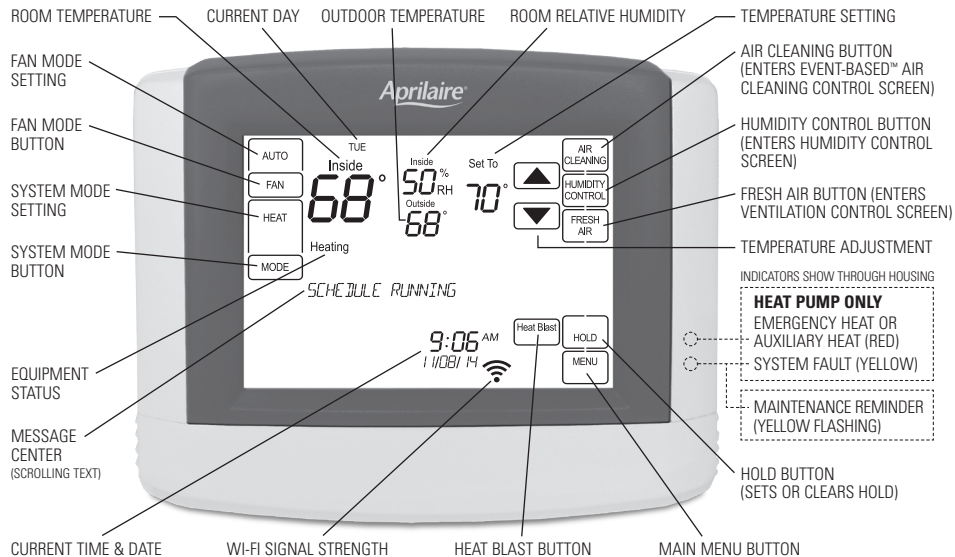
Do not use sharp instruments to press touch screen. Only use your fingertips.

THERMOSTAT FEATURES

- Remote access and control over Wi-Fi.
- Indoor air quality control.
 - Humidification automatic or manual control.
 - Dehumidification.
 - Event-Based™ air cleaning.
 - Ventilation with temperature and humidity limits.**Note:** The 8620W can only control one of the following per installation: ventilation, whole home dehumidifier or humidifier.
- Temperature control.
- Heat Blast® raises the room temperature 3°F to 5°F.
- Large touch screen with adjustable backlight – constant backlight available.
- Message center provides feedback, instructions, and service reminders.
- 7 day programmability.
- Displays room temperature, room humidity, temperature setting, and outdoor temperature.
- Programmable fan control with fan circulation mode.
- Easy to use temperature control can override program schedule at any time.

ABOUT YOUR NEW THERMOSTAT

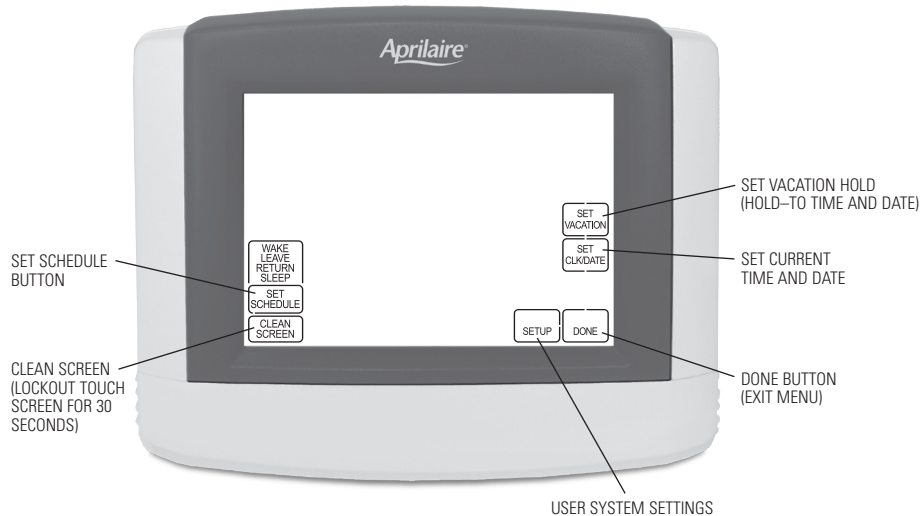
CONTROLS & DISPLAY OVERVIEW – HOME SCREEN



NOTE: BACKLIGHT IS ACTIVATED WITH FIRST BUTTON PRESS AND AUTOMATICALLY TURNS OFF.
NOT ALL BUTTONS WILL BE DISPLAYED IN EVERY INSTALLATION.

ABOUT YOUR NEW THERMOSTAT

CONTROLS & DISPLAY OVERVIEW – MAIN MENU

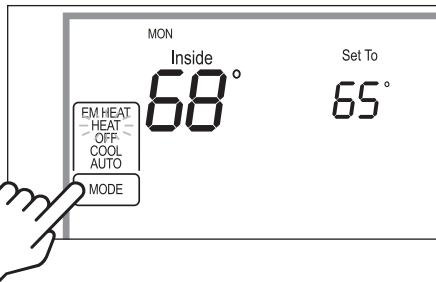


WI-FI SETUP & REMOTE ACCESS

For detailed instructions for connecting the thermostat to a Wi-Fi network and registering it to an Aprilaire account, refer to the Wi-Fi Quick Start Guide included in the box. Visit my.aprilaire.com for instructions about using the Aprilaire web and mobile apps.

OPERATION

SELECT SYSTEM MODE (EM HEAT/HEAT/OFF/COOL/AUTO)



Press **[MODE]** to select:

EM HEAT: (only for heat pumps with auxiliary heat) Thermostat controls auxiliary heat. Heat pump will not operate in EM HEAT mode.

HEAT: Thermostat controls only the heating system.

OFF: Heating and cooling systems are off.

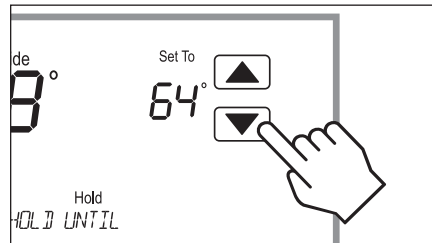
COOL: Thermostat controls only the cooling system.

AUTO: (if enabled in installer setup) Thermostat automatically selects heating or cooling depending on the indoor temperature.

Press **[DONE]** to save and exit, Or **[CANCEL]** to exit without saving. The thermostat will save and exit if nothing is pressed within 10 seconds.

OPERATION

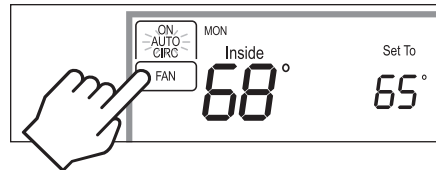
CHANGE TEMPERATURE SET POINT



Press **▲** or **▼** to adjust the current set point. (See Program Schedule Holds on pages 25-29 for more information.)

SELECT FAN SETTING (ON/AUTO/CIRC)

When the fan mode is changed during a program event it remains in that mode until the next event starts. The fan must be programmed to FAN ON in the schedule to run continuously through all events.



Press **[FAN]** to select:

ON: Fan runs continuously. Use this mode for maximum air circulation/filtering.

AUTO: Fan runs only when the heating or cooling system is on.

CIRC: Same as AUTO, but ensures the fan is on for at least 30 minutes per hour. Use this mode for a balance of energy savings and air circulation/cleaning.

Press **[DONE]** to save and exit, Or **[CANCEL]** to exit without saving. The thermostat will save and exit if nothing is pressed within 10 seconds.

OPERATION

CLEAN SCREEN

Press **[MENU]** to enter the main menu.

Press **[CLEAN SCREEN]** to disable the touch screen for 30 seconds for cleaning.

Note: Use a soft damp cloth to clean the screen. Use water or household glass cleaner. Do not spray liquids directly on the screen.

MAINTENANCE REMINDERS

Maintenance reminders are set up by the installer to indicate when the equipment is due for service. If a maintenance reminder is displayed, call your HVAC dealer for service. They can be cleared by pressing **[MENU]** to enter the main menu. Press **▲** and **▼** to select YES to Service Reminders and then **press [Next]**. Press **▲** and **▼** to select YES for each reminder you would like to reset. Press **[Next]** to go to the next reminder or **[Back]** to go to a previous reminder. Press **[DONE]** to reset the selected service reminders.

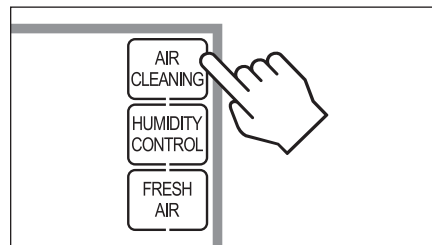
SCREEN LOCKOUT

The user can disable certain features of the thermostat. (See User System Setting Table on pages 34-36 for details.) This feature can be overridden by pressing and holding **[MENU]** for 7 seconds.

INDOOR AIR QUALITY FUNCTIONS

EVENT-BASED™ AIR CLEANING

Press **[AIR CLEANING]** on the Home screen to enter the Air Cleaning screen.



If installed, air cleaning can operate in five different modes. Air cleaning will activate the fan for the purpose of air cleaning.

Off: The air cleaner will not call the fan for the purpose of air cleaning. **Note:** If air cleaning is installed, air cleaning will still occur during normal fan operation during heating, cooling or other indoor air quality events.

Constant Clean: This option will provide the maximum amount of air cleaning available. The air cleaner will be active for 24 hours a day, seven days a week.

Automatic: The air cleaner will run a minimum of 30 minutes every hour. The air cleaner will monitor the amount of time your heating and cooling system runs; if 30 minutes is not reached the air cleaner will automatically turn on. This will maximize the amount of air cleaning while minimizing energy consumption.

Event Clean (3 hour cycle): When selected, the air cleaner will run for 3 hours continuously and then return to the most recent mode of Off, Automatic, or Constant Clean. This option only cleans the air when needed; an example would be after vacuuming.

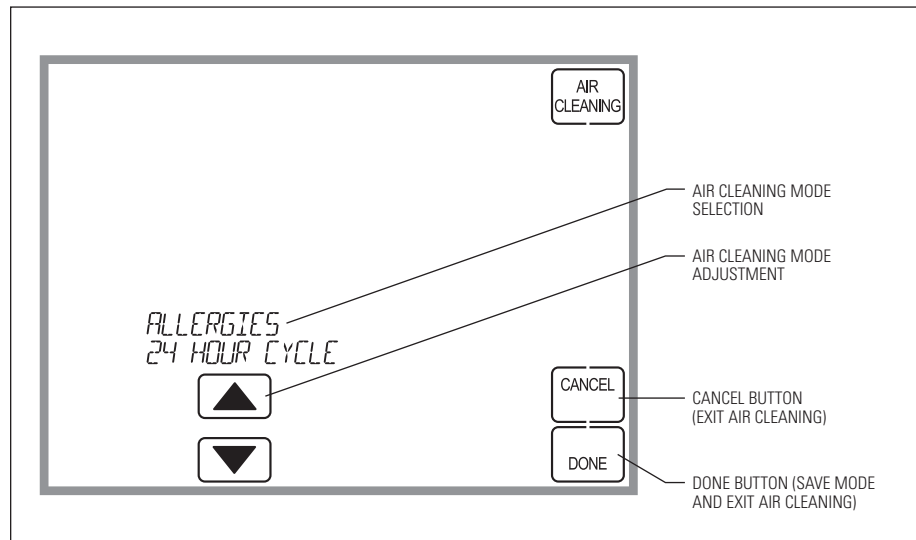
Allergies (24 hour cycle): When seasonal allergies spike and outside air quality is at its worst, choose this option. Your air cleaner will run continuously for 24 hours, then return to the most recent mode of Off, Automatic, or Constant Clean.

Note: The thermostat will manage fan and air cleaning selections when the selections overlap.

INDOOR AIR QUALITY FUNCTIONS

EVENT-BASED™ AIR CLEANING (CONTINUED)

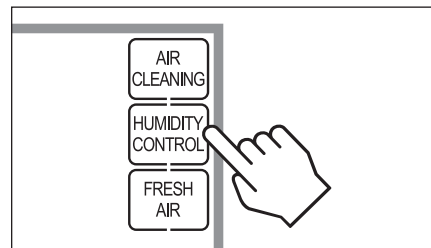
Air Cleaning Screen



INDOOR AIR QUALITY FUNCTIONS

HUMIDITY CONTROL

Press **[HUMIDITY CONTROL]** on the Home screen to enter the Humidity Control screen.



The Humidity Control screen is used to access control for both humidification and dehumidification.

If humidification is installed it can be controlled in two modes, automatic or manual.

Automatic or manual mode is configured by the installer. To determine which mode the thermostat is set to, see the diagrams on pages 12 and 14.

In automatic mode you will receive the optimum amount of humidity so that your home and its furnishings are protected from the damaging effects of excess condensation or low humidity during heating season. The thermostat automatically adjusts your home's Relative Humidity based on the outdoor temperature.

The humidity setting needs to be set initially to meet your home's conditions. Please follow these steps when adjusting your thermostat.

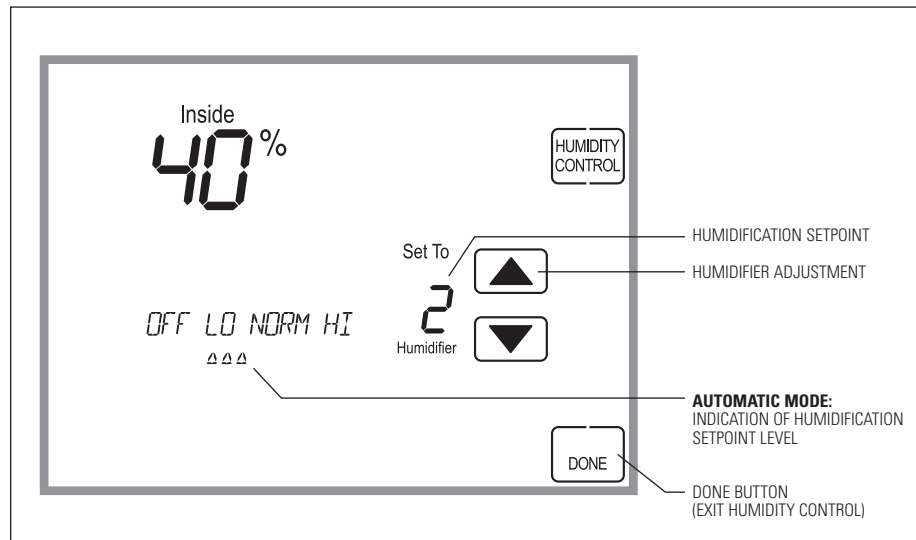
1. Adjust the humidity setting to "3" which is within normal range. During the next 24-48 hours it may be necessary to adjust the setting for more or less humidity, depending on your personal comfort and home's requirements.
2. During the coldest portion of the first heating season, minor adjustments may be necessary. This is dependent upon your home's construction.

The relative humidity in your home will now be accurately controlled to meet your needs and should not need further adjustment during future heating seasons.

INDOOR AIR QUALITY FUNCTIONS

HUMIDITY CONTROL (CONTINUED)

Humidity Control Screen for Humidification in Automatic Mode



INDOOR AIR QUALITY FUNCTIONS

HUMIDITY CONTROL (CONTINUED)

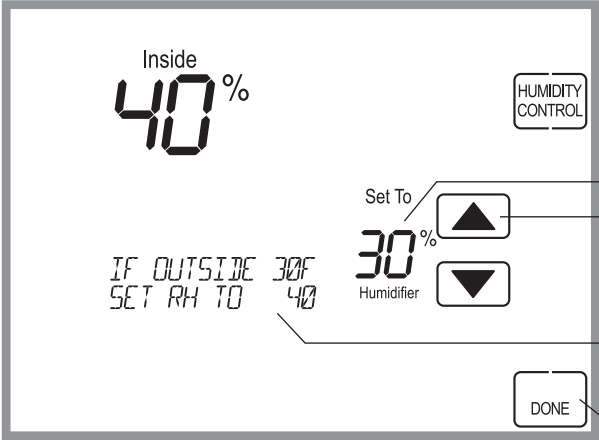
In **manual mode** it is important to anticipate a drop in outdoor temperature and reduce the setting accordingly to avoid excessive condensation. Use the following table to determine the proper Relative Humidity setting.

Outdoor Temperature/Indoor Relative Humidity	
Outside Temperature	Recommended Relative Humidity
+50°F	50%
+40°F	45%
+30°F	40%
+20°F	35%
+10°F	30%
0°F	25%
-10°F	20%
-20°F	15%

INDOOR AIR QUALITY FUNCTIONS

HUMIDITY CONTROL (CONTINUED)

Humidity Control Screen for Humidification in Manual Mode



The image shows a digital thermostat screen for humidity control. At the top left, it displays "Inside 40%". In the center, it says "Set To 30% Humidifier" with an upward arrow button above and a downward arrow button below. To the left of this, it says "IF OUTSIDE 30F SET RH TO 40". At the top right is a "HUMIDITY CONTROL" button, and at the bottom right is a "DONE" button. Lines connect these buttons to labels on the right: "HUMIDIFICATION SETPOINT" points to the "Set To 30%" text, "HUMIDIFIER ADJUSTMENT" points to the arrow buttons, "MANUAL MODE: SCREEN CYCLES RECOMMENDED HUMIDIFICATION SETPOINTS FOR VARIOUS OUTDOOR TEMPERATURES" points to the "IF OUTSIDE 30F SET RH TO 40" text, and "DONE BUTTON (EXIT HUMIDITY CONTROL)" points to the "DONE" button.

Labels on the right side of the screen:

- HUMIDIFICATION SETPOINT
- HUMIDIFIER ADJUSTMENT
- MANUAL MODE:
SCREEN CYCLES RECOMMENDED
HUMIDIFICATION SETPOINTS
FOR VARIOUS OUTDOOR
TEMPERATURES
- DONE BUTTON
(EXIT HUMIDITY CONTROL)

INDOOR AIR QUALITY FUNCTIONS

HUMIDITY CONTROL (CONTINUED)

If dehumidification is installed the thermostat can be configured, through the installer set-up, to control dehumidification with either a whole home dehumidifier or with the air conditioner (cooling unit).

The thermostat will allow you to set the desired humidity (% relative humidity) level in your home and can be used to turn the dehumidification On or Off.

Use the dehumidification adjustment to set the dehumidification setpoint to 60% when first installed. Allow dehumidification to run until the initial setpoint is reached, before deciding if you want to change the humidity setting.

▲ **Raise the setting if you prefer the air to be less dry;** this will reduce the amount of time that dehumidification runs.

▼ **Lower the setting if you prefer the air to be more dry;** this will increase the amount of time that dehumidification runs.

Your comfort is the best measure of how to adjust your setting. When first installed, your dehumidifier has to remove all the moisture that is initially in your home. The home acts like a sponge so the moisture in the materials of your home is at the same level as the air. After drying the air, the materials of the home will release the moisture back into the air until they are again at the same level. As a result, it is not uncommon for dehumidification to operate for an extended period of time when it is first installed.

INDOOR AIR QUALITY FUNCTIONS

HUMIDITY CONTROL (CONTINUED)

Energy Saving Tip #1:

Adjust the setting to be as high as is comfortable to reduce dehumidification run time – if it feels clammy or smells damp or moldy lower the setting. To save energy, turn the dehumidifier control OFF when you open your windows just as you would with air conditioning.

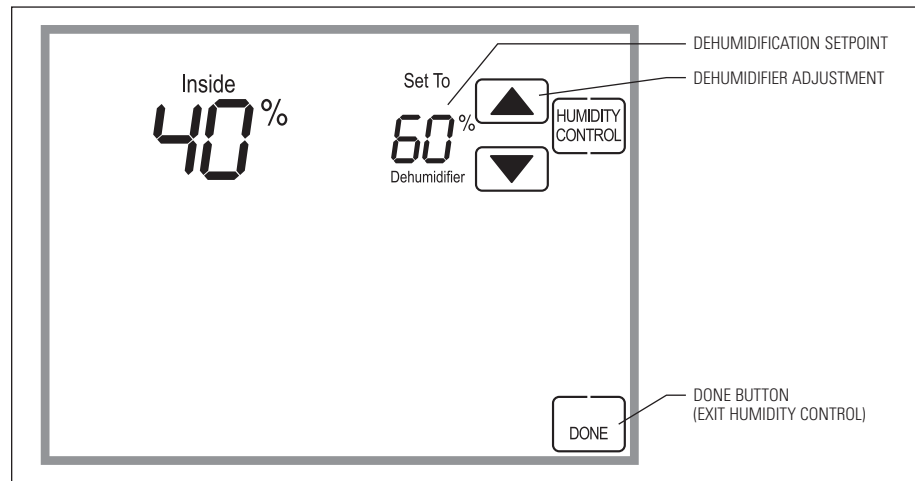
Energy Saving Tip #2:

If vacating your home for an extended period in the summer, set the relative humidity at 60% and set the cooling setpoint as high as you are comfortable setting it to in cooling mode. Consult with appropriate professionals regarding the highest temperature that is safe for your pets or possessions. This will keep the humidity at a controlled level to help prevent mold while minimizing the amount of the cooling energy used. Vacation hold is a convenient way to adjust the dehumidification and cooling setpoint when you will be away.

INDOOR AIR QUALITY FUNCTIONS

HUMIDITY CONTROL (CONTINUED)

Humidity Control Screen with only Dehumidification Installed

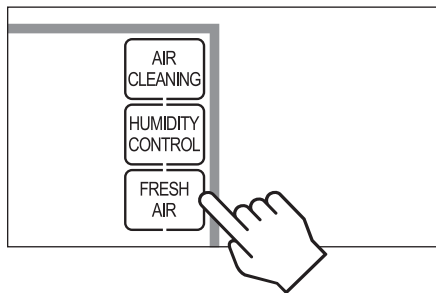


If dehumidification is done with the air conditioner, the thermostat will cool up to 3°F beyond the cooling setpoint for dehumidification. Note overcooling may not be sufficient to meet the dehumidification setpoint.

INDOOR AIR QUALITY FUNCTIONS

FRESH AIR

Press **[FRESH AIR]** on the Home screen to enter the Fresh Air screen.



If ventilation is installed, Fresh Air can operate in four different modes.

Off: Ventilation will not run.

Automatic: Ventilation will cycle based on the parameters set by the installer to meet your home's ventilation requirements.

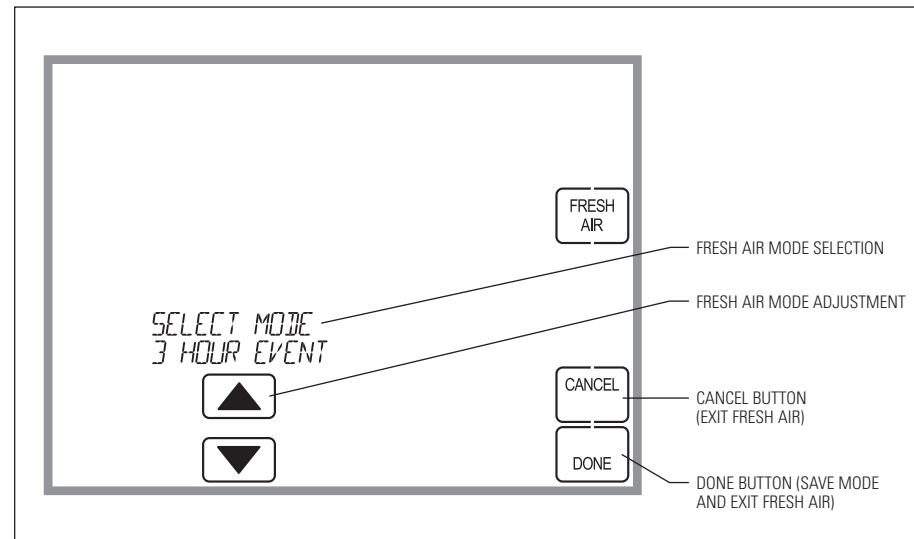
3 Hour Event: Ventilation will be constantly energized for 3 hours and then the fresh air mode will return to Off or Automatic depending on which mode was most recently active. This option is used when fresh air is needed. An example would be after cooking.

24 Hour Event: Ventilation will be constantly energized for 24 hours and then the fresh air mode will return to Off or Automatic depending on which mode was most recently active. This option is used when a large amount of fresh air is desired. An example would be a day with desirable outdoor conditions.

INDOOR AIR QUALITY FUNCTIONS

FRESH AIR (CONTINUED)

Fresh Air Screen

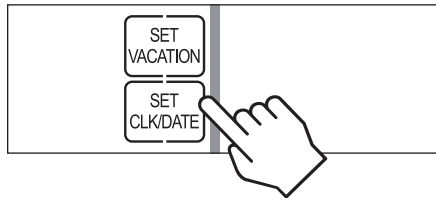


PROGRAM SCHEDULE AND HOLDS

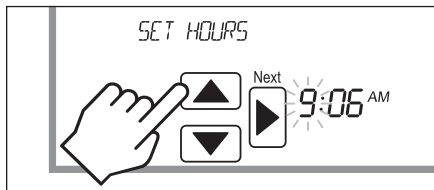
SET TIME AND DATE

Press **[MENU]** to enter the main menu.

Press **[SET CLK/DATE]** to enter clock menu.



Press ▲ or ▼ to set the hour.



Press **[Next]**, then ▲ or ▼ to set the minute.

Press **[Next]**, then ▲ or ▼ to set the month.

Press **[Next]**, then ▲ or ▼ to set the day.

Press **[Next]**, then ▲ or ▼ to set the year.

Press **[DONE]** to save and exit, Or **[CANCEL]** to exit without saving. The thermostat will save and exit if nothing is pressed within 20 seconds.

Note: Once the thermostat connects to the cloud, the time and date will be updated periodically. The thermostat will automatically update for daylight savings.

PROGRAM SCHEDULE AND HOLDS

UNDERSTANDING PROGRAM SCHEDULES

The daily schedule is split into four sections:

WAKE: Temperature you would prefer to wake up to.

LEAVE: Temperature when you are away from the house.

RETURN: Temperature you would prefer to return home to.

SLEEP: Temperature you would prefer while sleeping.

The times shown in the table below are the defaults. The start time and temperature of each section can be changed to fit your schedule. (See Changing Program Schedules section on pages 23-24.)

This thermostat is pre-set to use the following program settings (see table below). We recommend these settings, since they can reduce your heating/cooling expenses. The fan program is pre-set to AUTO for all events.

Event designator	Start time	Set temperature		Fan
		Heat	Cool	
WAKE	6:00AM	70°F (21°C)	78°F (25.5°C)	AUTO
LEAVE	8:00AM	62°F (16.5°C)	85°F (29.5°C)	AUTO
RETURN	5:00PM	70°F (21°C)	78°F (25.5°C)	AUTO
SLEEP	10:00PM	62°F (16.5°C)	82°F (27.5°C)	AUTO

PROGRAM SCHEDULE AND HOLDS

UNDERSTANDING PROGRAM SCHEDULES (CONTINUED)

Use the table below to assist in modifying the schedule.

Event designator	Start time	Set temperature		Fan
		Heat	Cool	
WAKE				
LEAVE				
RETURN				
SLEEP				

PROGRESSIVE RECOVERY

The Progressive Recovery feature allows the thermostat to activate the heating and cooling equipment **PRIOR** to a scheduled event in order to reach the desired temperature at the start of that scheduled event.

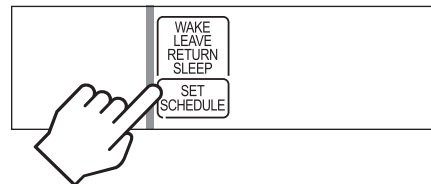
Example: If the WAKE time is 6 am, and the temperature is 70°F, the heat will come on before 6 am, so the temperature is 70°F by the time you wake at 6 am.

PROGRAM SCHEDULE AND HOLDS

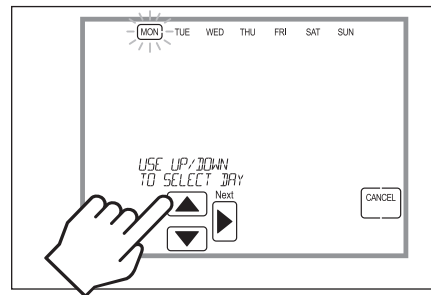
CHANGING PROGRAM SCHEDULES

Press **[MENU]** to enter the main menu.

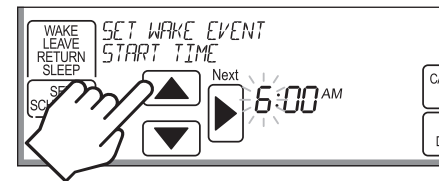
Press **[SET SCHEDULE]** to enter schedule programming.



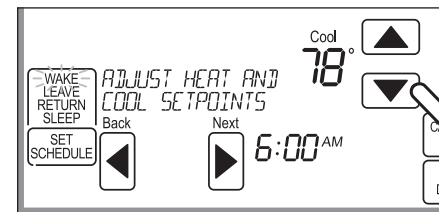
Press **▲** or **▼** to select the day.



Press **[Next]**, then **▲** or **▼** to set the start time of the first event.



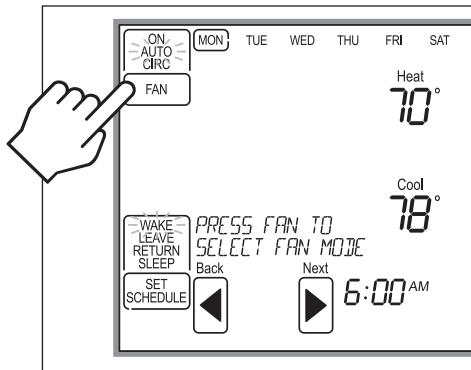
Press **[Next]**, then **▲** or **▼** to set the setpoints of the first event.



PROGRAM SCHEDULE AND HOLDS

CHANGING PROGRAM SCHEDULES (CONTINUED)

Press **[Next]**, then **[FAN]** to set the fan mode of the first event.

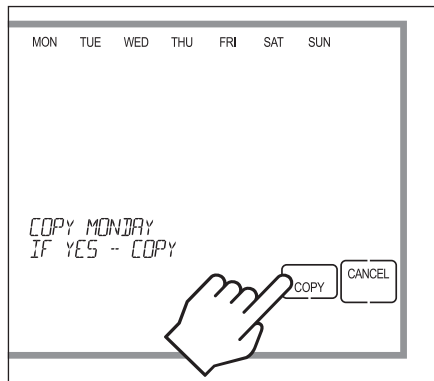


Press **[Next]** to advance to the next event.

Repeat above process for each remaining event.

Press **[DONE]** to save the schedule for the day.

The thermostat will display the COPY option.



Press **[COPY]** to copy the schedule of the day just programmed to any other day.

OR

Press **[CANCEL]** to proceed to the next day and repeat the above process.

PROGRAM SCHEDULE AND HOLDS

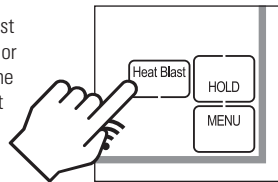
HEAT BLAST®

Heat Blast® will raise the current room temperature 3°F to 5°F based on the installer set-up, and then resume normal operation.

Press **[Heat Blast]** to activate Heat Blast.

Note: Heat Blast button is only available if it is enabled in the Installer Setup and the thermostat is in Heat or Emergency Heat mode.

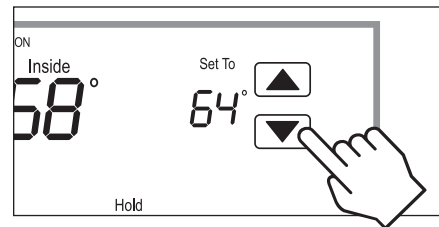
To cancel Heat Blast press **[CANCEL]**, or **[Heat Blast]**, or the temperature adjust buttons.



PROGRAM SCHEDULE HOLDS – TEMPORARY

TEMPORARY PROGRAM HOLD

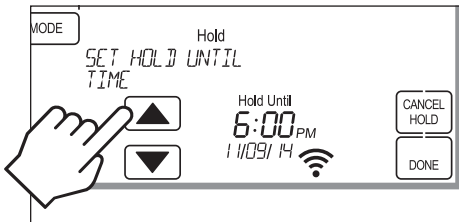
Press **▲** or **▼** to immediately adjust the temperature when the schedule is running. This will temporarily hold the temperature setting until the next scheduled event.



PROGRAM SCHEDULE AND HOLDS

PROGRAM SCHEDULE HOLDS – TEMPORARY (CONTINUED)

Press ▲ or ▼ to adjust the end time of the hold. If end time is not adjusted, the Temporary Hold will end at the start of the next event.

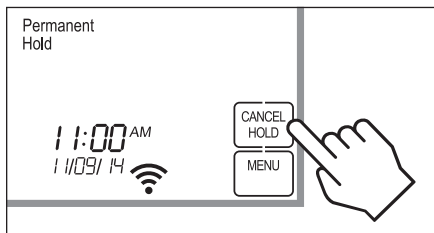


To cancel the Temporary Hold, press **[CANCEL HOLD]**.

PROGRAM SCHEDULE HOLDS – PERMANENT

PERMANENT PROGRAM HOLD

Press **[HOLD]** to permanently hold the temperature at its current setting while the schedule is running. This will override the temperature settings for all events. With the thermostat in Permanent Hold, the temperature setting and fan mode can be adjusted and will stay at that setting until the hold is cancelled.



To cancel the Permanent Hold, press **[CANCEL HOLD]**.

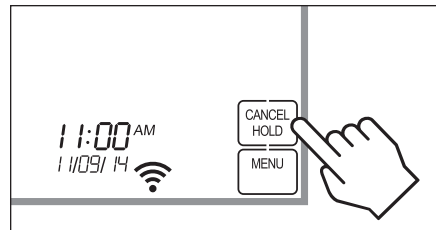
PROGRAM SCHEDULE AND HOLDS

PROGRAM SCHEDULE HOLDS – AWAY

AWAY

The Away feature, if enabled, allows the thermostat to be set to a predefined setpoint(s) by simply pressing the Away button in your App. The default cooling setpoint is 85°F (29.5°C), the default heating setpoint is 62°F (16.5°C) and the default fan mode is Auto. The default settings can be modified in the App.

To cancel Away at the thermostat press **[CANCEL HOLD]**.



PROGRAM SCHEDULE AND HOLDS

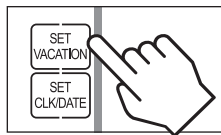
PROGRAM SCHEDULE HOLDS – VACATION

VACATION PROGRAM HOLD

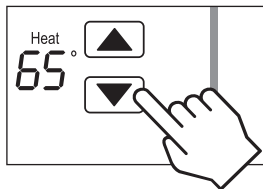
This energy saving feature allows you to suspend the programmed schedule for extended periods of time. The temperature and dehumidification setpoint (optional) you select will be maintained 24 hours a day until the vacation program hold end date and time. Once the end date and time have been surpassed, the previously programmed schedule will resume. If you return earlier than expected, **press [CANCEL HOLD]** to resume the programmed schedule.

Press [MENU] to enter the main menu.

Press [SET VACATION] to enter vacation program hold.

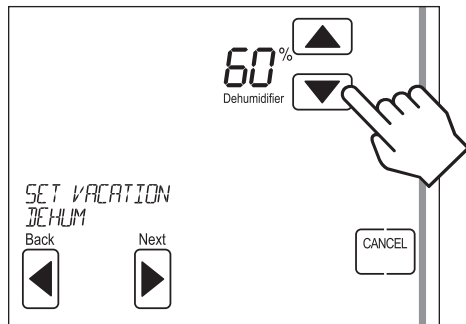


Press ▲ or ▼ to adjust the temperature setting.



Press [NEXT], then adjust the dehumidification setting.

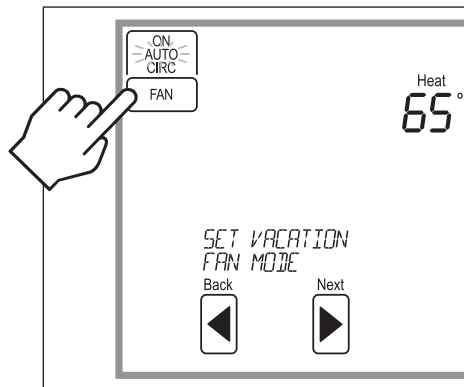
Note: If dehumidification in vacation mode is not enabled this step will be skipped.



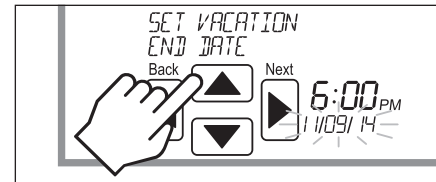
PROGRAM SCHEDULE AND HOLDS

PROGRAM SCHEDULE HOLDS – VACATION (CONTINUED)

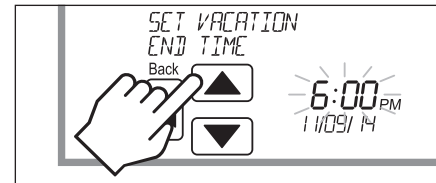
Press [Next], then **[FAN]** to set the fan mode.



Press [Next], then **▲ or ▼** to set end date.



Press [Next], then **▲ or ▼** to set end time.



Press [DONE] to save and exit, Or **[CANCEL]** to exit without saving. The thermostat will save and exit if nothing is pressed within 20 seconds.

WI-FI MAINTENANCE AND TROUBLESHOOTING

CLEARING ROUTER SETTINGS

If you purchase a new Wi-Fi router or change the security settings on your existing router, the router settings in the thermostat need to be cleared so the new Wi-Fi router settings can be entered. To do this, enter the setup menu as described in the Setup Menu section on pages 33-36. Change the setting for WiFi Disconnect and Clear Settings to Yes and then press **[DONE]**. This will remove all the previous Wi-Fi settings. Refer to the Wi-Fi Quick Start Guide for instructions on connecting the thermostat to your Wi-Fi network.

REMOVING THE THERMOSTAT FROM A my.aprilaire.com ACCOUNT

The thermostat can only be registered to one web and mobile app account. If you need to remove the thermostat from an existing account so it can be registered to a new account, it can be done at the thermostat. This may need to be done for instance if you have purchased a home with the thermostat and need to remove the thermostat from the previous owner's account and register it to your account. To do this, enter the setup menu as described in the following section. Change the setting for Unregister the Thermostat to Yes and then press **[DONE]**. This will remove the thermostat from any account that it is currently registered to. Refer to the Wi-Fi Quick Start Guide for instructions on registering the thermostat to a new web and mobile app account.

WI-FI MAINTENANCE AND TROUBLESHOOTING






DISABLING THE WI-FI RADIO

To turn off the Wi-Fi radio on the thermostat, enter the setup menu as described in the Setup Menu section on pages 33-36. Change the setting for Turn Off WiFi Radio to Yes and then press **[DONE]**. This will turn off the Wi-Fi radio, but maintain all network settings. To turn the Wi-Fi radio back on simply enter the setup menu and change the setting for Turn Off WiFi Radio to No and then press **[DONE]**.

TROUBLESHOOTING WI-FI CONNECTION

The Wi-Fi connection status is communicated through the use of the radio strength indicator and the message center. The table on page 32 describes the various statuses and the corresponding message and radio bar display.

WI-FI MAINTENANCE AND TROUBLESHOOTING

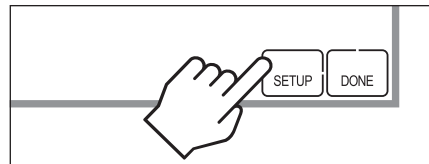
Wi-Fi connection status	Radio status indicator	Message Center
Normal Operation.	Wi-Fi signal strength is indicated by the appropriate number of bars. 	No corresponding message
The thermostat Wi-Fi settings have not been entered. Refer to the Wi-Fi Quick Start Guide for instructions for entering the Wi-Fi settings.	The frame is displayed and the bars cycle from 0 to 4. 	Displays the SSID of the thermostat. Note: The SSID will be used to identify the thermostat when using a smart device to connect the thermostat to your Wi-Fi router.
The thermostat cannot connect to the Wi-Fi router. Verify that the router is functioning properly.	The frame and all bars flash on and off. 	WiFi Connection Lost
The thermostat cannot connect to the internet. Verify that your internet connection is working.	The display will alternate between displaying the frame and all bars. 	Internet Connection Lost
There is an internal error with the thermostat Wi-Fi radio. The thermostat will continue to control the HVAC and indoor air quality control equipment, but will not be able to connect to Wi-Fi. Contact an HVAC professional for repair.	The frame will flash on and off. 	Radio Error
Wi-Fi radio turned off. Refer to the Setup Menu section for information about turning the Wi-Fi module on.	Not displayed.	WiFi Turned Off

SETUP MENU

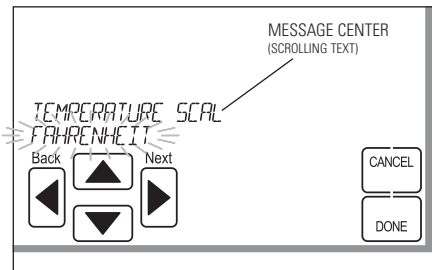
HOW TO ENTER THE SETUP MENU TO CHANGE SETTINGS

Press **[MENU]** to enter the main menu.

Press **[SETUP]** to enter the setup menu.



Press **[Next]** or **[Back]** to page through the settings (the setting is displayed in the message center).



Press **▲** or **▼** to adjust the setting. (Selected option flashes.)

Press **[DONE]** to save and exit, Or **[CANCEL]** to exit without saving.

The thermostat will discard changes and exit if nothing is pressed within 60 seconds.

SETUP MENU

USER SYSTEM SETTINGS TABLE

The following table is the list of the settings and their details. Default settings are shown in **bold**.

User system setting	Description	Factory default setting (bold) and setting range
Temperature Scale	Set the thermostat to Fahrenheit or Celsius mode.	Fahrenheit Celsius
Lockout Type	Sets the screen lockout level. Setting the Lockout Type to Full will prevent any changes from being made at the thermostat. Setting the Lockout Type to Partial allows individual functions to be locked out at the thermostat. Set this to None to disable the lockout feature. Note: The thermostat can be unlocked by holding the [MENU] button for 7 seconds.	None Partial Full
Mode Lockout	Prevents changes to the system mode from being made at the thermostat. Note: Only available when the Lockout Type is set to Partial.	Disable Enable
Fan Lockout	Prevents changes to the fan mode from being made at the thermostat. Note: Only available when the Lockout Type is set to Partial.	Disable Enable
Dehum Lockout	Prevents changes to the dehumidification setpoint from being made at the thermostat. Note: Only available when the Lockout Type is set to Partial.	Disable Enable

SETUP MENU

USER SYSTEM SETTINGS TABLE (CONTINUED)

User system setting	Description	Factory default setting (bold) and setting range
Setpoint Lockout	Prevents or limits changes to the heating and cooling setpoints at the thermostat. If set to Full no changes to the setpoints are allowed. If set to Range, changes to the setpoint are limited by the Max Temp Setpoint Change in Lockout. Note: Only available when Setpoint Lockout is set to Range.	Disable Full Range
Max Setpoint Change in Lockout	Sets the maximum change to the heat or cool setpoint that can be made at the thermostat. Note: Only available when Setpoint Lockout is set to Partial.	3°F or 1.5°C 1°F to 20°F (0.5° to 10°C)
Menu Lockout	Prevent the Menu screen from being accessed at the thermostat. Note: Only available if no other lockouts are enabled. If another lockout is enabled the Menu screen is automatically locked out.	Disable Enable
Program Format	Enables the 7 day program.	7-Day Non-Prog
Reset Service Reminders	Clears the Change Air Filter, HVAC, and Dehumidifier Service reminders if they are active and resets the start date to the current date. Clears the Change Water Panel reminder if it is active. If the reminder is set to timed, the timer will be reset.	No Yes

SETUP MENU

USER SYSTEM SETTINGS TABLE (CONTINUED)

User system setting	Description	Factory default setting (bold) and setting range
Backlight Intensity	Set the active backlight intensity. Note: The minimum setting is 40% when Constant Backlight is enabled.	100 Percent 0 to 100 Percent
WiFi Disconnect and Clear Settings	Disconnects the thermostat from the router and clears the Wi-Fi settings. Use this to set the thermostat back to provisioning mode so it can be connected to a new Wi-Fi router.	No Yes
Turn Off WiFi Radio	Use to turn off the Wi-Fi radio. Wi-Fi settings will be maintained.	No Yes
Unregister the Thermostat	Unregisters the thermostat from an Aprilaire account. Use this when the thermostat needs to be registered to a new Aprilaire account. For instance, if you have purchased a home with the thermostat already installed, this setting would allow you to clear the previous registration so that you can register the thermostat to your account.	No Yes

THERMOSTAT FIVE YEAR LIMITED WARRANTY

Your Research Products Corporation Aprilaire® Thermostat is expressly warranted for five (5) years from date of installation to be free from defects in materials or workmanship.

Research Products Corporation's exclusive obligation under this warranty shall be to supply, without charge, a replacement for any thermostat which is found to be defective within such five (5) year period and which is returned, together with the date of installation, no later than thirty (30) days after said five (5) year period by you to either your original supplier or to Research Products Corporation, Madison, Wisconsin 53701.

THIS WARRANTY SHALL NOT OBLIGATE RESEARCH PRODUCTS CORPORATION FOR ANY LABOR COSTS AND SHALL NOT APPLY TO DEFECTS IN WORKMANSHIP OR MATERIALS FURNISHED BY YOUR INSTALLER AS CONTRASTED TO DEFECTS IN THE THERMOSTAT ITSELF.

IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE SHALL BE LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE AFORESAID FIVE YEAR PERIOD. RESEARCH PRODUCTS CORPORATION'S LIABILITY FOR INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, OTHER THAN DAMAGES FOR PERSONAL INJURIES, RESULTING FROM ANY BREACH OF THE AFORESAID IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR THE ABOVE LIMITED WARRANTY IS EXPRESSLY EXCLUDED. THIS LIMITED WARRANTY IS VOID IF DEFECT(S) RESULT FROM FAILURE TO HAVE THIS THERMOSTAT INSTALLED BY A QUALIFIED HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTOR. IF THE LIMITED WARRANTY IS VOID DUE TO FAILURE TO USE A QUALIFIED CONTRACTOR, ALL DISCLAIMERS OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES SHALL BE EFFECTIVE UPON INSTALLATION.

Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts or the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above exclusions or limitations may not apply to you.

This warranty gives you specific legal rights and you may also have other rights which vary from state to state.

WARRANTY REGISTRATION

Visit us on-line at www.aprilaire.com to register your Aprilaire product. If you do not have on-line access, please mail a postcard with your name, address, phone number, product purchased and date of purchase to: Research Products Corporation, P.O. BOX 1467, Madison, WI 53701.

Your Warranty Registration information will not be sold or shared outside of this company.

FCC DECLARATION

Compliance Statement (Part 15.19)

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Warning (Part 15.21)

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FCC Interference Statement (Part 15.105 (b))

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

FCC RF Radiation Exposure statement

To comply with FCC/IC RF exposure limits for general population / uncontrolled exposure, the antenna(s) used for this transmitter must be installed to provide a separation distance of at least 20 cm from all persons and must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

IC STATEMENT

RSS-GEN, Sec. 7.1.2

Under Industry Canada regulations, this radio transmitter may only operate using an antenna of a type and maximum (or lesser) gain approved for the transmitter by Industry Canada. To reduce potential radio interference to other users, the antenna type and its gain should be so chosen that the equivalent isotropically radiated power (e.i.r.p.) is not more than that necessary for successful communication.

Conformément à la réglementation d'Industrie Canada, le présent émetteur radio peut fonctionner avec une antenne d'un type et d'un gain maximal (ou inférieur) approuvé pour l'émetteur par Industrie Canada. Dans le but de réduire les risques de brouillage radioélectrique à l'intention des autres utilisateurs, il faut choisir le type d'antenne et son gain de sorte que la puissance isotrope rayonnée équivalente (p.i.r.e.) ne dépasse pas l'intensité nécessaire à l'établissement d'une communication satisfaisante.

RSS-GEN, Sec. 7.1.3

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) this device may not cause interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

- (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et
- (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.



P.O. Box 1467 • Madison, WI 53701-1467 • Phone: 800/334-6011 • Fax: 608/257-4357

www.aprilaire.com

61001108 5.15
B2206470A

U.S. Patent Numbers 8,146,376, 8,596,078 and other patents pending.
© 2015 Aprilaire – A division of Research Products Corporation

AprilAire[®]

Dehumidifier

INSTALLATION & OWNER'S MANUAL

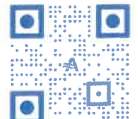
Model E130

130 PPD Professional-Grade,
Whole-House Dehumidifiers

Installed By:	Installer Phone:	Date Installed:
---------------	------------------	-----------------



Product Info &
Digital Manual



PLEASE LEAVE THIS MANUAL WITH THE DEHUMIDIFIER OWNER

TABLE OF CONTENTS

WHOLE HOME DEHUMIDIFICATION	2
SPECIFICATIONS	2
SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS	3
OPERATING THE DEHUMIDIFIER	4
Energy Savings Tips	4
MAINTENANCE	5
Cleaning the Filter	5
Cleaning the Drain	5
PREPARING THE UNIT FOR INSTALLATION	6
Repositioning the User Interface for the Application	6
Installing the Duct Collars	7
INSTALLING THE DEHUMIDIFIER	7
Dehumidifier Location	7
Leveling and Raising the Dehumidifier	8
Installing a Condensate Pan Under the Dehumidifier	8
Installing the Drain	8
INSTALLING DUCTWORK	9
Ducting the Dehumidifier Inlet and Outlet to the HVAC System	10
Ducting the Dehumidifier Outlet to the HVAC System with Dedicated Dehumidifier Inlet Register	11
WIRING	12
Wiring to the HVAC System	12
Wiring to External or Remote Control	12
Wiring to a Float Switch	13
VENTILATION	13
ZONING THE DEHUMIDIFIER	14
Required Components	14
INSTALLER SETUP	15
Setting Up Remote Control – Crawl Space/Sealed Attic	16
Setting Up Ventilation	16
Setting Up Zoning	16
Setting Up External Control	16
Enabling DEH w/AC	16
Applying an RH Offset	16
INSTALLER TEST MODE	17
Dehumidification Only	17
Zoning and/or Ventilation	17
STARTING UP THE UNIT AND SEQUENCE OF OPERATION	18
Using the Dehumidifier Control Only	18
Using a Model 76 as a Remote Control	18
Using an External Control	18
Two-Zone Operation	18
SERVICE INSTRUCTIONS	19
TROUBLESHOOTING	20
E130 SERVICE PARTS	23
LIMITED WARRANTY	24

WHOLE HOME DEHUMIDIFICATION

The AprilAire Dehumidifier controls the humidity level in your entire home. A powerful blower inside the dehumidifier draws air into the cabinet where it is filtered before having moisture removed. A sealed refrigeration system removes moisture by moving the air through a series of tubes and fins that are kept colder than the dew point of the incoming air. The dew point is the temperature at which moisture in the air will condense, much like what occurs on the outside of a cold glass on a hot summer day. The condensed moisture drips into the dehumidifier drain pan to a drain tube routed to the nearest



Model E130



Model E130C

floor drain or condensate pump. After the moisture is removed, the air moves through a second coil where it is reheated before being sent back into the home. The air leaving the dehumidifier will be warmer and drier than the air entering the dehumidifier.

You can reduce the amount of humidity that enters the home by closing windows, doors and fireplace flues when outdoor humidity is high, and by drying clothes outside. Direct exhaust from kitchen vents and bath fans is the best means of controlling humidity due to cooking and showers/baths. The dehumidifier is not designed to prevent window condensation in winter. Use ventilation to lower indoor humidity levels in the winter.

SPECIFICATIONS

		Model E130, E130C, and E130H	
Unit Weight	98 lbs.		
Capacity 80°F, 60% RH Conditions	130 pints per day @ 310 CFM		
Current Draw 115 VAC, Single Phase, 60 Hz	7.7 A operating current		
Dehumidifier Inlet Air Conditions	Dehumidification: 50°F–104°F, 40°F dew point minimum Ventilation: 40°F–140°F, 0% RH–99% RH (non-condensing)		
Filter	MERV 8, washable		
Airflow	External Static Pressure ("w.c.)	Airflow (CFM)	
	0.0	310	
	0.2	270	
	0.4	225	
	0.6	175	

NOTE: Rated capacity and current draw measured at 80°F/60% RH inlet conditions at 0.0 external static pressure.

SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

⚠ WARNING

ATTENTION INSTALLER:

- Read this manual before installing. Improper installation or maintenance may cause property damage or injury. It is recommended that installation, service, and maintenance be performed by a trained service technician. This product must be installed in compliance with all local, state, and federal codes.
- All safety precautions must be followed.
- Dispose of properly in accordance with federal or local regulations.

ELECTRIC SHOCK HAZARD:

- **120 volts may cause serious injury from electric shock.** Disconnect electrical power to the dehumidifier before starting installation or servicing. Leave power disconnected until installation/service is completed.
- **To reduce the risk of electrical shock**, this equipment has a grounding-type (three prong) plug. This plug will fit only into a grounding-type power outlet. If the plug does not fit into the outlet, contact qualified personnel to install the proper outlet. Do not alter this plug in any way.
- **To reduce the risk of electrical shock**, position the product so that the power cord can be plugged into an electrical outlet without the use of an extension cord.

RISK OF FIRE OR EXPLOSION:

- Flammable refrigerant used. Do not puncture refrigerant tubing.
- Store in well ventilated room without continuously operating flames or other potential ignition sources.
- Auxiliary devices which may be ignition sources shall not be installed in duct work.

⚠ CAUTION

- **SHARP EDGES MAY CAUSE INJURY FROM CUTS.** Use care when cutting plenum openings and handling ductwork. Always wear glasses/goggles and gloves when installing the unit.
- **TWO-PERSON LIFT REQUIRED.** Dropping may cause personal injury or equipment damage. Handle with care and follow installation instructions.
- This unit is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical, sensory, or mental capabilities, or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they have been given supervision or instruction concerning use of the unit by a person responsible for their safety.
- Be sure to supervise children to ensure that they do not play with the unit.
- Be sure to replace a damaged supply cord. It must be replaced by a special cord or assembly available from the manufacturer or its service agent.
- Never operate electrical equipment in standing water.
- Do not stick your fingers or other objects through the safety grills.
- Do not sit or stand on the unit, or use the unit as a table or shelf.
- The unit is designed to be installed indoors only.
- Always place in well ventilated area to prevent the accumulation of refrigerant in the case of a refrigerant system leak or failure.

NOTICE

EQUIPMENT DAMAGE MAY OCCUR IF INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS ARE NOT FOLLOWED.

- Do not use in pool applications. Pool chemicals can damage the dehumidifier.
- Do not use solvents or cleaners on or near the display and circuit board. Chemicals can damage components.
- Wait 24 hours before running the unit if it was not shipped or stored in the upright position.
- Do not use dehumidification to prevent window condensation in the winter. To address window condensation, use ventilation to lower indoor humidity in the winter.
- Running the dehumidifier without the drain insert can lead to condensate leaks.

ELECTRICAL INTERFERENCE CAN CAUSE OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE SENSOR INACCURACY.

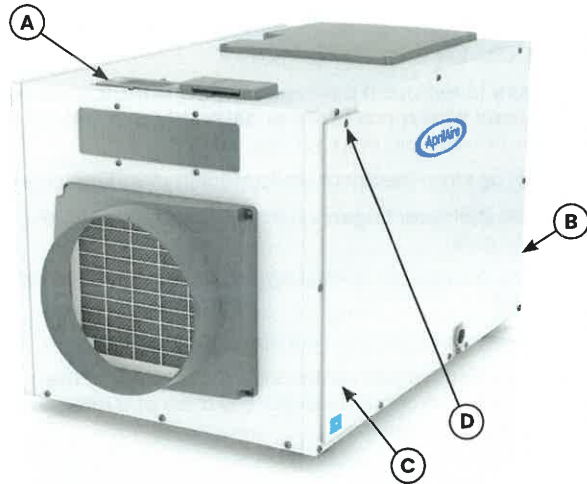
- Do not run Outdoor Temperature Sensor alongside wires carrying high voltage (120 VAC or higher).
- Do not run Outdoor Temperature Sensor wire lengths greater than 300 feet.

OPERATING THE DEHUMIDIFIER

1. If equipped, use the ON/OFF power switch, located by the power cord, to apply power to the dehumidifier.

NOTE: The unit can remain plugged in with an ON/OFF power switch on, unless the unit will not be used for an extended period. Use the ON/OFF button on the user interface to turn the unit off for short durations. When the unit is idle (neither the fan nor the compressor running) the unit will use less than 3W of power.

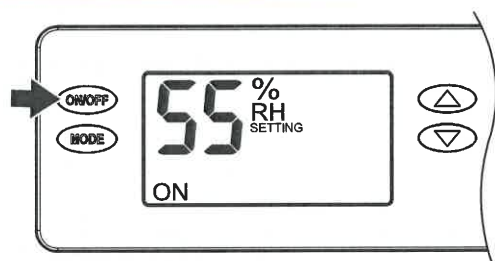
FIGURE 1: EXTERIOR COMPONENTS OF THE DEHUMIDIFIER



- A. USER INTERFACE
- B. ON/OFF POWER SWITCH (SELECT MODELS)
- C. FILTER ACCESS DOOR
- D. FILTER ACCESS DOOR RETAINING SCREW

2. Use the ON/OFF button (see **FIGURE 2**) on the user interface to turn the dehumidifier ON. **The first press of a button will turn on the display light**, so if the display was dark, you might need to press it again. Once ON, the display will show the current dehumidifier setting.

FIGURE 2: TURNING DEHUMIDIFIER ON

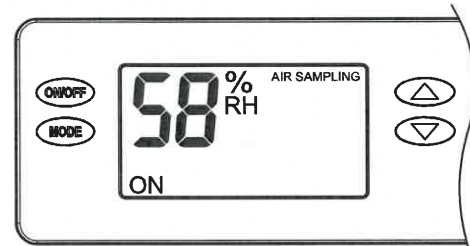


90-1854

3. The dehumidifier blower will turn on, **SETTING** disappears from the display, and **AIR SAMPLING** appears (see **FIGURE 3**). This indicates that the dehumidifier is sampling the air to determine if dehumidification is needed and shows the measured humidity level.

If the control is already ON, lowering the setting will initiate air sampling.

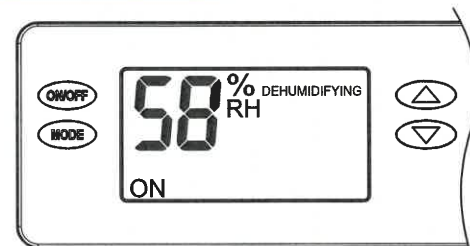
FIGURE 3: AIR SAMPLING



90-1854

4. After sampling the air for 3 minutes, if the Relative Humidity (RH) is above the setting, the compressor turns on to dehumidify the space. **DEHUMIDIFYING** appears when the compressor is turned on (see **FIGURE 4**).

FIGURE 4: DEHUMIDIFYING



90-1854

ENERGY SAVINGS TIPS

ENERGY SAVINGS TIP #1:

Adjust the humidity setting to be as high as is comfortable to reduce dehumidifier run time. If it feels clammy or "smells musty," lower the humidity setting. To save energy, turn the dehumidifier to OFF when you open your windows, just as you would with air conditioning.

ENERGY SAVINGS TIP #2:

If vacating your home for an extended period in the summer, set the RH at 55% and set your thermostat as high as you are comfortable setting it to in the cooling mode. This will keep the humidity at a controlled level while minimizing the amount of cooling energy used.

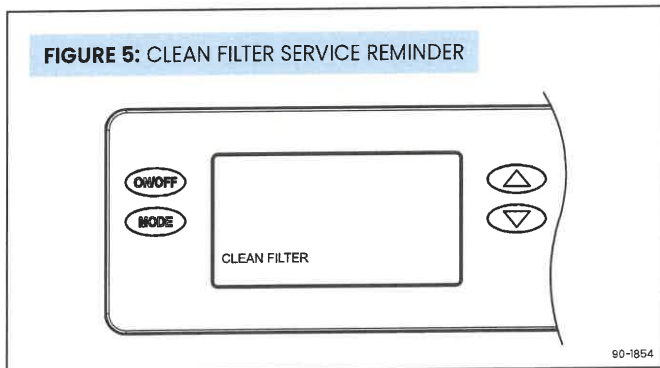
MAINTENANCE

CLEANING THE FILTER

After initial installation, the air filter and drain should be checked and cleaned every 6 months.

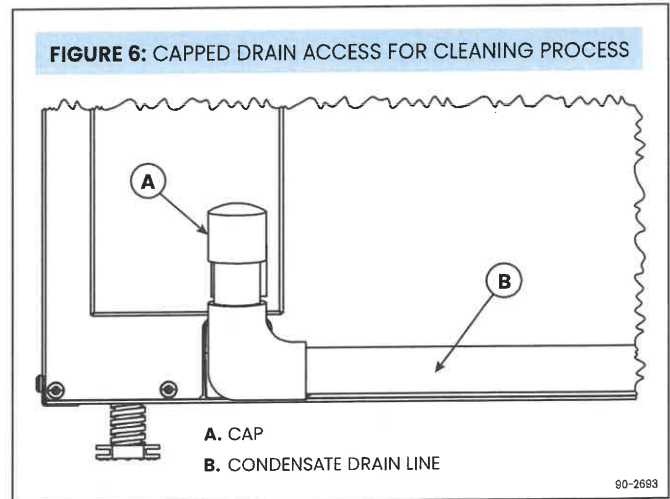
1. Press the ON/OFF button on the user interface to turn the unit OFF.
2. Loosen the retaining screw on the filter access door (see **FIGURE 1**) from the drain side of the dehumidifier until it releases and then remove the filter door.
3. Slide the filter out of the dehumidifier.
4. Rinse the filter with water to remove dust and collected particles from the filter.
5. Shake off excess water from the filter.
6. Clean the drain as described in **CLEANING THE DRAIN** on page 5.
7. Reinstall the filter. An arrow on the filter frame shows the direction of airflow and it should point into the dehumidifier.
8. Replace the filter access door and tighten the retaining screw.
9. Press the ON/OFF button to turn the dehumidifier back ON.

The **CLEAN FILTER** service reminder (see **FIGURE 5**) will display on the control every 6 months. **To clear the service message, press the ▲ and ▼ buttons simultaneously for 3 seconds.**



CLEANING THE DRAIN

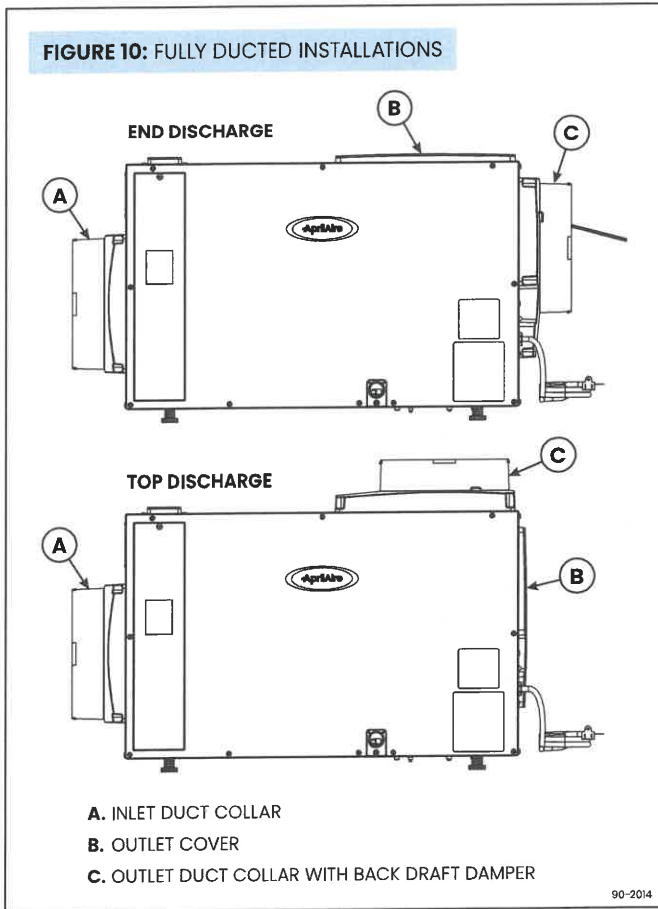
1. With the filter door on the drain side of the dehumidifier removed, clean the accessible portion of the drain pan using a mild detergent.
2. If the drain has a capped tee or elbow to allow cleaner to be poured directly in the drain, remove the cap and pour approximately one cup of white vinegar into the tube (see **FIGURE 6**). If there is no visible access to the drain line from outside of the dehumidifier, pour approximately one cup of vinegar into the drain pan of the dehumidifier where the drain insert was located.



3. If the dehumidifier has clear flexible drain tubing, look for excess buildup in the drain line that might prevent water flow, and replace as needed. Clear, smooth, flexible 3/4" Inside Diameter (ID) drain tubing is available in most hardware stores or Do-It-Yourself (DIY) retail stores.

INSTALLING THE DUCT COLLARS

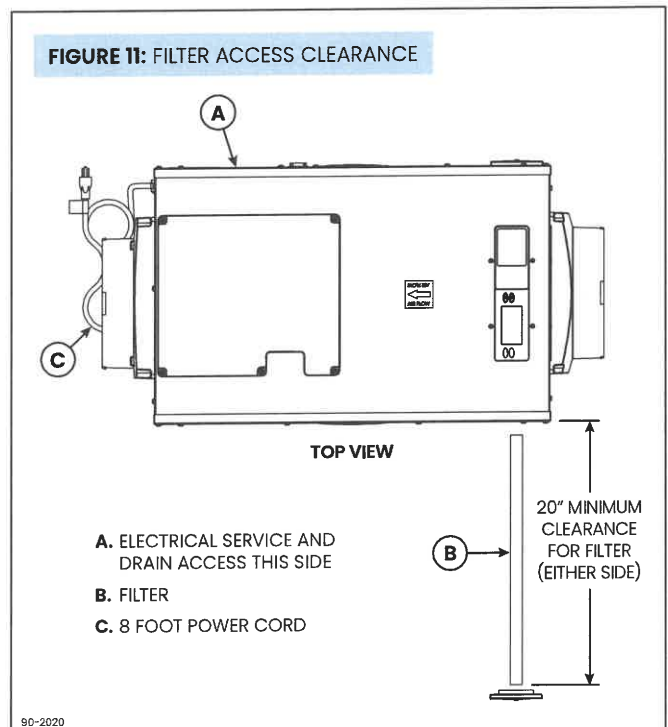
- Use the screws in the parts bag to attach the duct collars to the inlet and outlet of the dehumidifier. The outlet collar has a backflow damper.
- The outlet duct collar may be attached to the top or end of the unit. Move the outlet cover to the location not being used (see **FIGURE 10**).
- Make sure there are no bends in the ductwork coming off the outlet **for a minimum of 4"**. This precaution will ensure that the ductwork will not interfere with the backflow damper function.



INSTALLING THE DEHUMIDIFIER

DEHUMIDIFIER LOCATION

- Electrical service access and drain cleaning will require the removal of the electrical service side panel (see **FIGURE 11**). Allow sufficient space for service on this side of the unit.
- The filter can be removed from either side of the dehumidifier. Allow sufficient space for the filter to be removed and reinstalled.
- If locating the unit where it is not readily accessible (such as a crawl space, an attic or even a basement for some individuals), consider controls such as the Model 76 Dehumidifier Control, which can be mounted in the living space and wired to the dehumidifier.
- For attic installations, suspending the dehumidifier is recommended to reduce noise transference.
- Always install the dehumidifier in or above a condensate pan when locating in or above a finished space.

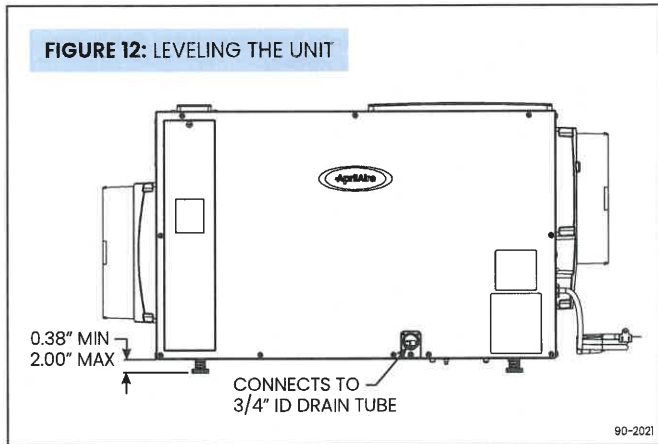


LEVELING AND RAISING THE DEHUMIDIFIER

NOTE: This does not apply to Model EI30C.

The feet can be adjusted to level the unit and accommodate drain fittings and condensate pans as required (see **FIGURE 12**). The unit must be level from front to back and side to side to ensure proper drainage from the dehumidifier.

If installing a condensate pump to the side of the unit (see **FIGURE 14**), more elevation than can be provided by the adjustable feet may be needed. Risers (Part #5879) or hanging kits (Part #5822) are available to lift the dehumidifier higher off the floor.



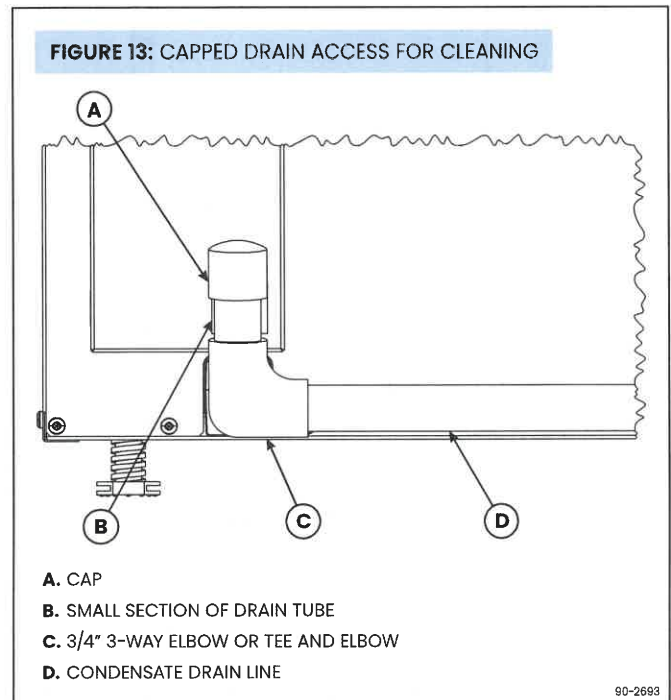
INSTALLING A CONDENSATE PAN UNDER THE DEHUMIDIFIER

Always install the dehumidifier in or above a condensate pan when locating it above a finished space. Adhere to local codes regarding draining of the condensate pan. If a condensate pump is needed, make sure it is in the condensate pan as well. Install a float switch in the condensate pan and/or use the overflow wires/terminals on the condensate pump to stop the dehumidifier should overflow occur. See **WIRING TO A FLOAT SWITCH** on page 13.

INSTALLING THE DRAIN

USING HARD PIPE

- Install a 3/4" PVC slip x 3/4" MNPT PVC fitting to the dehumidifier and use 3/4" nominal PVC Schedule 40 pipe to run the condensate line to the nearest floor drain or to an outside location that slopes away from the building.
- **Always maintain a constant downward slope in drain piping. Ensure that drain tubing does not interfere with removal of the side panel or filter door.**
- **Do not use metal fittings and only hand-tighten threaded fittings.** PTFE thread seal tape is recommended for threaded connections.
- Install a tee or three-way elbow at the dehumidifier outlet with a small, capped vertical tube (do not cement cap in place) to allow for cleaner to be poured into the drain line (see **FIGURE 13**).
- PVC primer and cement is recommended for slip-fit connections (do not cement threaded connections).



USING FLEXIBLE TUBING

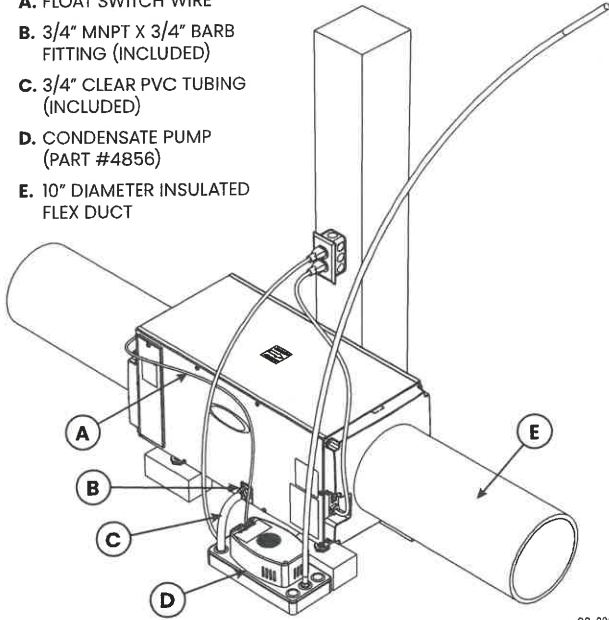
- Install the provided 3/4" NPT x 3/4" hose barb fitting and use 3/4" I.D. flexible drain tubing. **Hand-tighten the fitting to the dehumidifier.** PTFE thread seal tape is recommended for threaded connections.
- **Always maintain a constant downward slope from the dehumidifier to the nearest floor drain or condensate pump, and do not allow soft tubing to curl up, which may result in air lock.**

INSTALLING THE CONDENSATE PUMP

- The AprilAire Model 4856 condensate pump is capable of lifting water up to 22 feet (see **FIGURE 14**).
- The dehumidifier can be elevated (while remaining level) to increase downward slope for proper draining.
- Wire the float switch terminals to the normally closed contacts on the condensate pump (see **FIGURE 22**).

FIGURE 14: DRAIN AND CONDENSATE PUMP INSTALLATION

- A.** FLOAT SWITCH WIRE
- B.** 3/4" MNPT X 3/4" BARB FITTING (INCLUDED)
- C.** 3/4" CLEAR PVC TUBING (INCLUDED)
- D.** CONDENSATE PUMP (PART #4856)
- E.** 10" DIAMETER INSULATED FLEX DUCT



90-2306

INSTALLING DUCTWORK

- Use insulated duct when the dehumidifier is located in an unconditioned space, such as an attic, garage or crawl space, or if connecting a fresh air duct to the dehumidifier ductwork.
- Use zip ties, mastic, and tape as needed to seal the duct connections to the dehumidifier and to seal the insulation sleeves to prevent condensation inside the ductwork.

Connecting the dehumidifier to your HVAC system will pull air to be dehumidified from the whole home and similarly will discharge air to the whole home. **Make sure the duct system pressure the dehumidifier will have to operate against does not exceed 0.6" w.c. Measure the system pressure when the HVAC fan is operating at the highest airflow (speed) setting.**

There are not always readily available locations on the HVAC duct system for connecting 10" ducts, and some local codes do not allow ducting to the return side of the HVAC system. If so, another option is to install just the discharge of the dehumidifier to the HVAC system (see **FIGURE 16** and **FIGURE 17**) or to use dedicated registers for both the inlet and discharge of the dehumidifier (see **FIGURE 18**).

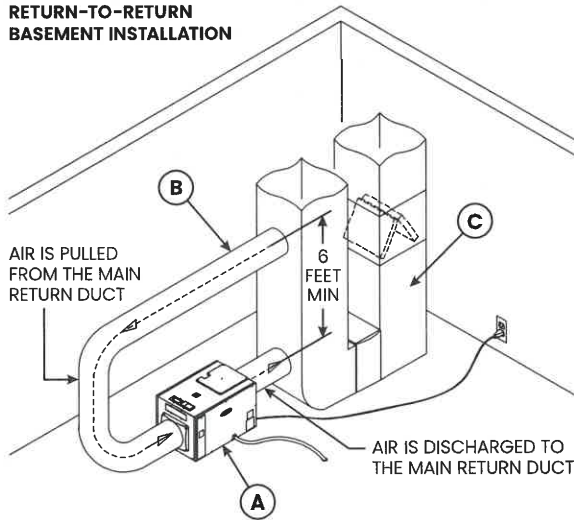
DUCTING THE DEHUMIDIFIER INLET AND OUTLET TO THE HVAC SYSTEM

- Use when both sides of the duct system are accessible (see **FIGURE 15**).
- When ducting from return to supply, the HVAC blower does not need to be running when the dehumidifier is running.
- When ducting return to supply, allow adequate space (24" min) before the first branch duct to ensure the warm dehumidified air is thoroughly mixed with the HVAC system air.

- When ducting from return to return, wire the dehumidifier to the HVAC system as shown in **FIGURE 20** to ensure the HVAC blower runs when the dehumidifier is operating.
- Wire the dehumidifier to the HVAC system (see **FIGURE 20** for exact wiring) and set up the dehumidifier to be disabled when the AC is running.

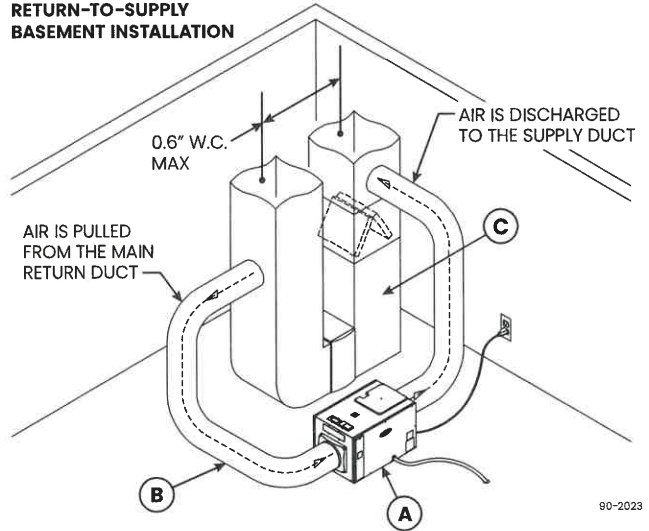
FIGURE 15: FOUR INSTALLATION CONFIGURATIONS

RETURN-TO-RETURN BASEMENT INSTALLATION



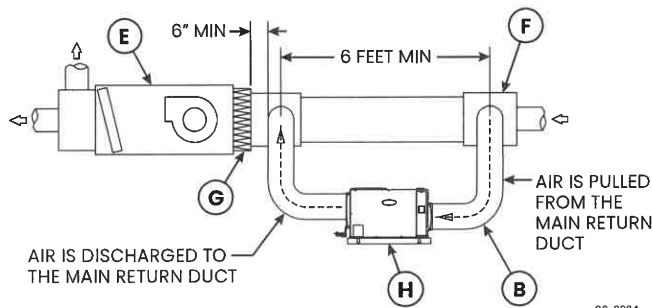
90-2022

RETURN-TO-SUPPLY BASEMENT INSTALLATION



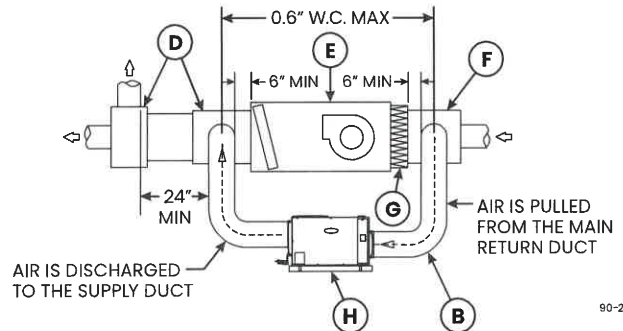
90-2023

RETURN-TO-RETURN ATTIC INSTALLATION



90-2024

RETURN-TO-SUPPLY ATTIC INSTALLATION



90-2025

A. DEHUMIDIFIER

B. 10" DIAMETER INSULATED DUCT

C. HVAC/FURNACE

D. PLENUM BOX

E. AIR HANDLER

F. PLENUM BOX OR Y-FITTING

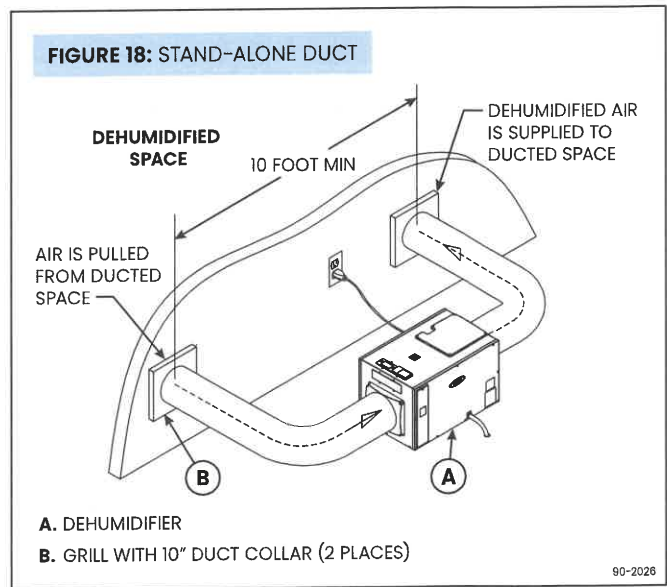
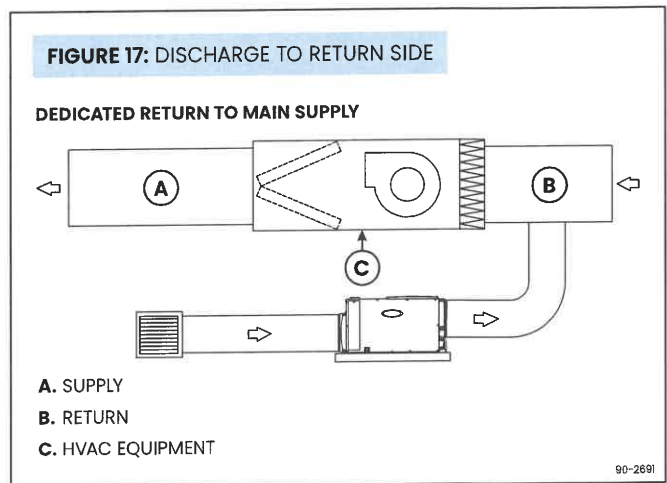
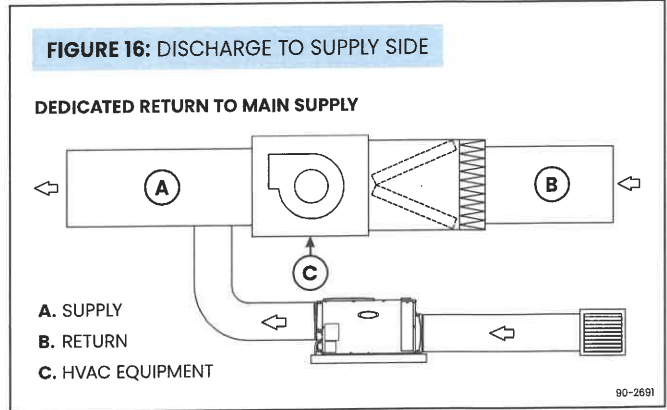
G. FILTER

H. CONDENSATE PAN

DUCTING THE DEHUMIDIFIER OUTLET TO THE HVAC SYSTEM WITH DEDICATED DEHUMIDIFIER INLET REGISTER

- To direct dehumidified air away from a potentially wet AC coil, duct to the supply side of the HVAC system for air handler applications where air is pulled through the AC coil (see **FIGURE 16**).
- Duct to the return side of the HVAC system for furnace applications where air is pushed through the AC coil. Check local codes to verify that ducting to the return side of the HVAC system is allowed (see **FIGURE 17**).
- Wire the dehumidifier to the HVAC system as shown in **FIGURE 20** and set up the dehumidifier to be disabled when the AC is running.

Use dedicated registers to duct the dehumidifier to the whole home when HVAC system ductwork is unavailable or impractical (see **FIGURE 18**).



WIRING

No additional wiring is needed unless:

- the dehumidifier is ducted to the HVAC system
- a separate, external control such as a thermostat or dehumidistat is to be used
- a float switch, either integral to a condensate pump or mounted to the condensate pan, is used

Use 18–22 AWG wire for any needed wiring. Access the dehumidifier wiring terminals by pulling off the wiring access cover near the user interface display (see **FIGURE 18**). Snap the wiring access cover back into place after completing all wiring.

WIRING TO THE HVAC SYSTEM

When the dehumidifier is ducted to the HVAC system, it is recommended that it also be wired to the HVAC system as shown in **FIGURE 20**. If ducted to the HVAC system in a return-to-return configuration, the dehumidifier **must** be wired to the HVAC system to prevent short-circuiting dehumidified air directly back to the dehumidifier inlet. In a return-to-supply ducting configuration, running the HVAC fan with the dehumidifier ensures the warm dry air is mixed with room air before being discharged to the home.

OPTIONAL W & Y WIRING

- Wire the W and/or Y terminal to the HVAC system when using the ventilation feature of the dehumidifier. See **VENTILATION** on page 13.
- Wire the dehumidifier Y terminal to the HVAC system to disable the dehumidifier compressor from operating when the air conditioning is running. See **ENABLING DEH W/AC** on page 16 for additional setup steps required to access this feature.

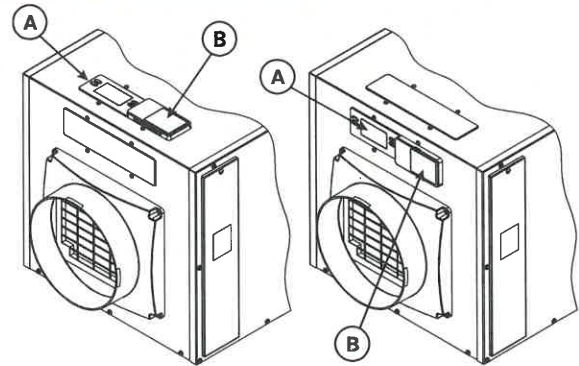
WIRING TO EXTERNAL OR REMOTE CONTROL

The dehumidifier can be wired to an **external control** that senses the humidity in the living space, such as an AprilAire Thermostat or the Model 76 Dehumidifier Control. This is most often done when the **dehumidifier is ducted to the HVAC system** and is located in a hard-to-reach location such as an attic or basement.

The Model 76, when used as a **remote control**, allows the user to see the humidity sensed by the dehumidifier and adjust the dehumidifier setting from a remote location. This is most often used when the **dehumidifier is not ducted to the HVAC system** and serves a hard-to-reach location such as a crawl space or basement.

If using an **external control**, wire to the DH terminals of the dehumidifier (see **FIGURE 21**). Most external controls use a normally open switch that closes with a dehumidification demand, in which case leave the NC/NO switch in the NO position. For controls that use a normally closed switch, put the NC/NO switch in the NC position. If using the AprilAire Model 76 as a **remote control**, wire to the (+ - A B) terminals. Refer to the installation instructions for the control being used for wiring details.

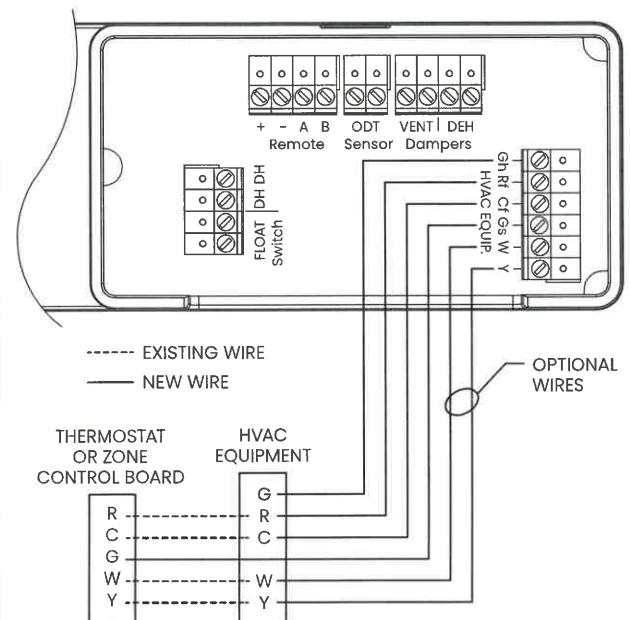
FIGURE 19: WIRING ACCESS COVER LOCATION



- A. USER INTERFACE
- B. WIRING ACCESS COVER

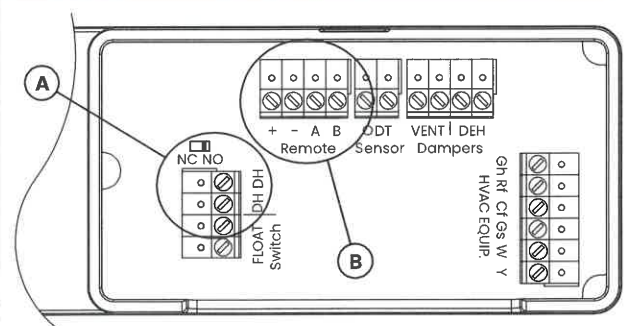
90-2017

FIGURE 20: WIRING TO HVAC SYSTEM



90-1659

FIGURE 21: WIRING TO AN EXTERNAL OR REMOTE CONTROL

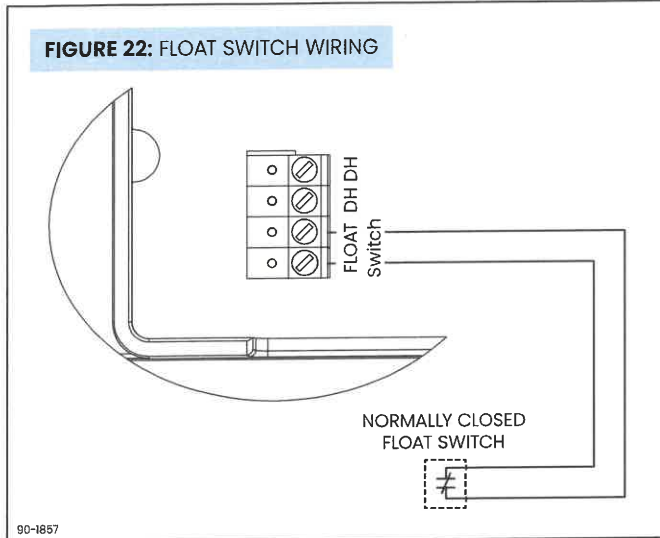


- A. USE FOR EXTERNAL CONTROL APPLICATIONS
- B. USE FOR REMOTE CONTROL APPLICATIONS

90-2694

WIRING TO A FLOAT SWITCH

Use only if the installation includes a float switch or a condensate pump. The dehumidifier leaves the factory with a jumper wire installed in the float switch terminals. Remove the jumper and wire the float switch terminals to the float switch or condensate pump overflow switch as shown in **FIGURE 22**.



VENTILATION

The dehumidifier can activate a normally closed damper to bring in outdoor air through a fresh air intake duct. This feature cannot be used when a Model 76 has been installed in a remote control application and should not be used in two-zone installations.

1. Install the Fresh Air Inlet (FAI) duct and damper as shown in **FIGURE 23** and **FIGURE 24**.

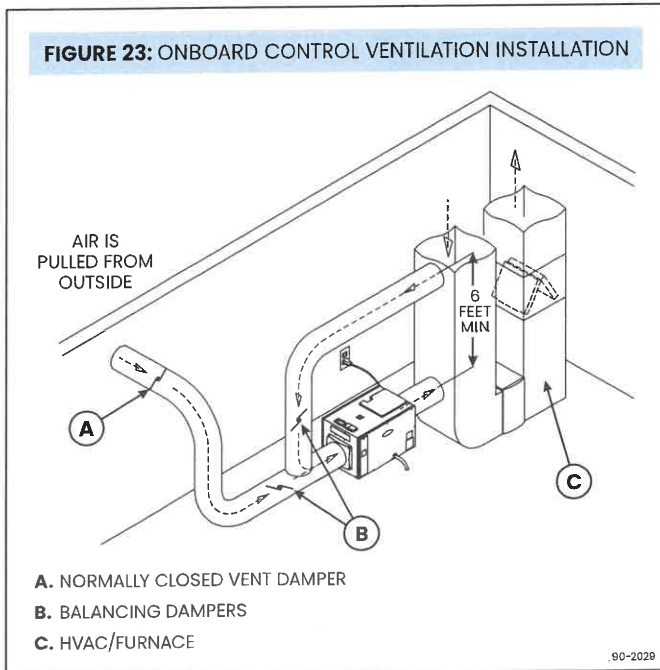
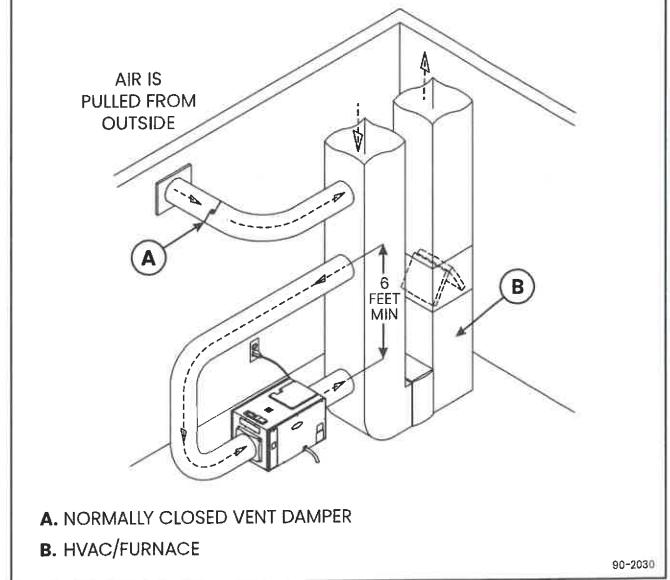


FIGURE 24: EXTERNAL CONTROL VENTILATION INSTALLATION



2. Install the Outdoor Temperature Sensor (ODT) as shown in **FIGURE 25** and **FIGURE 26** – only needed if ventilation will be limited during high or low outdoor temperature conditions.

FIGURE 25: ODT MOUNTED OUTSIDE

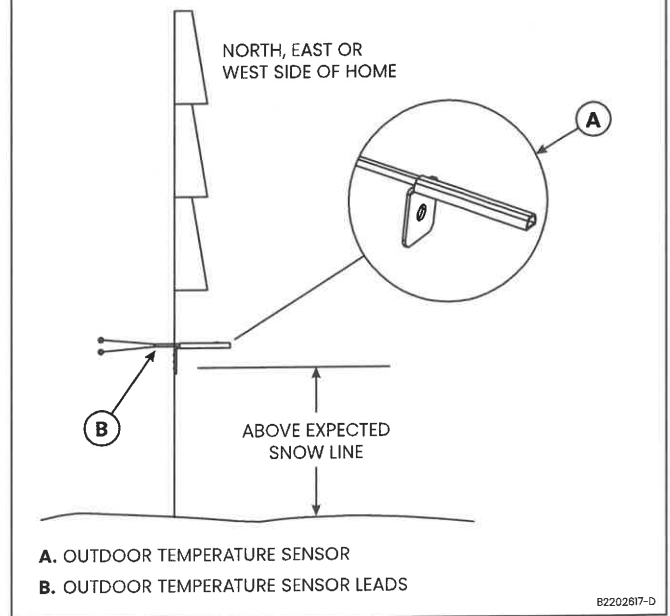
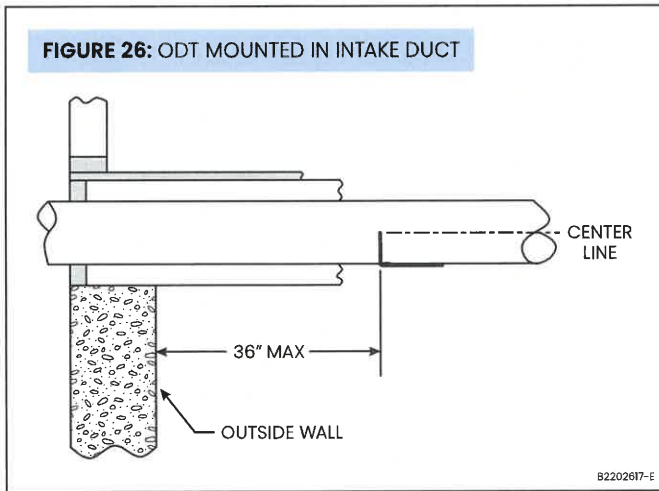
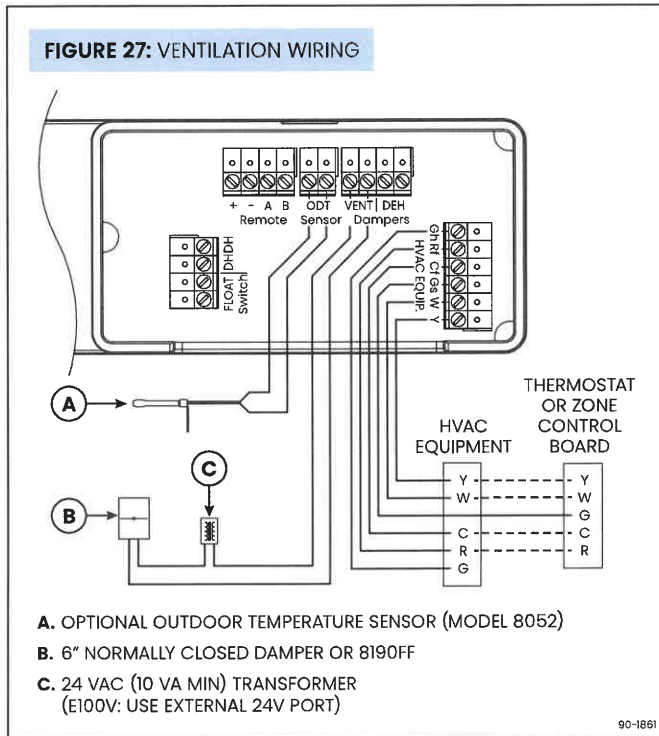


FIGURE 26: ODT MOUNTED IN INTAKE DUCT



3. Wire the FAI damper, HVAC equipment and outdoor temperature sensor to the dehumidifier control as shown in **FIGURE 27**.

FIGURE 27: VENTILATION WIRING



4. Use the Set-Up menu to ENABLE ventilation:
 - a. Enter the Installer Set-Up menu (see page 15).
 - b. Press the Mode button until **VENT DISABLED** appears.
 - c. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to change to **VENT ENABLED**.
 - d. Press the Mode button and **VENT TIMED** will appear. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to set temperature limits:
 - i. **TIMED**: no temperature limits
 - ii. **AUTO – B**: Ventilation is not allowed if the ODT > 100°F or ODT < 0°F; ventilation is allowed only when the heat is on if the ODT is between 0°F and 20°F
 - iii. **AUTO – C**: Ventilation is not allowed if the ODT > 100°F or ODT < 0°F
 - iv. **AUTO – D**: Ventilation is not allowed if the ODT > 90°F; ventilation is allowed only when the heat is on if the ODT is between 0°F and 40°F
 - e. Press the Mode button and then use the ▲ or ▼ button to set the ventilation time (minutes/hour).
 - f. Press the Mode button repeatedly until **DONE** appears on the display.

Whenever the heating, cooling or dehumidifier is active, the ventilation damper will open and bring in outdoor air. If the equipment doesn't run for the set number of minutes, the dehumidifier will turn on the HVAC fan at the end of the hour to ensure ventilation needs are met.

ZONING THE DEHUMIDIFIER

The dehumidifier can be configured to condition two independent spaces. Zoning requires the installation of ductwork and dampers to direct air to and from two locations.

NOTE: Dehumidifier zoning is not recommended in HVAC zoning applications.

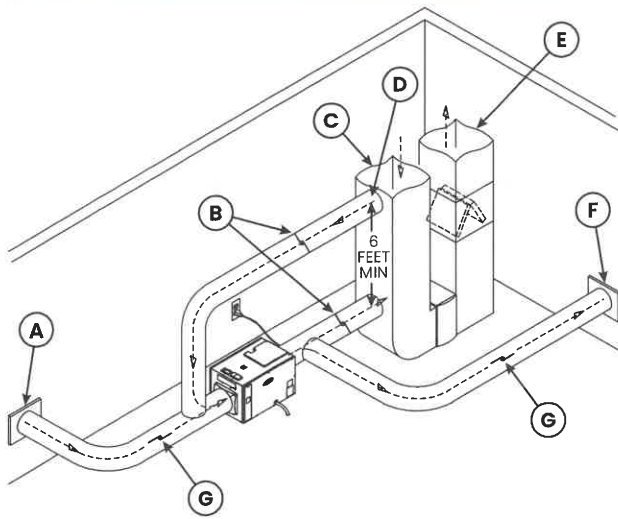
In this installation the dehumidifier controls the humidity in two separate zones, a Primary and Secondary Zone. The dehumidifier will dehumidify the Primary Zone as the first priority and will switch to the Secondary Zone after the dehumidification needs of the Primary Zone have been satisfied.

IMPORTANT: Normally Closed dampers must be installed in the ducts serving the Primary Zone and Normally Open dampers installed in the ducts serving the Secondary Zone.

REQUIRED COMPONENTS

- 10" ductwork and fittings
- Grilles with 10" duct collars
- Drain line
- 5442 Basement Kit
 - 2 AprilAire Model 6510, 10" Normally Closed damper
 - 2 AprilAire Model 6610, 10" Normally Open damper
 - 24 VAC transformer (40 VA min.) for dampers

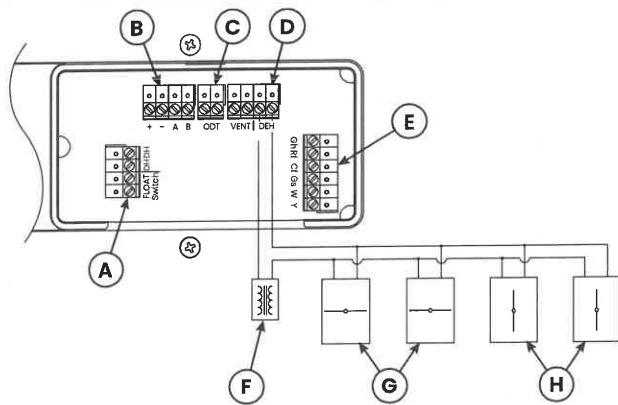
FIGURE 28: WHOLE-HOME PRIMARY ZONE INSTALLATION



- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| A. RETURN FROM SECONDARY ZONE | E. SUPPLY DUCT |
| B. NORMALLY CLOSED DAMPERS | F. SUPPLY TO SECONDARY ZONE |
| C. RETURN DUCT | G. NORMALLY OPEN DAMPER |
| D. TO/FROM PRIMARY ZONE | |

90-2027

FIGURE 29: TWO-ZONE WIRING ON-BOARD CONTROL



- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|
| A. FLOAT SWITCH | E. HVAC EQUIPMENT |
| B. REMOTE | F. 24 VAC (40 VA MIN.) |
| C. SENSOR | G. NORMALLY CLOSED (PRIMARY ZONE) |
| D. DAMPERS | H. NORMALLY OPEN (SECONDARY ZONE) |

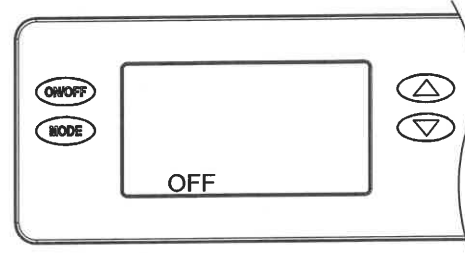
90-1896

INSTALLER SET-UP

Enter the Set-Up menu if:

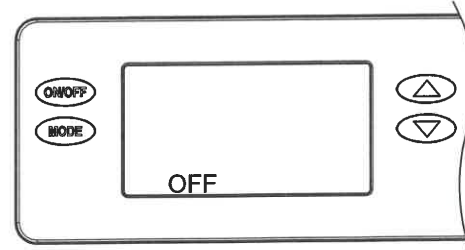
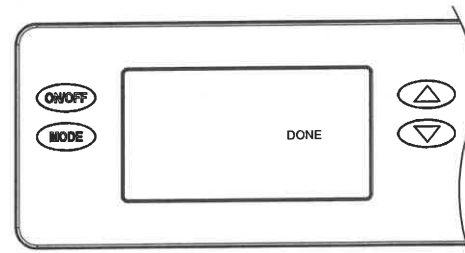
- the dehumidifier is ducted to the HVAC system
- an external or remote control will be used
- ventilation or zoning will be used

1. Plug unit in and turn power switch ON (if equipped).
2. The onboard control screen should display **OFF**. If not OFF, press the ON/OFF button to turn the unit OFF.



NOTE: If the display backlight is not on, the first button press (any button) will only turn on the backlight. Press the button a second time to achieve function.

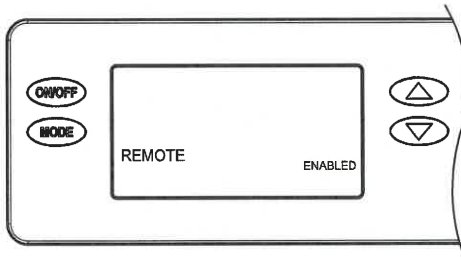
3. Hold the MODE button on the onboard control for 3 seconds to enter the Installer Set-Up menu.
4. Press MODE to navigate through the screens to set up the dehumidifier for the installed application. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to select items. To exit installer set-up, navigate through all options using the MODE button. Navigate through the following screens to set up the dehumidifier for the installed application.
5. After the Installer Set-Up options have been completed, **DONE** will blink for 3 seconds and the control will return to the **OFF** screen.



6. Not all system set-up options will be covered in these instructions. The default settings are recommended for those options in most applications.

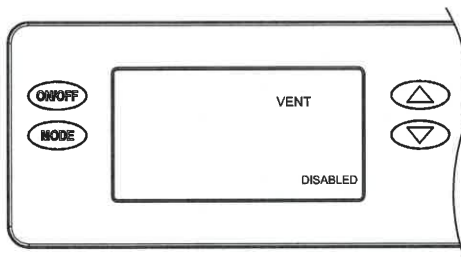
SETTING UP REMOTE CONTROL – CRAWL SPACE/SEALED ATTIC

If wiring to a Model 76 for remote control (see pages 12 and 18 for details) press the ▲ or ▼ button to select **ENABLED**. Then press the MODE button to advance screen.



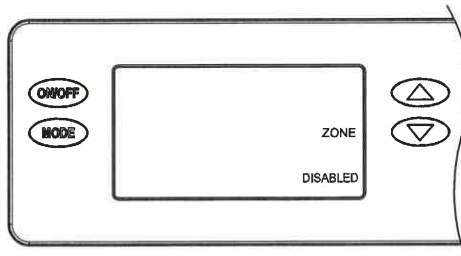
SETTING UP VENTILATION

See page 13 for details if using the dehumidifier for ventilation.



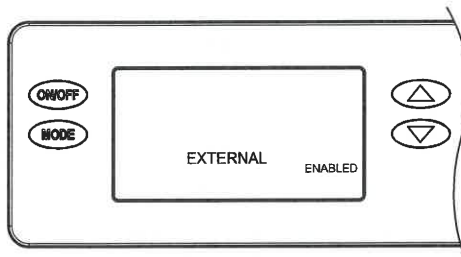
SETTING UP ZONING

See page 14 if zoning the dehumidifier.



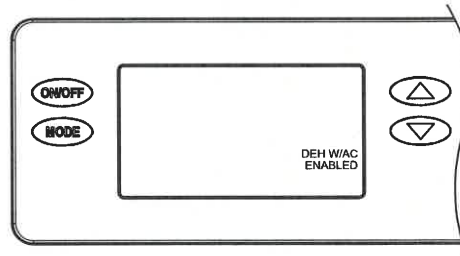
SETTING UP EXTERNAL CONTROL

If wiring to an external control (see page 12 for details) press the ▲ or ▼ button to select **ENABLED**. Then press the MODE button to advance screen.

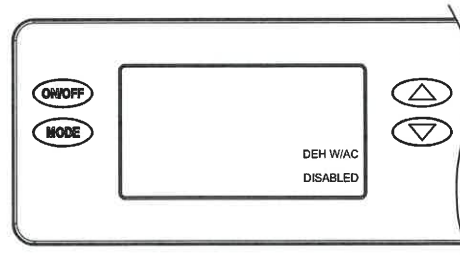


ENABLING DEH W/AC

To allow dehumidification during active air conditioning, select **ENABLED** and press the MODE button.

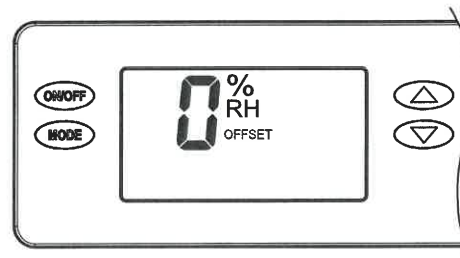


To disable dehumidification when the air conditioning is on, select **DISABLED** and press the MODE button. This option may be preferable when the air conditioning system has difficulty maintaining the desired set point.



APPLYING AN RH OFFSET

An offset can be applied to the onboard humidity reading to avoid discrepancies with other humidity-measuring devices in the home. Use the ▲ or ▼ button to select an offset from -5% to 5%. Press the MODE button to exit the Installer Set-Up screens. **DONE** will be displayed on the screen and Installer Set-Up is complete.

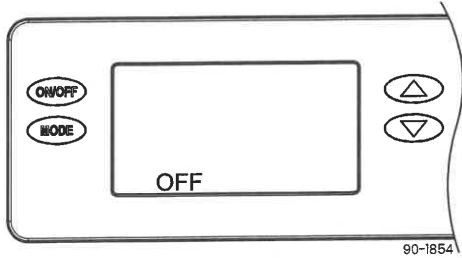


INSTALLER TEST MODE

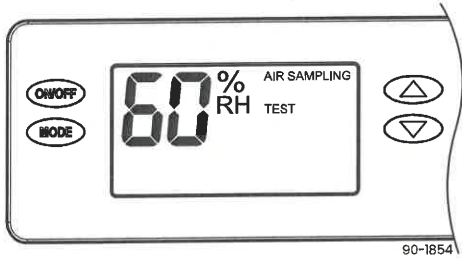
If everything is properly wired, the dehumidifier and all of the wired components will turn on and off during Installer Test Mode to demonstrate that all are properly operating. Installer Test Mode lasts for four (4) minutes. If the ON/OFF button is pressed during test mode, the dehumidifier will exit Installer Test Mode and return to the **OFF** screen.

DEHUMIDIFICATION ONLY

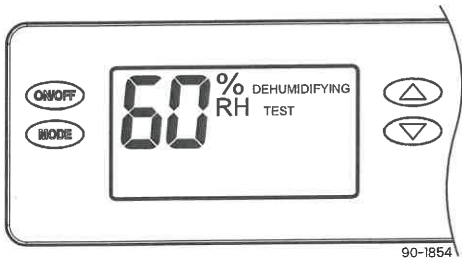
If the dehumidifier is not already OFF, press the ON/OFF button to turn it off.



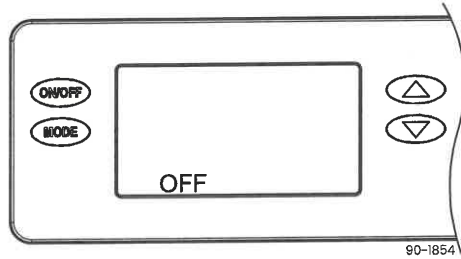
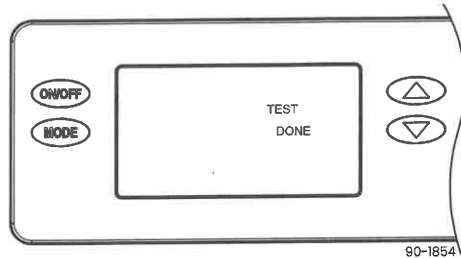
Press and hold the ON/OFF and MODE buttons for 3 seconds. The measured humidity, **AIR SAMPLING** and **TEST** will show on the display. If wired to the HVAC system, the HVAC blower will turn on and if there is/are damper(s) wired to the DEH DAMPER terminals of the control, the damper(s) will energize.



After three (3) minutes the dehumidifier compressor will turn on and **DEHUMIDIFYING** will replace **AIR SAMPLING** on the control screen.

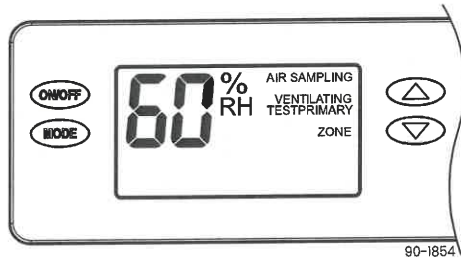


After one minute of compressor operation, all outputs will turn off and **DONE** will blink for 3 seconds and then return to the **OFF** screen.

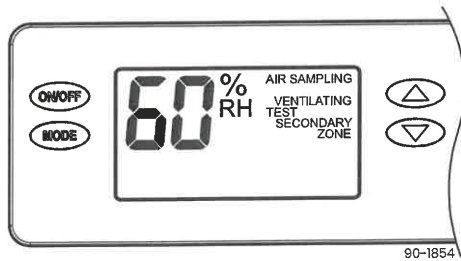


ZONING AND/OR VENTILATION

If the dehumidifier has been set up for ventilation, **VENTILATING** will appear on the display throughout Installer Test Mode, and the ventilation damper will be energized.



If the dehumidifier has been set up for zoning, **PRIMARY ZONE** will show on the display for the first minute of dehumidifier blower operation. After one minute, **SECONDARY ZONE** will show on the display and the zone dampers will de-energize.



STARTING UP THE UNIT AND SEQUENCE OF OPERATION

Ensure unit is plugged in and if equipped use the ON/OFF power switch near the power cord to apply power to the dehumidifier.

USING THE DEHUMIDIFIER CONTROL ONLY

1. Press the ON/OFF button to turn the dehumidifier control ON. The display will show the current humidity setting, and the dehumidifier blower and HVAC blower (if wired to the HVAC system) will turn on to start sampling.

The setting will be replaced by the measured humidity and **AIR SAMPLING** appears on the display.

2. Use the ▲ or ▼ button to adjust the humidity setting as desired. The recommended initial setting is between **55%** and **59%** RH.
3. After three (3) minutes of sampling, the measured humidity will be compared to the setting:
 - a. If the humidity is above the setting, the dehumidifier compressor turns on and **AIR SAMPLING** will be replaced by **DEHUMIDIFYING**. The compressor remains on until the measured humidity falls 3% RH below the setting.
 - b. If the measured humidity is below the setting, the blowers turn off and the display returns to showing the RH setting.
4. The dehumidifier will sample again every 60 minutes, or at any time if the humidity setting is lowered.

USING A MODEL 76 AS A REMOTE CONTROL

1. Press the ON/OFF button to turn the dehumidifier control ON. The display will show **REMOTE** to indicate that a remote control is to be used to control the dehumidifier.
2. At the Model 76, press the ON button; the Model 76 will display the RH measured at the dehumidifier, and the dehumidifier blower will turn on to start sampling the air.
3. Use the ▲ or ▼ button on the Model 76 to adjust the dryness level as desired. The dryness levels range from **1** to **7**, with **1** being least dry and **7** being most dry; the recommended initial setting is **3**.
4. After three (3) minutes of sampling, the measured humidity will be compared to the setting:
 - a. If the humidity is above the setting, the dehumidifier compressor turns on and **ON** flashes on the Model 76 display.
 - b. If the measured humidity is below the setting, the dehumidifier blower turns off.
5. The dehumidifier will sample again every 60 minutes, or at any time if the dryness level is increased.

USING AN EXTERNAL CONTROL

1. Press the ON/OFF button to turn the dehumidifier control ON. The display will show **EXTERNAL** to indicate that an external control is to be used to control the dehumidifier.
2. At the external control, initiate a dehumidification demand. Refer to the literature provided with the external control. The dehumidifier fan and compressor, and the HVAC fan (if wired to do so) will turn on and **DEHUMIDIFYING** will appear on the display of the dehumidifier.

NOTE: When using an external control, there is a three-minute delay after power-up (i.e., ON/OFF power switch is turned ON with unit plugged in) before the dehumidifier will respond to an external control. This prevents unanticipated, early start-up after power is applied.

3. Discontinue the demand at the external control; the dehumidifier and HVAC fan will turn off.

TWO-ZONE OPERATION




The Primary Zone operates as listed for using the dehumidifier control or an external control. **PRIMARY ZONE** shows on the display when operating.

The Secondary Zone uses the humidity setting on the dehumidifier control. During Secondary Zone operation, the installed dampers are de-energized and the HVAC blower (if on) stops. **SECONDARY ZONE** shows on the display when operating.

The Secondary Zone is sampled immediately after the Primary Zone has finished sampling, or if there is a call for dehumidification from the Primary Zone, immediately after the call has been satisfied. When an external control is installed, the Secondary Zone will be sampled once per hour if there has not been a call for dehumidification from the Primary Zone.

SERVICE INSTRUCTIONS

SYMBOLS

		
Symbol ISO 7010-W021 (2011-05)	Symbol ISO 7000-1659 (2004-01)	Symbol ISO 7000-1659 (2004-01)
Warning: flammable materials	Service indicator: read technical manual	Operator's manual: operating instructions

SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

⚠ WARNING

- **Sealed Refrigeration System is not field serviceable!**
- This appliance contains a mildly flammable A2L refrigerant.
- Do not use means to accelerate the defrosting process or to clean, other than those recommended by the manufacturer.
- The appliance shall be stored (when not in use) in a room without continuously operating ignition sources (for example: open flames, an operating gas appliance or operating electric heater).
- Do not pierce or burn sealed system.
- Be aware that refrigerants may not contain odor.

⚠ CAUTION

When connected via air ducts to one or more rooms the appliance shall be directly ducted to the space. Open areas such as false ceilings shall not be used as a return air duct.

SERVICE

Approved auxiliary devices: Only approved auxiliary devices approved by the appliance manufacturer shall be installed in the ductwork.

- Fresh Air Ventilator, Stock # 8190FF

The following checks shall be applied to installations using FLAMMABLE REFRIGERANTS:

- The ventilation machinery and outlets are operating adequately and are not obstructed.
- Marking on the equipment shall be visible and legible. Markings and signs that are illegible shall be corrected.
- When opening the ventilated enclosure for repair of electrical components, be sure to check for refrigerant leaks with a certified flammable refrigerant leak detector.

Repair Initial safety checks shall include:

- Servicing the electrical system on the unit should be carried out by a qualified and licensed electrician.
- Disconnect power from the unit (unplug) before attempting service or repair.
- The capacitors are discharged: this shall be done in a safe manner to avoid possibility of sparking; that no live electrical components and wiring are exposed in case of a leak.
- There is continuity of earth bonding.
- Sealed electrical components shall be replaced, not repaired.
- Do not apply any permanent inductive or capacitance loads to the circuit without ensuring that this will not exceed the permissible voltage and current permitted for the equipment in use.
- Intrinsically safe components must be replaced if tripped.
- Replace components only with parts specified by the manufacturer. Other parts may result in the ignition of refrigerant in the atmosphere from a leak.
- Prior to beginning work on systems containing FLAMMABLE REFRIGERANTS, safety checks are necessary to ensure that the risk of ignition is minimized.
- Ensure that the area is in the open or that it is adequately ventilated before removal of the dehumidifier panels for servicing or conducting any hot work in the vicinity of the unit. A degree of ventilation shall continue during the period that the work is carried out. The ventilation should safely disperse any released refrigerant and preferably expel it externally into the atmosphere.

- The refrigeration system is considered factory sealed and puncturing the refrigerant tubing in any way is prohibited.
- Repairing the refrigeration system shall not be performed in the field and must be done at the manufacturing facility by trained personnel.
- Check that cabling will not be subject to wear, corrosion, excessive pressure, vibration, sharp edges, or any other adverse environmental effects. The check shall also consider the effects of aging or continual vibration from sources such as compressors or fans.
- If a leak is suspected, all naked flames shall be removed/extinguished.

The following leak detection methods are deemed acceptable for all refrigerant systems:

- Under no circumstances shall potential sources of ignition be used in the searching for or detection of refrigerant leaks. A halide torch (or any other detector using a naked flame) shall not be used.
- Electronic leak detectors may be used to detect refrigerant leaks but must be calibrated correctly for Flammable Refrigerants. (Detection equipment shall be calibrated in a refrigerant-free area.)
- Ensure that the detector is not a potential source of ignition and is suitable for the refrigerant used.
- Leak detection equipment shall be set at a percentage of the Lower Flammability Limit (LFL) of the refrigerant and shall be calibrated to the refrigerant employed, and the appropriate percentage of gas (25 % maximum) is confirmed.
- Leak detection fluids are also suitable for use with most refrigerants but the use of detergents containing chlorine shall be avoided as the chlorine may react with the refrigerant and corrode the copper pipework. Examples of leak detection fluids are:
 - bubble method,
 - fluorescent method agents.
- **NOTE:** The use of silicon sealant can inhibit the effectiveness of some types of leak detection equipment.

**FOR ADDITIONAL ASSISTANCE:
Technical Support is available Monday through Friday (see TROUBLESHOOTING).**

TROUBLESHOOTING

NOTICE

Troubleshooting and repairs shall be performed by a qualified HVAC service technician, and all safety procedures shall be followed.

Technical support is available Monday through Friday 7:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. CST at 800.334.6011. Use the guides on the following pages to identify and correct system faults. Contact Technical Support before replacing the unit or any components and for additional troubleshooting.

DIAGNOSTIC CODES

When an error occurs, the Diagnostic Code along with **SERVICE REQUIRED** will be displayed on the user interface screen.

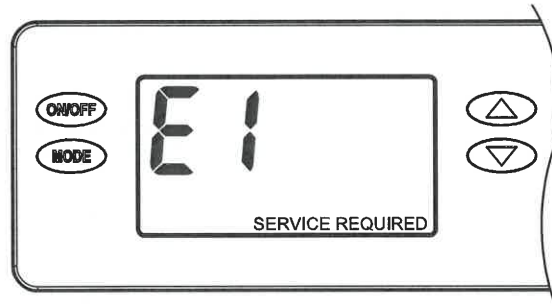


TABLE 1: DIAGNOSTIC CODES

Diagnostic Code	Failure Mode	Action	Reset
E1	Internal Humidity or Temperature Sensor Open or Shorted	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Cycle power to clear error code. Unplug the unit from the outlet or switch the ON/OFF power switch (if equipped) to the OFF position for at least 10 seconds before restoring power. 2. If error code reoccurs, replace User Interface, Part #5445. 	Cycle Power
E2	High Refrigeration Pressure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Verify that the fan works, the backflow damper swings freely, and there is no blocked or restricted ductwork. 2. If the fault persists, call Technical Support. 	Cycle Power
E3	Model 76 Remote Control Communication Loss	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check connections between Model 76 and dehumidifier user interface. Terminals should be fully inserted and secured in the user interface and Model 76 control terminals. 2. If connections are correct and secure, turn off the dehumidifier and remove the Model 76. Use a short section of 4-wire cable to reconnect the Model 76 to the user interface. Turn the dehumidifier back on and increase the dryness level setting on the Model 76. If the dehumidifier turns on, a problem exists with the wiring between the dehumidifier and control. 3. If the dehumidifier does not turn on, call Technical Support. 	Self-Correcting
E4	Insufficient Capacity	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the frost sensor connection at the power board. The terminal should be fully seated on the power board pins. 2. Remove the side access panel and verify that the sensor is secured to the suction line. 3. If the sensor is connected and secured to the refrigeration line, proceed to the next step. 4. Reset the fault by cycling power to the dehumidifier. 5. Turn the humidity setting down (below room/home humidity level) to make a dehumidification call. 6. Allow the fan and compressor to run for approximately 10–15 minutes and then enter diagnostic test mode by simultaneously pressing the ▲ button and MODE button for 3 seconds. The LCD will display: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the temperature measured by the internal sensor while also displaying AIR SAMPLING and ON. • the humidity measured by the internal sensor while also displaying %RH and ON. • the frost sensor temperature while also displaying ON. Scroll through these values and by using the ▲ or ▼ button. 7. Record values and call Technical Support. 	Cycle Power

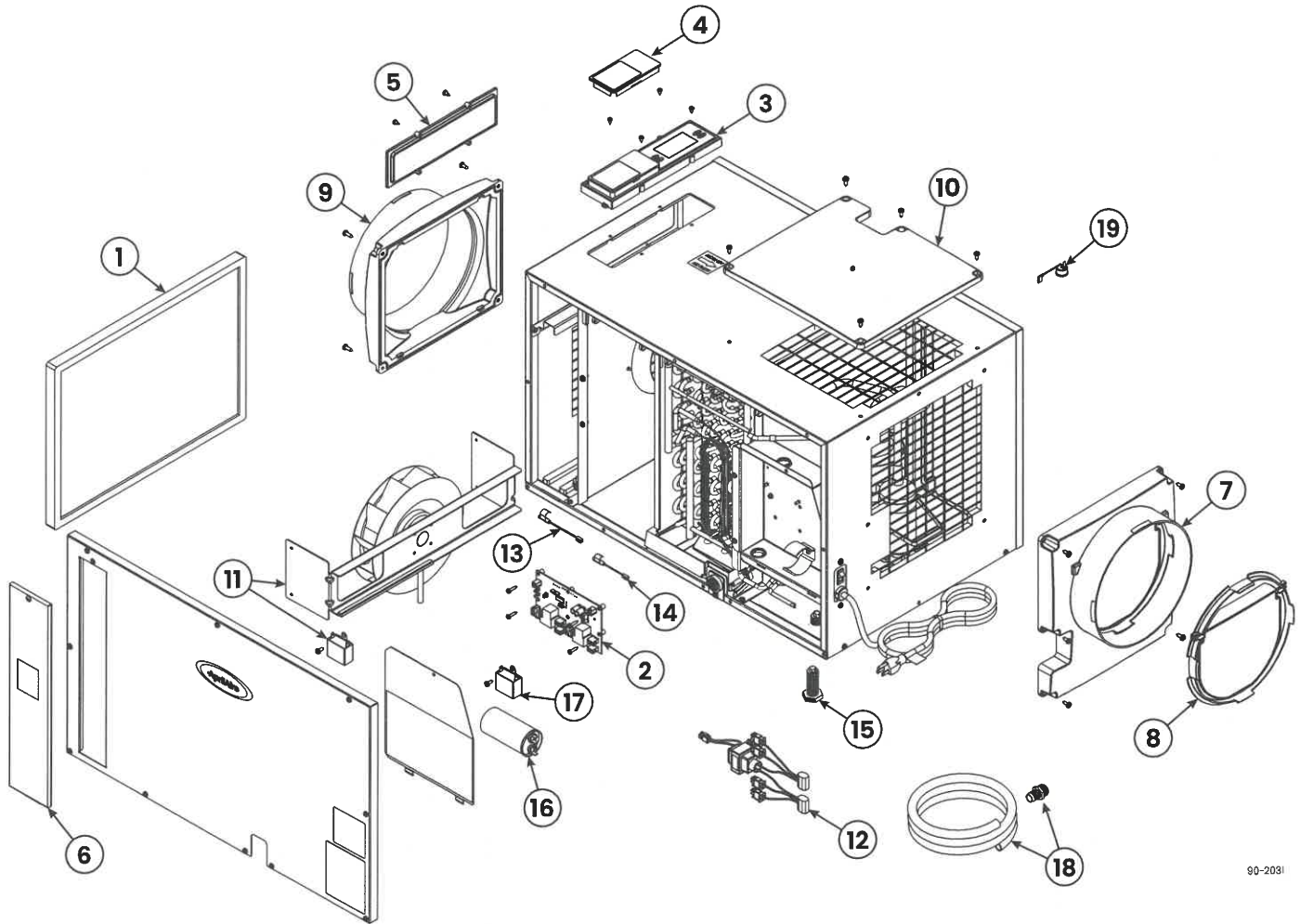
TABLE 1: DIAGNOSTIC CODES

Diagnostic Code	Failure Mode	Action	Reset														
E5	High Temperature Thermistor Failure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the high temperature sensor connection (if equipped) at the power board. The terminal should be fully seated on the power board pins. 2. Remove the side access panel and verify the sensor is not damaged and connected to the refrigeration line coming from the compressor. 3. If the sensor is connected and secured to the refrigeration line, it may need to be replaced with Part #5456 – contact Technical Support to confirm. 	Cycle Power														
E6	Low Temperature Thermistor Failure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the low temperature sensor connection at the power board. 2. Remove the side access panel and verify the sensor is not damaged and connected to the suction line. 3. If the sensor is connected and secured to the refrigeration line, it may need to be replaced with Part #5455 – contact Technical Support to confirm. 	Cycle Power														
E7	Float Switch Open	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Empty the condensate pan. 2. Check the float switch connection at the user interface. 3. If not using a float switch, verify jumper is between float switch terminals on the dehumidifier user interface. 4. If the problem persists, replace the float switch. 	Self-Correcting														
E8	Inlet Air Temperature Out of 50°F–104°F Range, or Dew Point Below 40°F	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Verify all ductwork is properly sealed. 2. Check for air leakage that might affect the temperature or RH of the incoming air. 3. If the air temperature is in range and the dew point is above 40°F, contact Technical Support. 	Self-Correcting														
E9	Outdoor Temperature Sensor Open or Shorted	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the sensor connection at the power board. 2. Remove the wires from the terminals and measure the resistance. A short circuit will have a resistance very close to 0 Ohms and an open circuit will have a very high resistance. Use the Ohms chart at right to approximate the resistance based on outdoor temperature. 3. If the sensor is not reading correctly, replace the sensor, Part #8052. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Outdoor Temperature</th> <th>Resistance</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0°F</td> <td>84,500 Ohms</td> </tr> <tr> <td>20°F</td> <td>46,000 Ohms</td> </tr> <tr> <td>40°F</td> <td>26,000 Ohms</td> </tr> <tr> <td>60°F</td> <td>15,500 Ohms</td> </tr> <tr> <td>80°F</td> <td>9,500 Ohms</td> </tr> <tr> <td>100°F</td> <td>6,000 Ohms</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Outdoor Temperature	Resistance	0°F	84,500 Ohms	20°F	46,000 Ohms	40°F	26,000 Ohms	60°F	15,500 Ohms	80°F	9,500 Ohms	100°F	6,000 Ohms	Self-Correcting
Outdoor Temperature	Resistance																
0°F	84,500 Ohms																
20°F	46,000 Ohms																
40°F	26,000 Ohms																
60°F	15,500 Ohms																
80°F	9,500 Ohms																
100°F	6,000 Ohms																

TABLE 2: TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

Symptom	Failure Mode	Action													
Dehumidifier does not turn on/run.	No power to unit.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the dehumidifier is plugged in. • Check that the power switch is turned ON (if equipped). • Check that the user interface is turned ON. • Check that the circuit breaker has not tripped. 													
Dehumidifier blower is running but with little or no airflow.	Pressure drop across dehumidifier is higher than 0.6" w.c.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check dehumidifier air filter and wash or replace. • Check for blocked ductwork and clear. • Verify that the outlet collar with backflow damper is installed on the outlet side of the dehumidifier. • Check if backflow damper is blocked or stuck and remove obstruction. 													
Dehumidifier blower is running but compressor is not.	Float Switch open (E7 appears on display).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If float switch is installed, check connections at user interface and empty the condensate pan. • If no float switch is installed, check that the jumper is installed at the float switch terminals on the user interface. 													
	Unit is defrosting.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Frosting occurs when the incoming air is cool and dry, normally during Spring or Fall, or the airflow is restricted. Frosting due to cold/dry conditions is a normal part of operation and DEFROSTING will show on the display. If it is not cool and dry, look for blocked ductwork or a dirty filter. 													
	Inlet air temperature is outside of the 50°F–104°F range or the dew point is below 40°F and there is a demand for dehumidification.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Verify all ductwork is properly sealed. Dehumidification will restart by itself when the incoming air temperature is within range and the dew point is above 40°F. E8 appears on the display when inlet air conditions prevent operation. 													
When zoned, the dehumidifier damper does not open in INSTALLER TEST mode.	Incorrect damper wiring or bad connection.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Verify wiring between dampers and 24 VAC transformer. • If wired for Two Zone operation, verify that 24 VAC transformer is 40 VA minimum. • Check all wiring connections between dampers and user interface. • Verify the normally closed dampers are in the Primary Zone ductwork and the normally open dampers are in the Secondary Zone ductwork. 													
The ventilation damper does not open when the HVAC fan is active.	Cycle time has been met.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The damper will not open if the ventilation time has already been met. 													
	Incorrect transformer wiring.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Verify wiring between damper, VENT terminal, and 24 VAC transformer. These should be wired in series. • Verify that 24 VAC transformer is 10 VA minimum and voltage is present. 													
	ODT error or outdoor air outside of ODT range.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the ODT is wired correctly to the dehumidifier user interface and connections are secure. • Check that the ODT is installed in the outdoor air intake according to the setup specified in VENTILATION on page 13. • Remove the ODT leads from the dehumidifier user interface and check the resistance. Compare the reading with the chart on the right. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Outdoor Temperature</th> <th>Resistance</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0°F</td> <td>84,500 Ohms</td> </tr> <tr> <td>20°F</td> <td>46,000 Ohms</td> </tr> <tr> <td>40°F</td> <td>26,000 Ohms</td> </tr> <tr> <td>60°F</td> <td>15,500 Ohms</td> </tr> <tr> <td>80°F</td> <td>9,500 Ohms</td> </tr> <tr> <td>100°F</td> <td>6,000 Ohms</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Outdoor Temperature	Resistance	0°F	84,500 Ohms	20°F	46,000 Ohms	40°F	26,000 Ohms	60°F	15,500 Ohms	80°F	9,500 Ohms	100°F
Outdoor Temperature	Resistance														
0°F	84,500 Ohms														
20°F	46,000 Ohms														
40°F	26,000 Ohms														
60°F	15,500 Ohms														
80°F	9,500 Ohms														
100°F	6,000 Ohms														
Dehumidifier is not draining properly.	Drain line blocked or unit not level.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Verify that the unit is level. • Check the drain line blockages and check for a continuous downward slope. • Verify presence and condition of drain cover insert. See MAINTENANCE on page 5 for cleaning procedure, or replace with Part #5885 if missing or damaged. 													
The HVAC fan turns on unexpectedly.	Dehumidifier is sampling or ventilation in progress.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The dehumidifier will turn on the HVAC fan during air sampling or as needed to meet the ventilation time. 													
Dehumidifier is producing hot air.	Normal function.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Air is reheated across the condenser coil, resulting in a temperature rise between inlet and outlet. 													

E130 SERVICE PARTS



90-2031

No.	Part Description	Part No.
1	EZK Filter, 14" x 19" x 1"	5569
2	Internal Control Board	5444
3	User Interface Assembly	5445
4	Wiring Access Door	5446
5	Hole Cover, UI Ctrl	5447
6	Door, Filter Access	5571
7	Outlet Duct Panel	5449
8	Backflow Damper, 10"	5450
9	Inlet Duct Panel	5451
10	Cover, Outlet	5452
11	Fan, 130pt Deh, with 10MFD Capacitor	5572

No.	Part Description	Part No.
12	Transformer and Wire Harness	5454
13	Sensor, Low Temperature	5455
14	Sensor, High Temperature (if equipped)	5456
15	Leveling Foot (not included with E100C)	5457
16	Capacitor, 50MFD, 370VAC	5594
17	Capacitor, 10MFD, 250VAC	5573
18	Drain Tube + Threaded Barbed Fitting	5692
	Threaded Barbed Drain Fitting	5693
19	Compressor Overload Switch	5574
NOT SHOWN		
Casters (E130C only)		70000014

LIMITED WARRANTY

Terms of Coverage

Your AprilAire® Dehumidifier is expressly warranted to be free from defects in materials or workmanship for five (5) years from date of purchase.

What Is Covered

The exclusive obligation of AprilAire under this Limited Warranty shall be, at the sole discretion of AprilAire, to supply, without charge, a replacement for any component or product which is found to be defective. A defective part will be replaced pursuant to this Limited Warranty with a genuine AprilAire part. A defective product will be replaced pursuant to this Limited Warranty with a new AprilAire product of equal or similar features and functionality if the original product has been discontinued or is no longer available.

Not Covered by the Limited Warranty

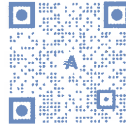
- Consumable or maintenance products, such as, but not limited to: Air Filters, Evaporative Humidifier Water Panels, Steam Canisters, or Steam Humidifier Electrode Wires.
- Products purchased from third parties that were previously used, such as previously-used products purchased from eBay, similar third party/auction sites, or individuals selling used products.
- Labor charges, shipping costs, removal fees, service fees, or reinstallation costs.
- Materials furnished by the installer.
- Damage caused by misuse, abuse, improper installation, or failing to install, use, or maintain the product in accordance with the instructions provided.
- Damage to HVAC equipment caused by improper installation(s) or misapplication installation(s).
- Modifications, changes, repurposing, or alterations to the AprilAire product.
- Extended warranties or satisfaction guarantees offered by third parties.
- Cosmetic damage or normal wear and tear, including, but not limited to: scratches, peeling finish, or dents that do not impede the mechanical functionality of the product.
- Damage caused by acts of nature, including but not limited to: fire, collision, flood, wind, power surge, lightning strike, or mold.
- Damage caused during transit.
- Damage caused during installation due to failure to follow local, state, or federal laws, statutes, codes, or ordinances.
- Damage caused by defects in materials furnished by the installer.

Limit of Liability

IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE SHALL BE LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE AFOREMENTIONED EXPRESS WARRANTY PERIOD. APRILAIRE LIABILITY FOR INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, OTHER THAN DAMAGES FOR PERSONAL INJURIES, RESULTING FROM ANY BREACH OF THE AFOREMENTIONED IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR THE ABOVE LIMITED WARRANTY IS EXPRESSLY EXCLUDED. THIS LIMITED WARRANTY IS VOID IF DEFECT(S) RESULT(S) FROM FAILURE TO INSTALL THE PRODUCT ACCORDING TO THE APRILAIRE INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS. IF THE LIMITED WARRANTY IS VOID DUE TO MISAPPLICATION OR IMPROPER INSTALLATION, ALL DISCLAIMERS OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES SHALL BE EFFECTIVE UPON INSTALLATION.

Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts or the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation(s) may not apply to your situation. This Limited Warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights which vary from state to state.

Register Your AprilAire® Product



Thank you for choosing AprilAire. Register your product at aprilair.com/warranty to receive important updates and notifications, and to streamline the process in the unlikely event you file a claim.

Your warranty registration information will not be sold or shared outside of this company.

Make a Warranty Claim

For questions regarding the Limited Warranty or to initiate a claim, contact AprilAire Customer Service at 1.800.334.6011 Monday through Friday, 7:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. Central Time.

At the sole discretion of AprilAire, you may be required to: return the product not later than thirty (30) days after the warranty period to the place of purchase or (if directed) to AprilAire, contact a professional contractor to provide warranty service, submit a product for testing related to a warranty claim, and/or send pictures of the original product with the serial number (if applicable) to AprilAire Technical Support for inspection as a condition to reviewing a claim and/or receiving a replacement product under this Limited Warranty.

AprilAire® is a registered trademark and division of Research Products Corporation, P.O. Box 1467, Madison, WI 53701-1467 USA.



Manufacturing
Use Only

10020795A • 04.24

© 2024 AprilAire | aprilairpartners.com | 800.334.6011

AprilAire reserves the right to change specifications without notice.

VisionPRO® Series with RedLINK™

User Guide



7-Day Programmable Thermostat for consultant review.

May 21, 2019

Farah Bano



Welcome

Congratulations on your purchase of a Honeywell touch screen programmable thermostat. When used with the optional RedLINK Internet Gateway, you can remotely monitor and control the heating and cooling system in your home or business—you can stay connected to your comfort system wherever you go.

Honeywell's Total Connect Comfort is the perfect solution if you travel frequently, own a vacation home, a business or manage an investment property or if you are simply looking for peace of mind.

Features of your VisionPRO thermostat

With your new thermostat, you can:

- **Connect to the internet to monitor and control your heating/cooling system and receive alerts by email (requires optional RedLINK Internet Gateway)**
- **View outdoor temperature and humidity (requires optional Wireless Outdoor Sensor)**
- **Control humidification, dehumidification or ventilation (TH8321 model)**

Your new thermostat also provides:

- **Adaptive Intelligent Recovery—over time, the VisionPRO thermostat “learns” how long it takes your system to reach the temperature you want. It turns on the heating or cooling system earlier to make sure you’re comfortable at the time you expect.**
- **Dealer information on the screen—making it easy for you to contact your dealer for service.**
- **Vacation and holiday scheduling—allowing you to program a setback temperature to save energy while you are away.**
- **Keypad lockout to prevent unauthorized changes.**
- **Equipment status—provides on/off status of all equipment controlled by the thermostat.**
- **Preferences—allowing you to customize the thermostat to your desired settings.**

Table of contents

Programming and Operation

Quick reference	2
Setting the time/date	3
Setting the fan	3
Setting system mode	4
Preset energy-saving schedules	4
Adjusting program schedules	5
Schedule overrides.....	6

Menu Options

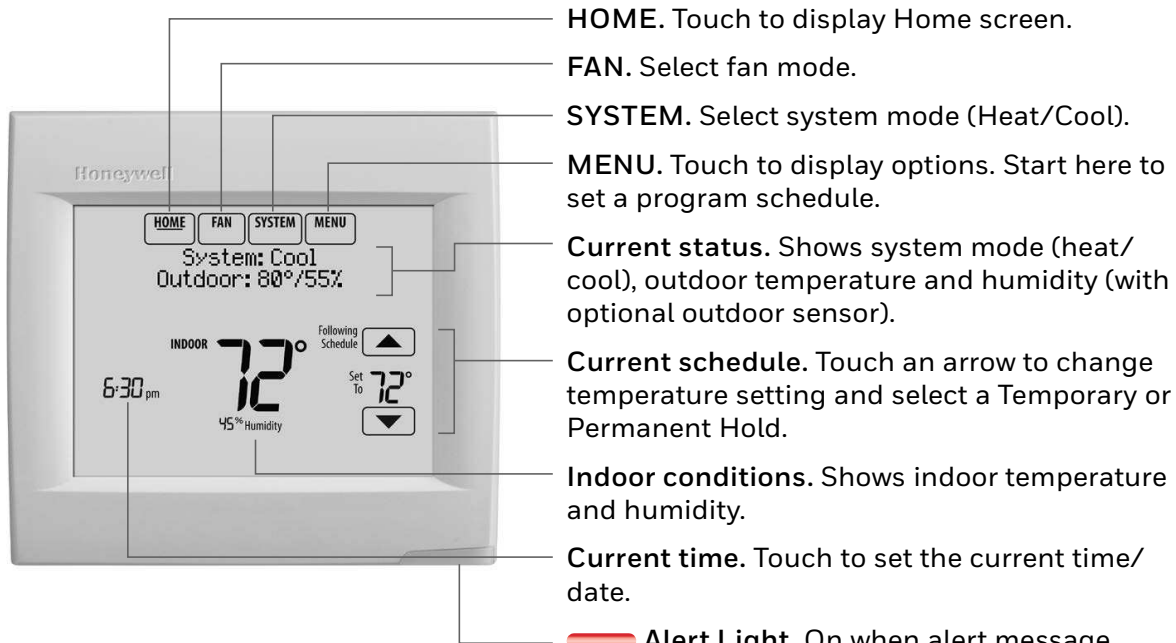
Viewing equipment status	7
Setting vacation, holiday, and events.....	7
Setting holiday/event schedules: commercial use	8
Setting humidification and dehumidification.....	11

Setting ventilation	12
Setting preferences.....	13
Cleaning the thermostat screen.....	14
Security settings	14
Viewing dealer information	15
Advanced features.....	15


Appendices

Installer options	16
Replacing batteries.....	16
Temperature and humidity display	18
Optional accessories	19
Troubleshooting	20
Regulatory information.....	21

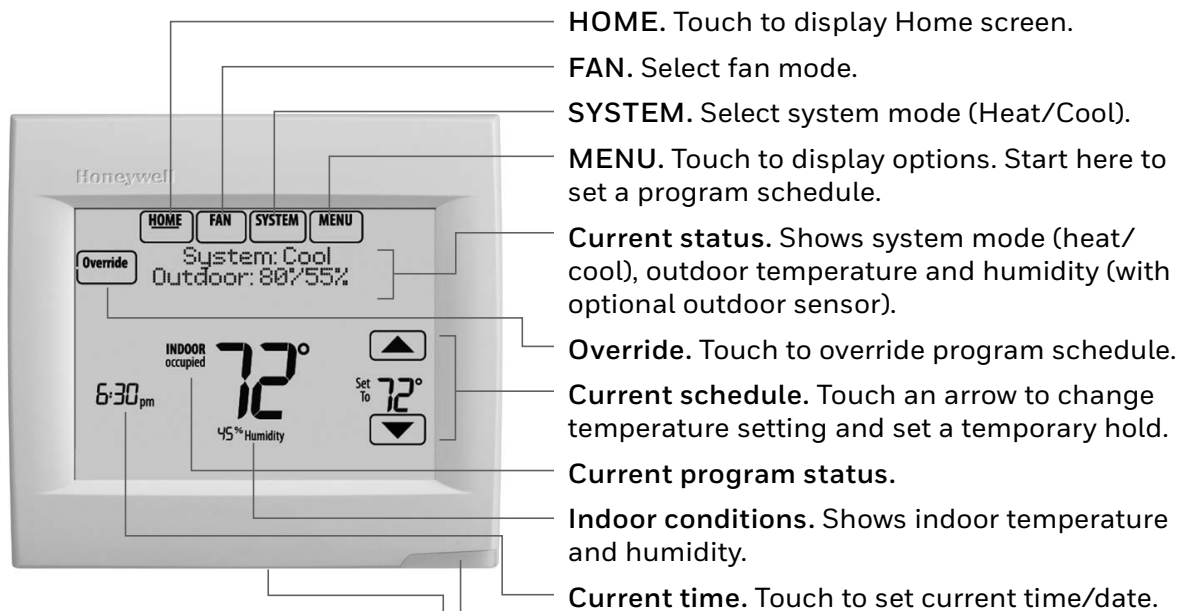
Quick reference: residential use




The screen lights when you press any button. It stays lit for 16 seconds if the thermostat is battery powered (45 seconds if the thermostat is powered with a C-wire). Depending on how your thermostat was installed, the screen light may always be on.


 **Alert Light.** On when alert message is active or system is set to EmHeat. Flashes for battery-only power; on continuous if system powered.

Quick reference: commercial use




The screen lights when you press any button. It stays lit for 16 seconds if the thermostat is battery powered (45 seconds if the thermostat is powered with a C-wire). Depending on how your thermostat was installed, the screen light may always be on.

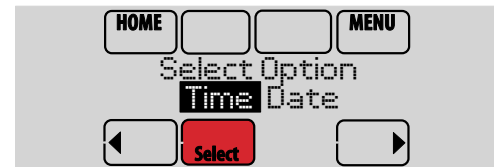
 **Alert Light.** On when alert message is active or system is set to EmHeat. Flashes for battery-only power; on continuous if system powered.

 **Micro SD Card port.** Use card to load holiday schedules and custom events.

Setting the time/date

- 1 Touch the current time. The screen displays **Select Option**.
- 2 Touch Time or Date, then touch **Select**.
- 3 Touch ▲ or ▼ until the proper time/date is displayed.
- 4 Touch **Done** to save or **Cancel** to ignore changes.
- 5 Touch **Home** to redisplay the Home screen.


 **NOTE:** The date is not shown on the home screen; however, it should be set to allow the thermostat to adjust time automatically for daylight saving time and for other features such as vacation hold.



Setting the fan

- 1 Touch **FAN** to display fan settings.
- 2 Touch **On**, **Auto**, **Circ**, or **Follow Schedule**.
- 3 Touch **Done** to save and exit.
 - On:** Fan is always on.
 - Auto:** Fan runs only when the heating or cooling system is on.
 - Circ:** Fan runs randomly about 35% of the time (residential use only).
 - Follow Schedule:** Fan controlled by program (see pages 4–6).



 **NOTE:** In commercial use, touch Auto or On to temporarily override the programmed fan schedule.

Setting system mode

1 Touch **SYSTEM** to display system settings.



2 Touch desired option:

Heat: Controls only the heating system.

Cool: Controls only the cooling system.

Off: Heating/cooling systems are off.

Auto: Selects heating or cooling depending on the indoor temperature.

Em Heat (heat pumps with aux. heat): Controls auxiliary/emergency heat. Compressor is locked out.



NOTE: The Auto and Em Heat system settings may not appear, depending on how your thermostat was installed.

3 Touch **Done** to save and exit.

Preset energy-saving schedules

This thermostat uses default Energy Saver settings that can reduce your heating/cooling expenses. To customize settings, see next page.


	Period	Start time	Heat	Cool	Heat	Cool
			(Mon-Fri)	(Mon-Fri)	(Sat-Sun)	(Sat-Sun)
Residential Use	Wake	6:00 am	70°	78°	70°	78°
	Leave	8:00 am	62°	85°	62°	85°
	Return	6:00 pm	70°	78°	70°	78°
	Sleep	10:00 pm	62°	82°	62°	82°

	Period	Start time	Heat	Cool	Fan
	Commercial Use	Occupied 1	8:00 am	70°	75°
Unoccupied 1		10:00 pm	55°	85°	Auto
Occupied 2*		12:00 am	70°	75°	On
Unoccupied 2*		12:00 am	55°	85°	Auto

* Period 2 is cancelled by default. If you activate it, the values shown above are default settings.


Adjusting program schedules

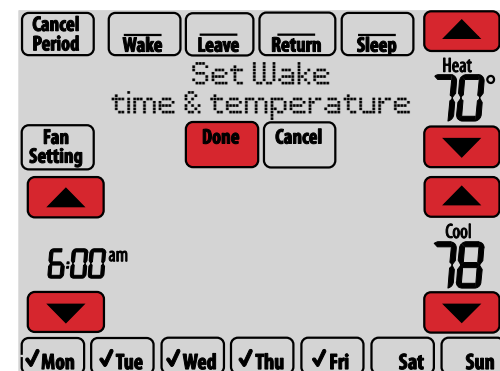
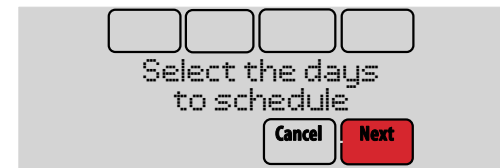
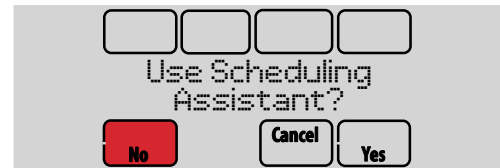
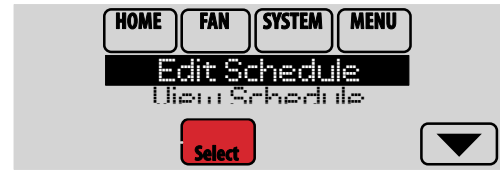
- 1 Touch **MENU**.
- 2 Select **Edit Schedule** to display **Use Scheduling Assistant?**
 - Touch **Yes** to create a schedule by answering simple questions.
 - Touch **No** to manually create a program schedule. See below.

 **NOTE:** To reduce costs, use the pre-set Energy Saver settings described on page 4.

- 3 Select the days to schedule, touch **Next**.
- 4 Touch ▲ or ▼ to set your Wake time for selected day(s).
- 5 Touch ▲ or ▼ to set Heat and Cool temperatures for the Wake period.
- 6 Touch other time periods (**Leave**, **Return**, **Sleep**) to set time and temperatures for each.
- 7 Touch **Done** to save and exit (Touch **Cancel** to exit without saving changes).

 **NOTE:** Touch **Cancel Period** to eliminate any unwanted time period.

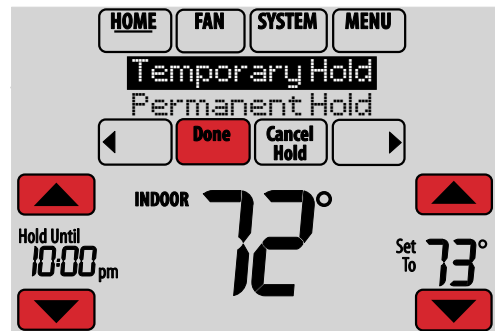
 **NOTE:** Touch **Fan Setting** to customize fan settings for any time period.



Overriding schedules: residential use

- 1 Touch ▲ or ▼ to adjust the temperature (right side of screen) and the Hold Until time (left side). The schedule will resume when the Hold Until time expires.
- 2 Select **Permanent Hold** to keep the same temperature until you change it or resume the program schedule.

Touch **Cancel Hold** at any time to resume the program schedule.

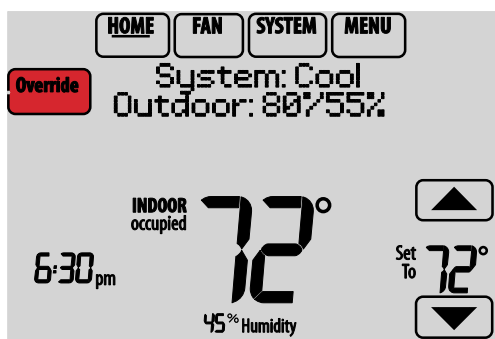
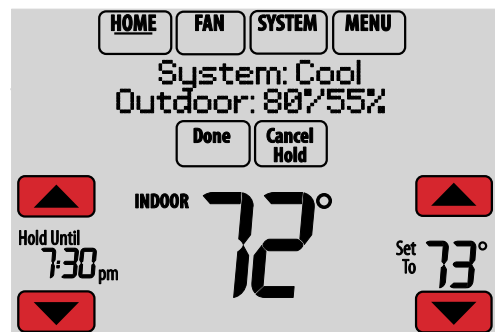


Overriding schedules: commercial use

Touch ▲ or ▼ to adjust the temperature. It will be maintained until the hold time you set.

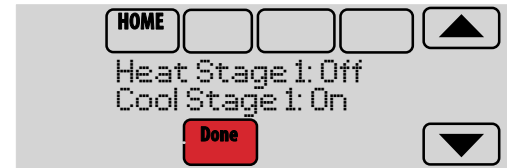
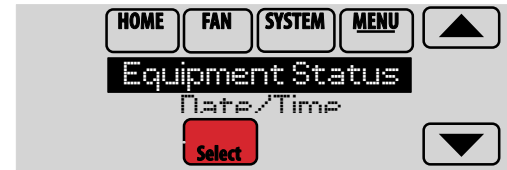
- To change the hold time, touch the Hold Until arrow buttons. This time can be adjusted up to the maximum time set by the installer.
- Touch **Override** to use a pre-set occupied temperature if a person uses the room during an unoccupied period. The new temperature will be maintained for 1 hour and can be adjusted up to the maximum time set by the installer.

The programmed schedule will resume when the override timer expires. Touch **Cancel Hold** at any time to resume the program schedule.



Viewing equipment status

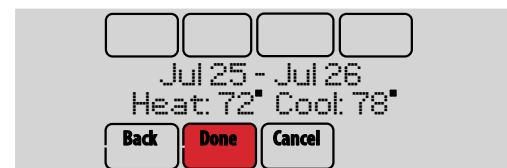
- 1 Touch **MENU**.
- 2 Select **Equipment Status**.
- 3 Touch ▲ or ▼ to view the status of all the equipment your thermostat is controlling. Depending on how your thermostat was installed, the Equipment Status screen can report data about the following systems:
 - Heating and cooling
 - Fan
 - Humidification
 - Dehumidification
 - Ventilation
 - Maintenance reminders
 - Thermostat information.



Setting vacation hold: residential use

This feature helps you save energy while you are away, and restores comfortable settings just before you return home.

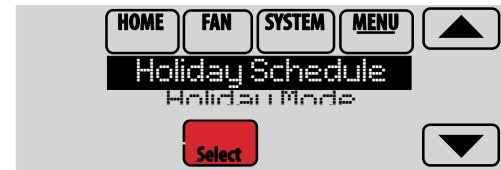
- 1 Touch **MENU**.
- 2 Select **Vacation Mode**.
- 3 Touch ▲ or ▼ to select the date you leave, then touch **Next** for further scheduling details, including times of day, temperature settings, return date, and return settings.
- 4 Review your selections on the last display, and touch **Done** to save your settings. Touch **Cancel** to ignore the changes.



Setting holiday/event schedules: commercial use

This feature helps you conserve energy when the workplace is unoccupied for special events and holidays.

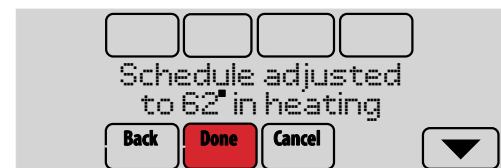
- 1 Touch **MENU**.
- 2 Select **Holiday Schedule**.
- 3 Select the item you want to schedule and touch **Next** for further scheduling details.
 - Custom Events lets you set up other days for special schedules.
 - US and Canadian Holiday options let you select from a list of holidays commonly observed in each country.
- 4 Make selections as prompted on each screen. For more information, see the next page.
- 5 Touch **Done** to save your settings.



Setting custom events: commercial use

This feature lets you customize temperature settings to be maintained during a specific event. You can set up an event for a specific date or day in a month. The thermostat resumes normal scheduling after the event.

- 1 Select **Custom Events** from the Holiday Schedule menu.
- 2 Select **Create New Event**.
- 3 Select **Specific Date** or **Month/Weekday**.
 - For **Specific Date**, you are prompted to select the event's start date, settings, end date, and frequency.
 - For **Month/Weekday**, you are prompted to select the month, day of the week, week of the month, settings, length of event, and frequency for the event.
- 4 Review the settings and touch **Done** to save them. Touch **Cancel** to ignore the changes.



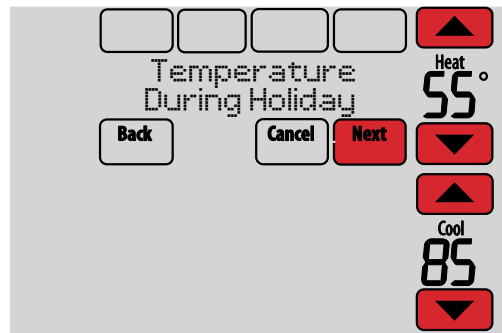
Setting holiday schedule: commercial use

This feature lets you customize temperature settings to be maintained on specified national holidays. The thermostat resumes normal scheduling between selected holidays.

- 1 Select **US Holidays** or **Canadian Holidays** from the Holiday Schedule menu.
- 2 Select **Add/Edit Holidays**. A list of national holidays is displayed.
- 3 Touch the check box next to each holiday for which you want to maintain specific settings, (Touch ▲ or ▼ to scroll through the holiday list.) then touch **Next**.

Set the holiday schedule for Occupied or Unoccupied temperatures, depending whether the building will be in use.


- 4 Touch ▲ or ▼ to select the Heat and Cool temperatures.
- 5 Review the settings and touch **Done** to save them. Touch **Cancel** to ignore changes.



Setting holiday override: commercial use

This feature lets you customize temperature settings to be maintained from now until a specified date. The thermostat resumes normal scheduling on the date you select.

- 1 Touch **MENU**.
- 2 Select **Holiday Mode** to display Temperature While Away.
- 3 Touch ▲ or ▼ to select the Heat and Cool temperatures, then touch **Next** to select return date.
- 4 Review the settings and touch **Done** to save them. Touch **Cancel** to ignore the changes.


 **NOTE:** The cool temperature can only be set higher than the unoccupied program setting and the heat temperature can only be set lower than the unoccupied program setting.

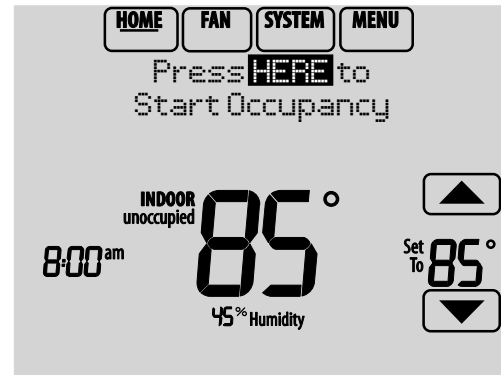


Initiating occupancy mode: commercial use

This feature keeps temperature at an energy-saving level until you touch **Press HERE to Start Occupancy**. When you arrive, touch the message to maintain a comfortable temperature while the room is occupied.

Touch the ▲ or ▼ buttons to set the temperature or the Hold Until time. The temperature is maintained until the time you set. Temperature returns to an energy-saving level after the timer expires, or the “Occupied” period ends.

 **NOTE:** This feature is available only when programmed by the installer.



Remote setback (commercial use)


During Occupied program periods, an occupancy sensor directs the thermostat to go to REMOTE SETBACK settings when the room is empty. If someone is in the room, it uses the Occupied program period settings. The thermostat ignores the occupancy sensor during Unoccupied program periods.


If the thermostat is set up to be non-programmable, the sensor directs the thermostat to go to REMOTE SETBACK settings when the room is empty. If someone is in the room, then it follows the settings set by the user.

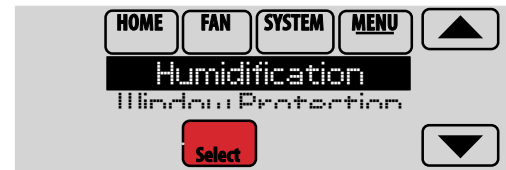
Depending on how your thermostat was installed, it may delay for up to 30 minutes before switching to REMOTE SETBACK settings. This delay allows the room to stay comfortable if the room is unoccupied for only a short time.

Adjusting humidification settings

- 1 Touch **MENU** and select **Humidification**.
- 2 Select **Auto**.
- 3 Touch ▲ or ▼ to select humidity level.
- 4 Touch **Done** to save your settings. Touch **Cancel** to ignore changes.
- 5 If frost or condensation appears on the windows, touch **MENU**, then select **Window Protection**. (Use a lower number to prevent frost or condensation. Use a higher number if indoor air is too dry.)

 **NOTE:** Window Protection is available only if an outdoor air sensor is installed.


 **NOTE:** The thermostat controls humidification and dehumidification as needed to maintain the desired humidity level. Depending on how your thermostat was installed, the thermostat may maintain a 15% separation between humidification and dehumidification settings.



Adjusting dehumidification settings: residential use

This feature can control a dehumidifier or use your air conditioner to reduce humidity.

- 1 Touch **MENU** and select **Dehumidification**.
- 2 Select **Auto**.
- 3 Touch ▲ or ▼ to select humidity level.
- 4 Touch **Done** to save your settings. Touch **Cancel** to ignore changes.

 **NOTE:** If your air conditioner is used to control humidity, the temperature may drop up to 3° F below your temperature setting until humidity reaches the desired level.



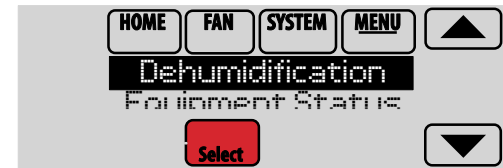
Adjusting dehumidification settings: commercial use

This feature can control a dehumidifier or use your air conditioner to reduce humidity.

- 1 Touch **MENU** and select **Dehumidification**.
- 2 Select **Auto**.
- 3 Touch ▲ or ▼ to select humidity level.
- 4 Touch **Done** to save your settings. Touch **Cancel** to ignore changes.

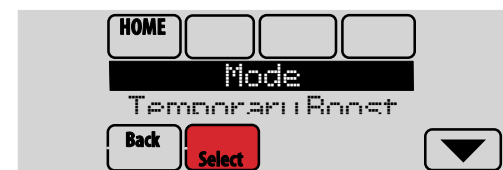
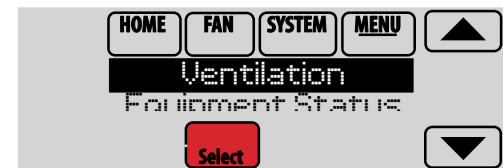
If your air conditioner is used to control humidity, the thermostat may use the following methods to maintain humidity:

- Cool from 1° to 5° F lower than your temperature setting.
- Run cooling for the minimum “on” time to reduce humidity.
- Run cooling and heating at the same time to reduce humidity without lowering the temperature.



Adjusting ventilation settings

- 1 Touch **MENU**, and select **Ventilation**.
- 2 Select **Mode**, **Temporary Boost**, or **Lockout**, then select appropriate options. (For options, see next page.)
- 3 Touch **Done** to save your settings. Touch **Cancel** to ignore changes.



Ventilation options

Mode:

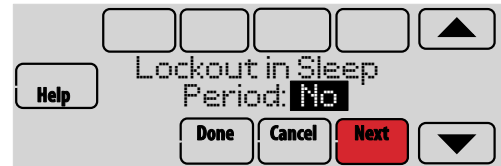
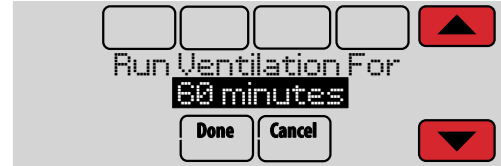
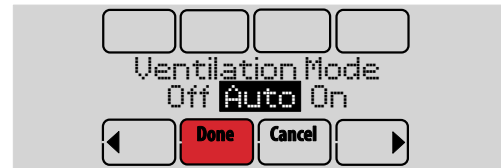
Auto: Ventilation runs as programmed by the installer.

Off: Ventilation remains off unless turned on using the timer.

On: Ventilation is always on.

Temporary Boost: Touch ▲ or ▼ to select how long to run ventilation temporarily. To turn it off, set it to zero.

Lockout: Touch ▲ or ▼ to select Yes or No, then touch **Next**. Select **Yes** to prevent ventilation from running during the Sleep or Unoccupied (commercial) program periods or when outdoor conditions exceed values set by the installer.



Setting preferences

Preference menu options let you select how the thermostat displays information or responds to certain situations.


- 1 Touch **MENU** and select **Preferences**.
- 2 Select an option and follow prompts:
 - Reminders to change filters
 - Fahrenheit/Celsius display
 - 12/24-hour clock display
 - Screen backlighting
 - Alert light options
 - Scheduling options
 - Adaptive recovery
 - Default schedule
 - Daylight saving time
- 3 Touch **Done** to save your settings. Touch **Cancel** to ignore changes.

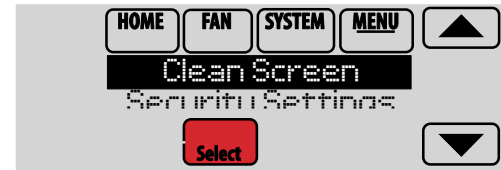


Cleaning the thermostat screen

When you select the Clean Screen option, the screen is locked so you don't accidentally change settings while you clean.

- 1 Touch **MENU**.
- 2 Select **Clean Screen**. A prompt asks if you want to clean the screen for 30 seconds.
- 3 Touch **Yes**. A countdown timer displays elapsed time until the screen is reactivated.


 **NOTE:** Do NOT spray any liquid directly on the thermostat. Spray liquids onto cloth, then use the damp cloth to clean the screen. Use water or household glass cleaner. Avoid abrasive cleansers.



Adjusting security settings

You can adjust security options to prevent unauthorized changes to system settings.

- 1 Touch **MENU** and select **Security Settings**.
- 2 Select an option and follow prompts:
 - Unlocked:** Full access allowed.
 - Partially locked:** Only temperature can be changed.
 - Fully locked:** No access allowed.

 **NOTE:** If you choose to use a password for additional security, write it here for reference:

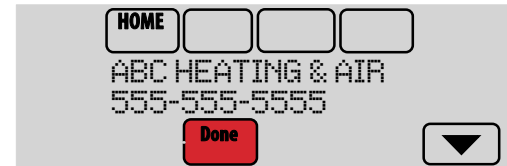
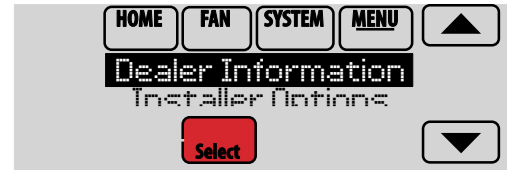
--	--	--	--



Viewing dealer information

Check dealer information if you need to contact your installer for maintenance, repairs, or upgrades.

- 1 Touch **MENU**.
- 2 Select **Dealer Information**.
- 3 Scroll through the displayed information.
- 4 Touch **Done** to return to the menu.



Advanced features

Adaptive Intelligent Recovery (residential use only)—Over time, the VisionPRO® thermostat “learns” how long it takes your system to reach the temperature you want. It turns on the heating or cooling system earlier to make sure you’re comfortable at the time you expect. The thermostat displays “In Recovery” when it turns the system on early.

Dehumidification Away Mode—Your system can be set to control indoor climate while your home is vacant during the humid season. Before you leave, touch **MENU**, then select **Dehum Away Mode**. Temperature and humidity will be kept at levels that protect your home and possessions. When you return, touch **Cancel** to resume normal operation.

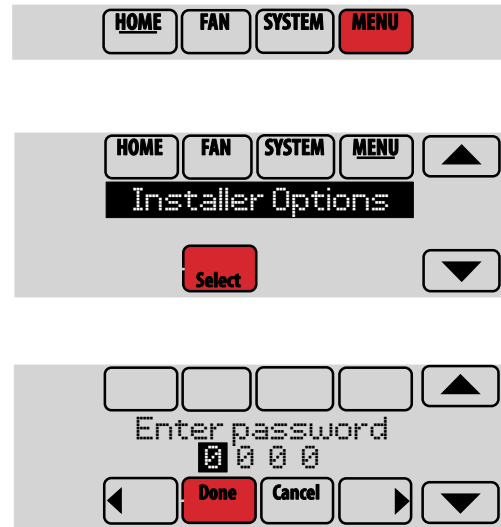
Compressor Protection—The thermostat keeps the compressor off for a few minutes before restarting, to prevent equipment damage. During this “off” time, the message “Wait” is displayed on screen.

Pre-occupancy Purge (commercial use only)—This feature turns on the fan 1 to 3 hours before each “occupied” time period, to provide a comfortable work environment when you arrive.

Installer options

Installer options require a password and should only be changed by a qualified technician.

To prevent unintended changes or damage to your equipment, do not change these options yourself.

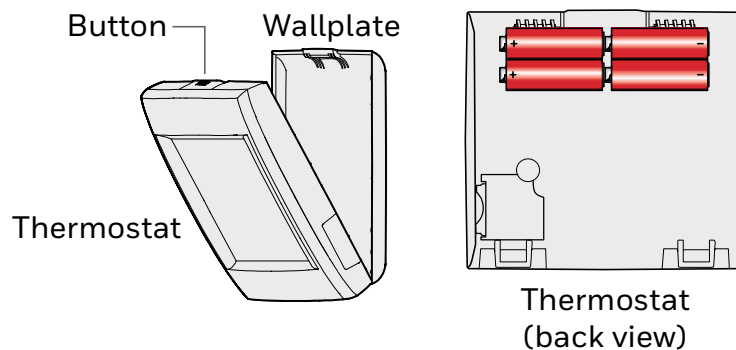
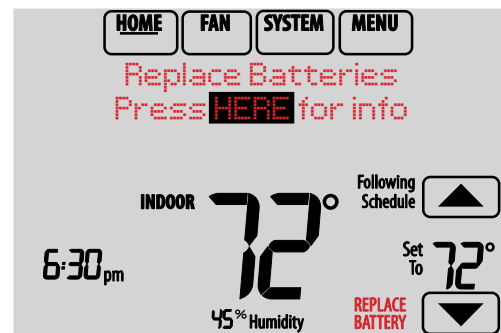


Replacing thermostat batteries

Install fresh batteries when the REPLACE BATTERIES warning begins flashing. The warning flashes about 60 days before batteries are depleted.

Even if the warning does not appear, it is recommended to replace batteries once a year, or before leaving home for more than a month.

Press the release button on top of the thermostat to remove it from the wall plate. Install 4 fresh AA alkaline batteries.



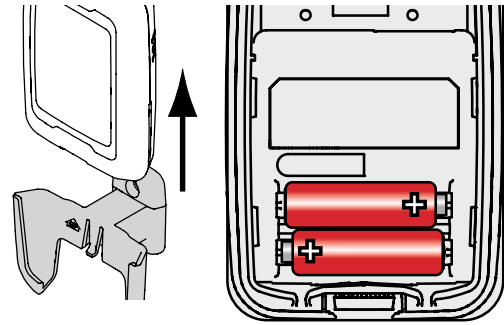
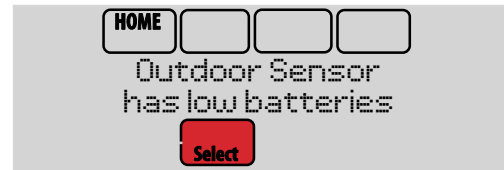
Replacing outdoor sensor batteries

Replace batteries in your outdoor sensor when a warning appears on the thermostat screen, about 60 days before batteries are depleted.

To replace the batteries:

- 1 Remove the sensor from the bracket.
- 2 Detach cover.
- 3 Install 2 fresh AA lithium batteries.
- 4 Replace cover and set sensor back into bracket.

The outdoor sensor will restore communication with the thermostat a few seconds after new batteries are installed.



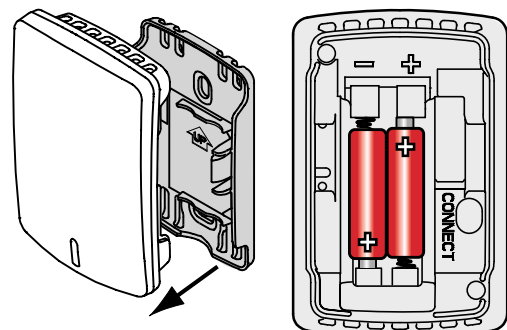
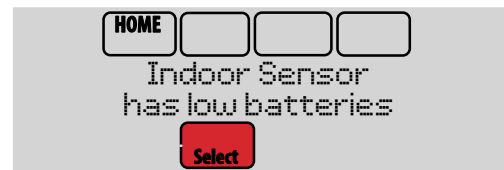
Replacing indoor sensor batteries

Replace batteries in your indoor sensor when a warning appears on the thermostat screen, about 60 days before batteries are depleted. When the sensor status light begins flashing red, battery power is critically low and will be depleted within 2–3 weeks. During normal operation, the status light remains off.

To replace the batteries:

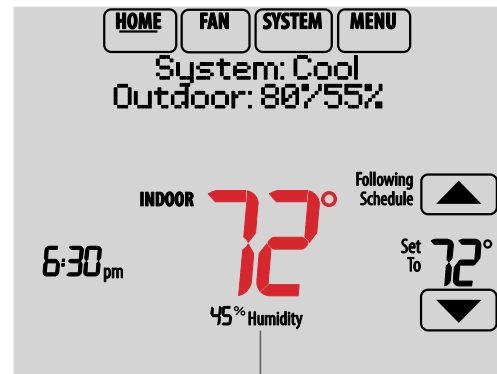
- 1 Remove the sensor from wallplate.
- 2 Install 2 fresh AAA alkaline batteries. If the status light flashes green, batteries are good; if it flashes red, you must use fresh batteries.
- 3 Attach sensor to wallplate.

The sensor will restore communication with the thermostat a few seconds after new batteries are installed.



Using the temperature display

In some circumstances, the temperature displayed on the Home screen may not match the temperature near the thermostat. If your system is set up to use remote indoor sensors, it may be reading a sensor in another location.



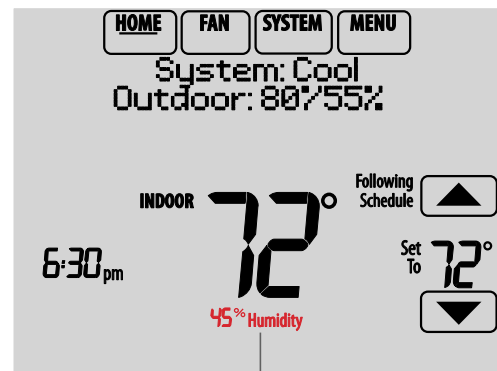
Temperature reading depends on location of sensor

Using the humidity display

In some circumstances, the humidity displayed on the Home screen may not match humidity near the thermostat.

Some systems are set up to use two sensors, one to control humidification, the other for dehumidification. These sensors are often installed in different locations.

Depending on how your thermostat was installed, the thermostat Home screen will display humidity readings from only one sensor.



Humidity reading depends on location of sensor.

Optional accessories

Portable Comfort Control

If you have only one thermostat, you move this remote control from room to room (like a portable thermostat), to make sure the temperature is comfortable in the room you're using. If you have multiple thermostats, you can view and adjust the temperature in each room from your armchair.



Wireless Outdoor Sensor

With a wireless outdoor sensor, your VisionPRO® thermostat can display outside temperature and humidity. This information can also be displayed on your handheld Portable Comfort Control.



Wireless Indoor Sensor

If an indoor sensor is installed, your VisionPRO thermostat will respond to temperature and humidity readings at the sensor location—providing comfort where the sensor is located. With multiple sensors, the thermostat can average temperature readings from each, to optimize comfort throughout your home.



RedLINK™ Internet Gateway

The Honeywell RedLINK Internet Gateway gives you remote access to your VisionPRO® thermostat from the web, smart phone or tablet. You can view or adjust indoor temperature, system mode and other settings. The Gateway can also send alerts to as many as 6 email addresses to notify you if a problem occurs.



Wireless Entry/Exit Remote

This device mounts beside your door for one-touch control. Press **AWAY** to control to an energy saving temperature when you leave home. Press **HOME** to control to a comfortable temperature when you return. To change pre-set temperatures, go to **MENU > Entry/Exit Remote**.



Wireless Vent and Filter Boost Remote

This device mounts anywhere in your home (typically bathroom or kitchen) for convenient, on-demand ventilation. For increased ventilation, select 20, 40, or 60 minutes.



Troubleshooting

If you have difficulty with your thermostat, try these suggestions. Most problems can be corrected quickly and easily.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Screen is blank | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Check circuit breaker and reset if necessary.• Make sure power switch at heating and cooling system is on.• Make sure furnace door is closed securely.• If thermostat is battery powered, make sure fresh AA alkaline batteries are installed correctly (see page 16). |
| Screen is difficult to read | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Change screen brightness using Preferences menu (see page 13). |
| Red light is on | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If thermostat is in Emergency Heat mode, the red light is normal. It shows that the thermostat is in Emergency Heat mode.• If thermostat is not in Emergency Heat mode, an alert is active. Check message on the thermostat screen. |
| Heating or cooling system does not respond | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Touch SYSTEM to set system to Heat. Make sure the temperature is set higher than the Inside temperature.• Touch SYSTEM to set system to Cool. Make sure the temperature is set lower than the Inside temperature.• Check circuit breaker and reset if necessary.• Make sure power switch at heating & cooling system is on.• Make sure furnace door is closed securely.• If “Wait” is displayed, the compressor protection timer is on. Wait 5 minutes for the system to restart safely, without damaging the compressor. |

Warranty information

Honeywell warrants this product, to be free from defects in the workmanship or materials, under normal use and service, for a period of five (5) years from the date of purchase by the consumer. If at any time during the warranty period the product is determined to be defective or malfunctions, Honeywell shall repair or replace it (at Honeywell's option).

If the product is defective,

- (i) return it, with a bill of sale or other dated proof of purchase, to the place from which you purchased it; or
- (ii) call Honeywell Customer Care at 1-800-468-1502. Customer Care will make the determination whether the product should be returned to the following address: Honeywell Return Goods, Dock 4 MN10-3860, 1985 Douglas Dr. N., Golden Valley, MN 55422, or whether a replacement product can be sent to you.

This warranty does not cover removal or reinstallation costs. This warranty shall not apply if it is shown by Honeywell that the defect or malfunction was caused by damage which occurred while the product was in the possession of a consumer.

Honeywell's sole responsibility shall be to repair or replace the product within the terms stated above. HONEYWELL SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOSS OR DAMAGE OF ANY KIND, INCLUDING ANY INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES RESULTING, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, FROM ANY BREACH OF ANY WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OR ANY OTHER FAILURE OF THIS PRODUCT. Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so this limitation may not apply to you.

THIS WARRANTY IS THE ONLY EXPRESS WARRANTY HONEYWELL MAKES ON THIS PRODUCT. THE DURATION OF ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, IS HEREBY LIMITED TO THE FIVE-YEAR DURATION OF THIS WARRANTY.

Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so the above limitation may not apply to you. This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may have other rights which vary from state to state.

If you have any questions concerning this warranty, please write Honeywell Customer Relations, 1985 Douglas Dr, Golden Valley, MN 55422 or call 1-800-468-1502.

Regulatory information

FCC Compliance Statement (Part 15.19) (USA only)

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- 1 This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- 2 This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC Warning (Part 15.21) (USA only)

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FCC Interference Statement (Part 15.105 (b)) (USA only)

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Equipment interface module, thermostats and outdoor sensor

To comply with FCC and Industry Canada RF exposure limits for general population/ uncontrolled exposure, the antenna(s) used for these transmitters must be installed to provide a separation distance of at least 20 cm from all persons and must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna.

Portable Comfort Control

This portable transmitter with its antenna complies with FCC and Industry Canada RF exposure limits for general population/ uncontrolled exposure. This device must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Section 7.1.2 of RSS-GEN

Under Industry Canada regulations, this radio transmitter may only operate using an antenna of type and maximum (or lesser) gain approved for the transmitter by Industry Canada. To reduce potential radio interference to other users, the antenna type and its gain should be so chosen that the equivalent isotropically radiated power (e.i.r.p.) is not more than that necessary for successful communication.

Section 7.1.3 of RSS-GEN

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- 1 This device may not cause interference, and
- 2 This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.



This thermostat contains a Lithium battery which may contain Perchlorate material. Perchlorate Material—special handling may apply.
See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate

Need Help?

For assistance please visit <http://yourhome.honeywell.com>, or call toll-free:
1-800-468-1502 (residential installation) • **1-888-245-1051** (commercial installation)

Home and Building Technologies

In the U.S.:

Honeywell International Inc.

1985 Douglas Drive North

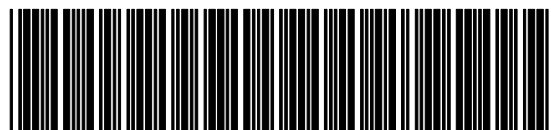
Golden Valley, MN 55422-3992

<http://customer.honeywell.com>

Honeywell
THE POWER OF **CONNECTED**

Home

® U.S. Registered Trademark.
© 2017 Honeywell International Inc.
69-2761EFS-09 M.S. Rev. 07-17
Printed in U.S.A.



69-2761EFS-09



Série VisionPRO[®]
avec RedLINK[™]

Guide de l'utilisateur





Bienvenue

Nous vous félicitons de votre achat d'un thermostat programmable à écran tactile Honeywell. En utilisant la passerelle Internet RedLINK en option, vous pouvez surveiller et contrôler à distance le système de chauffage et de refroidissement de votre domicile ou de votre entreprise – vous pouvez rester connecté à votre système de confort où que vous soyez.

Le système Total Connect Comfort d'Honeywell est la solution parfaite si vous voyagez fréquemment, possédez une maison de vacances ou une entreprise ou gérez un immeuble de placement, ou si tout simplement vous recherchez la tranquillité d'esprit.

Caractéristiques de votre thermostat VisionPRO

Avec votre nouveau thermostat, vous pouvez :

- **Vous connecter sur Internet pour surveiller et contrôler votre système de chauffage/refroidissement et recevoir des alertes par courriel (nécessite la passerelle Internet RedLINK en option)**
- **Consulter la température et l'humidité extérieures (nécessite le capteur extérieur sans fil en option)**
- **Contrôler l'humidification, la déshumidification ou la ventilation (modèle TH8321)**

Votre nouveau thermostat offre aussi les fonctions suivantes :

- **Système de récupération intelligent adaptatif—Avec le temps, le thermostat VisionPRO « apprend » à reconnaître le temps requis par le système à obtenir la température désirée. Il active préalablement le chauffage ou le refroidissement pour garantir une température confortable au moment voulu.**
- **Informations du distributeur sur l'écran—pour faciliter la correspondance avec votre distributeur pour les réparations et l'entretien.**
- **Programmation des vacances et des jours fériés—vous permet de programmer la température de décalage pour économiser de l'énergie en votre absence.**
- **Verrouillage du clavier pour empêcher les modifications non autorisées.**
- **Statut de l'équipement—indique le statut marche/arrêt de tout l'équipement contrôlé par le thermostat.**
- **Préférences—vous permet de personnaliser le thermostat selon vos préférences.**

Table des matières

Programmation et fonctionnement

Référence rapide.....	2
Réglage de l'heure/la date	3
Réglage du ventilateur	3
Réglage du mode du système	4
Programmes d'économie d'énergie préconfigurés	4
Réglage des programmes	5
Dérogations aux programmes.....	6

Options de menu

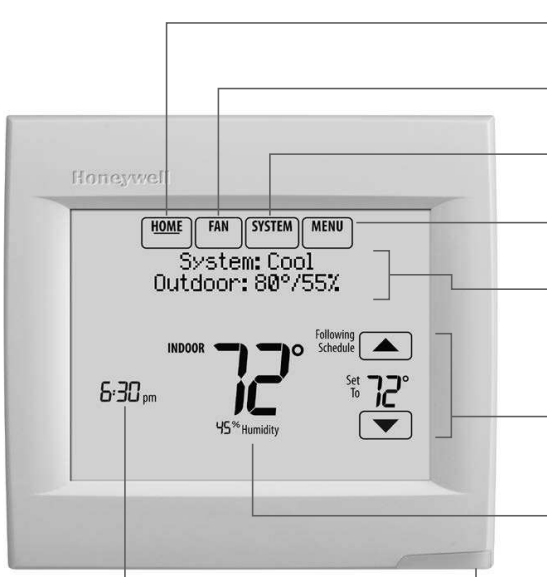
Affichage du statut de l'équipement	7
Réglage des vacances, des jours fériés et des événements	7
Réglage des programmes vacances/jours fériés : utilisation commerciale	8

Réglage de l'humidification et de la déshumidification	11
Réglage de la ventilation.....	12
Réglage des préférences	13
Nettoyage de l'écran du thermostat	14
Réglages de sécurité.....	14
Affichage des informations du distributeur.....	15
Caractéristiques avancées.....	15


Annexes

Options de l'installateur	16
Remplacement des piles	16
Affichage de la température et de l'humidité.....	18
Accessoires en option	19
Dépannage	20
Informations réglementaires	21

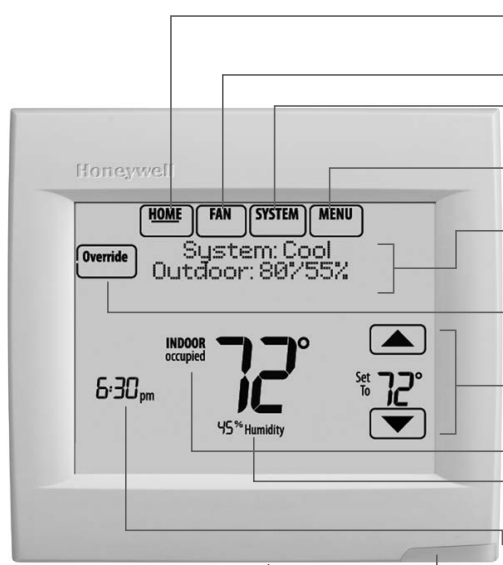
Référence rapide : utilisation résidentielle



L'écran s'allume lorsque vous appuyez sur n'importe quel bouton. Il reste allumé pendant 16 secondes si le thermostat est alimenté par la pile. (45 secondes si le thermostat est alimenté par un fil C.) En fonction de l'installation du thermostat, l'écran peut rester allumer en permanence.

- HOME (ACCUEIL).** Touchez pour afficher l'écran Accueil (Home).
- FAN (VENTILATEUR).** Sélectionnez le mode ventilateur.
- SYSTEM (SYSTÈME).** Sélectionnez le mode du système (chauffage/refroidissement).
- MENU.** Touchez pour afficher les options. Commencez ici pour configurer un programme.
- Statut en cours.** Affiche le mode du système (chauffage/refroidissement), la température et l'humidité extérieures (avec capteur extérieur en option).
- Programme en cours.** Touchez une flèche pour modifier le réglage de température et sélectionner le maintien provisoire ou permanent.
- Conditions intérieures.** Affiche la température et humidité intérieures.
- Heure actuelle.** Touchez pour régler l'heure/la date actuelles.
-  **Voyant d'alerte.** Allumé lorsque le message d'alerte est actif ou que le système est réglé sur chauffage d'urgence (EmHeat). Clignote pour indiquer que l'alimentation est sur batterie uniquement; allumé en continu lorsque l'alimentation est sur secteur.

Référence rapide : utilisation commerciale




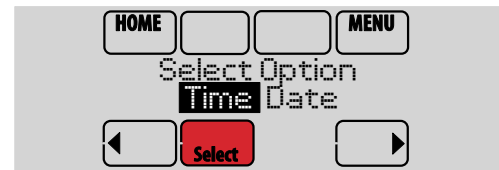
L'écran s'allume lorsque vous appuyez sur n'importe quel bouton. Il reste allumé pendant 16 secondes si le thermostat est alimenté par la pile. (45 secondes si le thermostat est alimenté par un fil C.) En fonction de l'installation du thermostat, l'écran peut rester allumer en permanence.

- HOME (ACCUEIL).** Touchez pour afficher l'écran Accueil (Home).
- FAN (VENTILATEUR).** Sélectionnez le mode ventilateur.
- SYSTEM (SYSTÈME).** Sélectionnez le mode du système (chauffage/refroidissement).
- MENU.** Touchez pour afficher les options. Commencez ici pour configurer un programme.
- Statut en cours.** Affiche le mode du système (chauffage/refroidissement), la température et l'humidité extérieures (avec capteur extérieur en option).
- Override (Dérogation).** Touchez pour déroger au programme.
- Programme en cours.** Touchez une flèche pour modifier le réglage de température et régler le maintien provisoire.
- Statut du programme en cours.**
- Conditions intérieures.** Affiche la température et humidité intérieures.
- Heure actuelle.** Touchez pour régler l'heure/la date actuelles.
-  **Voyant d'alerte.** Allumé lorsque le message d'alerte est actif ou que le système est réglé sur chauffage d'urgence (EmHeat). Clignote pour indiquer que l'alimentation est sur piles uniquement; allumé en continu lorsque l'alimentation est sur secteur.
-  **Port de carte Micro SD.** Utilisez la carte pour charger le calendrier des jours fériés et des événements personnalisés.

Réglage de l'heure/la date

- 1 Touchez l'heure courante. L'écran affiche **Select Option** (Sélectionner Option).
- 2 Touchez l'heure ou la date, puis **Select** (Sélectionner).
- 3 Touchez ▲ ou ▼ jusqu'à ce que l'heure/la date adéquates s'affichent.
- 4 Touchez **Done** (Terminer) pour enregistrer ou **Cancel** (Annuler) pour ignorer les changements.
- 5 Touchez **Home** (Accueil) pour afficher de nouveau l'écran d'accueil.

 **REMARQUE :** La date n'est pas indiquée sur l'écran d'accueil; elle doit toutefois être réglée pour permettre au thermostat de régler automatiquement le passage à l'heure d'été/d'hiver et d'autres fonctions telles que le maintien vacances.



Réglage du ventilateur

- 1 Touchez **FAN** (VENTILATEUR) pour afficher les réglages du ventilateur.
- 2 Touchez **On** (Marche), **Auto** (Automatique), **Circ** (Circulation) ou **Follow Schedule** (Suivre programme).
- 3 Touchez **Done** (Terminer) pour enregistrer et quitter.

On (Marche) : le ventilateur est toujours activé.

Auto (Automatique) : le ventilateur fonctionne uniquement lorsque le système de chauffage ou de refroidissement est en marche.

Circ (Circulation) : le ventilateur fonctionne de façon aléatoire, environ 35% du temps (utilisation résidentielle uniquement).

Follow Schedule (Suivre le programme) : ventilateur contrôlé par le programme (voir les pages 4-6).



REMARQUE : Pour une utilisation commerciale, touchez Automatique (Auto) ou Marche (On) pour déroger provisoirement au programme du ventilateur.



Réglage du mode du système

1 Touchez **SYSTEM** (SYSTÈME) pour afficher les réglages du système.



2 Touchez l'option désirée :

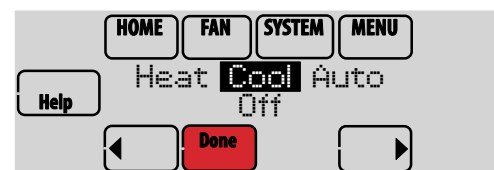
Heat (Chauffage) : commande uniquement le système de chauffage.

Cool (Refroidissement) : commande uniquement le système de refroidissement.

Off (Arrêt) : les systèmes de chauffage et de refroidissement sont arrêtés.

Auto (Automatique) : sélectionne le chauffage ou le refroidissement en fonction de la température intérieure.

Em Heat (Chauffage d'urgence) (thermopompes avec chauffage auxiliaire) : commande le chauffage auxiliaire/d'urgence. Le compresseur est verrouillé.



REMARQUE : Les réglages de système **Auto** (Automatique) et **Em Heat** (Chauffage d'urgence) peuvent ne pas s'afficher, selon la manière dont votre thermostat a été installé.

3 Touchez **Done** (Terminer) pour enregistrer et quitter.

Programmes d'économie d'énergie préconfigurés

Ce thermostat utilise les réglages de l'économiseur d'énergie par défaut pour obtenir une réduction des coûts de chauffage/refroidissement. Pour personnaliser les réglages, consultez la page suivante.


	Période	Heure de début	Chauffage (lun-ven)	Refroid. (lun-ven)	Chauffage (sam-dim)	Refroid. (sam-dim)
Utilisation résidentielle	Réveil (Wake)	6:00 am	70°	78°	70°	78°
	Départ (Leave)	8:00 am	62°	85°	62°	85°
	Retour (Return)	6:00 pm	70°	78°	70°	78°
	Coucher (Sleep)	10:00 pm	62°	82°	62°	82°

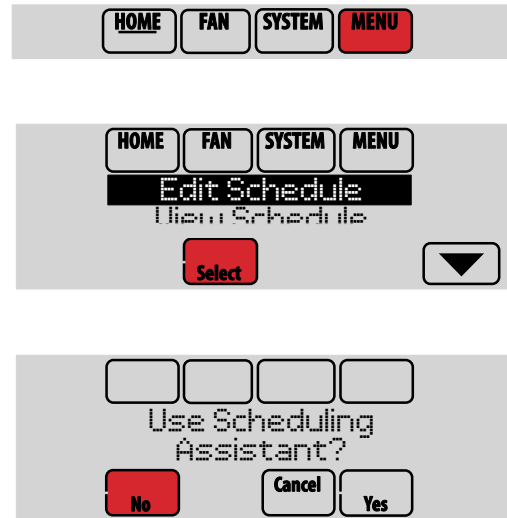
	Période	Heure de début	Chauffage	Refroid.	Ventilateur
Utilisation commerciale	Occupée 1	8:00 am	70°	75°	Marche
	Inoccupée 1	10:00 pm	55°	85°	Auto
	Occupée 2*	12:00 am	70°	75°	Marche
	Inoccupée 2*	12:00 am	55°	85°	Auto

* La période 2 est annulée par défaut. Si elle est activée, les valeurs ci-dessus sont les réglages par défaut.

Réglage des horaires de programmation


- 1 Touchez **MENU**.
- 2 Sélectionnez **Edit Schedule** (Modifier programme) pour afficher **Use Scheduling Assistant?** (Utiliser l'Assistant de programmation?)
 - Touchez **Yes** (Oui) pour créer un programme en répondant à de simples questions.
 - Touchez **No** (Non) pour créer manuellement un programme. Voir ci-dessous.


 **REMARQUE** : Pour réduire les coûts, utilisez les réglages préconfigurés de l'économiseur d'énergie décrits à la page 4.

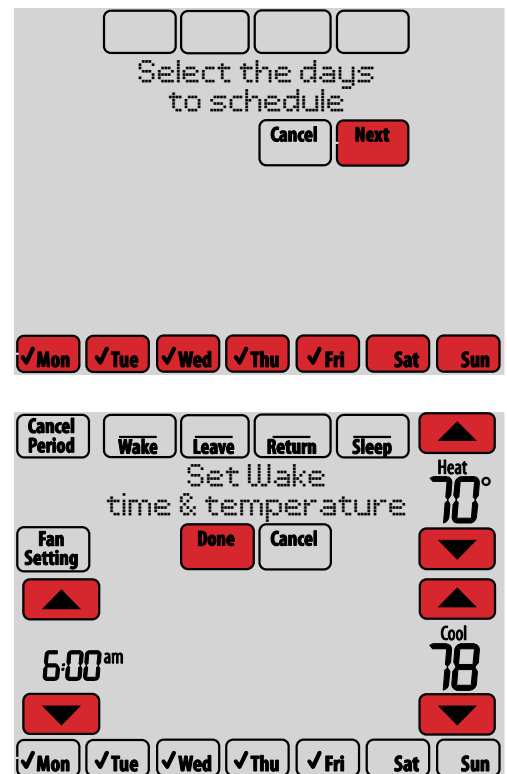


Réglage des horaires de programmation (suite)

- 3 Sélectionnez les jours à programmer puis **Next** (Suivant).
- 4 Touchez ▲ ou ▼ pour régler l'heure de réveil pour le(s) jour(s) sélectionné(s).
- 5 Touchez ▲ ou ▼ pour régler les températures de chauffage et de refroidissement pour la période de réveil.
- 6 Touchez les autres périodes de temps (**Leave**, **Return**, **Sleep** [Départ, Retour, Sommeil]) pour régler l'heure et les températures de chaque période.
- 7 Touchez **Done** (Terminer) pour enregistrer et quitter (ou sur **Cancel** [Annuler] pour quitter sans enregistrer les modifications).

 **REMARQUE** : Touchez **Cancel Period** (Annuler la période) pour éliminer toute période de temps non souhaitée.

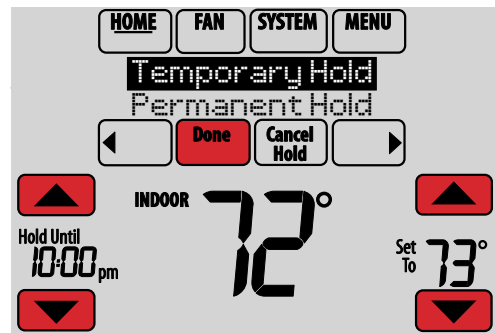
 **REMARQUE** : Touchez **Fan Setting** (Réglage du ventilateur) pour personnaliser les réglages du ventilateur pour les périodes souhaitées.



Dérogation aux programmes : utilisation résidentielle

- 1 Touchez ▲ ou ▼ pour régler la température (côté droit de l'écran) et l'heure Maintien jusqu'à (Hold Until) (côté gauche). Le programme reprend lorsque l'heure Maintien jusqu'à (Hold Until) a expiré.
- 2 Sélectionnez **Permanent Hold** (Maintien permanent) pour maintenir la même température jusqu'à la prochaine modification ou jusqu'à la reprise du programme configuré.

Touchez **Cancel Hold** (Annuler Maintien) à tout moment pour réactiver le programme configuré.

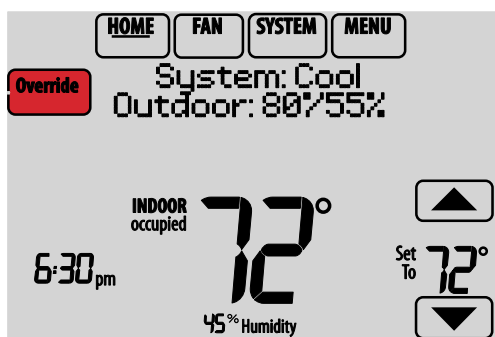
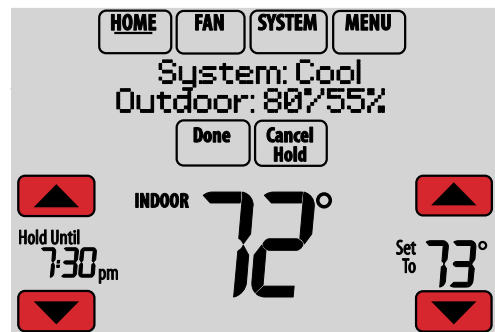


Dérogation aux programmes : utilisation commerciale

Touchez ▲ ou ▼ pour ajuster la température. Celle-ci restera en vigueur jusqu'à l'heure de maintien réglée.

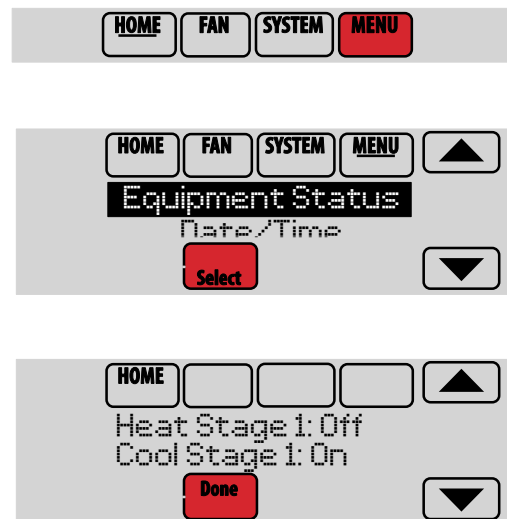
- Pour modifier l'heure de maintien, touchez les boutons fléchés Hold Until (Maintien jusqu'à). Cette heure peut être réglée jusqu'à la valeur maximum définie par l'installateur.
- Touchez **Override** (Dérogation) pour utiliser une température pour période occupée pré-réglée si une personne est présente durant une période inoccupée. La nouvelle température est maintenue pendant une heure et peut être réglée pour la durée maximale définie par l'installateur.

Le programme réglé reprend à la fin de la durée de la dérogation. Touchez **Cancel Hold** (Annuler Maintien) à tout moment pour réactiver le programme configuré.



Affichage du statut de l'équipement

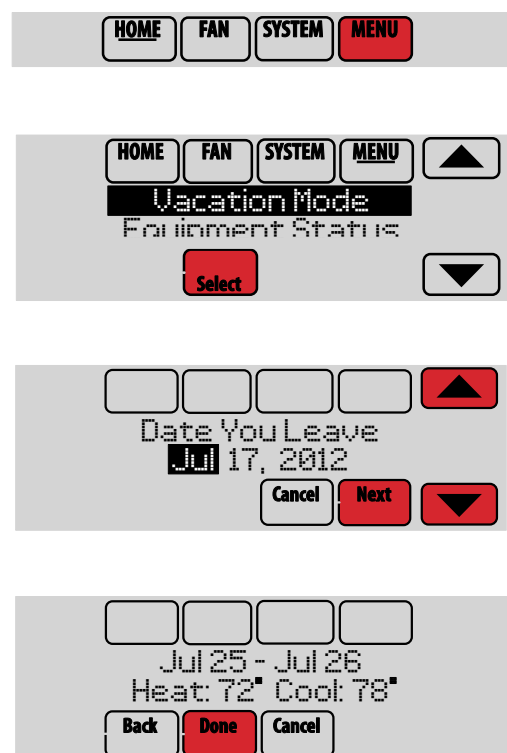
- 1 Touchez **MENU**.
- 2 Sélectionnez **Equipment Status** (Statut de l'équipement).
- 3 Touchez ▲ ou ▼ pour afficher le statut de tout l'équipement contrôlé par le thermostat. En fonction de l'installation du thermostat, l'écran de statut de l'équipement peut indiquer les données relatives aux systèmes suivants :
 - Chauffage et refroidissement
 - Ventilateur
 - Humidification
 - Déshumidification
 - Ventilation
 - Rappels pour l'entretien
 - Informations relatives au thermostat



Réglage du maintien pendant les vacances : utilisation résidentielle

Cette caractéristique vous permet d'économiser de l'énergie en votre absence et restaure une température confortable juste avant votre retour.

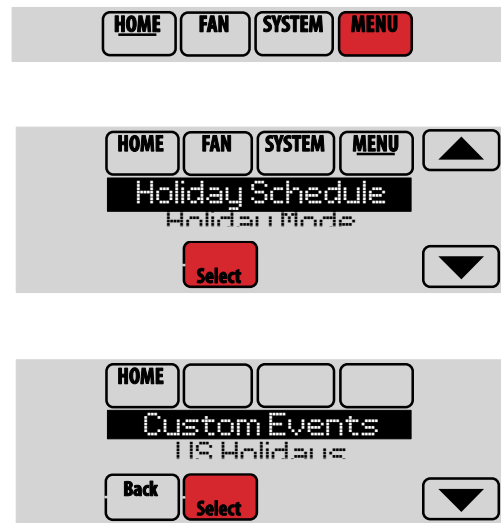
- 1 Touchez **MENU**.
- 2 Sélectionnez **Vacation Mode** (Mode vacances).
- 3 Touchez ▲ ou ▼ pour sélectionner la date de départ, puis touchez **Next** (Suivant) pour afficher plus de détails de programmation, y compris les heures du jour, les réglages de température, la date de retour et les réglages de retour.
- 4 Passez en revue vos sélections sur le dernier affichage, et touchez **Done** (Terminer) pour enregistrer vos réglages. Touchez **Cancel** (Annuler) pour ignorer les changements.



Réglage des programmes vacances/jours fériés : utilisation commerciale

Cette fonction permet de conserver de l'énergie lorsque personne ne se trouve sur le lieu de travail durant les jours fériés et les événements spéciaux.

- 1 Touchez **MENU**.
- 2 Sélectionnez **Holiday Schedule** (Programme jours fériés).
- 3 Sélectionnez l'article à programmer et touchez **Next** (Suivant) pour les détails de programmation supplémentaires.
 - Événements personnalisés (Custom Events) vous permet de configurer d'autres jours pour les programmes spéciaux.
 - Les options Jours fériés pour les États-Unis et le Canada (US and Canadian Holiday) vous permettent de sélectionner une liste des jours fériés généralement observés par chaque pays.
- 4 Répondez aux invites de chaque écran. Pour plus d'informations, consultez la page suivante.
- 5 Touchez **Done** (Terminer) pour enregistrer vos réglages.



Réglage des événements personnalisés : utilisation commerciale

Cette fonction vous permet de personnaliser les réglages de température à maintenir durant un événement spécifique. Vous pouvez configurer un événement pour une date ou un jour spécifique du mois. Le thermostat reprend le programme normal après l'événement.

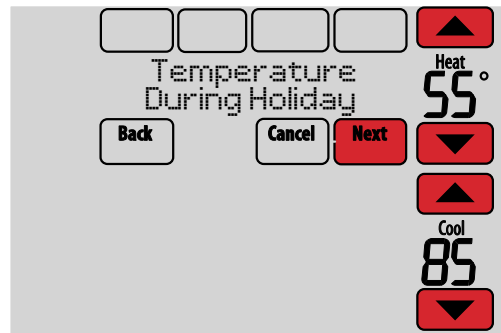
- 1 Sélectionnez **Custom Events** (Événements personnalisés) dans le menu Holiday Schedule (Programme Jours fériés).
- 2 Sélectionnez **Create New Event** (Créer nouvel événement).
- 3 Sélectionnez **Specific Date** (Date spécifique) ou **Month/Weekday** (Mois/Jour de la semaine).
 - Pour **Specific Date**, vous êtes invité à sélectionner la date de début de l'événement, les réglages, la date de fin et la fréquence.
 - Pour **Month/Weekday** de la semaine, vous êtes invité à sélectionner le mois, le jour de la semaine, la semaine du mois, les réglages, la durée de l'événement et la fréquence de l'événement.
- 4 Passez les réglages en revue et touchez **Done** (Terminer) pour les enregistrer. Touchez **Cancel** (Annuler) pour ignorer les changements.



Réglage du programme jours fériés : utilisation commerciale

Cette fonction vous permet de personnaliser les réglages de température à maintenir durant un jour férié national spécifique. Le thermostat reprend le programme normal entre les jours fériés sélectionnés.

- 1 Sélectionnez **US Holidays** (Jours fériés É.-U.) ou **Canadian Holidays** (Jours fériés Canada) dans le menu Holiday Schedule (Programme jours fériés).
- 2 Sélectionnez **Add/Edit Holidays** (Ajouter/Modifier jours fériés). Une liste des jours fériés nationaux s'affiche.
- 3 Touchez la case à cocher près de chaque jour férié pour lequel vous souhaitez maintenir des réglages spécifiques. (Touchez ▲ ou ▼ pour défiler dans la liste des jours fériés.) Puis touchez **Next** (Suivant). Réglez le programme des jours fériés pour les températures en périodes Occupées et Inoccupées, en fonction de l'occupation du bâtiment.
- 4 Touchez ▲ ou ▼ pour sélectionner les températures de chauffage et de refroidissement.
- 5 Passez les réglages en revue et touchez **Done** (Terminer) pour les enregistrer. Touchez **Cancel** (Annuler) pour ignorer les changements.



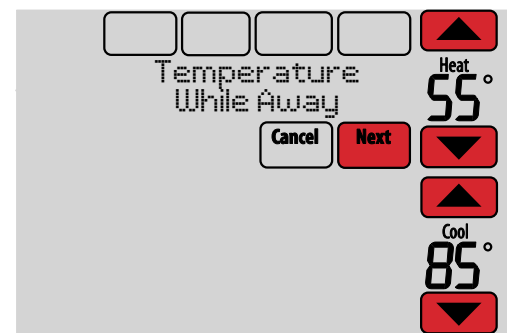
Dérogation pour jours fériés : utilisation commerciale

Cette fonction vous permet de personnaliser les réglages de température à maintenir à partir de maintenant jusqu'à une date spécifiée. Le thermostat reprend le programme normal à la date sélectionnée.

- 1 Touchez **MENU**.
- 2 Sélectionnez **Holiday Mode** (Mode jours fériés) pour afficher la Temperature While Away (Température durant l'absence).
- 3 Touchez ▲ ou ▼ pour sélectionner les températures de chauffage et de refroidissement, puis sélectionnez **Next** (Suivant) pour sélectionner la date de retour.
- 4 Passez les réglages en revue et touchez **Done** (Terminer) pour les enregistrer. Touchez **Cancel** (Annuler) pour ignorer les changements.



REMARQUE : Le réglage de la température de refroidissement ne peut être que supérieur au réglage du programme en période inoccupée et le réglage de la température de chauffage ne peut être qu'inférieur au réglage du programme en période inoccupée.




Lancement du mode Occupé : utilisation commerciale

Cette fonction maintient la température à un niveau économique jusqu'à ce que vous touchez Press **HERE** to Start Occupancy (Appuyer ICI pour commencer la période Occupée). À l'arrivée, touchez le message pour maintenir une température confortable pendant que la pièce est occupée.

Appuyer sur les boutons ▲ ou ▼ pour régler la température ou la durée de maintien. La température est maintenue jusqu'à l'heure réglée. La température revient à un niveau d'économie d'énergie après expiration du temporisateur ou à la fin de la période "Occupied" (Occupée).



 **REMARQUE :** Cette fonction n'est disponible que si elle est programmée par l'installateur.

Décalage à distance (utilisation commerciale)


Durant les périodes occupées, un détecteur de présence indique au thermostat d'utiliser les réglages de REMOTE SETBACK (DÉCALAGE À DISTANCE) lorsque la pièce est vide. Si quelqu'un est dans la pièce, le thermostat utilise les réglages pour période occupée. Le thermostat ignore le capteur de présence durant les périodes inoccupées.


Si le thermostat est réglé sur non programmable, le détecteur de présence indique au thermostat d'utiliser les réglages de REMOTE SETBACK (DÉCALAGE À DISTANCE) lorsque la pièce est vide. S'il y a quelqu'un dans la pièce, il suit les réglages définis par l'utilisateur.

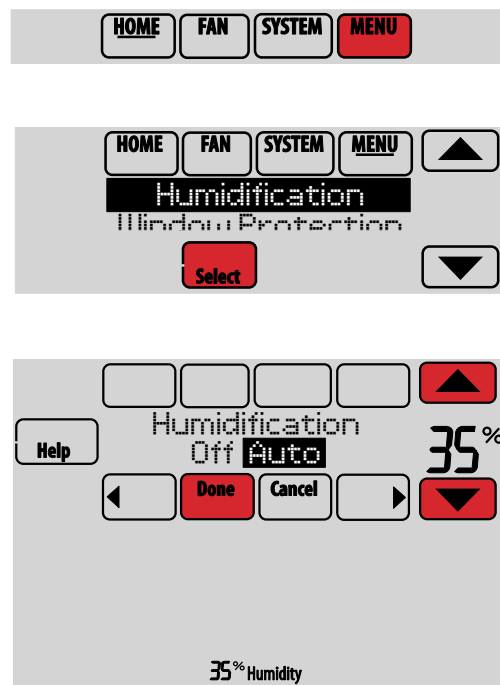
En fonction de l'installation du thermostat, il peut y avoir un délai allant jusqu'à 30 minutes avant de passer aux réglages de REMOTE SETBACK (DÉCALAGE À DISTANCE). Ceci permet à la température de la pièce de rester confortable lorsque la pièce n'est pas occupée pendant une courte période seulement.

Réglages d'humidification

- 1 Touchez **MENU** et sélectionnez **Humidification**.
- 2 Sélectionnez **Auto** (Automatique).
- 3 Touchez ▲ ou ▼ pour sélectionner le niveau d'humidité.
- 4 Touchez **Done** (Terminer) pour enregistrer vos réglages. Touchez **Cancel** (Annuler) pour ignorer les changements.
- 5 Si du gel ou de la condensation apparaît sur les fenêtres, touchez **MENU** puis sélectionnez **Window Protection** (Protection des fenêtres). (Utilisez un réglage inférieur pour empêcher le gel ou la condensation. Utilisez un réglage supérieur si l'air intérieur est trop sec.)

 **REMARQUE :** La protection pour les fenêtres n'est disponible que si un capteur d'air intérieur est installé.


 **REMARQUE :** Le thermostat contrôle l'humidification et la déshumidification selon le besoin pour maintenir le niveau d'humidité désiré. En fonction de l'installation du thermostat, celui-ci peut maintenir 15 % de séparation entre les réglages d'humidification et de déshumidification.

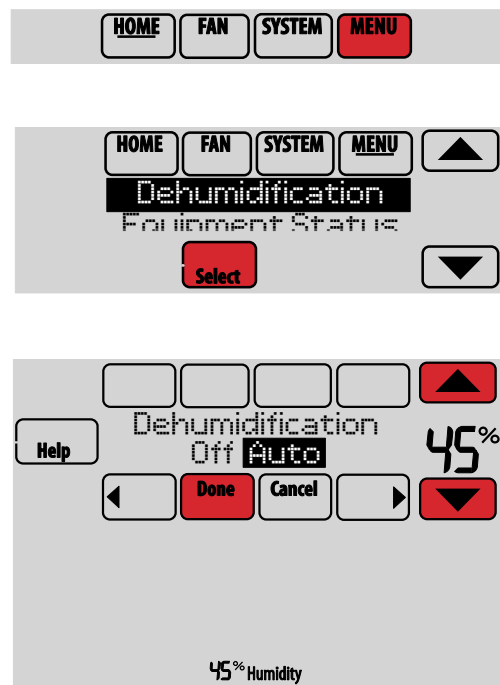


Réglages de déshumidification : utilisation résidentielle

Cette fonction permet de contrôler un déshumidificateur ou d'utiliser le climatiseur pour réduire l'humidité.

- 1 Touchez **MENU** et sélectionnez **Dehumidification** (Déshumidification).
- 2 Sélectionnez **Auto** (Automatique).
- 3 Touchez ▲ ou ▼ pour sélectionner le niveau d'humidité.
- 4 Touchez **Done** (Terminer) pour enregistrer vos réglages. Touchez **Cancel** (Annuler) pour ignorer les changements.

 **REMARQUE :** Si le climatiseur est utilisé pour contrôler l'humidité, la température peut chuter jusqu'à 3 °F en dessous du niveau réglé jusqu'à ce que l'humidité atteigne le niveau désiré.



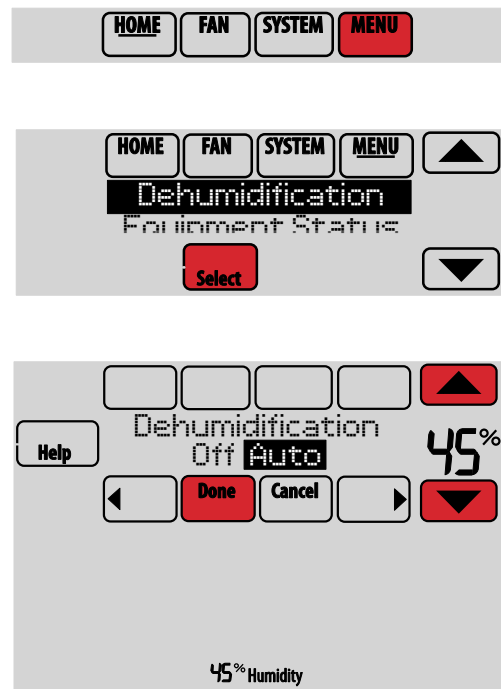
Réglages de déshumidification : utilisation commerciale

Cette fonction permet de contrôler un déshumidificateur ou d'utiliser le climatiseur pour réduire l'humidité.

- 1 Touchez **MENU** et sélectionnez **Dehumidification** (Déshumidification).
- 2 Sélectionnez **Auto** (Automatique).
- 3 Touchez ▲ ou ▼ pour sélectionner le niveau d'humidité.
- 4 Touchez **Done** (Terminer) pour enregistrer vos réglages. Touchez **Cancel** (Annuler) pour ignorer les changements.

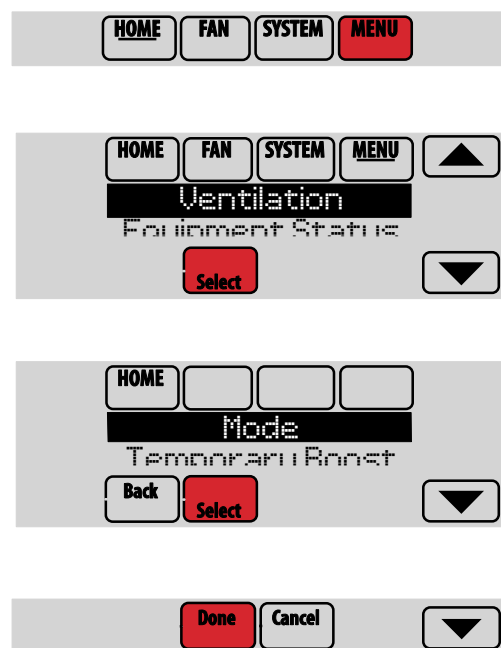
Si le climatiseur est utilisé pour contrôler l'humidité, le thermostat peut utiliser les méthodes suivantes pour maintenir l'humidité :

- Refroidir de 1 °F à 5 °F de moins que le réglage de température.
- Activer le refroidissement pour la durée de marche minimum pour réduire l'humidité.
- Activer le refroidissement et le chauffage en même temps pour réduire l'humidité sans réduire la température.



Réglage de la ventilation

- 1 Touchez **MENU** et sélectionnez **Ventilation**.
- 2 Sélectionnez **Mode**, **Temporary Boost** (Suralimentation provisoire) ou **Lockout** (Verrouillage), puis sélectionnez les options appropriées. (Pour les options, consultez la page suivante.)
- 3 Touchez **Done** (Terminer) pour enregistrer vos réglages. Touchez **Cancel** (Annuler) pour ignorer les changements.



Options de ventilation

Mode :

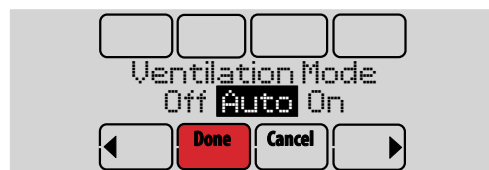
Auto (Automatique) : La ventilation fonctionne conformément au réglage de l'installateur.

Off (Arrêt) : La ventilation est arrêtée à moins qu'elle ne soit mise en marche avec le temporisateur.

On (Marche) : Le ventilateur est toujours en marche.

Temporary Boost (Suralimentation provisoire) : Touchez ▲ ou ▼ pour sélectionner la durée de marche provisoire du ventilateur. Pour l'arrêter, réglez-la sur zéro.

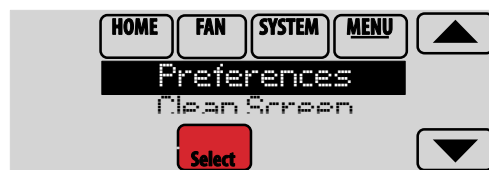
Lockout (Verrouillage) : Touchez ▲ ou ▼ pour sélectionner Yes (Oui) ou No (Non) puis touchez **Next** (Suivant). Sélectionnez **Yes** (Oui) pour empêcher la ventilation durant les périodes de sommeil ou inoccupées (utilisation commerciale) ou lorsque les conditions extérieures dépassent les valeurs réglées par l'installateur.



Réglages des préférences

Les options du menu Préférences vous permettent de sélectionner la façon dont le thermostat affiche les informations ou répond à certaines situations.


- 1 Touchez **MENU** et sélectionnez **Preferences** (Préférences).
- 2 Sélectionnez une option et suivez les invites :
 - Rappels de remplacement des filtres
 - Affichage Fahrenheit/Celsius
 - Format 12/24 heures
 - Rétroéclairage
 - Options des voyants d'alerte
 - Options de programmation
 - Récupération adaptative
 - Programme par défaut
 - Heure d'été/hiver
- 3 Touchez **Done** (Terminer) pour enregistrer vos réglages. Touchez **Cancel** (Annuler) pour ignorer les changements.

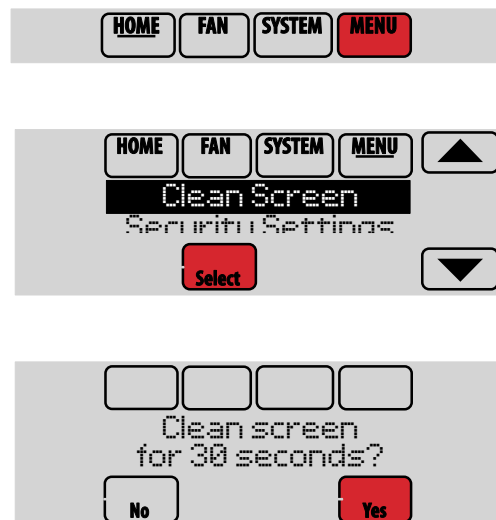


Nettoyage de l'écran du thermostat

Lorsque vous sélectionnez l'option Clean Screen (Nettoyer Écran), l'écran se verrouille pour que les réglages ne soient pas modifiés accidentellement durant le nettoyage.

- 1 Touchez **MENU**.
- 2 Sélectionnez **Clean Screen** (Nettoyer Écran). Une invite vous demande si vous souhaitez nettoyer l'écran pendant 30 secondes.
- 3 Touchez **Yes** (Oui). Une minuterie montre le temps écoulé jusqu'à ce que l'écran soit réactivé.


 **REMARQUE :** Ne pulvérisez AUCUN liquide directement sur le thermostat. Pulvérisez les liquides sur un chiffon, puis utilisez le chiffon humide pour nettoyer l'écran. N'utilisez pas d'eau ni de nettoyant à vitres ménager. Évitez les produits de nettoyage abrasifs.



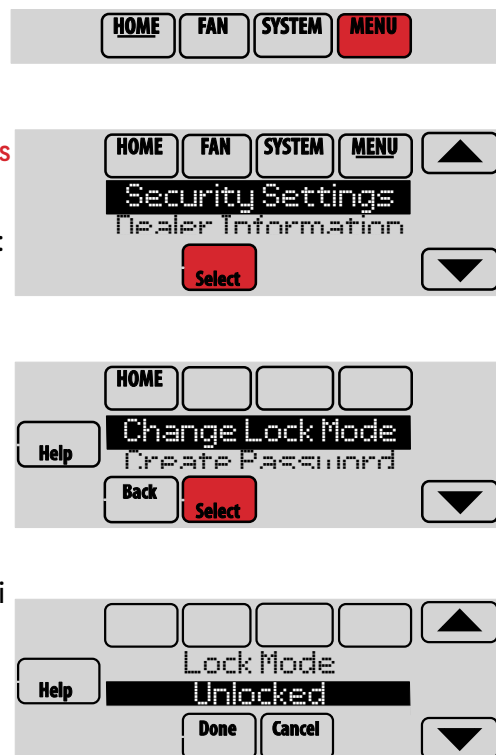
Réglages de sécurité

Vous pouvez régler les options de sécurité pour éviter les modifications non autorisées des réglages du système.

- 1 Touchez **MENU** et sélectionnez **Security Settings** (Réglages de sécurité).
- 2 Sélectionnez une option et suivez les invites :
 - Unlocked (Déverrouillé) :** Accès intégral permis.
 - Partially locked (Partiellement verrouillé) :** Seule la température peut être modifiée.
 - Fully locked (Complètement verrouillé) :** Aucun accès permis.

 **REMARQUE :** Si un mot de passe est choisi pour plus de sécurité, notez-le ici pour référence :

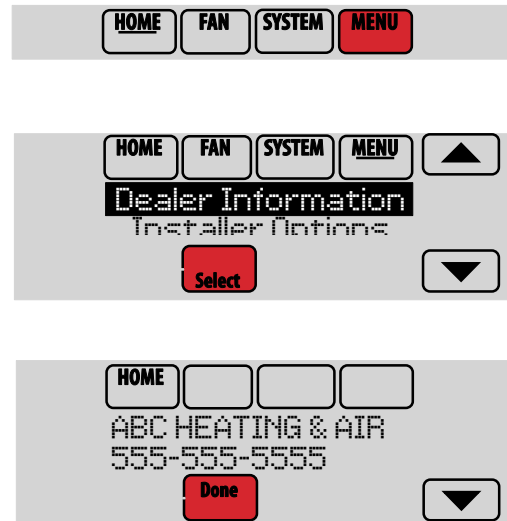
--	--	--	--



Affichage des informations du distributeur

Consultez les informations du distributeur pour contacter l'installateur pour les réparations, l'entretien ou les mises à jour.

- 1 Touchez **MENU**.
- 2 Sélectionnez **Dealer Information** (Informations du distributeur).
- 3 Faites défiler les informations affichées.
- 4 Touchez **Done** (Terminer) pour revenir au menu.



Fonctions avancées

Système de récupération intelligent adaptatif (utilisation résidentielle uniquement)—Avec le temps, le thermostat VisionPRO® « apprend » à reconnaître le temps requis par le système à obtenir la température désirée. Il active préalablement le chauffage ou le refroidissement pour garantir une température confortable au moment voulu. Le thermostat affiche In Recovery (Récupération en cours) lorsque il enclenche le démarrage précoce du système.

Mode de déshumidification en période inoccupée—Le système peut être réglé pour contrôler le climat intérieur pendant les périodes inoccupées durant la saison humide. Avant de partir, touchez **MENU** puis sélectionnez **Dehum Away Mode** (le mode de déshumidification en période inoccupée). La température et l'humidité sont maintenues à des niveaux permettant de protéger le domicile et les biens. Au retour, touchez **Cancel** (Annuler) pour reprendre le fonctionnement normal.

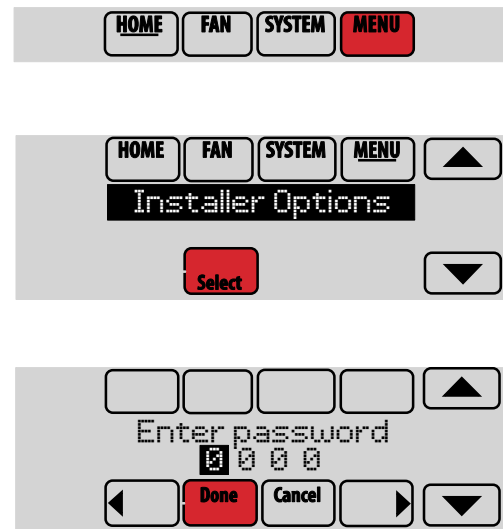
Protection du compresseur—Le thermostat maintient le compresseur arrêté pendant quelques minutes avant un redémarrage, pour éviter d'endommager l'équipement. Pendant cette durée d'arrêt, le message Patientez (Wait) s'affiche à l'écran.

Balayage avant occupation (utilisation commerciale uniquement)—Cette fonction active le ventilateur de 1 heure à 3 heures avant chaque période occupée pour fournir un environnement de travail confortable à l'arrivée.

Options de l'installateur

Les options de l'installateur requièrent un mot de passe et ne doivent être modifiées que par un technicien qualifié.

Pour éviter les changements accidentels et les dommages de l'équipement, ne modifiez pas ces options vous-même.

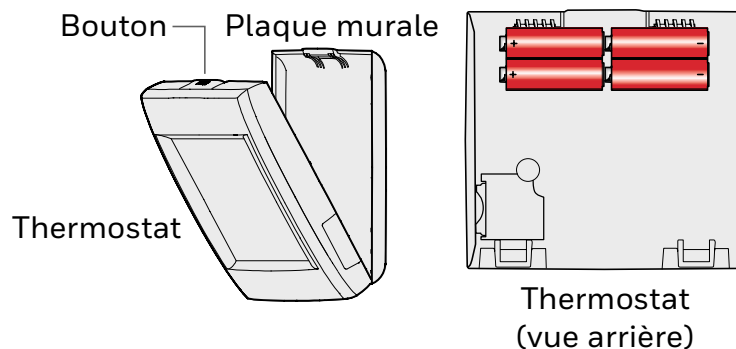


Remplacement des piles du thermostat

Installez des piles neuves lorsque l'avertissement de remplacement des piles REPLACE BATTERY (REEMPLACER LES PILES) commence à clignoter à l'écran. Cet avertissement message clignote pendant environ 60 jours avant que les piles ne soient complètement épuisées.

Même s'il n'y a pas d'avertissement, remplacez les piles au moins une fois par an ou avant de quitter la maison pour une période de plus d'un mois.

Touchez le bouton de libération en haut du thermostat pour le retirer de la plaque murale. Installez 4 piles alcalines AA neuves.



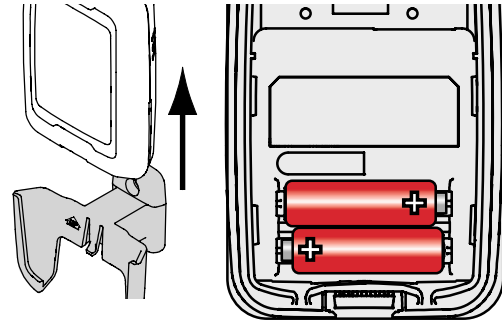
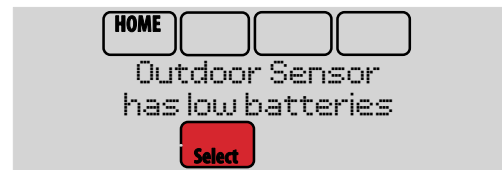
Remplacement des piles du capteur extérieur

Remplacez les piles du capteur extérieur lorsqu'une alerte s'affiche sur l'écran du thermostat, environ 60 jours avant que les piles ne soient vidées de leur charge.

Pour remplacer les piles :

- 1 Retirez le capteur du support.
- 2 Détachez le couvercle.
- 3 Installer 2 piles au lithium AA neuves.
- 4 Remplacez le couvercle et remettez le capteur dans le support.

Le capteur extérieur restaure la communication avec le thermostat quelques secondes après l'installation des piles neuves.



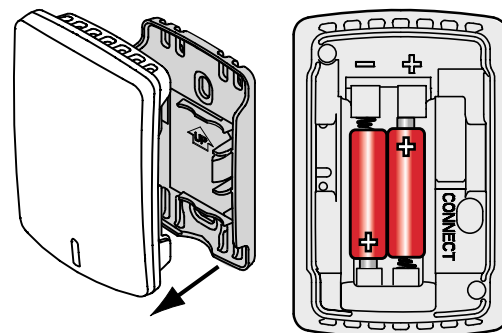
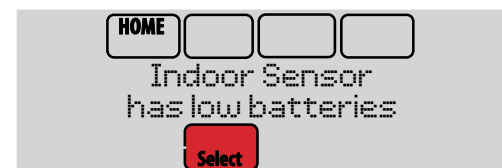
Remplacement des piles du capteur intérieur

Remplacez les piles du capteur intérieur lorsqu'une alerte s'affiche sur l'écran du thermostat, environ 60 jours avant que les piles ne soient vidées de leur charge. Lorsque le voyant de statut du capteur commence à clignoter en rouge, la charge des piles est très faible et sera complètement épuisée dans les deux à trois semaines. Durant le fonctionnement normal, le voyant de statut est éteint.

Pour remplacer les piles :

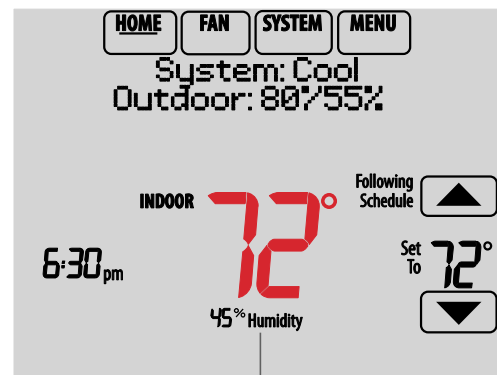
- 1 Retirez le capteur de la plaque murale.
- 2 Installer 2 piles alcalines AAA neuves. Si le voyant de statut clignote en vert, les piles sont bonnes; s'il clignote en rouge, elles doivent être remplacées.
- 3 Attachez le capteur à la plaque murale.

Le capteur restaure la communication avec le thermostat quelques secondes après l'installation des piles neuves.



Utilisation de l'affichage de température

Dans certaines circonstances, la température affichée sur l'écran d'accueil peut ne pas correspondre à celle près du thermostat. Si le système est configuré pour utiliser des capteurs intérieurs à distance, il est possible qu'il affiche les valeurs d'un capteur situé ailleurs.



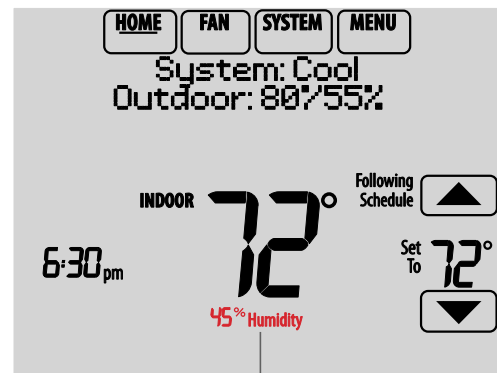
Le relevé de température dépend de l'emplacement du capteur

Utilisation de l'affichage de l'humidité

Dans certaines circonstances, l'humidité affichée sur l'écran d'accueil peut ne pas correspondre à celle près du thermostat.

Certains systèmes sont réglés pour utiliser deux capteurs, un pour l'humidification et l'autre pour la déshumidification. Ces capteurs sont souvent installés à différents endroits.

En fonction de l'installation du thermostat, l'écran d'accueil du thermostat affiche les valeurs d'humidité d'un seul capteur.



Le relevé de l'humidité dépend de l'emplacement du capteur

Accessoires en option

Régulateur de confort portatif

Si un seul thermostat est installé, ce régulateur peut être déplacé d'une pièce à l'autre (comme un thermostat portatif) pour s'assurer que la température est confortable dans la pièce occupée. Si plusieurs thermostats sont utilisés, ceci permet de consulter et de régler la température de chaque pièce à partir d'un fauteuil.



Capteur d'extérieur sans fil

Avec un capteur d'extérieur sans fil, le thermostat VisionPRO® peut afficher la température et l'humidité extérieures. Ces informations peuvent aussi être affichées sur le régulateur de confort portatif.



Capteur d'intérieur sans fil

Si un capteur intérieur est installé, le thermostat VisionPRO répond aux valeurs de température et d'humidité à l'emplacement du capteur, assurant le confort à l'endroit où le capteur est situé. Avec plusieurs capteurs, le thermostat peut faire la moyenne des relevés de température de chaque capteur pour optimiser le confort dans toute la maison.



Passerelle Internet RedLINK™

La passerelle Internet RedLINK d'Honeywell offre un accès à distance au thermostat VisionPRO® via Internet, un téléphone intelligent ou une tablette. Vous pouvez afficher ou régler la température intérieure, le mode du système et d'autres réglages. La passerelle envoie également des alertes à un maximum de 6 adresses électroniques pour vous avertir en cas de problème.



Dispositif à distance sans fil de point d'entrée/sortie

Ce dispositif se monte près de la porte pour un contrôle sur simple pression d'un bouton. Touchez **AWAY** (INOCCUPÉ) pour assurer une température économique lorsque vous quittez votre domicile. Touchez **HOME** (OCCUPÉ) pour assurer une température économique lorsque vous rentrez chez vous. Pour modifier les températures préréglées, allez sur **MENU > Entry/Exit Remote** (MENU > Entrée/Sortie à distance).



Dispositif à distance de surventilation et de surfiltration sans fil

Ce dispositif peut être installé partout chez vous (en général dans la salle de bain ou la cuisine) pour une ventilation pratique à la demande. Pour une ventilation supplémentaire, sélectionnez 20, 40 ou 60 minutes.

Dépannage

Si vous avez des problèmes avec votre thermostat, nous vous proposons d'essayer les solutions suivantes. La plupart des problèmes peuvent être réglés rapidement et facilement.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| L'écran n'affiche rien | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Vérifiez le disjoncteur et réinitialisez-le si nécessaire.• Assurez-vous que l'interrupteur de marche-arrêt du système de chauffage et de refroidissement est sur marche.• Assurez-vous que la porte de l'appareil de chauffage est bien fermée.• Si le thermostat est alimenté par piles, assurez-vous que des piles alcalines AA sont correctement installées (consultez la page 16). |
| L'écran est difficile à lire | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Changez le rétroéclairage de l'écran dans le menu des préférences (consultez la page 13). |
| Le voyant rouge est allumé | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Si le thermostat est en mode Chauffage d'urgence, le voyant rouge est normal. Il indique que le thermostat est en mode de chauffage d'urgence.• Si le thermostat n'est pas en mode de chauffage d'urgence, une alerte est active. Vérifiez le message sur l'écran du thermostat. |
| Le système de chauffage ou de refroidissement ne répond pas | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Touchez SYSTEM (SYSTÈME) pour régler le système sur Chauffage. Vérifiez que le réglage de température est supérieur à la température intérieure.• Touchez SYSTEM (SYSTÈME) pour régler le système sur Refroidissement. Vérifiez que le réglage de température est inférieur à la température intérieure.• Vérifiez le disjoncteur et réinitialisez-le si nécessaire.• Assurez-vous que l'interrupteur de marche-arrêt du système de chauffage et de refroidissement est sur marche.• Assurez-vous que la porte de l'appareil de chauffage est bien fermée.• Si Patientez (Wait) s'affiche, la minuterie de protection du compresseur est activée. Attendez 5 minutes pour que le système se remette en marche en toute sécurité sans endommager le compresseur. |

Informations relatives à la garantie

Honeywell garantit ce produit contre toute défectuosité de matériel ou de fabrication dans des conditions normales d'utilisation et d'entretien, pendant une période de cinq (5) ans à compter de la date d'achat. En cas de défectuosité ou de mauvais fonctionnement pendant la période de garantie, Honeywell remplacera ou réparera le produit (au gré de Honeywell).

Si le produit est défectueux,

- (i) le renvoyer, avec un acte de vente ou toute autre preuve d'achat datée, à l'endroit où a été acheté le produit, ou
- (ii) appeler le service à la clientèle d'Honeywell au 1-800-468-1502. Le service à la clientèle décidera si le produit doit être renvoyé à l'adresse suivante : Honeywell Return Goods, Dock 4 MN10-3860, 1985 Douglas Dr. N., Golden Valley, MN 55422, ou si un produit de remplacement doit être envoyé à l'acheteur.

Cette garantie ne couvre pas les frais de retrait ou de réinstallation. Cette garantie ne s'applique pas si Honeywell parvient à démontrer que la défectuosité ou le dysfonctionnement a été entraîné par un dommage survenu pendant que le produit était en possession de l'acheteur.

La responsabilité exclusive de Honeywell se limite à réparer ou à remplacer le produit conformément aux modalités susmentionnées. HONEYWELL N'EST EN AUCUN CAS RESPONSABLE DES PERTES OU DOMMAGES, Y COMPRIS LES DOMMAGES INDIRECTS OU ACCESSOIRES DÉCOULANT DIRECTEMENT OU INDIRECTEMENT D'UNE VIOLATION QUELCONQUE D'UNE GARANTIE, EXPRESSE OU TACITE, APPLICABLE AU PRÉSENT PRODUIT, OU TOUTE AUTRE DÉFAILLANCE DU PRÉSENT PRODUIT. Certaines provinces ne permettent pas l'exclusion ou la restriction des dommages indirects ou accessoires et, par conséquent, la présente restriction peut ne pas s'appliquer.

CETTE GARANTIE TIENT LIEU D'UNIQUE GARANTIE EXPRESSE FOURNIE PAR HONEYWELL AU REGARD DE CE PRODUIT. LA DURÉE D'UNE GARANTIE IMPLICITE, NOTAMMENT D'UNE GARANTIE DE QUALITÉ MARCHANDE ET D'ADÉQUATION À UN USAGE PARTICULIER, EST, DANS LA PRÉSENTE, LIMITÉE À CINQ ANS.

Certains États n'autorisent aucune limitation quant à la durée d'une garantie implicite. Cette limitation ne s'applique donc pas dans tous les cas. La présente garantie confère à l'acheteur des droits précis reconnus par la loi. Il est possible qu'il bénéficie d'autres droits, qui varient d'un État à l'autre.

Pour toute question concernant cette garantie, écrire à l'adresse Honeywell Customer Relations, 1985 Douglas Dr, Golden Valley, MN 55422 ou appeler le 1-800-468-1502.

Informations réglementaires

Déclaration de conformité à la FCC (Partie 15.19) (États-Unis uniquement)

Cet appareil est conforme à la partie 15 du règlement de la FCC. Son fonctionnement est soumis aux deux conditions suivantes :

- 1 Ce dispositif ne doit pas causer d'interférences nuisibles, et
- 2 Ce dispositif doit accepter toutes les interférences reçues, y compris celles pouvant causer un fonctionnement non souhaité.

Avertissement de la FCC (Partie 15.21) (États-Unis uniquement)

Toute modification qui n'est pas autorisée expressément par la partie responsable de la conformité de l'appareil peut rendre l'utilisateur inapte à faire fonctionner l'équipement.

Déclaration relative aux interférences de la FCC (Partie 15.105 (b)) (États-Unis uniquement)

Cet équipement a été testé et est conforme aux limites des dispositifs numériques de Classe B, conformément à la Partie 15 du règlement de la FCC. Ces limites sont conçues pour fournir une protection raisonnable contre les interférences nuisibles dans une installation résidentielle. Cet équipement génère, utilise et peut émettre de l'énergie de radiofréquence, et s'il n'est pas installé et utilisé conformément aux instructions, peut causer des interférences nuisibles aux communications radio. Il n'y a toutefois aucune garantie qu'une interférence ne se produira pas dans une installation particulière. Si cet équipement cause des interférences nuisibles à la réception radio et télévision, ce qui peut être déterminé en éteignant le dispositif et en le remettant en marche, il est recommandé à l'utilisateur de tenter de corriger l'interférence par l'une des mesures suivantes :

- Réorienter ou déplacer l'antenne réceptrice.
- Augmenter la séparation entre l'équipement et le récepteur.

- Branchez l'équipement dans la prise d'un circuit différent de celui auquel le récepteur est connecté.
- Consulter le distributeur ou un technicien radio/TV compétent pour obtenir de l'aide.

Module d'interface d'équipement, thermostats et capteur extérieur

Pour être conformes aux limites d'exposition aux radiofréquences établies par FCC et Industrie Canada pour le grand public/l'exposition non contrôlée, la ou les antennes utilisées pour ces transmetteurs doivent être installées à au moins 20 cm de toutes les personnes et ne peuvent être situées au même endroit qu'une autre antenne ou fonctionner conjointement avec une autre antenne.

Régulateur de confort portatif

Ce transmetteur portable et son antenne sont conformes aux limites d'exposition RF de la FCC et d'Industrie Canada pour la population générale/l'exposition non contrôlée. Cet appareil ne doit pas être situé ou fonctionner avec une autre antenne ou un autre transmetteur.

Section 7.1.2 de RSS-GEN

Conformément aux normes d'Industrie Canada, ce transmetteur radio ne peut fonctionner qu'avec une antenne dont le type et le gain maximum sont approuvés par Industrie Canada. Pour réduire les risques d'interférences radio encourus par d'autres utilisateurs, le type et le gain de l'antenne doivent être choisis de façon à ce que la puissance rayonnée isotrope équivalente (p.i.r.e.) ne soit pas supérieure à celle nécessaire à l'établissement d'une bonne communication.

Section 7.1.3 de RSS-GEN

Son fonctionnement est soumis aux deux conditions suivantes :

- 1 Ce dispositif ne doit pas causer d'interférences, et
- 2 Ce dispositif doit accepter toutes les interférences, y compris celles pouvant causer un fonctionnement non souhaité.



Ce thermostat contient une pile au lithium pouvant contenir du perchlorate.
Perchlorate — peut exiger une manipulation particulière.
Visitez le site www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate

Besoin d'aide?

Pour obtenir de l'aide, veuillez visiter <http://yourhome.honeywell.com>
ou appeler le numéro gratuit :
1-800-468-1502 (installation résidentielle) • **1-888-245-1051** (installation commerciale)

Home and Building Technologies

Aux États-Unis:

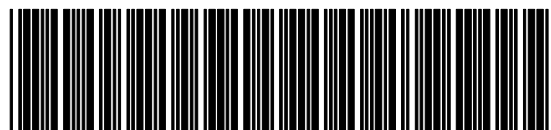
Honeywell International Inc.
1985 Douglas Drive North
Golden Valley, MN 55422-3992
<http://customer.honeywell.com>

® Marque de commerce déposée aux É.-U.
© 2017 Honeywell International Inc.
69-2761EFS-09 M.S. Rev. 07-17
Imprimé aux États-Unis



Honeywell
THE POWER OF **CONNECTED**

Home



69-2761EFS-09



Serie VisionPRO® con
RedLINK™

Guía del usuario





Bienvenido

Felicitaciones por la compra del termostato con pantalla táctil programable de Honeywell. Cuando se usa con el portal de Internet RedLINK opcional, puede supervisar y controlar de manera remota el sistema de calefacción y refrigeración de su hogar o empresa—puede permanecer conectado a su sistema de confort dondequiera que vaya.

Total Connect Comfort de Honeywell es la solución perfecta si usted viaja frecuentemente, si posee un hogar de vacaciones, una empresa, o si administra una propiedad de inversión o, simplemente, busca tranquilidad.

Características del termostato VisionPRO

Con el nuevo termostato, podrá realizar lo siguiente:

- **Conectarse a Internet para monitorear y controlar el sistema de calefacción/refrigeración y recibir alertas por correo electrónico (necesita el portal de Internet RedLINK opcional)**
- **Ver la temperatura y humedad exteriores (necesita un sensor exterior inalámbrico opcional)**
- **Controlar la humidificación, deshumidificación o ventilación (modelo TH8321)**

El nuevo termostato le brinda también lo siguiente:

- **Función Adaptive Intelligent Recovery—con el tiempo, el termostato VisionPRO “sabe” cuánto demora el sistema en alcanzar la temperatura que desea. Activa el sistema de calefacción o refrigeración más temprano para que esté confortable a la hora que usted espera.**
- **Información del distribuidor en la pantalla—lo cual le facilita la comunicación con el distribuidor para el servicio.**
- **Programación para vacaciones y días festivos—lo que le permite programar la temperatura de corrección para ahorrar energía mientras se encuentre fuera de su hogar.**
- **Bloqueo del teclado para evitar cambios no autorizados.**
- **Estatus del equipo—proporciona un estatus de encendido/apagado de todos los equipos controlados por el termostato.**
- **Preferencias—le permite personalizar el termostato a las configuraciones deseadas.**

Índice

Programación y funcionamiento

Referencia rápida.....	2
Configurar la hora y el día.....	3
Configuración del ventilador	3
Configurar la modalidad del sistema	4
Cronogramas de ahorro de energía predeterminados.....	4
Ajustar los cronogramas del programa	5
Anular los cronogramas del programa.....	6

Opciones del menú

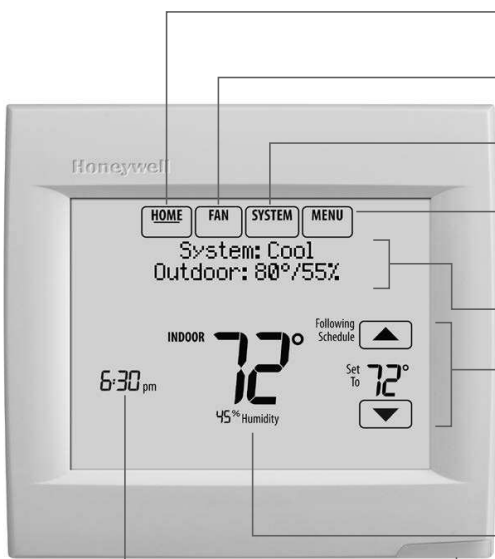
Ver el estatus del equipo	7
Configurar vacaciones, días festivos y eventos	7
Configurar programación de días festivos/eventos: uso comercial	8

Configurar humidificación y deshumidificación.....	11
Configurar ventilación.....	12
Configurar preferencias.....	13
Limpieza de la pantalla del termostato...	14
Configuraciones de seguridad	14
Ver información del distribuidor	15
Funciones avanzadas	15

Apéndices

Opciones del instalador.....	16
Reemplazo de baterías	16
Pantalla de temperatura y humedad.....	18
Accesorios opcionales	19
Localización y solución de problemas.....	20
Información de reglamentación.....	21

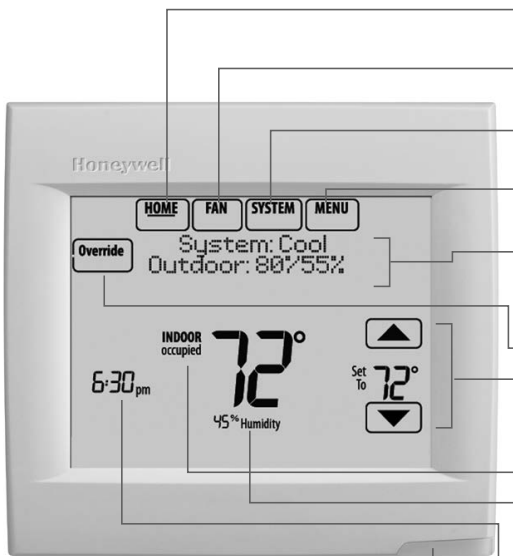
Referencia rápida: uso residencial



La pantalla se ilumina cuando presiona cualquier botón. Permanece iluminada durante 16 segundos si el termostato está alimentado por baterías. (45 segundos si el termostato está alimentado por un cable C). Dependiendo de la forma como se instaló su termostato, la luz de la pantalla puede estar siempre encendida.

- HOME (INICIO).** Presione para visualizar la pantalla principal.
- FAN (VENTILADOR).** Seleccione una modalidad para el ventilador.
- SYSTEM (SISTEMA).** Seleccione la modalidad del sistema (Calefacción/Refrigeración).
- MENU (MENÚ).** Presione para visualizar las opciones. Comience aquí para configurar un cronograma del programa.
- Estatus actual.** Muestra la modalidad del sistema (calefacción/refrigeración), la temperatura y humedad exteriores (con sensor opcional de exterior).
- Cronograma actual.** Toque una flecha para cambiar la configuración de la temperatura y seleccionar una pausa temporal o permanente.
- Condiciones en interiores.** Muestra la temperatura y humedad interiores.
- Hora actual.** Toque para fijar la hora/fecha o actuales.
- Luz de alerta.** Encendida cuando el mensaje de alerta está activo o el sistema está configurado para calefacción de emergencia (EmHeat). Destella cuando tiene alimentación con batería únicamente; encendido continuo si está alimentado por el sistema.

Referencia rápida: uso comercial



La pantalla se ilumina cuando presiona cualquier botón. Permanece iluminada durante 16 segundos si el termostato está alimentado por baterías. (45 segundos si el termostato está alimentado por un cable C). Dependiendo de la forma como se instaló su termostato, la luz de la pantalla puede estar siempre encendida.

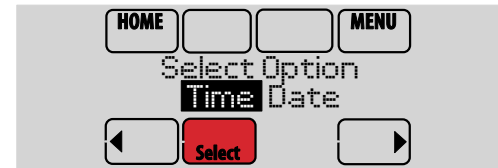
- HOME (INICIO).** Presione para visualizar la pantalla principal.
- FAN (VENTILADOR).** Seleccione una modalidad para el ventilador.
- SYSTEM (SISTEMA).** Seleccione la modalidad del sistema (Calefacción/Refrigeración).
- MENU (MENÚ).** Presione para visualizar las opciones. Comience aquí para configurar un cronograma del programa.
- Estatus actual.** Muestra la modalidad del sistema (calefacción/refrigeración), la temperatura y humedad exteriores (con sensor opcional de exterior).
- Anulación.** Toque para anular el cronograma del programa.
- Cronograma actual.** Toque una flecha para cambiar la configuración de la temperatura y seleccionar una pausa temporal.
- Estatus actual del programa.**
- Condiciones interiores.** Muestra la temperatura y humedad interiores.
- Hora actual.** Toque para fijar la hora/fecha actuales.
- Luz de alerta.** Encendida cuando el mensaje de alerta está activo o el sistema está configurado para calefacción de emergencia (EmHeat). Destella cuando tiene alimentación con batería únicamente; encendido continuo si está alimentado por el sistema.
- Puerto de tarjeta Micro SD.** Use la tarjeta para ingresar los cronogramas de días festivos y eventos personalizados.

Configurar la hora y el día

- 1 Toque la hora actual. La pantalla muestra **Select Opcion** (Seleccionar opción).
- 2 Toque la hora o la fecha, y seguidamente **Select** (Seleccionar).
- 3 Toque ▲ o ▼ hasta que se muestre la hora/fecha adecuada.
- 4 Toque **Done** (Terminado) para guardar o **Cancel** (Cancelar) para ignorar los cambios.
- 5 Toque **Home** (Inicio) para mostrar la pantalla principal.



NOTA: No se muestra la fecha en la pantalla principal, sin embargo debe configurarse para permitir que el termostato ajuste el tiempo automáticamente para el horario de verano y para otras funciones tales como mantener la temperatura en vacaciones.



Configurar el ventilador

- 1 Toque la opción **FAN** (VENTILADOR) para mostrar las configuraciones del ventilador.
- 2 Toque **On** (Encendido), **Auto** (Automático), **Circ** (Circulación) o **Follow Schedule** (Seguir la programación).
- 3 Toque **Done** (Terminado) para guardar y salir.

On (Encendido): el ventilador está siempre encendido.

Auto (Automático): el ventilador funciona solo cuando el sistema de calefacción o refrigeración está encendido.

Circ (Circulación): el ventilador funciona en forma aleatoria, aproximadamente el 35% del tiempo (uso residencial únicamente).

Follow Schedule (Seguir la programación): Ventilador controlado mediante configuraciones programadas (consulte las pág. 4–6).



NOTA: En uso comercial, toque Automático (Auto) o Encendido (On) para anular temporalmente el cronograma programado del ventilador.



Configurar la modalidad del sistema

- 1 Toque **SYSTEM** (SISTEMA) para mostrar las configuraciones del sistema.
- 2 Toque la opción deseada:
 - Heat (Calefacción):** controla solo el sistema de calefacción.
 - Cool (Refrigeración):** controla solo el sistema de refrigeración.
 - Off (Apagado):** se apagan los sistemas de calefacción/refrigeración.
 - Auto (Automático):** selecciona la calefacción o la refrigeración según la temperatura interior.
 - Em heat (Calefacción de emergencia) (bombas de calor con calefacción auxiliar):** controla la calefacción auxiliar/de emergencia. El compresor se bloquea.
- 3 Toque **Done** (Terminado) para guardar y salir.



NOTA: Quizás las configuraciones del sistema **Auto** (Automático) y **Em Heat** (Calefacción de emergencia) no aparezcan, esto depende de cómo se instaló el termostato.

Cronogramas predeterminados para ahorro de energía

Este termostato usa las configuraciones de ahorro de energía predeterminadas que pueden disminuir los gastos de calefacción/refrigeración. Para personalizar el termostato, consulte la página siguiente.


Período	Hora de inicio	Calefacción	Refrig.	Calefacción	Refrig.
		(lun.-vie.)	(lun.-vie.)	(sáb.-dom.)	(sáb.-dom.)
Despertar (Wake)	6:00 am	70°	78°	70°	78°
Salir (Leave)	8:00 am	62°	85°	62°	85°
Regresar (Return)	6:00 pm	70°	78°	70°	78°
Dormir (Sleep)	10:00 pm	62°	82°	62°	82°

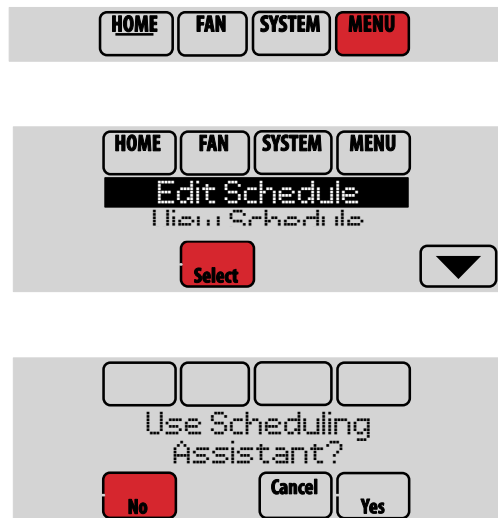
Período	Hora de inicio	Calefacción	Refrig.	Ventilador
Ocupado 1	8:00 am	70°	75°	Encendido
Desocupado 1	10:00 pm	55°	85°	Automático
Ocupado 2*	12:00 am	70°	75°	Encendido
Desocupado 2*	12:00 am	55°	85°	Automático

* El Período 2 se cancela de forma predeterminada. Si lo activa, los valores mostrados anteriormente se convierten en configuraciones predeterminadas.


Ajustar los cronogramas del programa


- 1 Toque **MENU**.
- 2 Seleccione **Edit Schedule** (Editar programación) para mostrar **Use Scheduling Assistant?** (¿Usar asistente de programación?)
 - Toque **Yes** (Sí) para crear una programación respondiendo preguntas simples.
 - Toque **No** para crear un cronograma del programa manualmente. Consulte más abajo.

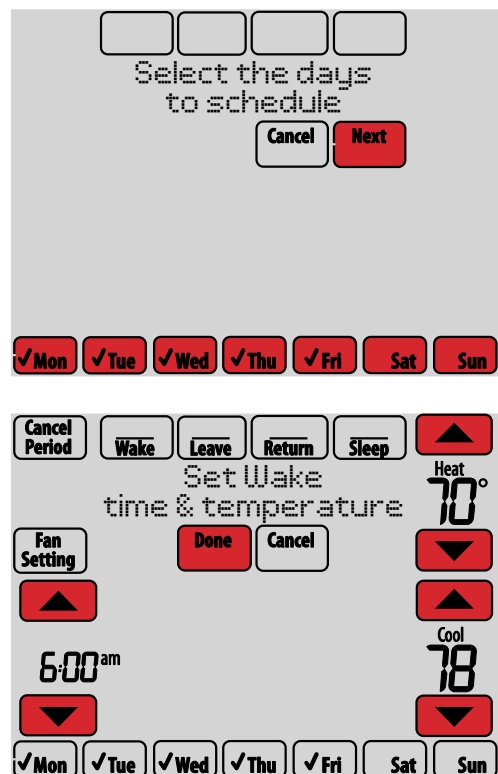
 **NOTA:** Para disminuir costos, use las configuraciones de ahorro de energía que se describen en la página 4.



- 3 Seleccione los días para programar, toque **Next** (Siguiente).
- 4 Toque **▲** o **▼** para configurar la hora de despertarse (Wake) correspondiente al(los) día(s) seleccionado(s).
- 5 Toque **▲** o **▼** para configurar la temperatura de Calefacción (Heat) y Refrigeración (Cool) del período Despertar (Wake).
- 6 Toque otros períodos (**Leave** [SALIR], **Return** [REGRESAR], **Sleep** [DORMIR]) para configurar la hora y las temperaturas para cada uno de ellos.
- 7 Toque **Done** (Terminado) para guardar y salir (toque **Cancel** [Cancelar]) para salir sin guardar los cambios.

 **NOTA:** Toque **Cancel Period** (Cancelar período) para eliminar los períodos no deseados.

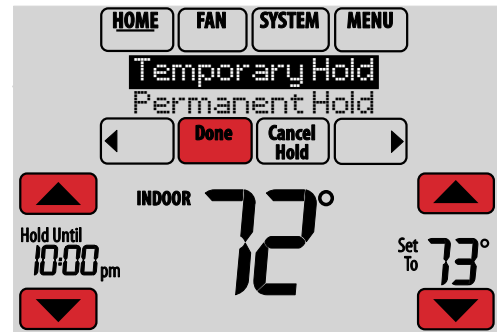
 **NOTA:** Toque **Fan Setting** (Configuración del ventilador) para personalizar las configuraciones del ventilador para cualquier período de tiempo.



Anular los cronogramas del programa: uso residencial

- 1 Toque ▲ o ▼ para configurar la temperatura (lado derecho de la pantalla) y la hora indicada en Mantener hasta (Hold Until) (lado izquierdo). La programación se reanuda cuando finalice el tiempo de “Mantener hasta”.
- 2 Seleccione **Permanent Hold** (Pausa permanente) para mantener la misma temperatura hasta que la cambie o reinicie la configuración del programa.

Toque **Cancel Hold** (Cancelar la Pausa) en cualquier momento para reanudar el cronograma del programa.

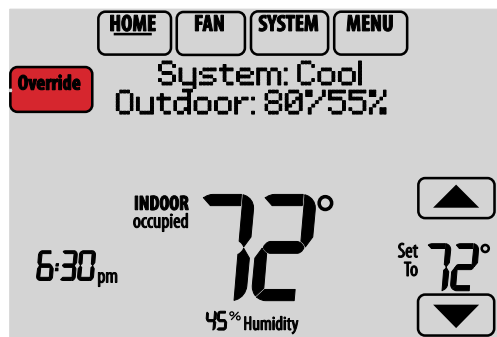
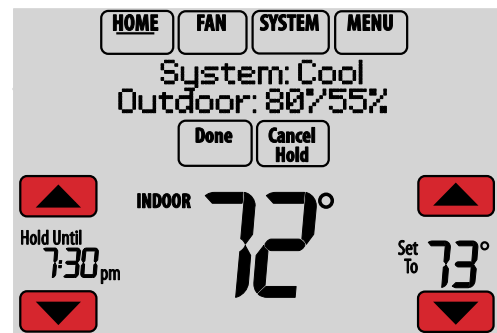


Anular los cronogramas del programa: uso comercial

Toque ▲ o ▼ para configurar la temperatura. La temperatura nueva se mantendrá hasta el tiempo de “pausa” que usted configure.

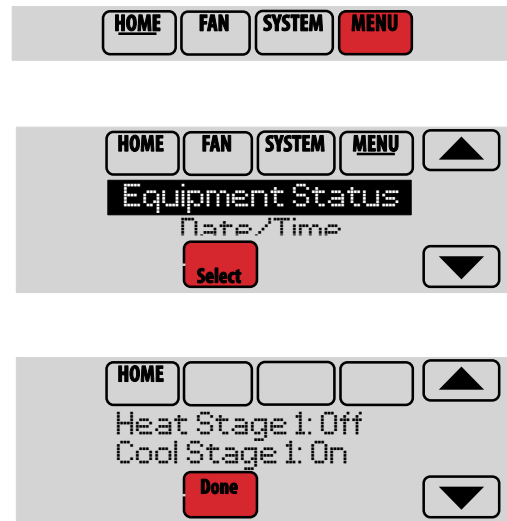
- Para cambiar el tiempo de pausa, toque los botones con flechas Mantener hasta (Hold Until). Esta vez puede ajustarse hasta el tiempo máximo configurado por el instalador.
- Toque **Override** (Anular) para utilizar una temperatura de ocupación preestablecida si una persona usa la habitación durante un período de no ocupado. La nueva temperatura podrá conservarse durante una hora y regularse hasta el tiempo máximo configurado por el instalador.

El cronograma programado se reanuda cuando el temporizador de anulación finalice. Toque **Cancel Hold** (Cancelar Mantener) en cualquier momento para reanudar el cronograma del programa.



Ver estatus del equipo

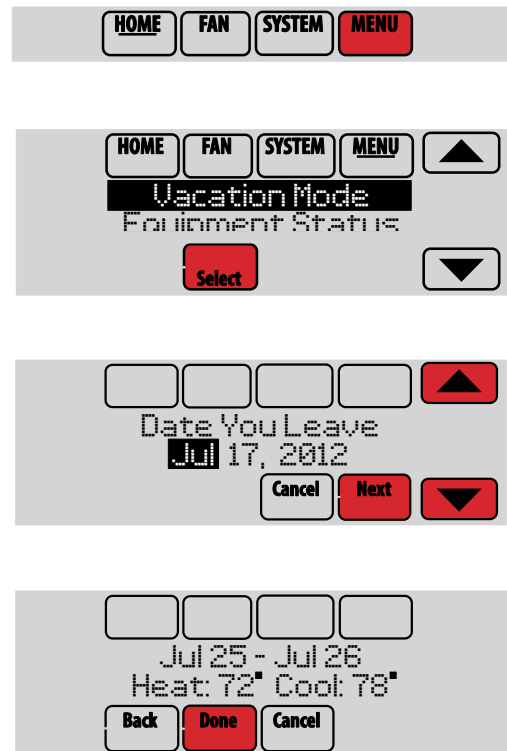
- 1 Toque **MENU** (MENÚ).
- 2 Seleccione **Equipment Status** (Estatus del equipo).
- 3 Toque ▲ o ▼ para ver el estatus de todos los equipos que controla su termostato. Dependiendo de la forma como se instaló su termostato, la pantalla de estatus del equipo puede generar información sobre los siguientes sistemas:
 - Calefacción y refrigeración
 - Ventilador
 - Humidificación
 - Deshumidificación
 - Ventilación
 - Recordatorios de mantenimiento
 - Información del termostato



Configurar mantenimiento de la temperatura en vacaciones: uso residencial

Esta función le permite ahorrar energía mientras se encuentra fuera de casa, y restituye una temperatura confortable poco antes de que regresar a su casa.

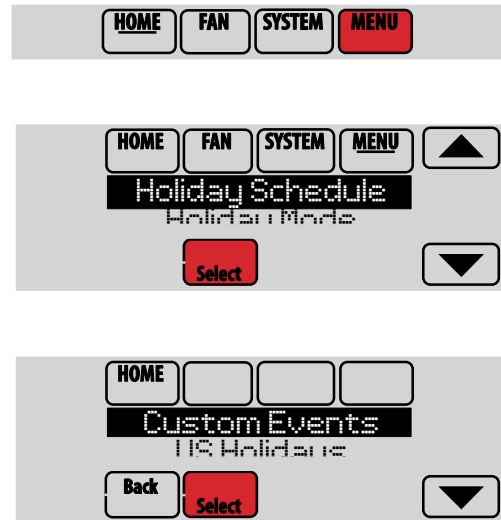
- 1 Toque **MENU** (MENÚ).
- 2 Seleccione **Vacation Mode** (Modalidad de vacaciones).
- 3 Toque ▲ o ▼ para seleccionar la fecha en que se marcha, seguidamente toque **Next** (Siguiete) para más detalles sobre la programación, incluyendo horas del día, configuraciones de temperatura, fecha de regreso y configuraciones para el regreso.
- 4 Revise lo que ha elegido en la última pantalla y toque **Done** (Terminado) para guardar sus configuraciones. Toque **Cancel** (Cancelar) para ignorar los cambios.



Configurar programación de días festivos/eventos: uso comercial

Esta función contribuye a conservar energía cuando el lugar de trabajo está desocupado durante eventos especiales o días festivos.

- 1 Toque **MENU** (MENÚ).
- 2 Seleccione **Holiday Schedule** (Programación de días festivos).
- 3 Seleccione la función que desea programar y toque **Next** (Siguiendo) para más detalles sobre la programación.
 - Eventos personalizados (Custom Events) le permite configurar otros días para programaciones especiales.
 - Las opciones de Días festivos de EE. UU. y Canadá (US and Canadian Holiday) le permiten elegir de una lista de días festivos comúnmente observados en cada país.
- 4 Elija según se le instruya en cada pantalla. Para obtener más información, consulte la página siguiente.
- 5 Toque **Done** (Terminado) para guardar sus configuraciones.



Configuración de eventos personalizados: uso comercial

Esta función le permite personalizar configuraciones de temperaturas para mantenerlas durante un evento específico. Puede configurar un evento para una fecha específica o un día del mes. El termostato reanuda la programación normal después del evento.

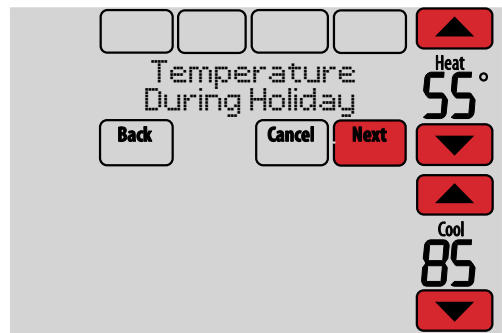
- 1 Seleccione **Custom Events** (Eventos personalizados) del menú Programación de días festivos (Holiday Schedule).
- 2 Seleccione **Create New Event** (Crear evento nuevo).
- 3 Seleccione **Specific Date** (Fecha específica) o **Month/Weekday** (Mes/Día de la semana).
 - Para **Specific Date** (Fecha específica), se le instruye que seleccione una fecha de inicio del evento, configuraciones, fecha de finalización y frecuencia.
 - Para **Month/Weekday** (Mes/Día de la semana), se le instruye que seleccione un mes, día de la semana, semana del mes, configuraciones, duración del evento y frecuencia del evento.
- 4 Revise las configuraciones y toque **Done** (Terminado) para guardarlas. Toque **Cancel** (Cancelar) para ignorar los cambios.



Configurar programación de días festivos: uso comercial

Esta función le permite personalizar configuraciones de temperaturas para mantenerlas durante eventos nacionales específicos. El termostato reanuda la programación normal entre uno y otro evento seleccionado.

- 1 Seleccione **US Holidays** o **Canadian Holidays** (Días festivos de EE. UU. o Canadá) del menú Holiday Schedule (Programación de días festivos).
- 2 Seleccione **Add/Edit Holidays** (Añadir/editar días festivos). Aparecerá una lista de días festivos nacionales.
- 3 Toque la casilla al lado de cada día festivo en el cual desea mantener una configuración específica, (Toque ▲ o ▼ para desplazarse por la lista de días festivos) y seguidamente toque **Next** (Siguiente).
Configure la programación de días festivos para temperaturas de ocupado o desocupado, dependiendo si el edificio estará en uso.
- 4 Toque ▲ o ▼ para seleccionar las temperaturas de calefacción y refrigeración.
- 5 Revise las configuraciones y toque **Done** (Terminado) para guardarlas. Toque **Cancel** (Cancelar) para ignorar los cambios.



Configuración de anulación de día festivo: uso comercial

Esta función le permite personalizar configuraciones de temperaturas para mantenerlas desde ahora hasta una fecha específica. El termostato reanuda la programación normal en la fecha que usted seleccione.

- 1 Toque **MENU** (MENÚ).
- 2 Seleccione **Holiday Mode** (Modalidad de días festivos) para mostrar la temperatura mientras está ausente.
- 3 Toque ▲ o ▼ para seleccionar las temperaturas de calefacción y refrigeración, seguidamente toque **Next** (Siguiente) para seleccionar la fecha de regreso.
- 4 Revise las configuraciones y toque **Done** (Terminado) para guardarlas. Toque **Cancel** (Cancelar) para ignorar los cambios.

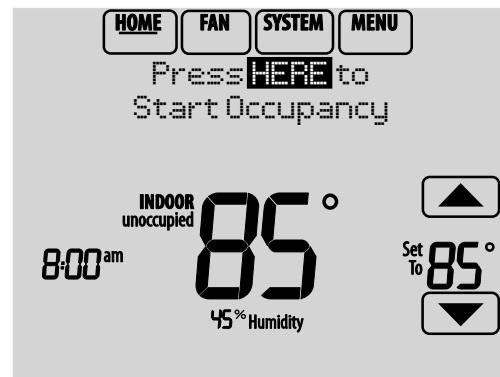
NOTA: La temperatura de refrigeración solo se puede establecer en un valor más alto que la configuración del programa del período desocupado y la configuración de la temperatura de calefacción solo se puede establecer en un valor más bajo que la configuración del programa del período desocupado.




Iniciar la modalidad de ocupación: uso comercial

Esta función conserva la temperatura a un nivel de ahorro de energía hasta que toque **Press HERE to Start Occupancy** (Presionar AQUÍ para iniciar el período de ocupación). Cuando usted llegue, toque el mensaje para mantener una temperatura confortable mientras la habitación esté ocupada.

Toque los botones ▲ o ▼ para configurar la temperatura o la hora de Mantener hasta (Hold Until). La temperatura se mantiene solamente hasta el tiempo que usted configuró. La temperatura regresa a un nivel para ahorro de energía después de que finalice el temporizador o el período "Occupied" (Ocupado).



 **NOTA:** Esta función está disponible solo si el instalador la programó.

Retroceso remoto (uso comercial)


Durante los períodos Ocupados de la programación, un sensor de ocupación dirige el termostato a una configuración de REMOTE SETBACK (RETROCESO REMOTO) cuando la habitación está vacía. Si alguien está en la habitación, adopta las configuraciones establecidas para el período ocupado de la programación. El termostato ignora el sensor de ocupación durante los períodos desocupados de la programación.


Si el termostato está configurado para no programable, el sensor dirige el termostato a una configuración de REMOTE SETBACK (RETROCESO REMOTO) cuando la habitación está vacía. Si alguien está en la habitación, entonces adopta la configuración establecida por el usuario.

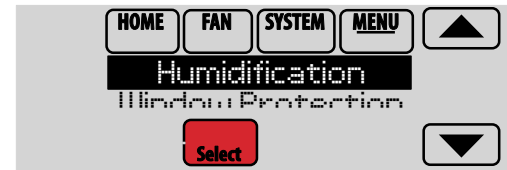
Dependiendo de la forma como se haya instalado su termostato, puede haber una demora de hasta 30 minutos antes de que cambie a la configuración de REMOTE SETBACK (RETROCESO REMOTO). Esta demora permite que la habitación permanezca confortable si no está ocupada por solo un período de tiempo corto.

Configuración de ajuste de la humidificación

- 1 Toque **MENU** (MENÚ) y seleccione **Humidification** (Humidificación).
- 2 Seleccione **Auto** (Automático).
- 3 Toque ▲ o ▼ para seleccionar el nivel de humedad.
- 4 Toque **Done** (Terminado) para guardar sus configuraciones. Toque **Cancel** (Cancelar) para ignorar los cambios.
- 5 Si aparece escarcha o condensación en las ventanas, toque **MENU** (MENÚ), elija **Window Protection** (Protección de las ventanas). (Utilice un número más bajo para evitar escarcha o condensación. Utilice un número más alto si el aire interior está demasiado seco.)

 **NOTA:** Protección de las ventanas está solo disponible si se instala un sensor de aire exterior.


 **NOTA:** El termostato controla la humidificación y deshumidificación según se necesite para mantener el nivel de humedad deseado. Dependiendo de la forma como se instaló su termostato, este puede conservar un 15% de separación entre las configuraciones de humidificación y deshumidificación.

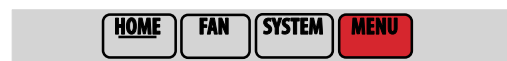


Ajuste de la configuración de deshumidificación: uso residencial

Esta función puede controlar un deshumidificador o usar el aire acondicionado para disminuir la humedad.

- 1 Toque **MENU** (MENÚ) y seleccione **Dehumidification** (Deshumidificación).
- 2 Seleccione **Auto** (Automático).
- 3 Toque ▲ o ▼ para seleccionar el nivel de humedad.
- 4 Toque **Done** (Terminado) para guardar sus configuraciones. Toque **Cancel** (Cancelar) para ignorar los cambios.

 **NOTA:** Si su aire acondicionado se usa para controlar la humedad, la temperatura puede descender hasta 3° F por debajo del nivel configurado hasta que la humedad alcance el nivel deseado.



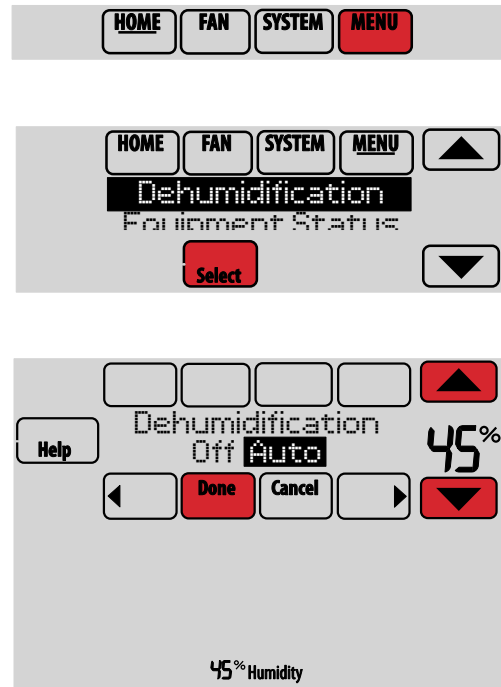
Ajuste de la configuración de deshumidificación: uso comercial

Esta función puede controlar un deshumidificador o usar el aire acondicionado para disminuir la humedad.

- 1 Toque **MENU** (MENÚ) y seleccione **Dehumidification** (Deshumidificación).
- 2 Seleccione **Auto** (Automático).
- 3 Toque ▲ o ▼ para seleccionar el nivel de humedad.
- 4 Toque **Done** (Terminado) para guardar sus configuraciones. Toque **Cancel** (Cancelar) para ignorar los cambios.

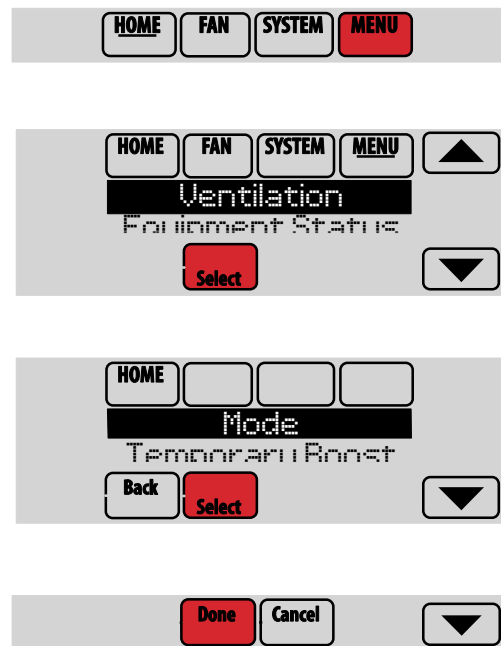
Si su aire acondicionado se usa para controlar la humedad, el termostato puede hacer uso de los siguientes métodos para conservar la humedad:

- Enfriar de 1° a 5° F por debajo del nivel de su configuración de temperatura.
- Activar la refrigeración por el tiempo de “encendido” mínimo para disminuir la humedad.
- Activar la refrigeración y la calefacción al mismo tiempo para disminuir la humedad sin bajar la temperatura.



Configuración de ajuste de la ventilación

- 1 Toque **MENU** (MENÚ) y seleccione Ventilación (Ventilation).
- 2 Seleccione **Mode** (Modalidad), **Temporary Boost** (Refuerzo temporal), o **Lockout** (Bloqueo) y las opciones adecuadas. (Para las opciones, consulte la página siguiente.)
- 3 Toque **Done** (Terminado) para guardar sus configuraciones. Toque **Cancel** (Cancelar) para ignorar los cambios.



Opciones de ventilación

Mode (Modalidad):

Auto (Automático): la ventilación funciona de acuerdo a lo programado por el instalador.

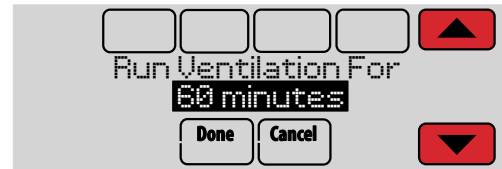
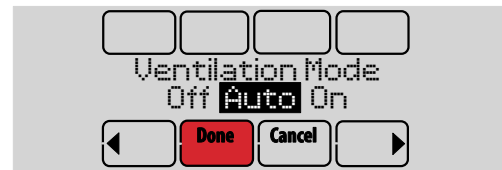
Off (Apagado): La ventilación permanece apagada a menos que se active utilizando el temporizador.

On (Encendido): el ventilador está siempre funcionando.

Temporary Boost (Refuerzo temporal):

Toque ▲ o ▼ para configurar el tiempo de funcionamiento de la ventilación temporalmente. Para apagarla, colóquela en cero.

Lockout (Bloqueo): (Toque ▲ o ▼ para seleccionar Yes (Sí) o No, luego toque **Next** (Siguiente). Seleccione **Yes** (Sí) para evitar que la ventilación funcione durante los períodos de la programación Dormir (Sleep) o Desocupado (Unoccupied) (comercial) o cuando las condiciones en exteriores excedan los valores establecidos por el instalador.



Configurar preferencias

Las opciones del menú de preferencias le permiten seleccionar cómo el termostato muestra la información o responde ante ciertas situaciones.


- 1 Toque **MENU** (MENÚ) y seleccione **Preferences** (Preferencias).
- 2 Seleccione una opción y siga las instrucciones:
 - Recordatorios para cambiar los filtros
 - Visualización en Fahrenheit/ Centígrados
 - Visualización del reloj en 12/24-horas
 - Iluminación de fondo en la pantalla
 - Opciones de alerta de luz
 - Opciones de programación
 - Adaptive Recovery
 - Programación predeterminada
 - Horario de verano
- 3 Toque **Done** (Terminado) para guardar sus configuraciones. Toque **Cancel** (Cancelar) para ignorar los cambios.

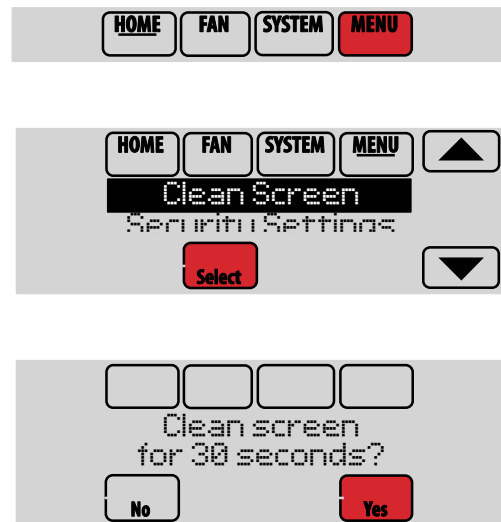


Limpeza de la pantalla del termostato

Cuando selecciona la opción Clean Screen (Limpeza de la pantalla), esta se bloquea para que no cambie accidentalmente la configuración mientras limpia.

- 1 Toque **MENU** (MENÚ).
- 2 Seleccione **Clean Screen** (Limpiar pantalla). Una instrucción le pregunta si desea limpiar la pantalla durante 30 segundos.
- 3 Toque **Yes** (Sí). Un contador de cuenta regresiva muestra el tiempo transcurrido hasta que se reactive la pantalla.


 **NOTA:** NO rocíe ningún líquido directamente sobre el termostato. Rocíe los líquidos sobre un paño y utilícelo para limpiar la pantalla. Utilice agua o el limpiador para vidrios que utiliza en casa. Evite utilizar limpiadores abrasivos.



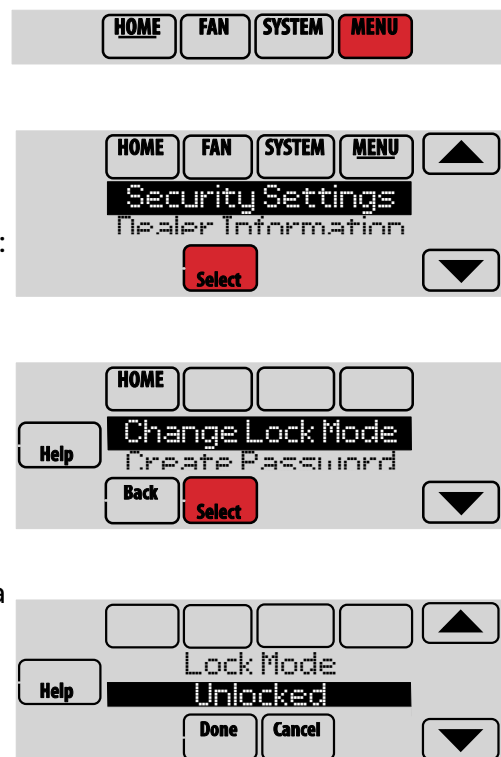
Ajuste de las configuraciones de seguridad

Se pueden utilizar las opciones de seguridad para evitar cambios no autorizados en las configuraciones del sistema.

- 1 Toque **MENU** (MENÚ) y seleccione **Security Settings** (Configuraciones de seguridad).
- 2 Seleccione una opción y siga las instrucciones:
 - Unlocked (Desbloqueado):** Acceso total permitido.
 - Partially locked (Parcialmente bloqueado):** solo se puede cambiar la temperatura.
 - Fully locked (Totalmente bloqueado):** Acceso no permitido.

 **NOTA:** Si elige utilizar una contraseña para mayor seguridad escribala aquí para su referencia:

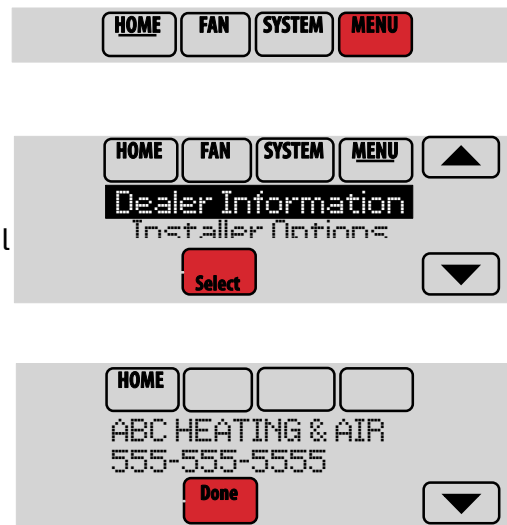
--	--	--	--



Cómo ver la información del distribuidor

Revise la información del distribuidor si necesita comunicarse con su instalador para mantenimiento, reparaciones o actualizaciones.

- 1 Toque **MENU** (MENÚ).
- 2 Seleccione **Dealer Information** (Información del distribuidor).
- 3 Desplácese a través de la información mostrada.
- 4 Toque **Done** (Terminado) para regresar al menú.



Funciones avanzadas

Función de Adaptive Intelligent Recovery (para uso residencial únicamente)—Con el tiempo, el termostato VisionPRO® “sabe” cuánto demora el sistema en alcanzar la temperatura que desea. Activa el sistema de calefacción o refrigeración más temprano para que esté confortable a la hora que usted espera. El termostato muestra “In recovery” (“En recuperación”) cuando activa el sistema temprano.

Modalidad de de deshumidificación en ausencia (Dehumidification Away Mode)—Su sistema puede configurarse para controlar el clima en interiores mientras su vivienda esté vacante durante la estación húmeda. Antes de marcharse, toque **MENU** (MENÚ) y luego seleccione **Dehumidification Away Mode** (Modalidad de deshumidificación en ausencia). La temperatura y la humedad se conservarán en niveles que protejan su hogar y sus posesiones. Cuando regrese, toque **Cancel** (Cancelar) para reanudar el funcionamiento normal.

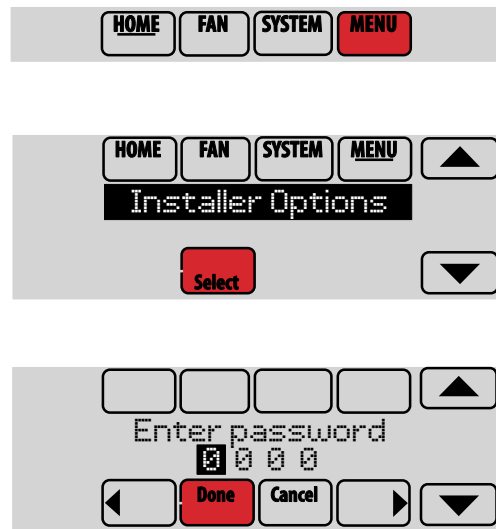
Protección del compresor (Compressor Protection)—El termostato conserva el compresor apagado durante unos minutos antes de volver a arrancar, para evitar daños al equipo. Durante el tiempo de espera, el mensaje Esperar (Wait) se muestra en la pantalla.

Purga previa a la ocupación (Pre-occupancy Purge) (uso comercial únicamente)—Esta función enciende el ventilador de 1 a 3 horas antes del período de tiempo “ocupado”, para brindar un ambiente de trabajo confortable cuando usted llegue.

Opciones del instalador

Las opciones del instalador requieren una contraseña y solo deben ser cambiadas por un técnico calificado.

Para evitar cambios imprevistos o daños al equipo, no cambie estas opciones usted mismo.



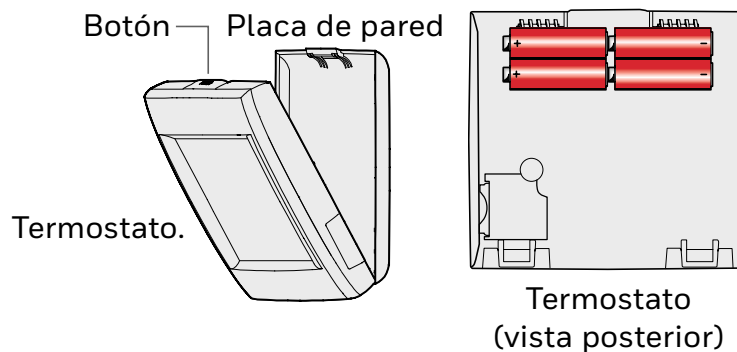
Cambio de las baterías del termostato

Instale las baterías nuevas cuando el aviso REPLACE BATTERY (REEMPLAZAR BATERÍAS) comience a destellar.

El aviso destellará durante 60 días aproximadamente antes de que se agoten las baterías.

Incluso si el aviso no aparece, siempre debe reemplazar las baterías una vez al año o antes de abandonar el hogar por más de un mes.

Presione el botón de bloqueo de seguridad que se encuentra sobre el termostato para retirarlo de la placa de pared. Coloque 4 baterías AA alcalinas nuevas.



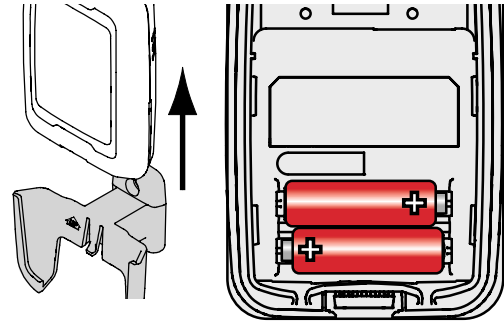
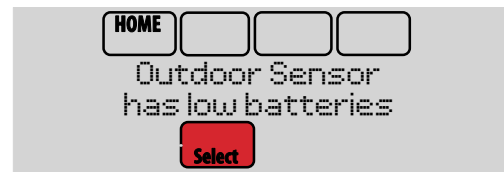
Reemplazo de las baterías del sensor exterior

Reemplace las baterías de su sensor exterior cuando aparezca una advertencia en la pantalla del termostato, aproximadamente 60 días antes de que las baterías se agoten.

Para reemplazar las baterías:

- 1 Retire el sensor del soporte.
- 2 Quite la cubierta.
- 3 Coloque 2 baterías AA de litio nuevas.
- 4 Vuelva a colocar la cubierta y coloque el sensor nuevamente en el soporte.

El sensor exterior restituirá la comunicación con el termostato unos cuantos segundos después de que se coloquen las baterías.



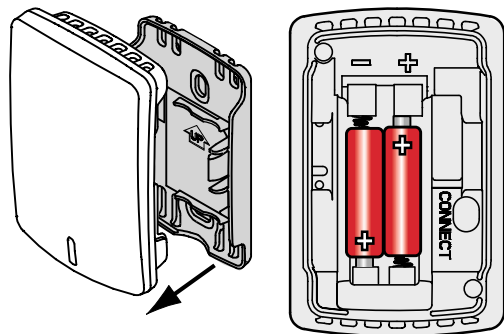
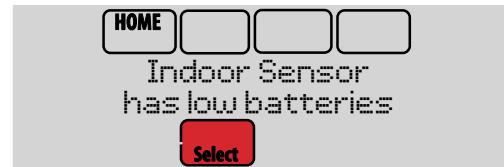
Reemplazo de las baterías del sensor interior

Reemplace las baterías de su sensor exterior cuando aparezca una advertencia en la pantalla del termostato, aproximadamente 60 días antes de que las baterías se agoten. Cuando la luz indicadora del estatus del sensor comience a destellar en rojo, la carga de la batería está extremadamente baja y se agotará en 2–3 semanas. Durante el funcionamiento normal, la luz indicadora del estatus permanece apagada.

Para reemplazar las baterías:

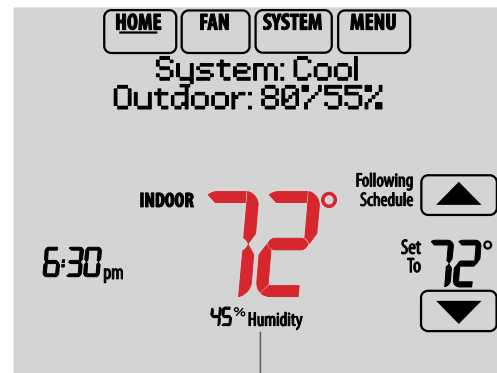
- 1 Retire el sensor de la placa de pared.
- 2 Coloque 2 baterías alcalinas AAA nuevas. Si la luz indicadora del estatus destella en verde, las baterías están bien; si destella en rojo, debe usar baterías nuevas.
- 3 Conecte el sensor a la placa de pared.

El sensor exterior restituirá la comunicación con el termostato unos cuantos segundos después de que se coloquen las baterías nuevas.



Uso de la pantalla de temperatura

En algunas circunstancias la temperatura que se muestra en la pantalla principal puede que no corresponda con la temperatura cerca del termostato. Si su sistema está configurado para usar sensores remotos de interior, puede estar leyendo un sensor de otro lugar.



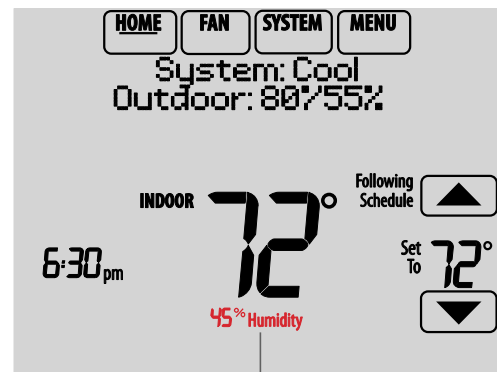
La lectura de la temperatura depende de la ubicación del sensor

Uso de la pantalla de humedad

En algunas circunstancias la humedad que se muestra en la pantalla principal puede que no corresponda con la humedad cerca del termostato.

Algunos sistemas están configurados para usar dos sensores, uno para controlar la humidificación, el otro para la deshumidificación. Estos sensores a menudo se instalan en diferentes lugares.

Dependiendo de la forma como se instaló su termostato, la pantalla principal del termostato mostrará la lectura de la humedad solo de un sensor.



La lectura de la humedad depende de la ubicación del sensor.

Accesorios opcionales

Control de confort portátil

Si tiene solo un termostato, puede mover el control remoto de una habitación a otra (como un termostato portátil) para asegurarse de que la temperatura esté confortable en la habitación que está utilizando. Si tiene varios termostatos, puede ver y regular la temperatura de cada habitación desde su butaca.



Sensor inalámbrico de exteriores

Con un sensor inalámbrico para exteriores su termostato VisionPRO® puede mostrar la temperatura y humedad del exterior. Esta información también puede mostrarse en su Control de confort portátil.



Sensor inalámbrico de interiores

Si se instala un sensor de interiores, su termostato VisionPRO responderá a las lecturas de temperatura y humedad en la ubicación del sensor—proporcionando confort donde esté ubicado el sensor. Con varios sensores, el termostato puede promediar las lecturas de la temperatura de cada uno, para optimizar el confort por toda su vivienda.



Puerta de acceso a Internet RedLINK™

La puerta de acceso a Internet RedLINK de Honeywell le brinda acceso remoto a su termostato VisionPRO® desde Internet, un teléfono inteligente o tableta. Puede ver o regular la temperatura en interiores, la operación del sistema y otras configuraciones. La puerta de acceso también puede enviarle alertas de hasta 6 correos electrónicos para notificarle si ocurre un problema.



Remoto inalámbrico para punto de entrada/salida

Este dispositivo se monta al lado de su puerta como un control de un solo toque. Presione **AWAY** (AUSENTE) para controlar una temperatura de ahorro de energía cuando se marcha de su casa. Presione **HOME** (HOGAR) para el control de una temperatura confortable cuando regrese. Para cambiar las temperaturas preestablecidas, vaya a **MENU > Entry/Exit Remote** (MENÚ > Remoto de entrada/salida).



Remoto inalámbrico para reforzar la ventilación y la filtración

Este dispositivo se monta en cualquier lugar de su hogar (generalmente en el baño o la cocina) para obtener ventilación cuando lo necesite. Para aumentar la ventilación, seleccione 20, 40 o 60 minutos.



Localización y solución de problemas

Si tiene dificultades con el termostato, intente poner en práctica estas sugerencias.

La mayoría de los problemas pueden solucionarse de manera fácil y rápida.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| La pantalla está en blanco | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Revise el interruptor de circuito y, si es necesario, reinícielo.• Asegúrese de que el interruptor de energía del sistema de calefacción y refrigeración esté encendido.• Asegúrese de que la puerta del sistema de calefacción esté bien cerrada.• Si el termostato está alimentado por baterías, compruebe que las baterías alcalinas AA nuevas estén instaladas correctamente (consulte la página 16). |
| Resulta difícil leer la pantalla | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Cambie el brillo de la pantalla utilizando el Menú de preferencias (consulte la página 13). |
| La luz roja está encendida | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Si el termostato se encuentra en la modalidad de Calefacción de emergencia (Emergency Heat), es normal que se encienda la luz roja. Muestra que el termostato está en la modalidad de Calefacción de emergencia.• Si el termostato no está en la modalidad de Calefacción de emergencia (Emergency Heat), hay una alerta activa. Revise el mensaje en la pantalla del termostato. |
| El sistema de calefacción o refrigeración no responde | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Toque SYSTEM (SISTEMA) para configurar el sistema en Heat (Calefacción). Asegúrese de que la temperatura sea más alta que la temperatura interior.• Toque SYSTEM (SISTEMA) para configurar el sistema en Cool (Refrigeración). Asegúrese de que la temperatura sea más baja que la temperatura interior.• Revise el interruptor de circuito y, si es necesario, reinícielo.• Asegúrese de que el interruptor de energía del sistema de calefacción y refrigeración esté encendido.• Asegúrese de que la puerta del sistema de calefacción esté bien cerrada.• Si en la pantalla aparece "Wait" ("Esperar"), el temporizador de protección del compresor está encendido. Espere 5 minutos para que se reinicie el sistema de forma segura, sin dañar el compresor. |

Información de la garantía

Honeywell garantiza que este producto no presenta defectos en la mano de obra o los materiales, en condiciones de uso y mantenimiento normales, durante un período de cinco (5) años desde la fecha de compra por parte del consumidor. Si en algún momento durante el período de garantía se determina que el producto tiene fallas o presenta un funcionamiento incorrecto, Honeywell lo reparará o reemplazará (a criterio de Honeywell).

Si el producto tiene fallas:

(i) Devuélvalo con una factura de venta o algún otro comprobante de compra fechado, al lugar donde lo compró.

(ii) O bien, llame a Atención al Cliente de Honeywell al 1-800-468-1502. Atención al Cliente determinará si el producto debe devolverse a la siguiente dirección: Honeywell Return Goods, Dock 4 MN10-3860, 1985 Douglas Dr. N., Golden Valley, MN 55422, o si se le puede enviar un producto de reemplazo.

Esta garantía no cubre los costos de retiro ni de reinstalación. Esta garantía no se aplicará si Honeywell demuestra que la falla o el funcionamiento incorrecto fue causado por daños que ocurrieron cuando el producto estaba en posesión del consumidor.

La única responsabilidad de Honeywell será la de reparar o reemplazar el producto dentro de los términos mencionados anteriormente. HONEYWELL NO SERÁ RESPONSABLE POR LA PÉRDIDA NI EL DAÑO DE NINGÚN TIPO, QUE INCLUYE CUALQUIER DAÑO INCIDENTAL O CONSECUENTE QUE RESULTE, DIRECTA O INDIRECTAMENTE, DE CUALQUIER INCUMPLIMIENTO DE CUALQUIER GARANTÍA, EXPRESA O IMPLÍCITA, O DE CUALQUIER OTRA FALLA DE ESTE PRODUCTO. Algunos estados no permiten la exclusión o limitación de los daños fortuitos o resultantes, por lo que esta limitación podría no aplicarse en su caso.

ESTA GARANTÍA ES LA ÚNICA GARANTÍA EXPRESA QUE HONEYWELL OFRECE RESPECTO DE ESTE PRODUCTO. LA DURACIÓN DE CUALQUIER GARANTÍA IMPLÍCITA, INCLUIDAS LAS GARANTÍAS DE COMERCIABILIDAD E IDONEIDAD PARA UN FIN ESPECÍFICO, SE LIMITA POR EL PRESENTE A LA DURACIÓN DE CINCO AÑOS DE ESTA GARANTÍA.

Algunos estados no admiten limitaciones de la duración de una garantía implícita, por lo que es posible que la limitación anterior no se aplique a su caso. Esta garantía le otorga derechos legales específicos, y puede tener otros derechos que varían según el estado.

Si tiene alguna pregunta sobre la garantía, escríbanos a Honeywell Customer Relations, 1985 Douglas Dr, Golden Valley, MN 55422, o llámenos al 1-800-468-1502.

Información reguladora

Declaración de conformidad con las regulaciones FCC (Sección 15.19) (solo en los EE. UU.)

Este dispositivo cumple con la Sección 15 de las regulaciones FCC. El funcionamiento está sujeto a las dos condiciones siguientes:

- 1 Este dispositivo no debe causar interferencia perjudicial.
- 2 Este dispositivo deberá aceptar cualquier interferencia que se reciba, incluso la interferencia que pudiese causar el funcionamiento no deseado.

Advertencia de la FCC (Sección 15.21) (solo en los EE. UU.)

Los cambios o las modificaciones que no hayan sido expresamente aprobados por la parte responsable del cumplimiento de las regulaciones podrían anular la autoridad del usuario para hacer funcionar el equipo.

Declaración de la FCC sobre interferencias (Sección 15.105(b)) (solo en los EE. UU.)

Este equipo fue probado y cumple con los límites de los dispositivos digitales clase B, conforme a la Sección 15 de las regulaciones FCC. Estos límites están diseñados para ofrecer una protección razonable contra la interferencia perjudicial en una instalación residencial. Este equipo genera usos y puede irradiar energía de frecuencia de radio y, si no se instala y se utiliza según las instrucciones, puede producir una interferencia perjudicial en la comunicación radial. Sin embargo, no se garantiza que no habrá interferencia en una instalación particular. Si este equipo produce una interferencia perjudicial en la recepción televisiva o radial, lo cual puede determinarse al apagar y encender el equipo, se recomienda que el usuario intente corregir la interferencia con una o más de las siguientes medidas:

- Vuelva a orientar y ubicar la antena receptora.
- Aumente la distancia entre el equipo y el receptor.
- Conecte el equipo a un tomacorriente en un circuito diferente a aquel en el que está conectado el receptor.
- Consulte con su distribuidor o con un técnico experto en radio/televisión para recibir ayuda.

Módulo de interfaz del equipo, termostatos y sensor de exteriores

Para cumplir con los límites de exposición RF que establece la FCC y el Industry Canada para la población en general/ exposición no controlada, la o las antenas usadas para estos transmisores deben instalarse a una distancia de, al menos, 20 cm de todas las personas, y no deben ubicarse ni utilizarse junto con otra antena.

Control de confort portátil

Este transmisor portátil y su antena cumplen con los límites de exposición RF que establece la FCC y el Industry Canada para la población en general/exposición no controlada. Este dispositivo no deberá colocarse ni accionarse conjuntamente con otra antena o transmisor.

Sección 7.1.2 de RSS-GEN

De acuerdo con las regulaciones de la industria de Canadá, este transmisor de radio puede funcionar únicamente utilizando un tipo de antena y una ganancia máxima (o inferior) aprobada para el transmisor por la industria de Canadá. Para disminuir la interferencia potencial del radio con otros usuarios, el tipo de antena y su ganancia deben ser elegidas de tal forma que la potencia isotrópica radiada equivalente (e.i.r.p.) no sea mayor de lo necesario para una comunicación eficaz.

Sección 7.1.3 de RSS-GEN

El funcionamiento está sujeto a las dos condiciones siguientes:

- 1 Este dispositivo no debe causar interferencia y
- 2 Este dispositivo deberá aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluso la interferencia que pudiese causar el funcionamiento no deseado del dispositivo.



Este termostato contiene una batería de litio que puede contener material con perclorato. Material con perclorato—es posible que deba aplicarse un tratamiento especial. Visite www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate

¿Necesita ayuda?

Para obtener ayuda visite <http://yourhome.honeywell.com>, o llame gratis al: **1-800-468-1502** (instalación residencial) • **1-888-245-1051** (instalación comercial)

Home and Building Technologies

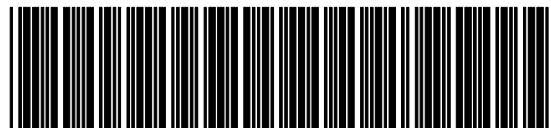
En los EE. UU.:

Honeywell International Inc.
1985 Douglas Drive North
Golden Valley, MN 55422-3992
<http://customer.honeywell.com>

Honeywell
THE POWER OF **CONNECTED**

Home

® Marca Registrada en los E.U.A
© 2017 Honeywell International Inc.
69-2761EFS-09 M.S. Rev. 07-17
Impreso en EE. UU.

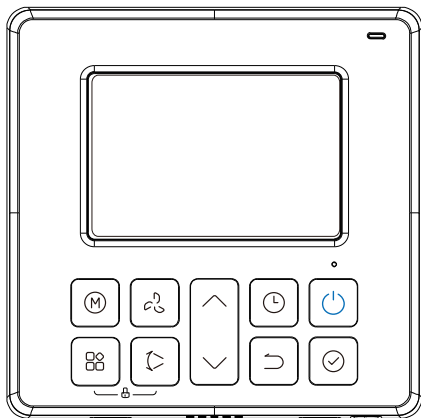


69-2761EFS-09

Wired Remote Controller
KSACN1201AAA
For Use With Ductless Systems

Owner's Manual

NOTE: In order to properly service the wired controller, read this manual carefully prior to operating the unit. Keep this manual after reading for future reference.



NOTE: Images are for illustration purposes only. Actual models may differ slightly.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS.....	3
BUTTON IDENTIFICATION ON WIRED CONTROLLER.....	5
LCD IDENTIFICATION ON WIRED CONTROLLER.....	6
BASIC FUNCTIONS.....	7
TROUBLESHOOT YOUR WIRED CONTROLLER.....	16


SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Installing, starting up, and servicing air-conditioning equipment can be hazardous due to system pressures, electrical components, and equipment location (roofs, elevated structures, etc.). Only trained, qualified installers and service mechanics should install, start-up, and service this equipment. Untrained personnel can perform basic maintenance functions such as cleaning coils.

When working on the equipment, observe precautions in the literature and on tags, stickers, and labels attached to the equipment.

Follow all safety codes. Wear safety glasses and work gloves. Keep a quenching cloth and fire extinguisher nearby when brazing. Use care in handling, rigging, and setting bulky equipment.

Read these instructions thoroughly and follow all warnings or cautions included in the literature and attached to the unit. Consult the local building codes and National Electrical Code (NEC) for special requirements. Recognize safety information.

This is the safety-alert symbol . When you see this symbol on the unit and in instructions or manuals, be alert to the potential for personal injury. Understand these signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, and **CAUTION**. These words are used with the safety-alert symbol.

DANGER identifies the most serious hazards which will result in severe personal injury or death.

WARNING signifies hazards which could result in personal injury or death. **CAUTION** is used to identify unsafe practices which may result in minor personal injury or product and property damage.

NOTE is used to highlight suggestions which will result in enhanced installation, reliability, or operation.



WARNING

ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD

Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death. Before beginning any modification or installation of this kit, ensure the main electrical disconnect is in the **OFF** position. Ensure power is disconnected to the fan coil unit.



CAUTION

EQUIPMENT DAMAGE HAZARD

Failure to follow this caution may result in equipment damage or improper operation. Do not install the wired controller in an area subjected to excessive steam, oil or sulfide gas. Doing so may damage the controller and/or cause it to fail.

BUTTON IDENTIFICATION ON WIRED CONTROLLER

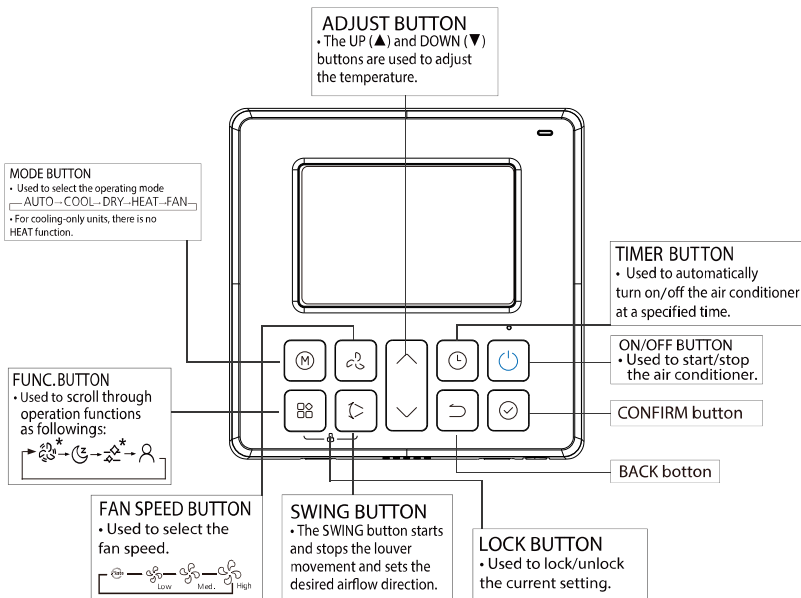


Fig. 1 – Name of Buttons on Wired Controller

DO NOT remove the cover or touch the interior parts of the controller.

DO NOT use sharp or pointed objects to press the controller buttons.

LCD IDENTIFICATION ON WIRED CONTROLLER

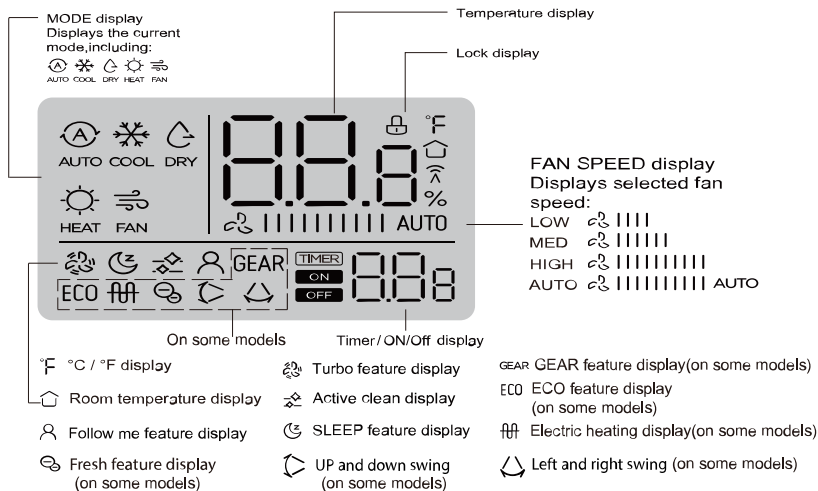


Fig. 2 – Name on LCD of Wired Controller

BASIC FUNCTIONS

The following are instructions for using your air conditioner's basic functions:

AUTO Function

In AUTO mode, the unit will automatically select the COOL, HEAT, FAN, or DRY function based on the set temperature.

1. Press the MODE button, select AUTO
2. Set your desired temperature using the Up and DOWN buttons. (In AUTO mode, fan speed cannot be set.)
3. Press the ON/OFF button to start the unit.

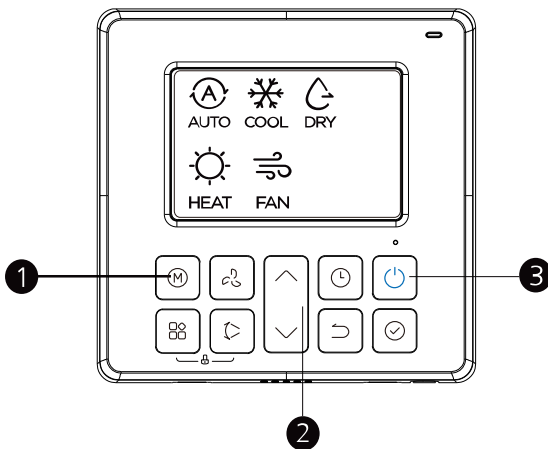


Fig. 3 – Auto Function

COOL/HEAT/FAN Function

1. Press the MODE button to select COOL, HEAT or FAN
2. Set the desired temperature using the UP and Down buttons.
3. Press the FAN SPEED button to select the fan speed.
4. Press the ON/OFF button to start the unit.

NOTE: In FAN mode, the temperature cannot be changed.

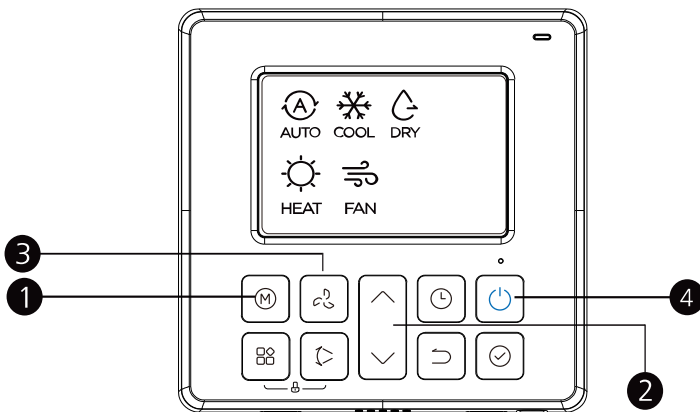


Fig. 4 – COOL/HEAT/FAN Function

DRY Function

1. Press the MODE button, select DRY
2. Set your desired temperature using the UP and DOWN buttons.
3. Press the ON/OFF button to start the unit.

NOTE: In DRY mode, the FAN SPEED buttons cannot be used.

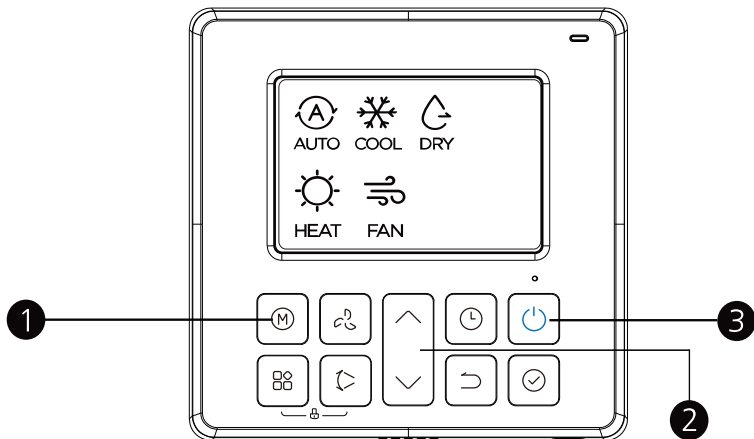


Fig. 5 – DRY Function

FOLLOW ME Function

1. When the FOLLOW ME function is selected, press the confirm button once and FOLLOW ME on the wired controller will light up.
2. When the FOLLOW ME function is selected, press the confirm button again to cancel the FOLLOW ME function and FOLLOW ME icon on the control will turn off.
3. FOLLOW ME function is not canceled when pressing the mode key or powering off. Only select FOLLOW ME in the function key and confirm to cancel FOLLOW ME, or press 46°F (8°C) degrees heating function to cancel FOLLOW ME.
4. By default, the FOLLOW ME function is enabled on the machine.
5. Press the FUNC button to enter the setting selection (see Fig. 18). It will scroll through operation functions as follows:

TURBO(🌀)→SLEEP(🌙)→CLEAN(🧹)→FOLLOW ME(👤)→TURBO(🌀)

The selected symbol will flash on the display. Press the OK button to confirm.

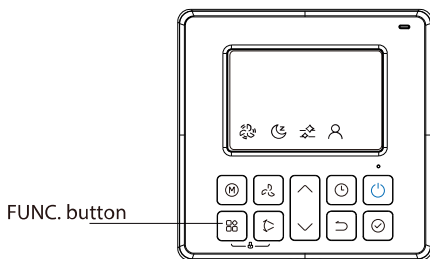




Fig. 6 – FUNC Button

Setting Air Flow Direction

1. Up-Down Swing
Press the SWING button to start up-down swing function. The “↕” indicator appears. Press it again to stop (see Fig. 19).
2. Left-Right Swing
Press the SWING button for 2 seconds to start Left-Right Swing function. The “↔” indicator appears. Press it for 2 seconds again to stop.
3. Turn Child Lock on/off  + 
Press and hold the function key and the horizontal swing key for 3 seconds.

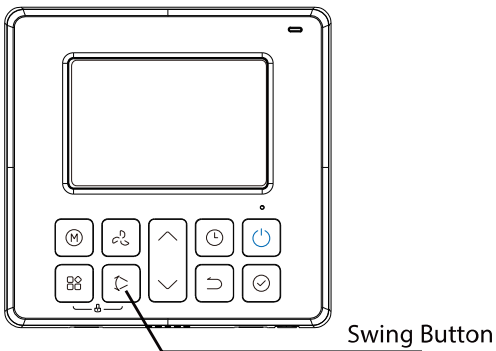


Fig. 7 – Swing Button

TIMER Function

Your air conditioner unit has two timer-related functions:

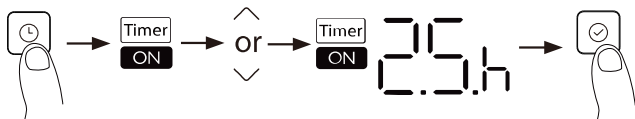
- **TIMER ON** - Sets the amount of time after which the unit will automatically turn on (delayed on).
- **TIMER OFF** - Sets the amount of time after which the unit will automatically turn on (delayed off)

1. TIMER ON Function

The **TIMER ON** function allows you to set a period of time after which the unit will automatically turn on, such as when you come home from work.

- Press **TIMER ON** button. By default, the last time period set and “H” (indicating hours) will appear on the display.
- Press **TIMER ON** button repeatedly to set the time you want the unit to turn on.
- Wait 3 seconds then the **TIMER ON** function will be activated. The digital display on your controller will then return to the temperature display.

Example: Setting unit to turn on after 2.5 hours:

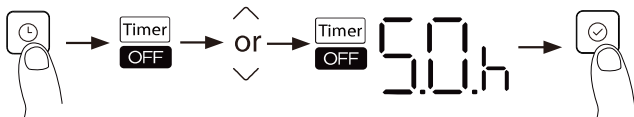


NOTE: This number indicates the amount of time after the current time you want the unit to turn on. For example, if you set **TIMER ON** for 2 hours, “2.0 H” will appear on the screen and the unit will turn on after 2 hours.

2. TIMER OFF Function

The TIMER OFF function allows you to set a period of time after which the unit will automatically turn off, such as when you wake up.

Example: Setting unit to turn off after 5 hours:



NOTE: When setting the TIMER ON or TIMER OFF functions, the time will increase in 30 minute increments with each press up to 10 hours. After 10 hours, it will increase in 1 hour increments up to 24 hours. The timer will revert to zero after 24 hours. You can turn off either function by setting its timer to “0.0 H”.

Setting both TIMER ON and TIMER OFF at the same time (combined timer function):

Keep in mind that the time periods you set for both functions refer to hours after the current time. For example; if the current time is 1:00 p.m. and you want it to operate for 2 hours, then automatically turn off at 9:00 p.m.:



The unit will operate at high fan speed (while compressor on) with temperature automatically set to 46°F/8°C.

NOTE: This function is for heat pump air conditioner only. Press this button 2 times during one second under HEAT mode and setting temperature of 60/62°F (16/17°C) or 68°F (20°C) (for some models) to activate FP function. Press ON/OFF, SLEEP, MODE, FAN or TEMP button while operating will cancel this function.

°C and °F Scale Selection (on some models)



Press the buttons " ^ " and " v " for 3 seconds will alternate the temperature display between the °C & °F scale.

TROUBLESHOOT YOUR WIRED CONTROLLER

SYMPTOMS	POSSIBLE CAUSES	SOLUTION
The fan speed cannot be changed	Check whether AUTO mode is selected	In AUTO mode, the fan speed is set automatically and cannot be changed.
	Check whether DRY mode is selected	In DRY mode, the FAN SPEED button is ineffective. The fan speed can only be changed in COOL, FAN and HEAT mode.
The temperature display is off	Check whether FAN mode is selected	In FAN mode, the temperature cannot be adjusted.
The TIMER OFF disappears after a period of time	If the TIMER OFF function was activated, the operation may have finished.	The air conditioner will automatically stop at the set time and the indicator light will turn off.
The TIMER ON indicator disappears after a period of time	If the TIMER ON function was activated, the operation may have finished.	The air conditioner will automatically stop at the set time and the indicator light will turn off.
There is no sound when the ON/OFF button is pressed	Check whether the signal transmitter of the remote control is properly directed towards the infrared signal receiver of the indoor unit.	Point the remote control directly at the receiver and press the ON/OFF button twice.